

Zohar (section 2)

Soncino second edition 1984

	pages
Exodus	
Shemoth (2a-22a)	02-26
Va'eira (22a-32a)	26-36
Bo (32b-43b)	36-43
Beshalach (44a-67a)	43-67
Yithro (67a-94a)	67-91
Mishpatim (94a-126a)	91-117
Terumah (126a-176a)	117-174
Tetzave (179b-187b)	174-180
Ki Thisa (178b-193b)	180-187
Vayak'hel (194b-220a)	187-220
Pekudei (220a-269a)	220-247

SHEMOT

NOW THESE ARE THE NAMES OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL WHICH CAME INTO EGYPT EVERY MAN AND HIS HOUSEHOLD CAME WITH JACOB. It is written: And the wise shall be resplendent as the splendour (zohar) of the firmament, and they that turn many to righteousness shall be like the stars for ever and ever (Dan. XII, 3). "The wise" are those who penetrate to the real essence of wisdom; "they shall be resplendent", i.e. illumined with the radiance of the supernal Wisdom; "as the splendour", this is the flashing of the Stream that goes forth from Eden (Gen. XI, 10), this being alluded to as "the firmament". There are suspended the stars, the planets, the sun and the moon, and all the radiant lights. The brightness of this firmament shines upon the Garden of Eden, and in the midst of the Garden stands the Tree of Life, whose branches spread over all forms and trees and spices in fitting vessels. All the beasts of the field and all the fowls of the air shelter beneath the branches of this Tree. The fruit of the Tree gives life to all. It is everlasting. The "other side" has no abode therein, but only the side of holiness. Blessed are they who taste thereof; they will live for ever and ever, and it is they who are called "the wise", and they are vouchsafed life in this world as well as in the world to come..

The Tree rises to a height of five hundred parasangs, and its circumference is six myriads of parasangs. Within this Tree is a light [Tr. note: Tifereth.] out of which radiate certain colours: they come and go, never being at rest save in the Tree. Should they issue from it to show themselves in the brightness which does not shine of itself, [Tr. note: Malkuth.] they are not at rest but flit about. From this Tree went forth twelve tribes, [Tr. note: The twelve 'obliquities' of Tifereth.] who had long been warmed by it, and they went down with this light that does not shine of itself into the exile of Egypt, accompanied by multitudes of heavenly hosts. R. Simeon compared the Egyptian with the Babylonian exile, basing his remarks on the text: "The word of the Lord came (lit. coming came) to Ezekiel" (Ezek. 1, 3). 'Why', he said, 'the double expression "coming came"?'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 2b

Moreover, if Ezekiel was indeed a faithful prophet, why did he disclose the whole of his vision? Is it right and meet for one whom the king has invited to his palace to reveal all the secrets which he has seen there? Now Ezekiel was indeed a faithful prophet, and whatever he saw he faithfully kept secret, and whatever he revealed he revealed by permission of the Holy One, blessed be He, and for proper reasons. Observe now that one who is accustomed to pain bears it patiently, but if one is not accustomed to pain and has always lived at ease, when pain comes upon him he really feels it keenly and deserves to be pitied. So when Israel went to Egypt they were inured to suffering, their father, the righteous Jacob, having been all his life a man of sorrows, and they could thus endure the exile patiently. But the exile of Babylon was a real torment for which there was weeping both in heaven and on earth, as it is written: "Behold, their heroes (angels) cried without, the angels

of peace wept bitterly" (Isa. XXXIII, 7); "by the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down, yea, we wept, when we remembered Zion" (Ps. CXXXVII, 1): yea truly, all joined in the lamentation. They who had been brought up in royal luxury were now driven into exile with their necks yoked and their hands fettered; and when they reached the land of exile despair settled in their hearts, and they thought that they would never be raised up again, since God had deserted them. At that hour the Holy One called together all His heavenly hosts, His Family above, all the holy Chariots, the lower and the higher ranks, the whole celestial army, and spoke to them thus: "What do ye here? My beloved children are captives in Babylon, and do ye remain here? Arise, all of you, and go to them, and I will go with you." When the celestial Company arrived in Babylon, the heavens opened, and the holy spirit of prophecy descended upon Ezekiel, and he saw his wonderful vision, and proclaimed to the exiles: "Behold, your Master is here, and all the celestial beings have come down to be your companions." But they believed it not, and so he was compelled to disclose to them the whole of his heavenly vision. Then their joy was exceedingly great, and they recked not of the exile, knowing that the Lord Himself was in their midst. They were all filled with a perfect love of Him, ready to sacrifice themselves for the holiness of the All-Holy, blessed be He! This is the reason why the prophet disclosed to them all that he saw..

'We have been taught that wherever Israel went into captivity the Shekinah went with her. We learn this in the present instance from the expression "children of [the supernal] Israel", which we take here to refer to the heavenly hosts and chariots, which, we are told, "came with Jacob to Egypt".' R. Hiya cited in this connection the verse: Come with me from Lebanon, bride, with me from Lebanon! Look from the top of Amana, from the top of Senir and Hermon, from the lions' dens, from the mountains of the leopards. (S.S. IV, 8). 'This', he said, 'refers to the Community of Israel. When the Community of Israel left Egypt and went up to Mount Sinai to receive the Law, the Holy One said to her: "Come with Me, My bride, with Me, Lebanah (lit. white), thou moon who receivest thy light from the Sun!'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 3a

Look (tashuri), a beautiful present (teshurah) wilt thou receive for thy children, from the top of Amana, from the realm of the supernal Faith (emunah)", the reference in the last word being to the children of Israel when they said, "all that the Lord hath said we will do, and obey" (Ex. XXIV, 7), and who were then like angels, perfectly united, of whom the Psalmist sings, "bless ye the Lord, ye angels, mighty in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word" (Ps. CIII, 20). Thus Israel received a present "from the top of Senir and Hermon": i.e. from Mount Sinai, at the nether part of which they stood. Also "from the lions' dens": namely, the children of Seir, who refused the Law when offered to them. "From the mountains of the leopards": namely, the children of Ishmael, who likewise refused, as it is written, "The Lord came from Sinai, and rose up from Seir unto them; he shined forth from Mount Paran, and he came from the ten thousands of holy ones" (Deut. xxx, 2). And

what is the meaning of "He came from the ten thousands of holy ones"? An ancient tradition explains it thus: when the Holy One was about to give the Law to Israel, hosts of angels protested with one voice, saying: "O Lord, our lord, how excellent is thy Name in all the earth! Give thy Glory (the Torah) to the heavens!" (Ps. VIII, 1-2). In truth, they desired the Torah for themselves. Said the Holy One to them: "Has death any sway over you? Behold, in My Law death is the punishment for certain sins! Is robbery or theft known to you? In My Law it is written, 'Thou shalt not steal!' Is there sexual desire among you? I have said, 'Thou shalt not commit adultery!' Is it possible for you to lie? I have said, 'Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour!' Can covetousness lodge with you? I have said, 'Thou shalt not covet!' Of what service, then, will the Law be to you?" Straightway they sang in unison: "O Lord, our lord, how excellent is thy Name in all the earth" (ibid. 10). No more did they say, "give Thy glory to the heavens!".

R. Jose interpreted the above verse in the Song of Songs in connection with the descent of the Shekinah to the Egyptian captivity. R. Simeon, however, found in it an allusion to the mystic union between Voice and Utterance. These should form one unity, without any separation whatever. They depend upon one another: no Voice without Utterance, and no Utterance without Voice. Essentially they both come from "Lebanon" (=lebanah, moon, symbolizing Wisdom). "Amana" represents the throat, out of which comes the breath to complete the hidden indication first given from "Lebanon". "From the top of Senir and Hermon" refers to the tongue; "from the lions' dens" suggests the teeth; "from the mountains of the leopards" is symbolic of the lips, by which the Utterance is made complete.

R. Hiya applied to the Israelites who went down to Egypt the verse: "Eat thou not the bread of him that hath an evil eye, neither desire thou his dainties" (Prov. XXIII, 6). 'Indeed,' he said, 'the bread or any other boon offered by an evil-eyed man is not worth while partaking of or enjoying. Had the children of Israel, in going down into Egypt, not tasted the bread of the Egyptians they would not have remained there in exile, nor would the Egyptians have oppressed them.' Said R. Isaac: 'Was not that exile the fulfilment of a divine decree?' R. Hiya said in reply: 'That makes no difference, inasmuch as the decree did not mention Egypt in particular, only saying: "Thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs" (Gen. XVI, 13)- not necessarily Egypt.' R. Isaac said: 'Though a man should have a vigorous appetite and be a hearty eater, yet if he encounters such an evil-eyed man, it were better for him to take his own life than partake of his bread.'

There are three types of men who drive away the Shekinah from the world, making it impossible for the Holy One, blessed be He, to fix His abode in the universe, and causing prayer to be unanswered.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 3b

One is he who cohabits with a woman in the days of her separation. There is no impurity comparable with this. He defiles himself and all connected with him. The

child born of such a union is shapen in impurity, imbibes the spirit of impurity, and its whole life is founded on impurity. Next is he who lies with a heathen woman, for he profanes herewith the sacred sign of the covenant which constitutes the support of the sacred Name and the essence of faith. As soon as "the people committed whoredom" with the daughters of Moab, the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel (Num. xxv, 1-3). The leaders of the people, who did not endeavour to prevent them, were the first to be punished (ibid. 4), and in every generation it is the leaders who are made responsible for all the members of the community in regard to the profanation of the sign of the covenant, which is "sun and shield" (Ps. LXXXIV, 12): as the sun gives light to the world, so does the holy sign give light to the body, and as the shield protects, so does the holy sign protect. He who keeps it in purity is guarded from evil. But he who transfers this sign of holiness into a strange domain, breaks the commandment, "Thou shalt have no other gods but Me"; for to deny the king's seal is equivalent to denying the king himself. Next is he who purposely prevents the seed from coming to fruition, for he destroys the King's workmanship and so causes the Holy One to depart from the world. This sin is the cause of war, famine, and pestilence, and it prevents the Shekinah from finding any resting place in the world. For these abominations the spirit of holiness weeps. Woe to him who causes this: it were better that he had never been born. It was counted to the Israelites for righteousness that, although in exile in Egypt, they kept themselves free from these sins, and, moreover, fearlessly fulfilled the command to increase and multiply. This made them worthy to be liberated. R. Hiya found an indication of the purity of the Israelitish women in Egypt in the text:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 4a

"And he made the laver of brass, and the foot of it brass, of the looking-glasses of the women assembling at the door of the tent" (Ex. XXXVIII, 8). What was the merit of the women to have made them worthy of such honour that their looking-glasses should be used for the laver of the Tabernacle? Their ritual ablutions on the one hand, and their eagerness to attract their husbands on the other.

R. Eleazar and R. Jose were once walking together. Said R. Eleazar to R. Jose: 'Open thy mouth, and let thy words flow forth!' R. Jose replied: 'Will it please the master if I ask him to solve a certain difficulty for me? I have heard from the mouth of the "holy lamp" (R. Simeon b. Yohai) this interpretation of the words: "and these are the names of the children of Israel"-that they refer to the "Ancient Israel" (God) and to all the heavenly hosts and chariots who went into captivity with Jacob. I am, however, puzzled how to fit the words "a man and his household" in this verse into this interpretation.' R. Eleazar replied: 'What R. Simeon said is certainly correct. We have an esoteric doctrine that the receiver is, as it were, a "house" to the giver. This may be illustrated from the following verse: "And it came to pass when Solomon had finished the building of the house of the Lord and the king's house" (I K. IX, 1). "The house of the Lord" is, of course, the Temple, which includes the outer courts, the porch, the antechambers, and the Temple itself: but the "king's

house" is not, as you might think, the palace of Solomon, but the Holy of Holies, the innermost sanctum, the word "King" being here used in its absolute sense. For this King, although supreme, is, in relation to the Highest Point, the most hidden One, feminine, or receptive; but at the same time He is masculine, or active, in relation to the lower King; and this double relationship, to that which is above and that which is below, appertains to the whole supramundane world. It is in this symbolic sense that the angels are here called "his house".' AND THESE ARE THE NAMES. R. Jose connected these words with the words from the Song of Songs (IV, 12): "A closed garden is my sister bride, a closed spring, a sealed fountain." ' "A closed garden" refers to the Community of Israel, for,' said R. Eleazar, 'as the garden has to be tended, ploughed, watered, and trimmed, so has the Community of Israel to be tended, nurtured, and trimmed. She is called "garden" and she is called "vineyard": "for the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is Israel... and he fenced it and gathered out the stones thereof" (Isa. v, 1-7).' Said R. Simeon: [Tr. note: This paragraph belongs to the Tosefta (and is not found in our Hebrew text of the Zohar proper).]

We open our eyes
 And straightway behold.
 The holy chariot's
 Swift-rolling wheels..
 Voices of song.
 Making lovely the air..
 A joy to the heart..
 A grace to the ear..
 Thousand on thousand.
 To trembling now fall.
 As they sing and rejoice.
 From below to above.
 In tune with the song..
 Standing who stand.
 Joined who are joined
 In multitudes thronging,
 Four hundred and fifty.
 Thousands of beings-
 Gifted with sight are they.
 Yet see and see not..
 Two hosts them encompass.

As great as the first..
 On the left hand is sorrow..
 Is crying and moaning-
 The Lords of Weeping.
 Their dwelling here set;
 Their being is judgement,
 And chastisement their end.
 The Judge is there ready.
 And the books are open..
 At this hour and moment.
 The Lord of judgement.
 Ascends to His Throne..
 The singing ceases.
 And silence falls.
 Judgement begins..
 The Lords of the right hand.
 Who see and perceive.
 And eighteen thousand.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 4b

Angelic companions.
 Fearlessly sing.
 And trumpets ring forth.
 And a trembling begins..
 Once again do thy sound.
 And the voices are silent..
 Then rises the Lord.
 From the Judgement throne;
 On the throne of reconciliation
 The Merciful now sits,
 And utters the Name-
 The holy, the blessed..
 Source of mercy for men.
 And life-giving to all.
 " Yod He Vau He" He cries;

Then murmurs anew.
 The song of the myriads,
 Of holy turning wheels..
 In ecstasy they chant
 "Blessed be the Lord's glory.
 From the place of His Shekinah"..
 The secret Garden
 In worlds of light hidden
 -Two hundred and fifty
 Encompassing worlds-
 Where Shekinah's splendour
 From splendour proceeding
 Its splendour sends forth
 To the ends of creation,
 In the fulness of glory
 Is revealed in its beauty
 To the eyes made seeing-
 The garden of Eden.
 The Ancient, the Father,
 The Holy One speaks
 His Name again pronouncing,
 "Yod He Vau He " again
 Gloriously crying.
 Then speak the lightful Hosts
 Making brave music:
 His thirteen paths of mercy
 They gladly proclaim.
 Who sees those mighty ones
 High in the Heavens
 Mighty in beauty?
 Who sees the Chariots
 Holy and glorious?
 Who sees the Hosts in

The bright courts of glory
 Exalting and praising
 In awe and in fear
 In joy and in wonder
 The Holy One's Name?

Blessed are the souls of the righteous who perceive it! "There is none like unto thee, O Lord; thou art great and thy Name is great. Who would not be in awe of thee, thou king of the nations?" (Jer. x, 6-7).

Said R. Simeon: 'When the Shekinah went down to Egypt, a celestial "living being" (Hayah, cf. Ezek. 1, 5), called "Israel", in form like the patriarch Jacob, went down with Her, accompanied by forty- two heavenly attendants, each of whom bore a letter belonging to the Holy Name. They all descended with Jacob to Egypt, and hence it says "and these are the names of the children of Israel which came into Egypt... with Jacob".'

R. Judah asked R. Eleazar, the son of R. Simeon: 'As thou hast heard from thy father the mystical interpretation of this section of the Book of Exodus, tell me the significance of the words "a man and his household came with Jacob".' He replied: 'My father said that it refers to the various grades of angels, all of them celestial, but of whom the higher are called "men", and the lower "household" or "female", in the sense that the former are active while the latter are passive and receptive.'

When R. Isaac was once studying with R. Eleazar, the son of R. Simeon, he asked him: 'Did the Shekinah go down to Egypt with Jacob?' Said R. Eleazar: 'Surely! Did not God say to Jacob, "I will go down with thee into Egypt" (Gen. XLVI, 4)?' Said R. Isaac: 'See now, the Shekinah went down with Jacob into Egypt, but She also had with Her six hundred thousand holy Chariots (angelic beings), for it is written, "and the children of Israel journeyed from Rameses to Succoth, about (lit. like) six hundred thousand on foot" (Ex. XII, 37). Now it does not say "six hundred", but "like" six hundred, etc., which suggests that there was an equal number of celestial beings who went out with them. The deeper meaning of the passage is as follows. When these holy Chariots and holy Hosts were about to leave Egypt, the children of Israel at once realized that it was for their sake that the celestial beings were detained, and therefore they hastened to get ready and leave as quickly as possible. Hence it says "they could not tarry" (Ex. XII, 39), not "they did not want to tarry". From this we learn that the expression "children of Israel" in all these passages refers to the celestial hosts. Moreover, it stands to reason that, as the Holy One promised Jacob that He would go down with him into Egypt, He would take His ministering angels with Him, for where the Master is there must His servants also be, and especially when we consider that even when Jacob was saved from Laban, "the angels of God met him" (Gen. XXXII, 2).'

[Note: The first 3 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in our translation.] R. Abba cited here the verse: "Come, behold the works of the Lord who hath made desolations in the earth" (Ps. XLVI, 8). 'The term shammoth (desolations)', he said, 'can also be read shemoth (names). This corroborates what R. Hiya said, namely, that whatever is in heaven, the Holy One, blessed be He, has made a counterpart thereof on earth. Thus, as there are hallowed names in heaven, so there are hallowed names on earth.' Said R. Jose: 'When Jacob went down to Egypt, sixty myriads of celestial angels accompanied him.' R. Judah illustrated from the verse: "Behold, it is the couch of Solomon, threescore mighty men are about it, of the mighty men of Israel" (S.S. III, 7), which he expounded thus: 'Six luminosities form a circle surrounding a seventh luminosity in the centre. The six on the circumference sustain the sixty valiant angels surrounding the "couch of Solomon". The "couch" is an allusion to the Shekinah, and "Solomon" refers to the "King to whom peace (shalom) belongs": "threescore mighty men are about it"-these are the sixty myriads of exalted angels, part of the army of the Shekinah which accompanied Jacob into Egypt.'

R. Hiya was once travelling from Usha to Lud, mounted on an ass, and R. Jose accompanied him on foot. R. Hiya dismounted, took R. Jose by the hand, and said: 'If men only knew what great honour was shown to Jacob when the Holy One said to him, "I will go down with thee to Egypt", they would lick the dust for three parasangs distance from his grave! For it has been said by the great Rabbis of old in connection with the verse, "And Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and did obeisance" (Ex. XVIII, 7), that when Aaron saw Moses go, he also went, and so did Eleazar, and the princes, and the elders, and, in fact, all Israel went out to meet Jethro. For who could see Moses or the great ones go and not go himself? Thus because Moses went, all went. Now if Moses produced such an effect, how much more must God have done so when He said to Jacob "I will go down with thee to Egypt"? As they were going along, R. Abba met them. Said R. Jose: 'Behold, the Shekinah is in our midst, as we have a great master of doctrine with us.' Said R. Abba: 'What were you discussing?' R. Jose replied: 'We were deducing that the angels went down with Israel to Egypt from the two verses "I will come down with thee into Egypt" and "These are the names, etc.".' Said R. Abba: 'I will give you a third. It says, "The word of the Lord came expressly unto Ezekiel... in the land of the Chaldeans by the river Chebar" (Ezek. 1, 3). Ezekiel, it is said, could not have been as faithful as Moses, of whom it is written, "He is faithful in all my house", for he revealed all the treasures of the King. But we have been instructed to beware of such thoughts about this prophet; on the contrary, he was a worthy prophet, and what he revealed he revealed with the permission of the Holy One, and he might have disclosed twice as much, because of the sad condition in which Israel found herself in Babylon, as has been explained already, and he had to prove to them that the Holy One would never leave His people in captivity without His Presence. Thus it goes without saying that when Jacob went down to Egypt, the Holy One, and His Shekinah, and all the holy heavenly beings, and all the Chariots, went down with him.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 5b

R. Judah said: 'If men only knew the love which God bears for Israel, they would roar like a lion till they could follow her! For when Jacob went down to Egypt, the Holy One called together all His celestial Family and said: "All of you must go down to Egypt, and I shall come with you!" Said the Shekinah: "Can hosts remain without a king?" Said He to Her: "Come with me from Lebanon, bride! With me from Lebanon! Look from the top of Amana, from the top of Senir and Hermon, from the lions' dens, from the mountains of the leopards" (S.S. IV, 8), i.e. "Come with Me from the Sanctuary above! Look from the tops of those who are the heads of the "Sons of Faith" (amanah=emunah)! Behold, they are about to receive from the mountain Hermon My Torah, which will be their shield in exile! Come from the lions' dens, the mountains of the leopards-the heathen nations who torment them with all manner of oppression." R. Isaac applied the words, "Look from the top of Amana" to the Sanctuary above and to the Sanctuary below, according to the dictum of R. Judah, that the Shekinah never departed from the Western wall of the Temple. R. Judah applied the words, "From the lions' dens, etc.", to students of the Torah in the dens, i.e. in the synagogues and houses of study..

R. Hiya, as he was once studying with R. Simeon, asked him: 'Why does the Torah, in this passage (Ex. 1, 1-5), besides giving the total number of seventy souls, enumerate the twelve tribes by name? And further, why seventy?' R. Simeon replied: 'In order to bring out the contrast between the one nation and the seventy nations of the Gentiles in the world. What is more,' he went on, 'the principalities that preside over the seventy nations issue from twelve axes that stretch out to all points of the compass. This is the significance of the words, "He set the bounds of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel" (Deut. XXXII, 8), and "For I have spread you abroad as the four winds of heaven" (Zech. II, 6): as the world cannot be without the four cardinal points, so cannot the nations be without Israel.' NOW THERE AROSE UP A NEW KING OVER EGYPT. R. Abba cited here the verse: Blessed are ye who sow above all waters, that send forth the feet of the ox and the ass (Isa. XXXII, 20). He said: 'Blessed are the children of Israel whom God hath chosen above all nations and brought near to Himself, as it is written, "The Lord hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto himself" (Deut. XIV, 2), and again, "For the Lord's portion is his people: Jacob is the lot of his inheritance" (Ibid. XXXII, 9). Israel cleaves to the Holy One, blessed be He, as it says "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 6a

to-day" (Ibid. IV, 4). They are worthy, in His sight, because they "sow above ('al) all waters", that is to say, they sow "according to righteousness" (Hos. x, 12), for of him who sows according to righteousness it is said: "For thy mercy is great above ('al) the heavens" (Ps. CVIII, 5). "Above the heavens" is identical with "above all waters", and refers to the world to come, and Israel sow a seed which is above all waters. The Book of R. Yeba the Elder remarks as follows: It is written "The

matter is by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones" (Dan. IV, 14). All the judgements passed upon the world, and all decrees and decisions are stored in a certain palace, where seventy-two members of Sanhedrin deliberate upon them. The palace is called "the Palace of Acquittal", because the judges there lay stress on whatever can be pleaded in favour of the accused. Not so the "other side", where there is a place called "Accusation", because in that abode of the Serpent, the "Wife of whoredom", every effort is made to procure the condemnation of humanity, and to prejudice the servant in the eyes of the Master. Symbolically, the former is represented by "sweet, clear water"; the latter by "bitter water that causes the curse" (Num. v, 18). The decision concerning children, life, and livelihood, however, is not entrusted either to the "Temple of Acquittal" or to that of "Accusation" (being dependent on mazzal). Israel therefore, "sow above all waters", since their seed is established above. Further, they send away "the feet of the ox and the ass", i.e. the evil haps which are symbolized by the union of the ox and the ass (v. Zohar, Gen., 162b), and cleave to the "good side" of the supernal holy beings..

'It says in the Book of R. Hamnuna the Elder, in connection with the words, "Now there arose a new king over Egypt", that all the nations of the world and all their kings become powerful only on account of Israel. Egypt, for instance, did not rule over the whole world before Israel settled there. The same is true of Babylon, as well as of Edom (Rome). Before that all these nations were utterly insignificant and contemptible: Egypt is described as a "house of slaves" (Ex. xx, 2), Babylon as "a people who was not" (Isa. xx, 11-13), and of Edom it says, "Behold, I have made thee small among the nations, thou art greatly despised" (Obad. 1, 2). It was entirely due to Israel that they became great. As soon as Israel was subjected to any of these nations, it immediately became all-powerful, since Israel singly are on a par with all the rest of the world. So when Israel went down to Egypt, straightway that country rose to supreme power. And this is the meaning of "Now there arose a new king", i.e. the supernal chieftain of Egypt rose up in strength and gained predominance over the chieftains of the other nations.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 6b

Note: The first three lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.] Then the words were fulfilled: "For three things the earth is disquieted... for a servant when he reigneth..." (Prox. xxx, 21).

R. Hiya said: 'Thirty days before a nation rises to power or before its downfall in this world, the event is proclaimed in the other world. Sometimes it is revealed through the mouths of little children, sometimes through simple folk, and sometimes through a bird. These proclaim it in the world, and yet no one notices them. If, however, a nation is deserving, the impending calamity is revealed to the righteous leaders of the people, in order that they may call the people to repent and return to the Lord while there is yet time.'

As R. Eleazar was sitting one day at the gate of

Lydda along with R. Abba, R. Judah, and R. Jose, R. Jose said: 'Listen, and I will tell you the sights which I have seen this morning. I rose early and beheld a bird which flew up three times and down once, exclaiming: "Ye celestials, ye angels of the higher sphere! In these days three heavenly Chieftains are raising up rulers on the earth. One is dislodged from his throne and made to pass through the Fiery Stream. He and his power are annihilated. But three mighty pillars of great height still stand upon the world." I threw a stone at the bird and cried: "Bird, bird! Tell me, who are the three who remain upright and the one whose power is taken from him?" He threw down to me three feathers from his right wing and one from his left wing. I know not what it all portends.' R. Eleazar took from R. Jose the feathers, smelt them, and lo, blood issued from his nostrils. Said he: 'Verily, three great rulers are now at Rome, and are about to bring evil upon Israel through the Romans.' Then he took the feather of the left wing, smelt it, and behold, black fire burst from it. He said: 'The power of the Egyptians is coming to an end; a Roman king is about to pass through the whole land of Egypt, appoint governors over it, and destroy buildings and erect new ones.' Then he threw the feathers on to the ground, and the three which were from the right wing fell on that which was from the left wing. As they were thus sitting, a young child passed by and recited the verse: "A burden concerning Egypt! Behold, the Lord rideth upon a swift cloud, and shall come into Egypt" (Isa. XIX, 1). A second child passed by and declaimed: "And the land of Egypt shall be desolate" (Ezek. XXIX, 9). A third child passed by and recited: "Make thee instruments of captivity, O daughter of Egypt!" (Jer. XLVI, 19). Then they saw that the feather of the left wing was burning, but not the three feathers of the right wing. Said R. Eleazar: 'These two incidents, that of the bird and that of the children, are in truth but one-and they convey a prophecy from above. The Holy One, blessed be He, desired to reveal to us His hidden plans, as it is written, "Behold, the Lord will do nothing without revealing his secret to his servants the prophets" (Amos. III, 7). And the wise are greater than prophets, for on the prophets the holy spirit rests intermittently, but the wise He never leaves, as, although they know what is above and what is below, they keep it secret.' Said R. Jose: 'There are many wise, but the wisdom of R. Eleazar exceeds all.' Said R. Abba: 'If it were not for the sages the sons of men would comprehend neither God's Torah nor His commandments, and the spirit of man would not differ from the spirit of the beasts.' R. Isaac said: 'When the Holy One is about to chastise a nation He chastises first its celestial representative, as it is written, "The Lord shall punish the host of heaven in heaven and the kings of the earth upon the earth" (Isa. XXIV, 21). And what does the punishment consist in? He has to pass through the Fiery Stream, and then his power vanishes. Straightway it is proclaimed above.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 7a

and the proclamation resounds in all the heavens and reaches the ears of those who have dominion over this world. From them it issues and traverses the world, until it reaches birds and little children and simpleminded folk.' NOW THERE AROSE A NEW KING OVER EGYPT. According to R. Hiya he was really a new king, but according to R. Jose it was the

same Pharaoh, only he made “new” decrees against Israel, forgetting all the benefits bestowed upon him by Joseph, as if “he did not know him”..

R. Jose and R. Judah were once studying with R. Simeon. Said R. Judah: ‘We have been taught that the expression “arose” suggests that Pharaoh “rose” on his own accord, viz. that he was not in the line of Egyptian kings, and was, in fact, not worthy to be king; he “rose” only because he was rich.’ Said R. Simeon: ‘Exactly as was the case with Ahasuerus, who also was not fitted for the kingship, but obtained it through his wealth.’ R. Eleazar, R. Abba, and R. Jose were once walking from Tiberias to Sepphoris’ On the way they met a Jew who started a conversation by quoting: “A burden upon Egypt. Behold, the Lord rideth upon a swift cloud and cometh into Egypt, and the godlings of Egypt shall flee from his presence” (Isa. XIX, 1). ‘Mark this,’ he said. ‘All the kings and all the nations of the world are as nothing before the Holy One, blessed be He (Dan. IV, 32). He only has to decide a thing and it is done. What, then, is the significance of the expression “cometh into Egypt”? Did He have to “come”? Yea, verily, He “came” for the sake of the Matrona (Shekinah), to take Her, as it were, by the hand and raise Her in glory, as He will also do when Israel’s captivity in Edom (Rome) Will come to an end.’ R. Jose remarked: ‘If it was for the sake of the Matrona, why did He not “come” to Babylon, where the Shekinah was also in exile with Israel?’ To this the Jew replied that according to tradition the reason why the Holy One did not reveal Himself fully by signs and wonders in Babylon was because the Israelites took to themselves foreign wives and profaned the sign of the holy Covenant. In Egypt, however, it was different: they entered it as pure sons of Israel, and left it as such. When the Edomitic exile comes to an end He shall manifest His glory in fulness and raise up His Spouse from the dust, saying to her: “Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem, loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion” (Isa. LII, 2). Who shall then stand against Him? It is written “And the godlings of Egypt shall flee from His presence.” The “godlings” are not merely idols made of stone and wood, but celestial principalities and terrestrial divinities. Indeed, wherever Israel is in exile the Holy One watches them and demands an account from those peoples and their supernal representatives. Mark what is written! “Thus says the Lord, my people went down at the first to Egypt to sojourn there, and Assyria oppressed them for nothing” (Ibid. v. 4). The Holy One had a grave complaint against Assyria. “Behold what Assyria has done to me! Egypt I punished severely, although she treated my people with hospitality when they came to sojourn there, assigning to them the fat of the land, the land of Goshen; and even later, though they oppressed them, they did not take away the land from them nor anything belonging to them” (cf. Ex. IX, 6). But Assyria “oppressed them for nothing”: they dragged

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 7b

them to the other end of the earth and took their country away from them.” Now if Egypt was punished, notwithstanding the kindness with which she treated Israel, especially at first, it can certainly be expected that Assyria and Edom, and, in fact, all the nations who

have maltreated Israel, will receive their punishment from the Holy One, when He will manifest the glory of His Name to them, as it is written, “Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself, and I will be known among many nations” (Ezek. XXXVIII, 23).

R. Simeon lifted up his hands and wept. ‘Alas,’ he said, ‘for him who will live at that time! Yet happy he who will live at that time! When the Holy One comes to visit the “Hind” (Israel), he will examine who it is that remains loyal to her at that time, and then woe to him who shall not be found worthy, and of whom it shall be said, “I looked and there was none to help” (Isa. LXII, 23). Many sufferings shall then befall Israel. But happy he who will be found faithful at that time! For he shall see the joy-giving light of the King. Concerning that time it is proclaimed: “I will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried” (Zech. XIII, 9). Then shall pangs and travail overtake Israel, and all nations and their kings shall furiously rage together and take counsel against her. Thereupon a pillar of fire will be suspended from heaven to earth for forty days, visible to all nations. Then the Messiah will arise from the Garden of Eden, from that place which is called “The Bird’s Nest”. He will arise in the land of Galilee, and on that day the whole world shall be shaken and all the children of men shall seek refuge in caves and rocky places. Concerning that time it is written: “And they shall go into the holes of the rocks and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the Lord and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth” (Isa. II, 19). “The glory of his majesty” refers to the Messiah when he shall reveal himself in the land of Galilee; for in this part of the Holy Land the desolation first began, and therefore he will manifest himself there first, and from there begin to war against the world. After the forty days, during which the pillar shall have stood between heaven and earth before the eyes of the whole world, and the Messiah shall have manifested himself, a star shall come forth from the East variegated in hue and shining brilliantly, and seven other stars shall surround it, and make war on it from all sides, three times a day for seventy days, before the eyes of the whole world. The one star shall fight against the seven with rays of fire flashing on every side, and it shall smite them until they are extinguished, evening after evening. But in the day they will appear again and fight before the eyes of the whole world, seventy days long. After the seventy days the one star shall vanish. Also the Messiah shall be hidden for twelve months in the pillar of fire, which shall return again, although it shall not be visible. After the twelve months the Messiah will be carried up to heaven in that pillar of fire and receive there power and dominion and the royal crown. When he descends, the pillar of fire will again be visible to the eyes of the world, and the Messiah will reveal himself, and mighty nations will gather round him, and he shall declare war against all the world. At that time the Holy One shall show forth his power before all the nations of the earth, and the Messiah shall be manifested throughout the whole universe, and all the kings will unite to fight against him, and even in Israel there will be found some wicked ones who shall join them in the fight against the Messiah. Then there will be darkness over all the world, and for fifteen days shall it continue, and many in Israel shall perish in that darkness. Concerning this

darkness it is written: "Behold, darkness covers the earth and gross darkness the peoples" (Isa. LX, 2).'

R. Simeon then discoursed on the verse:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 8a

"If a bird's nest chance to be before thee in the way in any tree, or on the ground, young ones or eggs, and the dam sitting upon the young... thou shalt in no wise let the dam go" (Deut. XXII, 6-7). 'This passage', he said, 'we interpret as an esoteric commandment in the Law, containing mysteries of doctrine, paths and ways known to the Fellowship and belonging to the thirty-two paths of the Torah.' Then, turning to R. Eleazar, his son, he said: 'At the time when the Messiah shall arise, there will be great wonders in the world. See now, in the lower Paradise there is a secret and unknown spot, brodered with many colours, in which a thousand palaces of longing are concealed. No one may enter it, except the Messiah, whose abode is in Paradise. The Garden is encompassed with multitudes of saints who look to the Messiah as their leader, along with many hosts and bands of the souls of the righteous there. On New Moons, festivals, and Sabbaths, he enters that place, in order to find joyous delight in those secret palaces. Behind those palaces there is another place, entirely hidden and undiscoverable. It is called "Eden", and no one may enter to behold it. Now the Messiah is hidden in its outskirts until a place is revealed to him which is called "the Bird's Nest". This is the place proclaimed by that Bird (the Shekinah) which flies about the Garden of Eden every day. In that place the effigies are woven of all the nations who band together against Israel. The Messiah enters that abode, lifts up his eyes and beholds the Fathers (Patriarchs) visiting the ruins of God's Sanctuary. He perceives mother Rachel, with tears upon her face; the Holy One, blessed be He, tries to comfort her, but she refuses to be comforted (Jer. XXXI, 14). Then the Messiah lifts up his voice and weeps, and the whole Garden of Eden quakes, and all the righteous and saints who are there break out in crying and lamentation with him. When the crying and weeping resound for the second time, the whole firmament above the Garden begins to shake, and the cry echoes from five hundred myriads of supernal hosts, until it reaches the highest Throne. Then the Holy One, blessed be He, beckons to that "Bird", which then enters its nest and comes to the Messiah, and flits about, uttering strange cries. Then from the holy Throne the Bird's Nest and the Messiah are summoned three times, and they both ascend into the heavenly places, and the Holy One swears to them to destroy the wicked kingdom (Rome) by the hand of the Messiah, to avenge Israel, and to give her all the good things which he has promised her. Then the Bird returns to her place. The Messiah, however, is hidden again in the same place as before.

'At the time when the Holy One shall arise to renew all worlds, and the letters of his Name shall shine in perfect union, the Yod with the He, and the He with the Vau, a mighty star will appear in the heavens of purple hue, which by day shall flame before the eyes of the whole world, filling the firmament with its light. And at that time shall a flame issue in the heavens from the north; and flame and star shall so face each other for

forty days, and all men will marvel and be afraid. And when forty days shall have passed, the star and the flame shall war together in the sight of all, and the flame shall spread across the skies from the north, striving to overcome the star, and the rulers and peoples of the earth shall behold it with terror, and there will be confusion among them. But the star will remove to the south and vanquish the flame, and the flame shall daily be diminished until it be no more seen. Then shall the star cleave for itself bright paths in twelve directions which shall remain luminous in the skies for the term of twelve days. After a further twelve days trembling will seize the world, and at midday the sun will be darkened as it was darkened on the day when the holy Temple was destroyed, so that heaven and earth shall not be seen. Then out of the midst of thunder and lightning shall a voice be heard, causing the earth to quake and many hosts and principalities to perish. On the same day when that voice is heard throughout the world, a flame of fire shall appear burning in Great Rome (Constantinople);.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 8b

it will consume many turrets and towers, and many are the great and mighty who shall perish then. All shall gather against her to destroy her, and no one will have hope to escape. From that day on, for twelve months, all the kings (of the world) will take counsel together and make many decrees to destroy Israel; and they shall prosper against him, as has been said. Blessed is he who shall live in that time, and blessed is he who shall not live in that time! And the whole world then will be in confusion. At the end of the twelve months the "sceptre of Judah", namely the Messiah, will arise, appearing from Paradise, and all the righteous will surround him and gird him with weapons of war on which are inscribed the letters of the Holy Name (Tetragrammaton). Then a voice will burst forth from the branches of the trees of Paradise: "Arise, O ye saints from above, and stand ye before the Messiah! For the time has come for the Hind to be united with her Spouse, and he must avenge her on the world and raise her from the dust". And all the saints from above will arise and gird the Messiah with weapons of war, Abraham at his right, Isaac at his left, Jacob in front of him, while Moses, the "faithful shepherd" of all these saints, shall dance at the head of them in Paradise. As soon as the Messiah has been installed by the saints in Paradise, he will enter again the place which is called "the Bird's Nest", there to behold the picture of the destruction of the Temple, and of all the saints who were done to death there. Then will he take from that place ten garments, the garments of holy zeal, and hide himself there for forty days, and no one shall be able to see him. At the end of those forty days a voice shall be heard from the highest throne calling the Bird's Nest and the Messiah who shall be hidden there. Thereupon he shall be carried aloft, and when the Holy One, blessed be He, shall behold the Messiah adorned with the garments of holy zeal and girded with weapons of war, he will take him and kiss him upon his brow. At that moment three hundred and ninety firmaments shall begin to shake. The Holy One shall command one of these firmaments, which has been kept in waiting since the six days of creation, to approach, and He shall take out from a certain temple in it a crown inscribed with

holy names. It was with this crown that the Holy One adorned Himself when the Israelites crossed the Red Sea and He avenged Himself on all the chariots of Pharaoh and his horsemen. With this same crown will He crown King Messiah. As soon as he is crowned, the Holy One will take him and kiss him as before. All the holy multitude and the whole holy army will surround him and will bestow upon him many wonderful gifts, and he will be adorned by them all. Then will he enter into one of the temples and behold there all the upper angels, who are called "the mourners of Zion" because they continually weep over the destruction of the Holy Temple. These angels shall give him a robe of deep red in order that he may commence his work of revenge. The Holy One will again hide him in the "Bird's Nest" and he will remain there for thirty days. After the thirty days he will again be decked with those adornments from above and from below, and many holy beings will surround him. The whole world then shall see a light extending from the firmament to the earth, and continuing for seven days, and they will be amazed and not comprehend: only the wise will understand, they who are adepts in the mystic lore, blessed is their portion. All through the seven days the Messiah shall be crowned on earth. Where shall this be? "By the way", to wit, Rachel's grave, which is on the cross-road. To mother Rachel he will give glad tidings and comfort her, and now she will let herself be comforted, and will rise and kiss him. The light will then move from that place and shall stand over Jericho, the city of trees, and the Messiah will be hidden in the light of the "Bird's Nest" for twelve months. After the twelve months that light will stand between heaven and earth in the land of Galilee, where Israel's captivity began, and there will he reveal himself from the light of the "Bird's Nest", and return to his place. On that day the whole earth will be shaken from one end.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 9a

to the other, and thus the whole world will know that the Messiah has revealed himself in the land of Galilee. And all who are diligent in the study of the Torah-and there shall be few such in the world-will gather round him. His army will gain in strength through the merit of little infants at school, symbolized by the word ephroah-"young bird" (cf. Deut. XXII, 6). And if such will not be found at that time it will be through the merit of the sucklings, "the eggs" (Ibid), "those that are weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts" (Isa. XXII, 9), for whose sake the Shekinah dwells in the midst of Israel in exile, as indeed there will be few sages at that time. This is the implication of the words "And the dam sitting upon the young, or upon the eggs", which, allegorically interpreted, means that it does not depend upon the Mother to free them from exile, but upon the Supreme King; for it is the young ones and the sucklings that will give strength to the Messiah, and then the Supernal Mother, which "sits upon them", will be stirred up towards Her Spouse. He will tarry for twelve months longer, and then he will appear and raise her from the dust: "I will raise up on that day the tabernacle of David that is fallen" (Amos IX, 11). On that day the Messiah will begin to gather the captives from one end of the world to the other: "If any of thine be driven out unto the utmost parts of heaven, from thence will the Lord thy God gather thee" (Deut. xxx, 4). From

that day on the Holy One will perform for Israel all the signs and wonders which He performed for them in Egypt: "As in the days of thy coming out of the land of Egypt, will I show unto him wonders" (Micah VII, 15).'

Then said R. Simeon: 'Eleazar, my son! Thou canst find all this in the mystery of the thirty-two paths of the Holy Name. Before these wonders have taken place in the world, the mystery of the Holy Name will not be manifested in perfection and love will not be awakened: "Ye daughters of Jerusalem, I adjure you by the gazelles and by the hinds of the field, that ye stir not up, nor awake the love until she pleases" (Cant II, 7). The "gazelles" (zebaath) symbolize the king, who is called Zebaoth; the "hinds" represent those other principalities and powers from below; "that ye stir not up, etc." refers to the "Right Hand" of the Holy One, called "Love"; "until she pleases", namely She (the Shekinah) who lies at present in the dust and in whom the King is well pleased. Blessed be he who will be found worthy to live at that time! Blessed will he be both in this world and in the world to come.'

R. Simeon then lifted up his hands in prayer to the Holy One, blessed be He. When he had finished his prayer, R. Eleazar his son and R. Abba seated themselves before him. As they were thus sitting they beheld the light of the day grow dim and a fiery flame sink in the Sea of Tiberias, and the whole place began mightily to tremble. Said R. Simeon: 'Verily, this is the time when the Holy One remembers His children and lets two drops fall into the great Sea. As they fall they meet the fiery ray and sink with it in the sea.' Then R. Simeon wept, and the disciples also. Said R. Simeon: 'Behold, I was moved a while ago to meditate on the mystery of the letters of the Holy Name, the mystery of His compassion over His children; but now it is fitting that I should reveal unto this generation something that no other man has been permitted to reveal. For the merit of this generation sustains the world until the Messiah shall appear.' He then bade R. Eleazar his son and R. Abba to stand up, and they did so. R. Simeon then wept a second time, and said: 'Alas! Who can endure to hear what I foresee! The exile will drag on; who shall be able to bear it?'

Then he also rose and spake thus: 'It is written, "O Lord our God, other lords beside thee dominated us, apart from thee do we make mention of thy Name" (Isa. XXVI, 13). This verse, apart from other interpretations, contains a profound doctrine of faith. Tetragrammaton Eloheanu (Lord our God) is the source and beginning of supreme mysteries indeed; it is the sphere whence emanate all the burning lights, and where the whole mystery of Faith is centred: this Name dominates all. However, "other lords beside thee dominated us"; the people of Israel, who is destined to be ruled only by this supreme Name, is ruled in exile by the "other side". Yea, "apart from thee (beka) do we make mention of thy name". The name "by thee" BeKa (=22) symbolizes the Holy Name comprising twenty-two letters, and this is the name by which the Community of Israel is always blessed, as, for instance, "to whom thou swarest by thine own self" (beka, Ex. XXII, 13); "in thee (beka) shall Israel be blessed" (Gen. XLVIII, 20); "for in thee (beka) I can run through the troops" (Ps. XVIII, 19). At the period when there is perfection, peace, and harmony,

the two names are not separated one from another, and it is forbidden

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 9b

to separate them even in thought and imagination; but now in exile we do separate them, the Matrona from Her Spouse, as She (Shekinah) lies in dust (in exile with Israel). "Apart from thee" being far away from Thee, and being ruled by other powers, "we make mention of thy name" in separation, thy Name being separated from the Name expressed by Beka. All this in the days of exile; for the first exile began during the first Temple, and lasted seventy years, during which time the Mother (the Shekinah) did not brood over Israel, and there was a separation between the Yod and the He, the Yod ascending higher and higher to infinity (En Sof), and the holy Temple above-corresponding to the Temple below-did not send forth living waters, its source being cut off. The seventy years of the first exile corresponded to the seven years which it took to build the first Temple (I K. VI, 38). However, far be it from us to think that during that time the kingdom of Babylon had power in the heavens over Israel. The fact is that as long as the Temple stood there was a bright light descending from the Supernal Mother, but as soon as it was destroyed, through Israel's sin, and the kingdom of Babylon got the upper hand, that light was covered up and darkness prevailed here below and the angels below ceased from giving out light, and then the power symbolized by the letter Yod of the Holy Name ascended into the upper regions, into the Infinite, and thus during the whole seventy years of exile Israel had no divine light to guide her, and, truly, that was the essence of the exile. When, however, Babylon's power was taken away from her and Israel returned to the Holy Land, a light did shine for her, but it was not as bright as before, being only the emanation of the lower He since the whole of Israel did not return to purity to be a "peculiar people" as before. Therefore, the emanation of the supernal Yod did not descend to illumine in the same measure as before, but only a little. Hence Israel were involved in many wars until "the darkness covered the earth" and the lower He was darkened and fell to the ground, and the upper source was removed as before, and the second Temple was destroyed and all its twelve tribes went into exile in the kingdom of Edom. The He also went into exile there, and therefore the exile was prolonged.

'A mystery of mysteries has been revealed to them that are wise of heart. The He of the second Temple is in exile with her twelve tribes and their hosts. Twelve tribes form a great number, and because the mystery of the He is in them, the exile lasts during this whole number. Ten tribes are a thousand years, two tribes are two hundred years. At the conclusion of the twelve tribes (twelve hundred years) there will be darkness over Israel, until the Vau shall arise at the time of sixty-six years after the "twelve tribes", that is after twelve hundred years of exile. And after the conclusion of the sixty-six years of the night-darkness, the words "And I shall remember my covenant with Jacob" (Lev. XXVI, 42) will begin to come to pass. From then the Holy One, blessed be He, shall begin to do signs and wonders,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 10a

as we have described. But over Israel those tribulations will come. After that King Messiah shall fight against the whole world, aided by the Right Hand of the Holy One. At the end of another sixty-six years the letters in the Holy Name shall be seen perfectly engraved above and below in manner due. After a further one hundred and thirty-two years He will begin "to take hold of the ends of the earth and shake off the wicked". The Holy Land will be purified, and the Holy One will raise the dead there and they shall rise in their hosts in the land of Galilee. At the end of a further hundred and forty-four years the remaining dead of Israel in other lands shall be raised, so that after altogether four hundred and eight years the world shall be re-inhabited and the evil principle (the "other side") driven out of it. Then the lower He (Shekinah) shall be filled from the upper spring (the highest Sephiroth), and be crowned and radiate in perfection until the Sabbath of the Lord arrives to gather souls in the joy of holiness throughout this whole seventh millennium. Then the holy spirits of the people of Israel at the fulness of time will be invested with new, holy bodies, and be called "Saints": "And it shall come to pass that he that is left in Zion and that remaineth in Jerusalem shall be called holy" (Isa. III, 4). These are the veiled mysteries.' [Tr. note: The above calculation of the Messianic era rests on the supposition that of the seven millenniums of the present aeon, the seventh is to be considered as the Cosmic Sabbath, the sixth as the time of the Messiah, the fifth as the last (Edomitic or Roman) exile. The beginning of this exile is, according to the Zohar, 3828 years after Creation, hence with those 1200 years of exile the fifth millennium is completed. Sixty-six years later i.e. 5066 years after Creation (1306 C.E.), the signs of Redemption begin. 198 years later, i.e. 5264 after Creation (1504 C.E.), follows the "first resurrection", the second 144 years later, i.e. 1648 C.E. In the year 2240 the apocalyptic Sabbath begins. Cf. also Zohar, Gen. II6b, Deut. 249a.] THERE AROSE UP A NEW KING. Said R. Jose: The Holy One creates each day new angels to be His emissaries to the world, as it is written, "He maketh his angels winds" (spirits) (Ps. CIV. 4). It does not say "He made", but "He maketh", because He makes them daily. At that time He appointed one to represent Egypt: "a new king", i.e. a new supernal representative; "who knew not Joseph", because Egypt's angel emanated from the sphere of Separation: since of the four "heads" into which the river that went out of Eden parted (Gen. II, 10), the first was the stream of Egypt (the Nile above, corresponding to the Nile below); and therefore "he knew not Joseph", who represents the sphere where is the abode of Unity, and which is called "Righteous".'

R. Eleazar and R. Jose once set forth upon a journey at dawn. Suddenly they beheld two stars which shot across the sky from either side. Said R. Eleazar: 'The time is now come when the morning stars do praise their Master: shooting forth in awe across the heavens, they prepare to glorify His Name in song, as it is written: "When the morning stars sing together" (Job XXXVIII, 7). Verily they sing in perfect unison, and in harmony do the sons of God shout for joy.' He then discoursed on the verse: To the musician. Upon the hind of the morning. A song of David (Ps. XXII, I).

'When the face of the east lightens', he said, 'and the darkness of the night is dispersed, an angel appears in the east, and from the south he draws a thread of light, and then the sun comes forth and, throwing open the casements of the sky, illumines the world. Then the "hind of the morning" comes, a red light enters into the darkness and it becomes day. And the light of the day draws that "hind" into itself. Now it is concerning that "hind" when it separates itself from the day, after it had been with it, that David sang. And the following verse-

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 10b

"My God (Eli), my God, why hast thou forsaken me?"- suggests the cry over the "hind (ayala) of the morning", when she separates herself from the day.'

As they were thus walking, the day lightened and the time for prayer arrived. Said R. Eleazar: 'Let us pray, and then continue our journey.' They sat down and prayed, and then resumed their walk. On the way, R. Eleazar started to expound the following verse: There is a vanity (hebel, lit. breath) which is done upon the earth, that there be righteous men unto whom it happeneth according to the work of the wicked; again there are wicked men, to whom it happeneth according to the work of the righteous: I said that this also is vanity (Eccl. VIII, 14). 'This verse', he said, 'has been esoterically explained as follows. King Solomon, in this book, treated of seven "vanities" (habalim, lit. breaths) upon which the world stands, namely the seven pillars[Tr. note: ie.Sefiroth.] which sustain the world in correspondence with the seven firmaments, which are called respectively Vilon, Rakia, Shehakim, Zebul, Ma'on, Machon, Araboth. It was concerning them that Solomon said: "Vanity of vanities, said Koheleth, all is vanity" (Ibid. 1, 1). As there are seven firmaments, with others cleaving to them and issuing from them, so there are seven habalim and others emanating from these, and Solomon in his wisdom referred to them all to convey the following esoteric lesson. There is a certain "breath"[Tr. note: Malkuth]. emanating from those supernal "breaths" upon which the world is sustained, closely connected with the earth and fed from it. It depends, in fact, on the souls of the righteous who have been gathered from the earth while still pure before they have committed any sin, and while their savour is still sweet: for instance, Enoch, of whom it is written, "And he was not, for God took him" (Gen. v, 24). God took him away before his time and had delight in him. And so it is with all the righteous, for we have been taught that the righteous are removed from this world before their time for one of two reasons: one for the sins of their generation, for when there is much sin in the world the righteous are penalized for its guilt; the second is that when the Holy One, blessed be He, is aware that they would commit a sin if they lived longer, He removes them before their time. And this is the meaning of the verse quoted above: "there are righteous to whom it happeneth according to the work of the wicked", as was the case with R. Akiba and his colleagues; the judgement from above came upon them, as if they had committed the sins and actions of the wicked. On the other hand, "there are wicked men to whom it happeneth according to the work of the righteous": they live in peace and comfort in this world, and the judgement does not come upon them, as if

they performed the deeds of the righteous. Why so? Because the Holy One foresees that either they are about to repent, or that they will bring forth virtuous offspring, as, for instance, Terah, who brought forth Abraham, and Ahaz, who brought forth Hezekiah. Thus, as we have said, there is a "breath" (hebel) on one side as well as on the other, a "breath is made upon the earth" in order that the world may be sustained.

'Another interpretation of the verse is as follows. "Vanity is done upon the earth", for instance, when a "work of the wicked", the temptation to commit some sin, approaches the righteous and they remain steadfast in the fear of their Lord and refuse to defile themselves, like so many of whom we know who did the will of their Master and sinned not. On the other hand, "it happeneth that wicked men do the works of the righteous" on certain occasions, as, for instance, the Jew who belonged to a gang of robbers on a mountain, and who, whenever he saw a fellow Jew pass, warned him of the danger, so that R. Akiba applied to him the words of the second half of this verse; or the man

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 11a

in the neighbourhood of R. Hiya who once seized a woman with the intention of violating her, but who, when she said to him "Honour thy Master and do not sin with me", mastered his passion and let her go. The Holy One has made both righteous and wicked, and, as He is glorified in this world by the works of the righteous, so is He glorified by the wicked when they happen to do a good deed: "He hath made everything beautiful in his time" (Eccl. III, 11). But woe to the sinner who makes himself wicked and cleaves obstinately to his sin!

R. Eleazar further said: 'King Solomon, when wisdom was given to him, saw all "in the time of his hebel", i.e. in the time when the moon (the Holy Spirit) ruled. He saw the Righteous (Zaddik), the Pillar of the world, "perishing in his righteousness" in the time of the exile, for when Israel is in exile He is with them, and the supernal blessings do not reach Him. Thus "there is a righteous that perisheth in his righteousness" (Eccl. VII, 15). On the other hand, he saw "a wicked person that prolongeth his life in his evil" (Ibid.), namely Samael, who causes Edom (Rome) to continue in her prosperity through the help of his "Evil", his spouse, the loathsome Serpent. And the same applies to the prosperity of all the other kingdoms of this world; until the time when the Holy One, blessed be He, shall raise up from the dust "the booth of David that is fallen" (Amos IX, 11). AND THERE WENT A MAN OF THE HOUSE OF LEVI. R. Jose discoursed here on the verse: "My beloved is gone down into his garden, to the beds of spices" (S.S. VI, 2). He said: 'The words "Into his garden" refer to the Community of Israel. She is a "bed of spices" filled with the savour of the world to come. In the hour when the Holy One descends into this Garden, the souls of all the righteous who are crowned there emit their perfume, as it says, "How much better is the smell of thy ointments than all spices" (S.S. IV, 10). These are they of whom R. Isaac has said: "All the souls of the righteous who have lived

in this world, and all the souls who shall some day descend to dwell there, all these dwell in the earthly Garden (Paradise) in that shape which was or shall be their likeness on earth." This is a mystery which has been transmitted to the wise. The spirit which enters into the children of men, and which emanates from the Female (Malkuth) makes an impression after the fashion of a seal. That is to say, the form of the human body in this world is projected outwards, and takes the impress of the spirit from within. So when the spirit separates itself from the body it returns to the earthly Garden in the actual form and pattern of the body that was its garment during its sojourn in this world, and upon which it acted like a seal. Hence it says, "Set me as a seal" (Ibid. VIII, 6): as the seal presses from within and the mark of it appears outwards, so the spirit acts upon the body. But when it separates itself from the body and returns to the terrestrial Paradise, the aether there causes this impress in turn to project itself outwards, so that the spirit receives an outward shape in the likeness of the body in this world. The over-soul (neshamah), however, which issues from the Tree of Life (Tifereth), is fashioned there above in such a manner that it may ascend into the "Bundle of Life", in order to delight in the beauty of the Lord; as it says, "To behold the beauty of the Lord and to visit his temple" (Ps. XXVII, 4).¹ AND THERE WENT A MAN OF THE HOUSE OF LEVI. This refers to Gabriel, who is called "the Man" (Dan. IX, 2). "Of the house of Levi" is the Community of Israel, which proceeds from the "Left Side". "And took the daughter of Levi", namely the over-soul (neshamah); for we have been taught that in the hour when the body of a righteous one is born into the world,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 11b

the Holy One summons Gabriel, who takes from Paradise the soul ordained for that saint and commands her to descend into the body of him who is to be born in this world; and he, Gabriel, is thus appointed as guardian to that soul. But, it may be said, do we not know that the angel appointed to guard the spirits is called "Laila" (night)? How, then, can you say it is Gabriel? The answer is that both names are correct; for Gabriel comes from the "Left Side", and anyone who comes from that side bears also the other name, which signifies "night".

According to another explanation, "a man" here is Amram, and "the daughter of Levi" is Jochebed. A heavenly voice bade him unite himself with her, as through the son which should be born of them the time of the redemption of Israel would be brought near. And the Holy One came to his aid, for, as we have been taught, the Shekinah reposed upon the nuptial bed and the will of the two in their union was one with the will of the Shekinah. Therefore the Shekinah ceased not to abide with the fruit of that union. It is written: "Sanctify yourselves and be holy" (Lev. XI, 44), which signifies that when a person so sanctifies himself here below the Holy One adds His sanctification from above. As the two strove to unite themselves also with the Shekinah, She on her side united Herself with them in their union. Said R. Isaac: 'Blessed are those righteous ones whose whole desire is ever to be united with the Holy One in completeness and perfection! Inasmuch as they

cleave unto Him will He also cleave unto them for ever and ever. Woe unto the wicked, whose desire and attachment is turned away from Him! Not only do they keep aloof from Him, dwelling in separation, but they even unite themselves to that "other side". Thus Amram, who was faithful to the Holy One, became the father of Moses-him whom the Holy One never deserted, and with whom the Shekinah was ever united, blessed be he!' AND THE WOMAN CONCEIVED AND BARE A SON AND SHE SAW HIM THAT HE WAS GOOD. What mean the words "that he was good"? Said R. Hiya: 'She saw that even at his birth he was marked with the sign of the covenant, for the word "good" contains an allusion to the covenant, as it is written, "Say of the righteous one that he is good" (Isa. III, 10)' R. Jose said: 'She saw the light of the Shekinah playing round him: for when he was born this light filled the whole house, the word "good" here having the same reference as in the verse "and God saw the light that it was good" (Gen. I, 4).' AND SHE HID HIM THREE MONTHS. What does this signify? R. Judah says: 'This is a hint that Moses was not destined to perceive the Supernal Light until three months (after the Exodus) had passed, as it says "in the third month after the children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they into the wilderness of Sinai" (Ex. XIX, 1). Only then was the Torah transmitted through him, and the Shekinah revealed, resting on him before the eyes of all, as it says, "and Moses went up unto God, and the Lord called him out of the mountain" (Ibid. v, 3).' AND WHEN SHE COULD NO LONGER HIDE HIM. During all that time his communing with the Holy One, blessed be He, was not manifest; but afterwards, "Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice" (Ex. XIX, 19). SHE TOOK FOR HIM AN ARK OF BULRUSHES: thereby prefiguring the Ark that contains the "Tables of the Covenant: AND DAUBED IT WITH SLIME AND WITH PITCH, prefiguring again the Ark which was overlaid within and without. R. Judah said that this was symbolic of the Torah in which the Holy One, blessed be He, laid down stringent rules[Tr. note: A play on the word homer, which means both 'slime, and (as a legal term) 'stringency,] in the form of precepts, positive and negative. AND SHE PUT THE CHILD THEREIN. This prefigures Israel, of whom it is written: "When Israel was a child then I loved him (Hos. XI, 1): AND LAID IT IN THE FLAGS (soph), alluding to the precepts of the Torah, which did not come into force until they entered the Land at the end (soph) of forty years. BY THE BRINK (s phath=lip) of the river, alluding to the instruction issuing from the lips of the teachers of law and statute.

The following is an alternative explanation of these verses: AND TOOK TO WIFE A DAUGHTER OF LEVI. This signifies the place which is filled with the brightness of moonlight [Note: The last three lines of the Hebrew text on this page are not translated.] (Malkuth).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 12a

[Note: The first two lines of the Hebrew text on this page are not translated.] AND SHE HID HIM THREE MONTHS. These are the three months in which the world is under the aegis of stern Justice, namely

Tammuz, Ab, and Tebet. And what mean these words? They signify that before descending into this world Moses dwelt already in the upper regions, and therefore was united with the Shekinah from the moment of his birth. R. Simeon concluded from this that the spirits of the righteous exist in heaven before they come down into this world. AND WHEN SHE COULD NO LONGER HIDE HIM SHE TOOK FOR HIM AN ARK OF BULRUSHES. She guarded him with signs against the power of the fishes that swim in the ocean—that is, the evil spirits—"wherein are things creeping innumerable" (Ps. CIV, 25). She protected him from such harm by a precious covering composed of two colours, black and white (grace and might). She laid the child between these hues, in order that he might become familiar with them, and later ascend between them to receive the Torah. AND THE DAUGHTER OF PHARAOH CAME DOWN TO BATHE IN THE RIVER. She was the symbol of the power emanating from the "left side", which betokens severity; she thus bathed in the "river" and not in the "sea". AND HER MAIDENS WALKED ALONG BY THE RIVERSIDE: signifying all the legions that proceed from that side. AND SHE OPENED IT AND SHE SAW IT (vathir'ehu), THE CHILD. Why say "she saw it, the child" instead of simply "she saw the child"? Said R. Simeon: 'There is not a word in the Torah that does not contain sublime and precious mystical teachings. In regard to this passage, we have learned that the impress of the King and the Matrona was discernible in the child, an impress symbolized by the letters Vau and He. She thus straightway "had compassion on him". So far, the whole passage has allusions to heavenly matters; from this point the text concerns earthly occurrences, with the exception of the verse following. AND HIS SISTER STOOD AFAR OFF. Whose sister? The sister of Him Who calls the Community of Israel "My sister", in the verse "Open to me, my sister, my love!" (Cant. v, 2). "Afar off"—as it is written: "From far off hath the Lord appeared unto me" (Jer. XXXI, 2). From which it is evident that all the righteous are known by all in those higher regions before their souls descend into this world; how much more, then, Moses. We also learn from this that the souls of the righteous emanate from an upper region, as we have already stated. But there is also an esoteric lesson connected with it, namely, that the soul has a father and a mother, as the body has a father and a mother in this world. In fact, all things above and below proceed from Male and Female, as we have already derived from the words "Let the earth bring forth a living soul" (Gen. I, 24). "The earth" symbolizes the community of Israel; "a living soul"—the soul of the first, the supernal Man, as already explained.' Then came R. Abba to him, kissed him, and said: 'Verily, thou hast spoken well! It is so indeed. Blessed is Moses, the faithful Shepherd, more faithful than all the other prophets of the world.' There is still another interpretation of "and his sister stood afar off", namely, as symbolizing "Wisdom" —"say to wisdom, thou art my sister" (Prov. VII, 4).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 12b

Said R. Isaac: 'The attribute of Justice has never departed from the world, for whenever Israel sinned, stern Justice stood there as her accuser, and then "his sister (wisdom) stood afar off", without interfering. "And

the daughter of Pharaoh came down to bathe in the river": i.e. as soon as Israel separates herself from the Torah, the attribute of Justice comes forth to "bathe" in the blood of Israel, because of the neglect of the Torah. "And her maidens walked along by the river's side": these are the nations who persecute Israel, because of her neglect of the Torah.' Said R. Judah: 'Man's fate depends in the last resort upon repentance and prayer, and especially prayer with tears; for there is no gate which tears cannot penetrate. It is written here: "And she opened it and saw the child", which, being interpreted, means that the Shekinah, who always hovers over Israel like a mother over her children, and pleads in her defence against her accuser, opened it "and saw the child, and behold the babe wept". The Shekinah saw the "child", the people of Israel, which is called "the child of delight" (Jer. XXXI, 20), in remorseful tears, pleading with the Holy One like a child with his father, and she "had compassion on him". She said: "This is one of the Hebrews' children", that is to say, of the Hebrews, who are gentle and tender-hearted, and not of the Gentiles, who are stiff-necked and stubborn of heart; they, the Hebrews, are tender-hearted and eager to return to their heavenly Master. "And she called the child's mother", who wept, as it is written: "In Rama was there a voice heard, lamentation, and weeping, and great mourning, Rachel weeping for her children, and would not be comforted" (Jer. XXXI, 14). The child wept, and the mother wept.' R. Judah continued: 'Concerning the future it says: "They will come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them." For the sake of the weeping of Rachel, the child's mother, will they come and be gathered in from captivity.' R. Isaac said: 'The redemption of Israel depends only on weeping: when the effect of the tears of Esau, which he shed before his father on account of the birthright (Gen. XXVII, 38) shall have been exhausted, redemption will begin for Israel.' Said R. Jose: 'Esau's weeping brought Israel into captivity, and when their force is exhausted, Israel, through their tears, shall be delivered from him.' AND HE SAW AN EGYPTIAN SMITING A HEBREW '... AND HE LOOKED HERE AND THERE (koh wa-koh). He looked for the fifty letters by which the Israelites proclaim the Divine Unity twice daily, but found no semblance of them expressed in the countenance of that man. Said R. Abba: 'He looked "here" to see whether there were any good works wrought by the man, and "there" to see whether a good son would issue from him. "And he saw that there was no man"; he saw through the holy spirit that no such good son would ever descend from him, for he was aware, as R. Abba has said, that there are many wicked parents who beget more good sons than righteous parents, and that a good son born of wicked parents is of special excellence, being pure out of impure, light out of darkness, wisdom out of folly. The word "saw" here indicates discernment through the holy spirit, and therefore he did not shrink from killing the Egyptian.

Now the Holy One, blessed be He, so ordered matters that Moses might come to the same well to which Jacob came. It says here: "And he sat down by ('al, lit. upon) a well" (Ibid. v, 15), and of Jacob it says, "And he looked, and behold, a well" (Gen. XIX, 2). This shows that although they belonged to the same degree (of sanctity), Moses in this ascended higher than

Jacob.' As R. Jose and R. Isaac were once walking together, the former said: 'Was the well which both Jacob and Moses saw the same one which was digged by Abraham and Isaac?' Said R. Isaac: 'No! This well was created when the world was created, and its mouth was formed on the eve of the Sabbath of Creation, in the twilight.' [Tr. note: Cf. Pirke Aboth, v, 9.] That was the well which Jacob and Moses saw.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 13a

NOW THE PRIEST OF MIDIAN HAD SEVEN DAUGHTERS Said R. Judah: 'If the well from which they drew the water was Jacob's well, how were Jethro's daughters able to draw water from it without difficulty? Was there not "upon the well's mouth a great stone" which had to be "rolled away" by the shepherds (Gen. XXIX, 2-3)?' Said R. Hiya: 'Jacob removed that stone from the well and did not put it back. From that time the water gushed forth, and there was no stone on the well, and thus Jethro's daughters were able to draw from it.'

R. Eleazar and R. Abba were once walking from Tiberias to Sipporis. On the way a Jew joined them. Said R. Eleazar: 'Let each one of us expound some saying of the Torah!' He himself started by quoting the sentence: "Then said he unto me, prophesy unto the spirit, prophesy, son of man, and say to the spirit" (Ezek. XXXVII, 9). 'It may be asked, how could Ezekiel prophesy concerning the spirit, seeing that it is written: "No man hath power over the spirit to retain the spirit" (Eccl. VIII, 8)? Verily, man has no power over the spirit, but the Holy One has power over all things, and it was by His command that Ezekiel was prophesying. Besides, the spirit was embodied in material form in this world, and therefore he prophesied concerning it: "Come from the four winds, O spirit!"; namely from the region where it resides in the four foundations of the world.'

On hearing this the Jew jumped up. 'What is the matter?' asked R. Eleazar. The Jew replied: 'I see something.' 'And what is it?' He answered: 'If the spirit of man is endowed in Paradise with the form of the body which it is to assume in this world, should it not have been said: "Come from Paradise, O spirit!" and not "from the four winds"?' R. Eleazar replied: 'Before descending into this world the spirit ascends from the earthly Paradise to the Throne which stands on four pillars. There it draws its being from that Throne of the King, and only then does it descend to this world. As the body is collected from the four regions of the world, so is the spirit of man taken from the four pillars upon which the Throne is established.' 'The reason why I ran in front of you,' said the man, 'was because I beheld something from that side. One day I was walking in the desert and I beheld a tree, beautiful to look upon, and beneath it a cavern. I approached it and found that from the cavern issued a profusion of sweet odours. I plucked up courage and entered the cavern. I descended a number of steps which brought me to a place where there were many trees, and savours of overpowering sweetness. There I saw a man who held a sceptre in his hand, standing at a place where the trees parted. When he saw me he was astonished and came up to me. "Who art thou, and what doest thou

here?" he demanded. I was frightened exceedingly and said: "Sir, I am one of the Fellowship. I noticed this place in the desert, and so I entered." Said he: "As thou art one of the Fellowship, take this bundle of writings and give it to the members of the Fellowship, to those who know the mystery of the spirits of the righteous ones." He then struck

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 13b

me with the sceptre, and I fell asleep. In my sleep I saw crowds upon crowds arriving at that place, and the man touched them with the sceptre saying: "Take the path of the trees!" After going a little way they flew, in the air and I did not know to where. I also heard voices of great multitudes and knew not who they were. When I awoke I saw nothing, and I was in fear and trembling. Then I beheld the man again. He asked me: "Hast thou seen anything?" I told him what I had seen in my sleep. Said he: "These were the spirits of the righteous who go by that way in order to reach Paradise, and what thou hast heard are the voices of those who stand in the Garden in the likeness they are to wear in this world, expressing their great joy at the arrival of the spirits of the righteous who enter there. As the body is formed in this world from the combination of the four elements, so is the spirit formed in the Garden from the combination of the four winds that are in the Garden, and the spirit is enveloped there in the impress of the body's shape, and if it were not for the four winds, which are the airs of the Garden, the spirit would not have been clothed at all. These four winds are bound up with one another, and the spirit is shaped from them, as the body is shaped from the four elements. Therefore it says: 'Come from the four winds, O spirit!', namely from the four winds of Paradise from which thou art shaped. And now take this bundle of writings, and go thy way, and give it to the Fellowship." 'The Jew here finished, and R. Eleazar and his companions drew near and kissed him on his head. Said R. Eleazar: 'Blessed be the Merciful One Who sent thee here! Verily this is the true explanation of the subject, and God put that verse into my mouth.' Then the Jew gave them the bundle of writings. AS soon as R. Eleazar took it and opened it, a fiery vapour burst forth and enveloped him. He saw some things in it, and then the writing flew away from his hand. Then R. Eleazar wept, and said: 'Who can abide in the storehouse of the King? "Lord, who shall abide in thy tabernacle? Who shall dwell in thy holy hill?" (Ps. xv, 2). Blessed be the way and the hour in which this happened to me!' This incident made R. Eleazar glad for many days, but he said nothing to his colleagues. As they were proceeding, they passed a well from which they drank. Said R. Eleazar: 'Blessed are the righteous! Jacob ran away from his brother, and chanced to find a well; as soon as it saw him, the waters recognized their master and ascended to meet him, and there he found his spouse. Moses felt assured when he saw that the water came up to him that there he would meet his future wife. Furthermore, the holy spirit never left him, and he knew by inspiration that Zipporah would be his wife. He thought: "To be sure, Jacob came to this same place and the waters came up towards him, and then a man came up and took him into his house and supplied him with all his needs: the same will happen to me".' Said the man who accompanied them: 'We have been

taught that Jethro had been a heathen priest, and as soon as he saw that there was no truth in paganism he renounced it and ceased to worship the idols, and then his people excommunicated him, and when they saw his daughters they drove them away, for previously the shepherds used to pasture Jethro's flocks. When Moses saw through the holy spirit that the shepherds acted as they did on account of their idolatrous religion, he straightway stood up and helped the daughters and watered their flocks, acting wholly from zeal for God in all things.' Said to him R. Eleazar: 'Thou hast been so long with us, and yet we know not

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 14a

thy name!' He replied: 'My name is Yoezer ben Jacob.' The colleagues came and kissed him. They said: 'Thou wert so long with us, and we knew thee not!' They walked together the whole day, and then accompanied him three miles on his way. AND THEY SAID, AN EGYPTIAN DELIVERED US FROM THE HAND OF THE SHEPHERDS. Said R. Hiya: The companions have affirmed that (in using the word "Egyptian") they spoke in a flash of inspiration, saying words of whose true import they themselves were not aware. They were indeed like a man dwelling in the desert who seldom tasted meat, but one day, when a bear pursuing a lamb passed his dwelling, he saved the lamb from the bear in order afterwards to slay it himself for food, so that it was the bear which was the means of supplying the man with meat. Even so it was due to the Egyptian whom Moses killed that Jethro's daughters were saved.'

The following is an alternative explanation of Ex. I, 11: AND THESE ARE THE NAMES OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL. R. Judah opened with the words: "I am black but comely" (S.S. 1, 5). He said that they refer to the community of Israel, who is "black" because of her captivity, and "comely" because of the Torah and good works, for which she will be worthy to inherit the Jerusalem that is above. Although she is "as the tents of Kedar", i.e. "black" (Kedar), she is "like the curtains of Solomon", i.e. she belongs to the King of perfect peace (shalom).

R. Hiya the Great once visited the masters of the (esoteric) lore to learn from them. He came to the house of R. Simeon ben Yohai and found it shut off by a curtain. R. Hiya felt bashful and said: 'I shall stand here and listen to what he says.' And he heard R. Simeon say: 'Flee away, my beloved, like the gazelle, or like a young hart on mountains of spices (S.S. VII, 14). This signifies the longing of Israel for the Holy One, blessed be He: she implores Him not to depart from her to a distance, but to be even as a gazelle and a young hart. These animals, unlike all others, do when running go but a little way, and then look back, turning their faces toward the place from which they came, then running on, do again turn round and look back. So the Israelites say to the Holy One, blessed be He: "If our sins have caused Thee to flee from us, may it be Thy pleasure to run like a gazelle or like a young hart, and look back on us!" And, indeed, is it not written: "And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly" (Lev. XXVI, 44)? Furthermore, a

gazelle sleeps with one eye closed and the other one open, and so Israel says to the Holy One, blessed be He, "Be unto me like a gazelle also in this"! Yea, verily, "He who keepeth Israel neither slumbereth nor sleepeth" (Ps. CXXI, 4).'

Hearing all this, R. Hiya said: 'Behold, supernal beings are present in this house, and do I stay outside? Woe is me.' And he commenced to weep. But R. Simeon, hearing him from within, said: 'Verily, the Shekinah is outside. Who will go out to bring Her in?' Said R. Eleazar his son: 'Though I burn, I shall not burn any more than the phoenix, for the Shekinah is there outside. Let her enter here, in order that the fire may be perfect.' Then he heard a voice: 'Not yet have the pillars been set up nor have the gates been fixed, and he is of those who are too young for the spices of Eden which are here.' So R. Eleazar did not go out. R. Hiya, still sitting without, sighed and recited: ' "Turn, my beloved, and be thou like unto a gazelle, or like unto a young hart upon mountains of disruption" (S.S. 11, 17).' Then the dividing curtain opened, but R. Hiya did not enter. R. Simeon lifted up his eyes and said: 'He who is without has, by a clear sign, been permitted to enter, and do we remain here?' He stood up and lo, as he rose a fire began to move from the place where he stood to the place where R. Hiya was. Said R. Simeon: 'A spark of radiant light is without and I am here within.' R. Hiya could not open his mouth. When he entered, he dropped his eyes and looked not up. Said R. Simeon to R. Eleazar his son: 'Arise and pass thy hand over his mouth, for he is unaccustomed to these surroundings.' R. Eleazar arose and did so. Then R. Hiya opened his mouth and said: 'My eyes now see something they have not seen before. I have reached a height that I did not dream of. It is good to die in the fire kindled by the good gold, at the place where sparks fly on every side, each one ascending to three hundred

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 14b

and seventy-five rows of angels, and each of which spreads itself to thousands and myriads, until they reach the Ancient of Days, who sits upon the Throne. The Throne trembles, and the trembling thereof penetrates through a hundred and sixty worlds until it reaches a place which is called "the delight of the righteous", and it is heard throughout all the firmaments. Then all they that are above and all that are below are greatly amazed, and cry as with one voice: "This is R. Simeon ben Yohai, the world-shaker; who can stand before him? When he opens his lips to expound the Torah, all the thrones, all the firmaments, all the angelic hosts, all who praise their Lord, do listen to his voice. No mouth is opened: all are silent, and not a sound is heard until his words break through all the firmaments above and below. But when he ends, then the song and the rejoicing of them who praise their Lord is such as was never before heard; it echoes through all the firmaments of Heaven-and all this on account of R. Simeon and his wisdom! They bow before their Master, the perfume of the spices from Eden ascends in sweetness to the Throne of the Ancient of Days-and all this on account of R. Simeon and his wisdom!'

R. Simeon here discoursed as follows: 'In his going

down into Egypt Jacob was accompanied by six angelic grades, each consisting of ten thousand myriads. Correspondingly Israel was made up of six grades, in correspondence to which again there are six steps to the supernal celestial Throne, and corresponding to them six steps to the lower celestial Throne. [Tr. note: Malkuth.] Observe that each grade was an epitome of ten grades, so that altogether there were sixty, identical with the "threescore mighty men" that are round about the Shekinah. And these sixty, again, are the sixty myriads that accompanied Israel in their departure from exile and accompanied Jacob into exile.' R. Hiya asked him: 'But are there not seven grades, each an epitome of the ten grades, thus amounting to seventy?' R. Simeon said in reply: 'That number has no bearing on this matter, as we learn from the description of the candlestick, of which it says: "And there shall be six branches going out of the sides thereof: three branches of the candlestick out of the one side thereof, and three branches of the candlestick out of the other side thereof... And thou shalt make the lamps thereof seven" (Ex. xxv, 32). The central branch is not counted with the rest, as it says, "and they shall light the lamps thereof over against it" (Ibid.).'

As they sat thus, R. Eleazar asked his father, R. Simeon: 'For what purpose, and to what end, did the Holy One, blessed be He, allow Israel to go down to Egypt to be in exile there?' His father replied: 'Dost thou ask one question or two?' 'Two,' said R. Eleazar, 'why to Egypt, and why in exile?' Said R. Simeon: 'Stand up and take courage! In thy name shall this word be established above. Speak, my son, speak!' Then R. Eleazar opened his mouth and said: 'Threescore queens are they, and fourscore concubines, and virgins without number' (S.S. VI, 8). The "threescore queens" are allegorical of the celestial heroic angels that are of the host of Geburah, and that attach themselves to the "shells" (k'lifoth, i.e. baser elements) of the holy congregation of Israel. The "fourscore concubines" signify the lower "klifoth" that have dominion in this world, and whose power is to the higher powers as one to a hundred. The "virgins without number" are those angelic hosts of whom it is said, "Is there a number to his bands?" (Job. xxv, 3). And yet "My dove, my undefiled, is but one, she is the only one of her mother" (S.S. VI, 9), the Holy Shekinah, who proceeds from the twelve flashes of the radiance which illumines all things, and is called "Mother". And the Holy One, blessed be He, dealt according to this principle with the earth: He scattered the nations abroad in separation and appointed supernal chiefs over them, as it is written, "which the Lord hath imparted to all the nations under heaven" (Deut. VI, 19). But He took unto Himself the congregation of Israel to be His own portion and His own choice, as it is written, "For the Lord's portion is his people, Jacob is the lot of his inheritance" (Ibid. XXXII, 9). Thus it is clear that Israel is directly under God and none other; and He says of her: "My dove, my undefiled, is but one, she is the only one of her Mother." She is the only one of her Mother Shekinah who dwells in her midst. "Many daughters have done virtuously, but thou excellest them all" (Prov. XXXI, 29).'

There is a further esoteric meaning in this verse. We are told: "With ten Sayings the world was created"

(Pirke Ab. v, 1). Yet, on examination they prove to be only three, viz. Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge. The world was created only for the sake of Israel. When the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to endow the earth with permanence, He formed Abraham in the mystery of Wisdom, Isaac in the mystery of Understanding, and Jacob in the mystery of Perception, that is to say, of Knowledge. Therefore it is said: "With wisdom is the house built, and by understanding it is established, and by knowledge shall the chambers be filled..." (Prov. XXIV, 4-5). At that hour the whole world came into perfection; and when the twelve Tribes were born to Jacob,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 15a

all things came to completion according to the supernal pattern ordained from the beginning. When the Holy One beheld the exceeding joy of this lower world at being completed after the fashion of the world above, He said: "Should they (the Israelites) mingle with the other nations, a blemish would be caused in all the worlds". What, then, did He do? He caused them to wander over the face of the earth and from one nation to another until, in Egypt, they fell among those of a stubborn race, who, deeming them but slaves, despised their customs and abhorred their ways, and would not mingle with them or have a part in them. Both male and female among the Egyptians loathed them, and thus the whole Divine purpose could come into completion within the holy seed itself, whilst at the same time the guilt of the other nations became complete, as it is written: "In the fourth generation they (the children of Abraham) shall come hither again; for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full" (Gen. xv, 16). And when the Israelites came out of the bondage of Egypt, they came out as beings pure and holy, as it says: "The tribes of the Lord, the testimony of Israel" (Ps. CXXII, 4).'

Then R. Simeon approached his son, and kissing him he said: 'Remain, my son, standing at thy place, for the hour favours thee.' Then R. Simeon sat and listened while R. Eleazar, his son, stood and expounded mysteries of wisdom. And as he spoke his countenance was lit as by the radiance of the sun, and his words ascended to the starry heights and flitted across the firmament. They thus continued for a space of two days, neither eating nor drinking, and noticing neither day nor night. When they came forth they found that they had not tasted anything for two days. Said R. Simeon: 'We are told that Moses "was there with the Lord forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water" (Ex. XXIV, 28). If we, who but for a brief space were caught up into that rapture of Divine contemplation, forgot to eat and drink, how much more so Moses!'

When R. Hiya appeared before R. Judah the Saint and related this occurrence to him, R. Simeon ben Gamliel, R. Judah's father, said: 'R. Simeon ben Yohai is indeed a lion and his son likewise. He is different from all others of his kind. Of him it is written: "The lion hath roared, who will not fear?" (Amos III, 8). And if even the upper worlds do tremble before him, how much more then we? A man who has no need of fasting to proclaim his desires to the Almighty, and to

have them fulfilled, since he decides and the Holy One, blessed be He, confirms his decision; or the Holy One deciding, he revokes the decision and it is annulled! As it is said: "There shall be one that ruleth over man, a righteous one ruling in the fear of the Lord" (2 Sam. XXIII, 3). The Holy One rules over man, but who rules over the Holy One? Surely, the Righteous! For it may even be from time to time that the Holy One proposes and the righteous disposes!

R. Judah said: 'The Holy One, blessed be He, delights more in the prayer of the righteous than in any other thing soever; yet, though it please Him better than all else, He does not always grant their requests, nor do all that they ask. He sometimes refuses to fulfil their wish.'

It is recounted by the disciples that on one occasion when there was a shortage of rain, R. Eleazar decreed that the congregation should fast forty days. But no rain fell. Then R. Akiba prayed, and as he spake the words "Thou causest the wind to blow" so the wind blew, and when he said "and the rain to fall", lo, the rain fell. R. Eleazar was much chagrined at this. R. Akiba read his feelings in his looks, so he stood up and said to the congregation: 'I will tell you a parable. R. Eleazar is like unto one who is the king's own friend and dear companion: when he goes to the palace to entreat some favour, it is not granted at once, since the king so delights in his friend's presence that he keeps him by him as long as possible. I, on the other hand, am like the king's servant, whose requests are quickly granted, the king only desiring to get rid of him at once and be no more troubled; therefore he says: "Give the man what he wants at once, so that he should not have to enter my chamber!"' On hearing this, R. Eleazar was comforted. He said to him: 'Akiba, let me tell you what was shown to me in a dream in regard to the words, "Pray not for this people, neither lift up cry nor prayer for them, neither make intercession to me" (Jer. VII, 16). Twelve rows of pure balsam entered with him who wears breastplate and Ephod (i.e. the heavenly High Priest, the Intercessor, probably Metatron) when he prayed to the Holy One to have mercy upon the world, and yet he still is unanswered.' If so, why was R. Eleazar vexed? Because people did not know this.

Said R. Eleazar: 'Eighteen gardens of balsam are entered daily by the souls of the righteous, from which emanate forty-nine aromas,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 15b

reaching to the place called Eden-in correspondence with the forty-nine ways of interpreting the Torah, [Tr. note: Cf. Midrash Rabbah, Cant. 13a.] the forty-nine letters in the names of the twelve tribes, the forty-nine days' interval between the Exodus and the giving of the Law. Forty-nine holy days stand there, and each day waits for the instructions of the flashing stone set in the breastplate, and he who is adorned with the breastplate sits on a holy glorious throne. They look at the breastplate, and take the order from it either to enter or to depart. They lift up their eyes and behold a shining plate flashing towards six hundred and twenty sides on which the supernal holy Name is engraved.' Said R. Akiba to him: 'What is the meaning of the

words, "I went down into the garden of nuts (Heb. nut)" (S.S. VI, 11)?' R. Eleazar replied: 'This garden is the one that goes out of Eden, namely the Shekinah; the "nut" is the supernal holy Chariot, namely the four heads into which the river parted (Gen. II, 10), like the walnut, which has four sections inside. "I went down" is used in the same sense as in the expression, "So-and-so went down to the Chariot" (i.e. penetrated to its inner meaning).' Said R. Akiba: 'In that case it ought to have said: "I went down into the nut"; why does it say, "into the garden of nuts"?' Said R. Eleazar: 'As it is the virtue of a nut to be closed in from all sides, so is the Chariot which goes out of the Garden (Paradise) hidden on all sides; as the four sections of the walnut are united at one side and separated at the other, so are all the parts of the Celestial Chariot united in perfect union, and yet each part fulfils a special purpose; one "compasses the whole land of Havilah," and the other "compasses the whole land of Cush", etc.' Said R. Akiba: 'What is the symbolism of the moisture in the shell of the walnut?' R. Eleazar replied: 'Although the Scripture does not reveal it in this connection, it does in another connection. Almonds are sweet and also bitter, symbolizing condemnation and acquittal, although every instance in the Bible refers to condemnation only (cf. Jer. I, 11-12).' Said R. Akiba: 'Indeed, everything that the Holy One has made can teach us deep lessons, as it says, "The Lord hath made all things, to teach us wisdom" concerning himself' (Prov. XVI, 4).' R. Eleazar remarked: 'Rather quote the following verse: "And God saw every thing that He had made, and, behold, it was very good." The "very" suggests that we should learn the higher supernal wisdom from all that He made.' R. Judah said: 'That which God has made on earth corresponds to that which He made in heaven, and all things below are symbols of that which is above.' When R. Abba once saw a bird flying away from its nest in a tree, he wept, saying: 'If men only knew what this means, they would rend their garments for the knowledge which has perished from them. For as R. Jose says, "The trees which give mystic indications, like the carob and date tree, can all be grafted on one another. All that bear fruit have one secret nature, save the apple; all that do not bear fruit, save the willows of the brook, suck from one source; and all lowly shrubs, save the hyssop, are from one mother. Every kind of herb has its counterpart above. Therefore it is prohibited to "sow a field with mingled seed" (Lev. XIX, 19).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 16a

[Note: The Hebrew text from line 5 to line 38 does not appear in the translation.] Now if it is true that all things have their counterparts in heaven, and God gives each one its name, how much more so is it true of the sons of Jacob, the holy Tribes, the pillars of the world! And this is the significance of the words "and these are the names", etc.' AND THESE ARE THE NAMES. Each time that R. Eleazar ben Arach came to this verse he wept. He said that when Israel went into exile all the souls of their progenitors gathered in the cave of Machpelah and cried: "Old man, the afflictions of thy children are terrible; they have to do the work of slaves and a heathen nation makes their lives unbearable." Immediately the spirit of Jacob was awakened. He asked permission to go to Egypt, and he went. Then

the Holy One summoned all His celestial hosts and their leaders and they all accompanied Jacob and his sons. The tribes went down to Egypt with their father when they were alive and again when they were dead. Said R. Abba: 'Then the words were fulfilled: "As a father pitieth his children" (Ps. CIII, 13).'

R. Judah bar Shalom was once walking together with R. Abba. They arrived at a place where they decided to spend the night. After taking a meal they lay down to sleep, putting their heads on some raised ground under which was a grave. Before falling asleep they heard a voice from the grave, crying: 'Twelve years

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 16b

have I been sleeping here, and only now do I wake, for I now see the image of my son.' R. Judah asked him who he was, and he said: 'I am a Jew, and lie under a ban, not being able to enter the higher regions because of the sorrows of my son, who was stolen by a heathen when he was very young, and is sorely maltreated.' Said R. Judah to him: 'Do the dead know of the sufferings of the living?' He replied: 'If it were not for us, the dead, who intercede before the angel of the grave for the living, they would not remain alive for half a day. I have awakened now, for I was told that my son would come here, but I know not whether alive or dead.' Then R. Judah asked him 'What do ye do in that other world?' The grave shook, and a voice was heard, saying: 'Go away! For at this moment my son is being beaten.' They ran from there for about half a mile and sat down until the morning. When they rose to go they saw a man running with blood streaming from his shoulders. They stopped him, and he told them what had happened to him. They asked him his name and he said: 'Lahma the son of Levi.' 'Why,' said they, 'that is the son of the dead man!' They were afraid to converse with him, neither did they return to the place of the grave. Said R. Abba: 'That the prayers of the dead protect the living we learn from Caleb, who went to Hebron to beg for the intercession of the patriarchs (v. Num. XIII, 22).' R. Judah said: 'The Holy One gave two promises (lit. vows) to Jacob: one, that He Himself would go down and stay with him in exile; and the second, that He would let him come out of his grave to behold the joy of the holy host of celestial beings who would dwell with his children in their captivity; as it is written: "I will go down with thee into Egypt and I will surely bring thee up again" (Gen. XLVI, 4); "I will cause you to come up out of your graves" (Ezek. XXXVII, 12); "Whither the tribes go up" (Ps. CXXII, 5).' NOW THERE AROSE A NEW KING OVER EGYPT. R. Simeon said: 'As soon as Joseph died, the celestial representative of Egypt was given domination over all the other nations, as it says: "And Joseph died... and a new king arose", like one who rose to power from a lowly position. R. Tanhum said: 'Every nation has its own representative above, and when God elevates one He degrades another, and when He gives power to this one it is only on account of Israel, as it says: "Her adversaries have become chiefs" (Lam. 1, 5).' R. Isaac said: 'Israel singly is equivalent to all the other nations together; as seventy is the number of the nations, so seventy was the number of the children of Israel when they came into Egypt, and whoever rules over Israel

rules over the whole world.' R. Huna said: 'Why is Israel subjected to all nations? In order that the world may be preserved through them, since they are on a par with the whole world. As God is One, so is Israel one, as it says: "And who is like thy people, one people on earth?" (2 Sam. VII, 23). And as His name is one and yet has seventy ramifications, so is Israel one, and yet divided into seventy.' R. Judah applied the words: "For three things the earth is disquieted... for a servant when he reigneth... and an handmaid that is heir to her mistress" (Prov. xxx, 21-22),

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 17a

to Egypt and Ishmael (Islam). There is no nation so despised of the Holy One as Egypt, and yet he gave her dominion over Israel; while the "handmaid" is Hagar, who bare Ishmael, who tormented Israel so cruelly in the past, and still rules over her and persecutes her for her faith. In truth, the exile under Ishmael is the hardest of all exiles. Once, when going up to Jerusalem, R. Joshua saw an Arab and his son meet a Jew. The Arab said to his son: "See! There is a Jew whom God has rejected. Go and insult him. Spit in his face seven times, for he is of the seed of the exalted ones, and I know that the seventy nations shall be ruled by them". The boy went and took hold of the Jew's beard, whereupon R. Joshua said: "Mighty ones, mighty ones, I call upon the supernal ones to come down below!" And even before he had finished, the earth opened her mouth and swallowed up the Arabs.'

R. Isaac interpreted the verse "Until the day break and the shadows flee away, I will get me to the mountain of myrrh and to the hill of frankincense" (S.S. IV, 6) in connection with Israel's exile. 'She will be subjected by the nations until the "day" of the Gentiles, which is a thousand years, comes to an end-the "one day known to the Lord" (Zech. XIV, 7)-and "the shadows flee away", namely those who ruled over them. "I will get me", says the Holy One, "to the mountain of Moriah-Jerusalem-to drive away the heathen nations from there; and to the Sanctuary on Mount Zion, the joy of the whole earth." He will "take hold of the ends of the earth that the wicked might be shaken out of it" (Job XXXVIII, 13), as one shakes out the dust from a garment.' R. Jose said: 'Even before the day of the Gentiles be completed the Holy One will reveal Himself in the Jerusalem below to purify her from the abominations of the heathen, for R. Hiya has said that the domination of the Gentiles over Israel cannot last a day longer than a thousand years, which is the Holy One's One Day. Should it last longer, it will not be according to the King's will, but because Israel will not turn to Him in repentance, as it is written: "When thou shalt return unto the Lord... then the Lord thy God will turn thy captivity" (Deut. xxx, 1-4).' AND HE SAID UNTO HIS PEOPLE. Said R. Simeon: 'This refers to Egypt's principality in heaven. Note that this passage mostly speaks of "the king of Egypt", which refers to the celestial chieftain of Egypt; but where it says, "Pharaoh king of Egypt" the actual king is meant. "He said" means he put the idea into their minds that the representative in heaven of the children of Israel was mightier than theirs.' R. Isaac said: 'All the nations of the world derive their power from their celestial prototypes, but Israel only from God, therefore she is

called "the people of the Lord". R. Judah said: 'The Egyptians are here called "his (their representative's) people", and God says of Israel: "I have seen the affliction of my people" (Ex. III, 7): it is to be taken in the strictly literal sense, as it is written, "For all peoples walk every one in the name of its god, but we walk in the name of the Lord our God for ever and ever" (Micah IV, 5).' R. Abba said: 'Instead of the peculiar expression "the people of the children of Israel", we should expect either "the people of Israel", or simply "the children of Israel". "Children of Israel", therefore, must refer to the angels, the children of the supernal Israel, and the Israelites were called by Pharaoh their people and not the people of the Lord.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 17b

R. Johanan, being in the presence of R. Isaac, put to him the question: 'What made Balak say, "Behold, there is a people come out from Egypt" (Num. XXII, 5) instead of saying, "Behold, a people, to wit, the children of Israel"? R. Isaac replied: 'Balak was a great sorcerer, and it is the way of sorcerers to avoid any doubtful statement. Thus, in mentioning a man they will never mention the name of his father, but that of his mother, for the reason that a man's maternal descent is beyond any doubt. They adopt this course because the demons scrutinize every word uttered to them, so that if it be a falsehood they communicate to the utterer lying information, but if it be truthful they communicate truthful information, at least about things that are to happen shortly. All the more is this the case when they are invoked to perform some action.' R. Aha said: 'Balak wished to show his contempt of Israel by his expression: "Behold, a people went forth from Egypt", as much as to say, "a people, whose origin we know not".'

R. Johanan said: 'Why are the nations of the celestial chieftains kept in safety and the people of the Holy One not?' R. Isaac replied: 'A poor man needs to take care of his goods, but not a rich one. Further, Israel belongs to the King who loves truth and justice, and therefore He punishes principally and first of all the members of His own family, in order that they may guard themselves from sin more than the outsiders, as it says: "Only you have I known from among all the families of the earth, therefore I will visit upon you all your iniquities" (Amos III, 2).'

R. Jose one day went for a walk with R. Aha bar Jacob. Neither spoke, but whereas R. Aha meditated on spiritual matters, R. Jose's mind was occupied with worldly things. As they were thus proceeding, R. Jose suddenly beheld a wild beast running after him. He said to R. Aha: 'Dost thou not see the beast running after me?' 'No,' replied R. Aha, 'I see nothing.' R. Jose ran, pursued by the beast. He fell, and blood gushed from his nose. Then he heard a voice say: "You only have I known, etc." Musing on these words, he said: 'If I have been punished because my mind was but for one moment separated from the Torah, what must await him who is for ever apart from her! It is written, "Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery serpents and scorpions" (Deut. VIII, 15). Why fiery serpents? To punish Israel should she separate herself from the Tree of Life,

which is the Torah. God punishes the students of the Torah in order that they may not be separated from the Tree of Life even for a single moment.' AND HE SAID UNTO HIS PEOPLE. R. Isaac once drew near to the foot of a mountain, and there beheld a man sleeping under a tree. He sat down. Suddenly and without warning the earth began to quake violently and became full of fissures. The tree was uprooted and fell to the ground; and the man beneath it woke, and cried with a loud voice: 'O Jew, O Jew, weep and lament with mourning and sounds of sorrow! For even at this very moment a great supernal prince of the Gentiles is being appointed in Heaven, who will cause terrible misfortune to Israel. This quaking of the earth is meant as a portent and a warning to you.' At this R. Isaac fell a-trembling, and said: 'Verily, it is written, "For three things the earth is disquieted... for a servant when he reigneth, etc.", that is, when the supramundane principality, who was previously under another ruler, reigns, especially over Israel.' R. Hama bar Gurya said: 'When God allows Israel to fall under the oppression of the Gentiles He (God) weeps, as it is written, "My soul weeps in secret places" (Jer. XIII, 17).'

R. Judah once visited R. Eleazar. He found him sitting deep in thought, his hand pressed to his mouth in sadness. 'What are you thinking about?' he asked.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 18a

R. Eleazar replied: 'It says "In the light of the king's countenance there is life" (Prov. XVI, 15), but if our Master is cast down in spirit, and even sighing and weeping, what can his ministers do but follow His example? Therefore it is written, "Behold, their valiant ones (angels) cry without, the angels of peace weep bitterly" (Is. XXXIII, 7). Why do they cry? Because their Lord is within and they are without; because their Lord is in the inner chambers and they are in the outer courts. Why are they called "angels of peace"? Are there angels who are not of peace? Yea, verily! For there are emissaries both of stern judgement and of less stern judgement, and there are those whose attribute is justice mingled with mercy, and some who represent mercy only. It is these last who are called "Angels of peace". Of the lowest degree of heavenly beings it is written, "I clothe the heavens with blackness and I make sackcloth their covering" (Is. L, 3). But unto what end do the principalities of the Gentile nations cause God's children to suffer, seeing that it makes their Master grieve? They only carry out their office and they needs must do the will of their Lord.'

Said R. Dostai: 'When the children of the Holy One are delivered up to the rulers of the Gentiles, twelve celestial tribunals meet together and precipitate themselves into the great abyss, and all the ministering angels with all servitors cry in agony. Two tears fall then into the abyss. The higher angelic beings roll down below, and the lower are brought still lower to the measure of two hundred and forty degrees, for "The lion hath roared, who will not fear?" (Amos III, 8).' We have learned that at the time the Holy One, blessed be He, had given over Israel into the hand of the chieftain of Egypt, He decreed that seven hardships should be laid on them by the Egyptians. These are enumerated in the verse saying: "And they made their lives bitter with

hard service, etc.” Correspondingly, He bestowed on them seven favours, as enumerated in the verse: “And the children of Israel were fruitful, and increased abundantly, and multiplied, and waxed mighty, very mighty, exceedingly so, and the land was filled with them.” COME, LET US DEAL WISELY WITH THEM LEST THEY MULTIPLY (Ex. I, 10). R. Judah said in the name of R. Isaac: ‘Why did the Egyptians so desire to prevent Israel from multiplying, and what motive prompted their supernal representative to put such a desire into their hearts? Because he knew and made known to them that a son would be born to the Israelites through whom judgement should be brought upon the gods of Egypt; for, according to R. Johanan, when Moses said that God “will exercise judgement against all the gods of Egypt” (Ex. XII, 12), Duma, the celestial Prince of Egypt, ran away four hundred parasangs, and the Holy One said to him: “It is My decree!” In that hour his power and his dominion was taken from him, and he was banished, instead, to the lower regions and appointed over the realms of Gehenna, as judge of the souls of the wicked.’ R. Judah said that he was appointed over the dead. R. Hanina said: ‘It is written: “Upon their gods also the Lord executed judgements” (Num. XXXIII, 4). Can we speak of judgements being executed on gods made of silver or gold, of wood or stone?’ R. Jose replied: ‘Those made of silver and gold were melted of themselves, and the wooden rotted of themselves.’ R. Eleazar said: ‘The god of Egypt was the sheep, and so the Holy One, blessed be He, commanded to burn it in fire, so that its evil smell should go forth; and that it should be burnt with “its head with its legs and the inwards thereof” (Ex. XII, 9). And in addition, its bones were thrown into the market-place, a thing which distressed the Egyptians beyond all else. This was the “judgement” implied in the verse cited.’ R. Judah said: ‘“Against their gods” refers in a literal sense to their Chieftains, in fulfilment of the prophecy: “The Lord will punish the host of the high heaven on high” (Is. XXIV, 21). The wise men among the Egyptians knew all this, and all the more so their Chieftain. Hence they said: “Come, let us deal wisely with them.”’ Said R. Johanan: ‘They had many idols, but their chief god was the Nile,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 18b

and the Lord executed judgements on them all.’ Said R. Abba: ‘The exposition of R. Johanan is the correct and self-evident one. For we know that first the gods of a nation are punished and then the nation itself. So here, first the Nile and wood and stones were smitten, as Scripture says: “and there shall be blood throughout the land of Egypt, both in wood and stone” (Ex. XII, 19), the wood and stone being the very gods which the Egyptians worshipped.’ R. Isaac remarked: ‘But it is written, “the host of the high heaven on high”, whereas the Nile was not on high.’ Said R. Johanan: ‘The greater part of its waters resemble their prototype on high.’ R. Isaac said: ‘First their Chieftain was smitten and then the rest of their gods.’ R. Simeon, the son of R. Jose, said: ‘The punishment of the Egyptian nation itself was accomplished at the sea, in regard to which it is written: “There remained not so much as one of them” (Ibid. XIV, 28), and before that, judgements were executed against their gods. Hence the words of Pharaoh, saying: “Come, let us deal wisely with them

lest they multiply, and it come to pass that, when befalleth us any war, etc.” There was here a premonition of what actually came to pass-“they also join themselves unto our enemies”-a premonition of the heavenly hosts that stood by the Israelites-“and fight against us” -a prediction of what Moses declared, saying: “The Lord will fight for you” (Ibid. XIV, 14)-“and get them up out of the land”- as in fact we read: “for the children of Israel went out with a high hand” (Ibid. XIV, 8).’ AND THERE WENT A MAN OF THE HOUSE OF LEVI AND TOOK TO WIFE A DAUGHTER OF LEVI. R. Eleazar discoursed on the verse, “The Song of Songs of Solomon” (S.S. I, I). He said: ‘We have learnt that when the Holy One, blessed be He, was about to create the world, He was pleased to create the heaven with His right hand, and the earth with His left. He was also pleased to make a division of day and night, and He created angels appointed by His grace to chant hymns of praise by day, and others by night for the night watches. Thus it is said: “The Lord commandeth his grace in the daytime, and in the night his song with me” (Ps. XLII, 9). The former stand on the right hand, and the latter on the left, the latter hearkening to the song of the day and the former to the song of the night: and the singing they hear is the song of Israel, the holy.’ R. Isaac said: ‘Those that sing by night listen to the song of Israel by day, as it is written: “The companions hearken to thy voice” (S.S. VIII, 13).’ Said R. Simeon: ‘The angels of one degree with three divisions sing at night, and in darkness still their songs are heard, as it says, “She riseth while it is yet night, and giveth food to her household, and a portion to her maidens” (Prov. XXXI, 15).’ R. Eleazar continued: ‘On the first day ten things were created, and of these ten some belong to the day and its ways, and some to the night and the ways of the night. It is also known and believed that those angels who sing by night are the leaders of all other singers; and when on earth we living terrestrial creatures raise up our hearts in song, then those supernal beings gain an accession of knowledge, wisdom and understanding, so that they are enabled to perceive matters which even they had never before comprehended.’ Said R. Nehemiah: ‘Blessed is he who is worthy to perceive such singing, for, as we know and have been taught, he who is deemed worthy to comprehend this song becomes adept in doctrine and obtains wit to discern what has been and what will be. Solomon was found worthy of such knowledge, for thus taught R. Simeon: “David, peace be on him, was cognizant of it, and so could compose hymns and songs, many in number, in which he hinted concerning future events. He also became richly endowed with power in the holy spirit, understood matters appertaining to the Torah and to Divine wisdom, and obtained a mastery of the holy tongue. Solomon, however, was gifted with a still greater knowledge of that song: he penetrated into the essence of wisdom, and so he wrote many proverbs and made a book of the song itself. This is the meaning of his words, “I gat me men singers (sharim) and women singers” (Eccl. II, 8); that is to say, he acquired the knowledge of the hymn sung by heavenly and terrestrial beings. And on account of this he called his book “The Song of Songs”: the song of the supernal songs, the song containing all mysteries of the Torah and of Divine wisdom; the song wherein is power to penetrate into things that were and things that will be;

the song sung by the supernal princes (sharim=sarim).’

Said R. Eleazar: ‘Those heavenly princes stood in expectation until Levi was born; as soon as he was born they began to sing; as soon as Moses was born and Aaron was anointed high priest and the Levites were sanctified, the singing was perfected and the singers remained at their service.’ He also said: ‘At the hour when Levi was born, the heavenly choir began to sing: “O that thou wert as my brother that sucked the breast of my mother!”

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 19a

Should I find thee without, indeed I would kiss thee, and they would not despise me” (S.S. VIII, I). When the singers here below issued from the tribe of Levi and all of them were sanctified and entered into their service, and the two choirs, the heavenly and the earthly, were both hallowed, and sang in harmony so that the worlds were in unison and one King dwelt above them, then came Solomon and made a book of the hymning of the singers, wherein is enclosed heavenly wisdom.’

Said R. Judah: ‘Why are the singers here below called Levites? Because they are joined closely (lava=to be joined to) to and united with (the singers) above in absolute unison. He who hears their singing, his soul is also joined closely to the upper world. Therefore Leah said (at the birth of Levi): “Now this time my husband will be joined unto me” (Gen. XXIX, 34).’ Said R. Tanhum: ‘The seed of Levi is always joined to the Shekinah: in Moses, Aaron, Miriam, and in all his descendants. Observe that when the supernal singers desired to minister, they could not actually perform their function before the brothers Moses and Aaron and their sister Miriam were born.

‘We have a tradition that when Levi was born, the Holy One, blessed be He, took him and chose him from among all his brethren, and settled him in the land. He then begat Kehat, who begat Amram, who begat Aaron and Miriam. Amram separated himself from his wife and then took her again. At that hour the heavenly singers began to chant, but the Holy One, blessed be He, rebuked them, and the chanting ceased, until He stretched out the line of His right hand (the attribute of Grace) towards Amram. Why was he called Amram? Because a people, higher than all the high ones (‘am ram=high people), descended from him. And yet his name is not expressly mentioned (in connection with the birth of Moses). Why so? Because he secretly went away from his wife and secretly returned, so that no one should notice him. Wherefore it is written: “And there went a man”; it does not say “Amram”. Likewise does it say: “And took to wife a daughter of Levi”; she also returned secretly, wherefore her name is not mentioned.’ AND THERE WENT A MAN. R. Abahu said: This was Gabriel, who is called “man” in the verse, “And the man Gabriel” (Dan. IX, 21), and it was he who went and brought her (Amram’s wife) back to him.’ Said R. Judah: ‘It was Amram himself, only his name is not mentioned because this going to rejoin his wife was not his own idea but was inspired from above.’

R. Isaac said: ‘In regard to the birth of Aaron and

Miriam it does not say anything concerning their parents’ espousal, but in connection with the birth of Moses it says :” And took to wife a daughter of Levi”, which shows that the Shekinah is called after Levi, and Amram was not worthy to beget Moses until he obtained a portion in the Shekinah, and then he begat Moses. Hence it is written: “And she saw him that he was good” (Ex. II, 2).’ R. Eleazar said: ‘Amram was blessed with a son who was found worthy to be addressed by the great Voice, as it is written, “And God answered him by a voice” (Ex. XIX, 19); and Amram himself had the privilege of being addressed by “the daughter of a voice” (bat kol, an echo of prophecy); “he took the daughter of Levi”, that is to say, “the daughter of a voice”. Therefore it is written, “and there went”, meaning, he advanced from degree to degree until he reached this stage.’

We have been taught that when Moses was born the Holy One, blessed be He, attached His Name to him: it says of the child Moses, “he was good”, and it says of God, “The Lord is good to all” (Ps. CXLV, 9) and “Taste and see that the Lord is good” (Ibid. XXIV, 9). AND IT CAME TO PASS IN THE COURSE OF THOSE MANY DAYS, ETC. (Ex. II, 23). R. Joshua of Saknin said: ‘It was the end of their exile when their bondage was most severe. As soon as the appointed time of delivery came, “the king of Egypt died”: i.e. the angelic Chieftain of Egypt was degraded from his high estate. As soon as he fell, the Holy One, blessed be He, remembered Israel and heard their prayer,’ Said R. Judah: ‘The proof of this is that immediately after the words “The king of Egypt died” the text continues “and the children of Israel sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God”, which shows that until then their crying had not been answered.’ R. Eleazar said: ‘Observe the loving-kindness of the Holy One, blessed be He. When He has pity on Israel He suppresses the attribute of Justice and thus lets her obtain mercy. This is the meaning of the saying (T.B. Ber. 59a): “The holy One, blessed be He, lets drop two tears into the Ocean”. What are the two tears?’ R. Jose said: ‘This saying is not

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 19b

authentic, for R. Kattina, when he heard it from a certain sorcerer, said to him “You are a liar.”’ Said R. Eleazar: ‘There is no need for us to accept the words of a sorcerer, we have a definite statement that in the ten crowns of the King there are two tears of the Holy One, blessed be He, namely two measures of chastisement, which comes from both of these tears, as it says: “These two (desolation and destruction) have happened unto thee” (Isa. LI, 19). And when the Holy One remembers His children, He drops them into the great Sea, which is the Sea of Wisdom, in order to sweeten them, and He turns the attribute of Justice into the attribute of Mercy, and takes compassion on Israel.’ Said R. Judah: ‘We read later, “And behold the Egyptian marched after them” (Ex. XIV, 10). These words are referred by R. Jose to the angelic prince of Egypt; how, then, can you say that the “king of Egypt” here refers to this same prince?’ Said R. Isaac: ‘The later Scriptural saying, in fact, confirms the former, for it does not say “the king of Egypt marched after them”, but “the Egyptian”, because he was not king any

longer, having fallen from his former dignity.'

R. Jose said: 'It is written: "Behold a day cometh to the Lord" (Zech. XIV, 1); and again, "But the day shall be one and it shall be known to the Lord" (Ibid. v, 7). Are we to suppose from this that the other days are not the Lord's? It is, however, as R. Abba has said: all the other days are given over to the angelic principalities of the nations, but there is one day which will be the day of the Holy One, blessed be He, in which He will judge the heathen nations, and when their principalities shall fall from their high estate. Of that day it is written: "And the Lord alone shall be exalted on that day" (Isa. II, 11).' R. Abba said: 'It is written: "for my sword is bathed in heaven" (Isa. XXXIV, 5), which refers to the Lord's judgement on the supernal princes, the "sword" being a symbol of judgement.' R. Abba further said: 'The sword is identical with the execution of judgement, as it is written, "and he saw the angel of the Lord standing between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand" (I Chron. XXI, 16). Now, can we imagine a drawn sword literally having been in the hand of the angel? But what it means is that he possessed the authorization to execute judgement.' Said R. Isaac: 'What do you make of the remark of R. Joshua, son of Levi, that "the angel of death once said to me: Were it not that I have regard for the dignity of mankind I would cut their throats as is done to an animal"?' R. Abba replied: 'This only means that he has authorization to execute judgement; and the same is meant by the phrase, "with his sword drawn in his hand" (Jos. v, 13).' 'If that be so, what is the meaning of "and he put his sword back into the sheath thereof" (I Chron. XXI, 27)?' Said R. Abba: 'It signifies that the power delegated to him was restored to its rightful possessor, to Him to whom authority belongs.' AND THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL SIGHED. The sighing was in heaven for their sake. The "children of Israel" here are the supernal ones, namely those who carry on the divine service above.'

R. Isaac asked: 'When the Holy One, blessed be He, judges the family above (the angelic principalities), in what does the judgement consist?' R. Eleazar answered: 'He makes them pass through the fiery stream, and takes away from them their power as representatives of the nations and appoints the principalities representing other nations to rule instead of them.' 'But,' said R. Isaac, 'it says of the angelic world: "His ministers are a flaming fire" (Ps. CIV, 4) (and if so, what punishment is it for them to cross the fiery stream?).' To which R. Eleazar answered: 'There are different qualities of fire.'

R. Isaac said: 'We have to distinguish between the terms "sighing", "imploring", and "crying", all three of which are applied here to the children of Israel.' Said R. Judah: 'In fact they only implored and cried, as the sighing mentioned in the verse refers to the supernal beings.' 'What is the difference between imploring and crying?' Said R. Isaac: 'The former means prayer in actual words (Ps. XXXIX, 13; LXXXVIII, 14; XXX, 3), the latter crying without words. R. Judah

expression of grief, because it is entirely a matter of the heart, as it says, "Their heart cried unto the lord" (Lam. II, 18). This crying comes nearer to the Holy One, blessed be He, than imploring and praying in words, as it says, "If he (the orphan) cries unto me, I will surely hear his cry" (Ex. XXII, 20).' R. Berechiah said: 'When the Holy One, blessed be He, said to Samuel, "It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king", what did Samuel do? "He cried unto the Lord all night" (I Sam. xv, 11). He put aside everything and betook himself to crying, as this finds readiest access to the Holy One, blessed be He. Thus we read here: "Now therefore, behold, the cry of the children of Israel is come unto me" (Ex. III, 9). When one prays and weeps and cries so intensely that he is unable to find words to express his sorrow, his prayer is prayer in the truest sense, for it is in the heart, and shall never return unto him void.' Said R. Judah: 'Great is such crying in that it can effect a change in the divine sentence of judgement.' R. Isaac said: 'Great is such crying in that it dominates the supernal attribute of Justice.' Said R. Jose: 'Great is such crying in that it dominates both this world and the world to come, and makes man the heir of both, as it says, "They cried unto the Lord in their trouble and he delivered them out of their distresses" (Ps- CVII, 13). NOW MOSES KEPT THE FLOCK OF JETHRO HIS FATHER-IN-LAW, THE PRIEST OF MIDIAN. R. Simeon discoursed here on the text: "My beloved is mine and I am his; he among the lilies tendeth his flock." He said: 'Alas for mankind, they neither heed nor know! When God designed to create the universe, His thought compassed all worlds at once, and by means of this thought were they all created, as it says, "In wisdom hast thou made them all" (Ps. CIV, 24). By this thought-which is His Wisdom-were this world and the world above created. He stretched forth His right hand and created the world above; He stretched forth His left hand and created this world, as it says, "Mine hand hath laid the foundation of the earth and my right hand hath spanned the heavens; when I call unto them they stand up together" (Isa. XLIX, 13). All were created in one moment. And He made this world corresponding to the world above, and everything which is above has its counterpart here below, and everything here below has its counterpart in the sea; and yet all constitute a unity. He created angels in the upper worlds, human beings in this world, and the Leviathan in the sea, "to couple the tent together, that it might be one" (Ex. XXXVI, 18). He chose the supernal beings and He chose Israel; He did not call the beings of the upper worlds "sons", but the Israelites He did call sons, as it says: "Sons are ye to the Lord your God" (Deut. XIV, 1). He calls them "sons" and they call Him "father", "For thou art our father" (LXIII, 16). Hence it says: "I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine". He chose me and I chose Him also. "He among the lilies tendeth his flock": He feedeth among the lilies, although they are surrounded with thorns. Or again, as the lily is red and its juice is white, so does the Holy One, blessed be He, lead His world from the attribute of Justice to the attribute of Mercy, as it says: "Though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow" (Isa. I, 18).'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 20a

said: 'Hence crying is more poignant than all other

R. Abba was once walking in company with R. Isaac. On the way they saw some lilies, and R. Abba plucked one. R. Jose met them. He said: 'Verily, the

Shekinah is present here, for I see something in the hand of R. Abba which signifies that he has some great wisdom to impart, since I know that R. Abba would not have plucked this lily except with the view of teaching some esoteric lesson.' Said R. Abba: 'Sit down, my son, sit down.' They all sat down. R. Abba smelt the lily and said: 'What would the world be without smell? For I perceive that without smell the soul would pine away, and therefore we burn myrtle spices at the conclusion of the Sabbath.'

He then began to expound the verse: "My beloved is mine and I am my beloved's; he among the lilies tendeth his flock." 'What made me to belong to Him and Him to me? The fact that He feeds the world among lilies: as the lily has a sweet odour, is red, and yet turns white when pressed, and its aroma never evaporates, so the Holy One, blessed be He, guides the world. If it were not so, the world would cease to exist because of man's sin. Sin is red, as it says, "Though your sins be as scarlet";

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 20b

man puts the sacrificial animal on fire, which is also red; the priest sprinkles the red blood round the altar, but the smoke ascending to heaven is white. Thus the red is turned to white: the attribute of Justice is turned into the attribute of Mercy. Red is indeed the symbol of rigorous justice, and therefore the priests of Baal "cut themselves... till the blood gushed out upon them" (I Kings XVIII, 28).' R. Isaac said: 'Red (blood) and white (fat) are offered for sacrifice, and the odour ascends from both. The spices of incense are in part red and in part white-frankincense is white, pure myrrh is red-and the odour ascends from red and white. Moreover, it is written, "To offer unto me the fat and the blood" (Ezek. XLIV, 15)-again white and red. Hence as a substitute for this (since the destruction of the Temple) man sacrifices his own fat and blood (by fasting) and so obtains atonement. As the lily, which is red and white, is turned entirely into white by means of fire, so the sacrificial animal is turned entirely into white (smoke) by means of fire. Also at the present time (when there are no sacrifices) when a man offers in his fast his fat and his blood, the sacrifice has to go through fire if it is to be turned into white (bring down mercy), for, said R. Judah, fasting weakens the limbs and causes the body to burn, and just then is the appropriate time to offer up the fat and the blood on that fire; and it is this which is called "an altar of atonement". That is why R. Eleazar, when fasting, used to pray: "It is known to Thee, O my God and God of my fathers, that I have offered unto Thee my fat and my blood, and that I have heated them in the warmth of my body's weakness. May it be Thy will that the breath coming out of my mouth at this hour should be counted unto me as if it were the odour ascending from the sacrifice brought on the altar by fire, and grant me favour." Therefore prayer was instituted to take the place of sacrifices, provided that it is offered with this sacrificial intention.'

We may also explain our text as follows. As thorns are scattered among the lilies, so does the Holy One, blessed be He, permit in His world the wicked to be found among the righteous, for, as without the thorns the lilies could not exist, so would the righteous go

unrecognized in the world were it not for the wicked, as R. Judah said: "How are the righteous recognized? By contrast with the wicked I. If it were not for the one, the other would not be known."

Another explanation is that God governs the world for the space of six (the lily, shoshana, has six, shesh, leaves) years (millenniums), and the seventh is the (Messianic) Sabbath of the Lord. AND MOSES TENDED THE FLOCK OF JETHRO HIS FATHER-IN-LAW, THE PRIEST OF MIDIAN. R. Hiya quoted in this connection the verse: "The Lord is my shepherd, I shall not want." 'As the shepherd', he said, 'leads the sheep to a good pasture by the water-springs, and deals with them tenderly, so it is written of the heavenly Shepherd, the Holy One, blessed be He, that "In pastures green He makes me lie, He leads me to the streams which run most pleasantly, my soul doth He restore".' Said R. Jose: 'A good shepherd keeps his flock in the open and will not let them stray into private ground, and so God keeps Israel in the straight path and will not let them turn right or left.' R. Jose also said: 'If a leader of Israel is a wise shepherd, he willingly takes upon himself the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven and leads his flock in accordance with it; but if he is wise in his own conceit, "there is more hope of a fool than of him" (Prov. XXXVI, 12).' R. Judah said: 'Moses was a wise shepherd and knew how to treat his flock. He was like David, who was "tending the sheep" (I Sam. XVI, 11), and because he was very wise,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 21a

and treated his flock with great consideration and care, God made him king over all Israel. Why did Moses tend sheep and not oxen?' R. Judah said: 'Israel are called sheep, as it says: "And ye, my sheep, the sheep of my pasture, are men" (Ezek. XXXIV, 31), and again, "As the flock of holy things, as the flock of Jerusalem" (Ibid. XXXVI, 38). As the sheep sacrificed on the altar becomes a means of propitiation, enabling the sacrificer to inherit the world to come, so does Israel enable her leader, if he be a good shepherd, to inherit the world to come. As the shepherd tends with special care the newly-born lambs and carries them in his bosom, or gently leads them after their mother, and is compassionate with them, so must Israel's shepherd be compassionate and not cruel. Thus Moses said: "Thou sayest unto me, Carry them in thy bosom" (Num. XI, 12). As the good shepherd saves the sheep from wolves and lions, so does the good shepherd of Israel save them from pagan nations, from judgement here below and from judgement above, and prepares them for the life of the world to come. Just such a faithful shepherd was Moses, and the Holy One, blessed be He, foresaw that he would shepherd Israel as he shepherded Jethro's flock, the males as they required, and the females likewise according to their needs. Moreover, Moses "tended the flock of Jethro", not his own sheep, though he must have possessed some, for, as R. Jose remarked, "Jethro was a rich man, and, surely, he must have given to his son-in-law sheep and cattle!" Yet he did not tend his own sheep, for then people might have said, "he treats them so well because they are his own". Although Jethro was a "priest of Midian", that is to say, a pagan, yet because he was kind to Moses, the latter served him well and

tended his flock with all due care in good and fat pasture.' AND HE LED THE FLOCK TO THE BACK OF THE WILDERNESS. Said R. Jose: 'From the time when Moses was born, the holy spirit never left him. He discerned by means of the holy spirit that that desert was sanctified and prepared by God as the place for Israel's acceptance of the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven (the Sinaitic Law), therefore "He led the flock to the back of the wilderness"-not to the wilderness, as he did not wish them to tread that spot.' AND CAME TO THE MOUNTAIN OF GOD, TO HOREB. He came alone, without his flock. Said R. Jose: 'When a magnet becomes aware of a piece of iron, it instinctively leaps towards it. So Moses, as soon as he saw the mountain, was attracted towards it.' R. Abba said: 'Verily, Moses and the mountain were prepared for one another even from the six days of Creation. On that day the mountain moved towards Moses, and seeing that Moses was about to ascend, it stopped, and both man and mountain were filled with joy.' Said R. Jannai: 'How did Moses know it was the mountain of God? Because he saw birds circling round it with outstretched wings, but never flying over it.' R. Isaac said: 'Moses saw birds flying towards him from the direction of the mountain and falling at his feet. This showed him plainly the character of the mountain, so he "led his flock to the back of the wilderness" and went up alone.' AND THE ANGEL OF THE LORD APPEARED UNTO HIM IN A FLAME OF FIRE OUT OF THE MIDST OF A BUSH. R. Tanhum said: 'It was the moment of the evening offering (minhah), a moment when the attribute of Justice is in the ascendant.' R. Johanan interposed, remarking: 'Is it not written: "By day the Lord will command his mercy" (Ps. XLII, 9), showing that mercy predominates as long as there is daylight?' Said R. Isaac: 'From sunrise until the sun declines westward it is called "day", and the attribute of Mercy is in the ascendant: after that it is called "evening", which is the time for the attribute of Severity. We derive the same lesson from the text: "Between the evenings ye shall eat flesh, and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread" (Ex. XVI, 12). "Between the evenings"-this is the time

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 21b

of the sway of Severity-then "ye shall eat flesh", with the result, as the Scripture says, that "while the flesh was yet between their teeth, ere it was chewed, the anger of the Lord was kindled against the people" (Num. XI, 33), for between-the-evenings is under the sway of Severity" and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread", the morning being identified with Mercy, as Scripture says, "the mercy of God endureth all the day" (Ps. LII, 3), to wit, in the morning, as it says: "And God called the light day", referring to the morning.' R. Tanhum said: 'The one is symbolized by red, the other by white. The between-the-evenings period is red, so it is written, "between the evenings ye shall eat flesh"; whereas the morning hours are white, so it is written, "and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread".' R. Isaac cited the verse: "And the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it between the evenings" (Ex. XII, 6), the reason being, he said, that that is the time for the execution of judgement. R. Judah said: 'This we derive from the ordinance concerning the two daily offerings, the one answering to the attribute of

Mercy, the other to the attribute of Severity. So Scripture says, "The one lamb thou shalt offer in the morning" (Ex. XXIX, 39), where the designation "the one" signifies the special one, to wit, the one answering the attribute of Mercy; whereas the second lamb to be offered up between the evenings is associated with Severity, being analogous to the second day of Creation, of the works of which it is not said "that it was good".' Said R. Tanhum: 'It is for this reason that Isaac instituted the Afternoon-prayer (Minhah), namely, to mitigate the then ruling Severity; whereas Abraham instituted Morning-prayer, corresponding to the attribute of Mercy.' R. Isaac said: 'This idea may be derived from the verse saying: "Woe unto us, for the day declineth, for the shadows of the evening are stretched out!" (Jer. VI, 4), "the day declineth" being an allusion to the attribute of Mercy, and "the shadows of the evening" signifying the attribute of Severity.'

Our teachers have asked: 'Why at the time when Moses went up into Mount Sinai did the theophany take the form of a flaming fire, which is the symbol of Severity? The answer given by R. Jacob was: 'It was appropriate to the moment, which was one of Severity.' R. Jose said: 'It was symbolic of the events associated with that spot. For of this spot it is written: "and (he) came to the mountain of God, unto Horeb," a place of which it is also written: "Also in Horeb ye made the Lord wroth" (Deut. IX, 8). It is written further: "And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a thorn-bush", as a symbol that the wicked are one day to become "as thorns cut down, that are burned in the fire," (Isa. XXXIII, 12).' R. Judah said: 'We learn from here the mercifulness of the Holy One, blessed be He, towards the wicked. Thus it is written, "and, behold, the thorn-bush burned with fire", to wit, to execute judgement against the wicked: yet "the thorn-bush was not consumed", indicating that they will not be utterly exterminated. "Burning in fire" is certainly an allusion to the fire of Gehinnom; but "the thorn-bush was not consumed", to show that even so they will not be destroyed utterly.'

The following is an alternative explanation of these verses: AND THE ANGEL OF THE LORD APPEARED UNTO HIM IN A FLAME OF FIRE. Why in a flame of fire to Moses and not to other prophets? Said R. Judah: 'Moses was not like other prophets: fire had no dominion over him, as it is written: "And Moses drew near unto the thick clouds where God is" (Ex. xx, 21).' Said R. Abba: 'This peculiarity of Moses has to be explained in the light of the higher (esoteric) wisdom. He was "drawn out of the water" (Ex. I, 10) (i.e. the attribute of Hesed or Grace), and he who is drawn out of water has no fear of fire, and we have learnt that "from the place whence Moses was formed no other man was formed".' R. Johanan said: 'Moses was conversant with all ten degrees (of wisdom), as it is written: "He is faithful in all my house" (Num. XII, 7), and not merely "He is the faithful of my house". Blessed is the man to whom his Master testifies thus!' Said R. Dimi: 'But according to R. Joshua ben Levi, the words "no prophet arose in Israel like unto Moses" suggest that among the nations of the world there was one like unto him, namely Balaam.' The other replied: 'Truly, thou art right', and said no more. When R. Simeon appeared, they consulted him and he said: 'Shall resin

be mixed with sweet-smelling balsam? (i.e. how can ye compare Balaam with Moses?) It is, however, true that Balaam was the counterpart of Moses. As the works of the one were from above, so were the other's from below. Moses wrought his works by means of the holy Crown of the All-highest King, Balaam by means of the unholy crowns from below. Hence, "The children of Israel slew Balaam the son of Beor, the soothsayer" (Jos. XIII, 22). And if thou desirest to know more, ask his ass! R. Jose came and kissed his hand. He said: 'The desire of my heart has been fulfilled. For I see that there is a duality in the universe of upper and lower beings, Right and Left, Love and Justice, Israel and the heathen. Israel uses the upper, holy Crowns; the pagans the lower, unholy ones; Israel draws her life-substance from the Right, the heathen nations from the Left; and thus the superior prophets are separated from the inferior prophets-the prophets of holiness from the prophets of evil.' Said R. Judah:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 22a

'As Moses excelled all prophets in Israel in respect of the superior, holy prophecy, so Balaam excelled all other pagan prophets and soothsayers in respect of the inferior, unholy prophecy. In any case Moses was above, Balaam below, and there were numerous stages between them.'

R. Johanan said in the name of R. Isaac: 'Moses was anxious in his mind concerning Israel, lest they should succumb under their burdens, as it says, "He looked on their burdens" (Ex. II, 11). Therefore "the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire... and he looked and behold, the bush burned... and the bush was not consumed", to show that although their lives were made bitter with hard bondage, yet, like the bush, they would not be consumed. Blessed are the Israelites for that the Holy One, blessed be He, separated them from all nations and called them "children", as it says: "Children are ye to the Lord your God" (Deut. XIV. I).'

WAERA

AND GOD SPAKE UNTO MOSES, ETC. R. Abba began his reflections on this portion with the verse: Trust the Lord for ever (lit. unto 'Ad), for in KAH TETRAGRAMMATON is fashioning of worlds (lit. rock of ages) (Isa. XXVI, 4). 'All mankind', he said, 'should cleave to the Holy One, blessed be He, and put their trust in Him, in order that their strength should be drawn from the sphere called 'Ad[Tr.note:Tifereth.], which sustains the universe and binds it into an indissoluble whole. This 'Ad (lit. unto) is "the desire of the everlasting hills" (Gen. XLIX, 26), to wit, the two transcendent "Mothers", the year of Jubilee[Tr.note: Binah.] and the year of Remission [Tr.note: Malkuth.] (cf. Zohar, Gen. 247b); the desire of the former being to crown that sphere with glory, with the outpouring of blessings and wells of sweet water; whilst the longing of the other is to receive from 'Ad these same blessings and illuminations. Therefore it says, "Trust the Lord unto 'Ad" (i.e. contemplate the worlds of emanation only as far as the sphere 'Ad), for beyond that is a hidden region, so transcendent that it passes all understanding, the very source whence the worlds

were designed and came into being. Up to this point only is it permissible to contemplate the Godhead, but not beyond, for it is wholly recondite. This is KAH TETRAGRAMMATON, from whence all worlds were fashioned,' Said R. Judah: 'We have a direct Scriptural proof for this, for it says, "Ask of the days that are past... since the day that God created man upon earth, and ask from the one side of the heaven unto the other..." (Deut. IV, 32). Up to this point man may investigate, but no further.' Another explanation of this verse is as follows: Man must always trust the Holy One, blessed be He. He who trusts Him will never be confounded by the world (Ps. xxv, 2). He who depends entirely on the Holy Name is firmly established in the world, as the world itself is sustained by this Name: by the two letters JH (KAH) "the Lord

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 22b

designed the worlds", this world and the world to come. This world was created by the attribute of Justice, and is sustained by the same attribute, in order that humanity should base its life on justice and not depart from the way of righteousness. AND ELOHIM SPAKE UNTO MOSES AND HE SAID TO HIM I AM TETRAGRAMMATON. It is written above (v. 22): "And Moses said, Lord (Adonai), wherefore hast thou evil entreated this people?" What prophet could speak with such boldness as this save Moses, who knew that another and superior degree (viz. TETRAGRAMMATON) was awaiting him? R. Isaac said: 'Moses, who was "faithful in God's house", addressed Him without fear and trembling, like a steward who has charge over the household.' According to another explanation, the words "And God spake and said unto him, I am TETRAGRAMMATON" mean that the manifestation was in both attributes, in Justice and Mercy, both fitly framed and joined together. R. Simeon said that they were manifested not unitedly but successively, as is indicated by the expression, "And Elohim spake... and said unto him, I am TETRAGRAMMATON": stage after stage. Said R. Jose: 'Moses would certainly have been punished for the boldness of his language had he not been "steward of the household" and man of God. He was like a man who had married the king's daughter, and having some contention with her, spoke harshly to her. She was about to answer him, when her father, the king, appeared. Seeing him, she stopped and he took up the word. He said to the husband: "Knowest thou not that I am the king, and the harsh words thou speakest against my daughter, thou speakest as it were against me?" So Moses complained against Adonai (the Shekinah) and was answered by Elohim (the King). AND I APPEARED, ETC. God was here like a king who had an unmarried daughter, and also had a personal friend. When he wanted to say something to the friend, he used to send his daughter to him to speak for him. Then the daughter was married, and on the day of her marriage the king proclaimed: "Call my daughter from now 'the Mistress, the Matrona'," and to her he said: "Until now I was wont to speak through thee to those who desired audience with me, but now I shall speak directly to thy husband, and he will transmit my messages." One day the husband spoke harshly to the princess in the king's presence, and before she could answer him the king took up the word. He said: "Am I

not the king, with whom no one dared to speak but through my daughter, and have I not given my daughter to thee, and spoken with thee directly, a privilege not granted to any other?" Similarly God said to Moses: "Before the Shekinah was espoused I appeared to the Patriarchs as El Shaddai, and they could not speak directly with Me, only through My Daughter the Shekinah, and thou wast the first one to whom I spoke face to face, and now at the very outset thou darest in My Presence to speak to My Daughter in such a fashion!"

R. Jose interpreted the verse: "The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof, the universe, and they that dwell therein; for he hath founded it upon the seas, and established it upon the rivers" (Ps. XXIV, 2- 3) in the following way. ' "The earth" is the Holy Land of Israel, which is the first to imbibe sustenance and receive blessing from God, the rest of the world then receiving from it; "the seas" refer to

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 23a

the seven pillars which are the foundation of the earth, and over which rules the Sea of Kinnereth (R. Judah, however, maintained that the latter is filled by the others); "the rivers" are connected with the "river which went out of Eden to water the garden,, (Gen. II, 10). It is to be noticed that this Holy Land (the Shekinah) is called "the land of Israel". Why, then, did Jacob, who is Israel, not rule over it like Moses? The reason is-as already pointed out-that Jacob became the owner of the "house which is below" and left the "house which is above", though in the twelve tribes and in the seventy branches he made preparation herein for the "house which is above"; Moses, on the other hand, left the "house which is below" and took the "house which is above". The former experienced the Divine manifestation as "El Shaddai", but God did not speak with him in the higher grade designated by TETRAGRAMMATON. AND I APPEARED UNTO ABRAHAM, UNTO ISAAC, AND (v) UNTO JACOB. The letter Vau in connection with Jacob is, according to R. Hiya, symbolic of the superiority of the Divine manifestation to Jacob over that which was vouchsafed to the other two: his is the unifying, harmonizing, grade; and yet he was not worthy to use it as Moses did. AND I HAVE ALSO ESTABLISHED MY COVENANT WITH THEM, TO GIVE THEM THE LAND OF CANAAN: as a reward for the covenant of circumcision; and only of those who are faithful members of this covenant can it be said that they "possess" the land, which is a heritage of the righteous, as it is written: "Thy people shall be all righteous, they shall possess the land" (Isa. LX, 21). Even Joseph was not called "righteous" before he guarded the sign of the covenant (at the time of temptation).

R. Eleazar once asked R. Simeon his father, in the presence of R. Abba: 'Why is it said here "I appeared", instead of "I spoke to Abraham, etc."?' R. Simeon replied: 'My son, this contains a deep mystery. Observe now. There are colours disclosed and undisclosed, this being a part of the mystery of Faith, but men neither know nor reflect on these matters. The visible colours were not perceived by any human being before the Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Therefore it

says "and I appeared". And what are these visible colours? Those of El Shaddai, the reflection of higher colours. But these latter are hidden, and Moses alone perceived them. The Patriarchs, however, were not entirely ignorant of them; since they apprehended those undisclosed ones through the visible ones which they already knew. It is written: "And the wise shall be resplendent as the splendour of the firmament, and they that turn many to righteousness shall be like the stars for ever and ever." The "wise" is he who by the power of his own contemplation attains to the perception of profound mysteries which cannot be expressed in words. The "firmament" is the "firmament of Moses" (his grade of Divine knowledge), which is set at the centre and whose splendour is veiled. This firmament is above that other which is non-resplendent and the colours of which are visible and not so bright as the invisible. There are four lights (i.e. Emanations), three of which are recondite and one disclosed. There is one which sheds light abroad (Hesed); one which shines for itself only (Geburah), being like the heavens in purity; one of purple hue which gathers light into itself (Tifereth); and one which is of itself lightless (Malkuth), but which looks up to the others and reflects them as a lamp reflects the sun. The first three are recondite and brood over the one which is

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 23b

disclosed. (Of all this the eye is the symbol. In the eye three colours are visible, but none of these shines, because they are non-luminous. They are the parallel of those lights which are revealed; and it was by means of these visible colours that the Patriarchs were enabled to discern the colours which are luminous but invisible-that is, those colours of which Moses alone had cognizance, which were concealed from all others but revealed to him in that firmament to which he had attained, and which are above the visible colours.) To understand this mystery, close thine eye and press thine eyeball, and thou wilt discern radiating and luminous colours which can only be seen with closed eyes. [Tr.note: The colours thus seen are called luminous, because they are not attached to any material background. The idea seems to be that just as these can only be seen when the eye is closed, so the higher emanations can only be grasped when the mind completely abstracts itself from the perceptions of sense.] For this reason we say that Moses was possessed of the "luminous mirror", which is above the "nonluminous", which alone is vouchsafed to others. The Patriarchs, however, were able by means of the revealed colours to conceive of those that were concealed. This is the meaning of the words, "I appeared unto Abraham, etc.", namely, in those visible colours, "but by My Name TETRAGRAMMATON was I not known to them", namely, in the supernal hidden luminous colours, which only Moses was privileged to behold. The closed eye sees the mirror of light: the open eye sees the mirror which is not luminous. Therefore in regard to the lightless mirror, the term "see" is used, because it is discernible, but in regard to the luminous mirror the term "know" is used, because it is in concealment.' Then came R. Eleazar and R. Abba and kissed R. Simeon's hand, and R. Abba wept and said: 'Alas for the world when thou, master, shalt be removed from it! It will become an orphan without thee;

for who will then illumine the words of the Torah?' He then went on to quote David's greeting to Nabal: "Be well (lehai, lit. thus for life!), and peace be to thee, etc." 'Surely,' he said, 'David must have been aware of Nabal's wickedness, and how could he greet him thus? It was, however, New Year's day, the day when the Holy One judges the world, and David's intention in using both expressions, "Thus for life", and "and thou art peace", was to address Him from whom all life and all peace come, in order to make a fitting profession of faith. And greeting a righteous person with Shalom! (peace, harmony) is like greeting the Holy One Himself, especially when addressed to thee, O master, who in thine own person representest the harmony between the above and the below! But it is not allowed to greet thus a wicked person, and yet, if it be unavoidable, there is no insincerity involved in the phrase when outwardly addressed to the person concerned, but inwardly intended for God.'

R. Hezekiah discoursed on the verse: Blessed is the man unto whom the Lord imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile (Ps. XXXII, 2). He said: 'How blind are the children of men who neither see nor perceive what the foundation is of their existence in the world! Behold, when the Holy One, blessed be He, created the world, He formed man in His own image, so disposing his capacities as to enable him to study the Torah and walk in His way. Therefore man was created from the dust of the lower Sanctuary; and the four winds of the world united at that place which afterwards was named the House of Holiness, and these four were then joined to the four elements of the lower world: fire, air, earth, and water. And when these winds and these elements were thus mingled, the Holy One, blessed be He, formed one body of wondrous perfection. Therefore it is plain that the substances composing man's body belong to two worlds, namely, the world below and the world above.' Said R. Simeon: 'The first four elements have a deep significance for the faithful: they are the progenitors of all worlds, and symbolize the mystery of the supernal Chariot of Holiness. Also the four elements of fire, air, earth, and water have a deep significance. From them come gold, silver, copper, and iron, and beneath these

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 24a

other metals of a like kind. Mark well this! Fire, air, earth, and water are the sources and roots of all things above and below, and on them are all things grounded. And in each of the four winds these elements are found: fire in the North, air in the East, water in the South, earth in the West; and the four elements are united with the four winds-and all are one. Fire, water, air, and earth: gold, silver, copper, and iron; north, south, east, and west-these make altogether twelve; yet are they all one. Fire is in the left, at the side of the North, for fire has the energy of warmth, and the power of dryness is strong in it, and the North is just the reverse, and so the two are commingled. Water is in the right, in the side of the South, and the Holy One mixes the warmth and dryness of the South with the coldness and moisture of the water, and they become one as with the previous combination. The North is cold and moist, and its element, fire, hot and dry, and, contrariwise, the South is warm and dry, and its

element, water, cold and moist, and so the Holy One mixes them. For water comes from the South, enters into the North, and flows again from the North; and fire comes out from the North, and enters into the South, and it is from the South that powerful heat goes out into the world. For the Holy One makes one borrow from the other as He sees right. In a similar fashion He proceeds with the air and the East. Observe now. Fire from one side, water from the other: there is opposition. Then comes the air (wind, spirit) between them and brings them together and they become one, as it is written: "And the spirit (air) of God brooded over the water" (Gen. 1, 2). For fire is aloft and water is on the surface of the earth, and air enters between them, unites both elements and makes peace between them. Earth has water, air, fire, above it and receives from all the three. Observe, further, that the East is warm and moist, and the air is warm and moist. Hence the warm-moist composite can take hold of both sides-with its warmth the fire, and with its moisture the water, and thus end the conflict between fire and water. The earth is cold and dry, therefore it can receive all the others-fire, water, and air- and all can accomplish their work in it. She receives from all of them, therefore through their influence can produce nourishment for the whole world. Now the side of the West, which is cold, unites with the North, which is cold and moist, for cold unites with cold, and from the other side, the dry, West unites with the South, which is warm and dry, and thus the West attaches itself to both sides. In the same fashion the South is united with the East on its warm side, and the East with the North in virtue of its moisture. Thus we find united: South-East, North-East, North-West, South-West, and all are contained in one another in mutual intermingling. In this way the North brings forth gold, which is produced by the side of the fire-power, as it is written, "Gold cometh from the North" (Job. XXXVII, 22). For when fire joins with the earth gold is produced, as it is written: "As for the earth... it hath lumps of gold" (Ibid. XXXVIII, 5-6). When water is united with earth, the cold with the moist brings forth silver, and so the earth is united with two sides, gold and silver, and situated between them. Air joins to water and also

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 24b

to fire and produces an amalgam which is "the colour of polished copper" (Ezek. 1, 7). As to the earth mentioned above, when it is by itself in its coldness and dryness it brings forth iron; therefore it says: "If the iron be blunt" (Eccl. x, 10). Earth, however, combines with all the other elements, and all work through it according to their several ways. For without earth there is no gold, no silver, no copper. For each element imparts of its character to the other to form a compound, and earth mingles with all, because the two sides, fire and water, are attached to it. Air also joins with it on account of those two, and acts upon it. Now we find that the earth, when united with them, brings forth also secondary products resembling their primary compounds. Thus corresponding to gold it brings forth the green dross which is subordinate to gold and resembles it; corresponding to silver, lead; corresponding to the superior copper, the inferior, tin; corresponding to iron, however, it brings forth only iron, and so it is said: "Iron with iron together" (Prov. XXVII, 17). 'Fire, air, water, and earth are originally all united one with the other,

and there is no separation between them. But when the earth-dust began to generate its products were no longer united like the supernal elements, as it says: "From thence it was parted and became into four heads" (Gen. II, 10). In this was separation; for the earthy, when it generated in the power of the three upper elements, brought forth four streams, where precious stones are found. These precious stones are twelve in number, distributed in all the four cardinal directions, and corresponding to the twelve tribes of Israel: "And the stones shall be with the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names" (Ex. XXVIII, 21). Observe that though all these supernal sides of which we spoke are united and bound up one with another, and form the foundation of things above and things below, yet is air (spirit) superior to them all, as it is the substance of all, without which nothing would live, and the soul exists only through the spirit, for if the air were to fail, even for a moment, the soul would not be. This is hinted in the words: "Also when the soul is without knowledge it is not good" (Prov. XIX, 2): soul without spirit "is not good", and cannot exist. Note, further, that those twelve stones correspond to the twelve oxen under the sea of brass which was in the Temple (I Kings VII, 25). Therefore the princes, the heads of the tribes, sacrificed twelve oxen (Num. VII, 3). All this is a deep mystery, and he who comprehends these words comprehends a mystery of the supernal wisdom, in which is the root of all things.'

R. Simeon concluded: 'See now the truth of R. Hezekiah's saying, that when the Holy One created man He took the dust of the lower Sanctuary, but for the making of his soul He chose the dust of the upper Sanctuary. Just as in the formation of man's body from the dust of the lower Sanctuary, three cosmic elements were combined, so in the formation of his soul from the dust of the upper Sanctuary, further elements, to the number of three, were mingled, and so man was completely formed. And this is the significance of the words: "Blessed is the man to whom the Lord imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile." When does the Lord not impute iniquity? When there is no guile in his spirit. Moses was perfected to a higher degree than were the Patriarchs, since the Holy One spoke to him from a higher grade than to them, and Moses stood within the Palace of the King. Hence it says: "And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of EL SHADDAI, but by My name TETRAGRAMMATON was I not known to them"; and so we affirm.' WHEREFORE SAY UNTO THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL, I AM THE LORD, AND I WILL BRING YOU OUT FROM UNDER THE BURDENS OF THE EGYPTIANS, ETC. Said R. Judah: 'These words are in the wrong order, and should read, firstly, "I will redeem you", and then "I will bring you out". The reason, however, why bringing out is put first is that God desired to announce to them first the best promise of all.' To which R. Jose remarked: 'But does not the greatest promise of all come last, namely, "I will take you to me for a people and I will be

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 25a

to you a God" (v. 7)?' R. Judah replied: 'Deliverance from Egypt was the chief concern of the people then, because they despaired of escaping on account of the

magical arts with which the Egyptians held fast their prisoners; hence it came first in order in the proclamation, followed by the promise of deliverance from bondage once and for all, as they might have been afraid that the Egyptians would enslave them again. Then came the promise of redemption, namely, that He would not merely free them from Egypt and then leave them to themselves: this was followed by the proclamation that He would make them His people; and finally came the promise that He would bring them into their own land (v. 7).' [Note: At this point, the printed volumes, both Hebrew and English, contain a passage from the Raya Mehemna. In the CD version, it can be found in the "Raya Mehemna" menu choices for the Hebrew and English Zohar submenus. Look for page 25a.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 25b

AND MOSES SPAKE SO UNTO THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL, BUT THEY HEARKENED NOT UNTO MOSES FOR ANGUISH OF SPIRIT. What is the meaning of "anguish of spirit" (lit. shortness of breath)? R. Judah interpreted the expression literally, "they had no rest from their labours, no time to breathe". But R. Simeon saw a mystical significance in the expression; the "Jubilee" (the world of Binah, the abode of transcendental "Freedom ") was as yet not in manifestation to give them spiritual rest, and the later Spirit (Malkuth) was not yet able to exercise its functions, and so there was anguish to this Spirit. AND MOSES SPAKE BEFORE THE LORD, SAYING: BEHOLD, THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL HAVE NOT HEARKENED UNTO ME, HOW THEN SHALL PHARAOH HEAR ME, WHO AM OF UNCIRCUMCISED LIPS ? How did Moses dare say this? Had not the Holy One already promised him, when he said that he was not eloquent, that He "will be with his mouth" (Ex. IV, 10-12)? Or did the Holy One not keep His promise? However, there is here an inner meaning. Moses was then in the grade of "Voice", and the grade of "Utterance" was then in exile. Hence he said: "How shall Pharaoh hear me", seeing that my "utterance" is in bondage to him, I being only "voice", and lacking "utterance". Therefore God joined with him Aaron, who was "utterance" without "voice". When Moses came, the Voice appeared, but it was "a voice without speech". This lasted until Israel approached Mount Sinai to receive the Torah. Then the Voice was united with the Utterance, and the word was spoken, as it says, "and the Lord spake all these words" (Ex. xx, 1). Then Moses was in full possession of the Word, Voice and Word being united. That was the cause of Moses' complaint (v. 23), that he lacked the word save at the time when it broke forth in complaint and "God spake to Moses" (VI, 2). On this occasion the word began to function, but it ceased again, as the time was not yet ripe; hence the verse continues, "and said to him, I am the Lord" (Ibid.). Only at the giving of the Law Moses was, as it were, healed of his impediment, when the Voice and the Utterance were united in him as their organ. Before that event the power which is Utterance guided Israel in the desert, but without expressing itself until they came to Sinai.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 26a

R. Judah interpreted in the same sense the verse from the Song of Songs (v. 5-6): "I rose up to open to my beloved, but my beloved hath withdrawn himself and was gone". As long as the Community of Israel is in exile the Voice is withdrawn from her and the Word does not function, as it says, "I am dumb with silence" (Ps. XXXIX, 3); and even when the Word does awaken, "my Beloved hath withdrawn Himself", i.e. it suddenly ceases, as it did at first with Moses.

The Voice went on: "And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob." The "and" (the Vau) symbolizes Jacob's superiority over the others, according to R. Judah. Said R. Jose: 'What of the verse, "I am the God of Abraham and of Isaac" (Gen. XXVIII, 13)?' R. Judah replied: 'When that was said, Jacob was included in Isaac, who was blind at that time, and a blind man is counted dead; for as long as a person is alive, the Holy Name is not joined to his name (i.e. the God of so-and-so), therefore Jacob was included in Isaac and not directly mentioned; but Jacob being now dead, the Holy Name could be connected with him. "By El Shaddai", that is to say, through the "non-luminous mirror" not the "luminous". This, however, does not mean that they were conversant with the "Female" only and no higher grade, for it continues: "And I have also established my Covenant with them", indicating that the Covenant was united with the Female in their perception. He who has the privilege of being a member of the Covenant, inherits the Land, as it says, "I have established my covenant with them to give them the land of Canaan." Said R. Simeon: 'It is written, "Be ye afraid of the sword, for wrath bringeth the punishments of the sword, that ye may know there is judgement". The "sword" is the one of which it says, "it shall avenge the covenant"; (Lev. XXVI, 25), it is the punishment awaiting him who nullifies the (sign) of the Covenant and thereby also the union of which it is a symbol. But he who brings the Covenant into its place and so guards it in purity becomes a channel of blessing both to the upper and lower worlds. Hence it says here, "Be ye afraid of the sword", for if this commandment does not awaken the sense of awe in a man, no other commandment will. Observe that as soon as the Israelites bestirred themselves to approach the Holy One and cried before Him, He "remembered His covenant". "Remembering" (Zachor) is always connected with the Covenant and its sign, for it is the awakening of the longing for union in the supernal spheres. Hence "I remembered my Covenant", to connect it with its proper place, and therefore "say unto the children of Israel, I am TETRAGRAMMATON" (v. 6.)' AND THE LORD SPAKE UNTO MOSES AND AARON AND GAVE THEM A CHARGE UNTO THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL AND UNTO PHARAOH. According to R. Jose, the charge consisted in this, that they should speak gently to Israel

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 26b

and respectfully to Pharaoh. Gently to Israel, for, although for the time being they were slaves, yet they were of royal descent. For this reason the section dealing with the names of the heads of the tribal families comes immediately after this verse (vv. 14-25). R. Hiya says that this is to show that they did not change their customs nor intermarry with the natives.

But according to R. Aha, the purpose is to introduce Moses and Aaron and to show that they were worthy to bring forth the people and to act as spokesmen before Pharaoh, for among the heads of the tribal families there were none like them. AND ELEAZAR, AARON'S SON, TOOK HIM ONE OF THE DAUGHTERS OF PUTIEL TO WIFE; AND SHE BARE HIM PHINEAS: THESE ARE THE HEADS OF THE FATHERS OF THE LEVITES ACCORDING TO THEIR FAMILIES. Why does it say "these are the heads" when the only one mentioned is Phineas? The truth is that because he saved thousands in Israel from the plague (v. Num. xxv, 8), by making atonement for the children of Israel and their chiefs, they are all included in him and he is referred to as "these". This expression also suggests that he in his own person compensated for the loss of the heads of the Levites (Nadab and Abihu, v. Lev. x): they sinned and were burned, but their souls found their abode in Phineas. They separated the sign of the Covenant from its place (by leaving no issue), and he came and united it again, therefore the heritage and spirit of both of them were given to him. All this is suggested already here. In fact, Phineas is mentioned here because at first the Holy One, foreseeing that Aaron's two sons would impair the Covenant, did not desire to join Aaron with Moses in his mission, but then seeing that Phineas would restore the Covenant and repair the mischief caused by them, considered him to be after all worthy, as it is written concerning him: "These are that Aaron" (v. 26), meaning, "it is the same (worthy) Aaron". It is further written: "These are (lit. this is) that Aaron and Moses". The singular number "this" suggests the oneness of the two, the fusion of "wind" (=Moses, who symbolizes the Sephirah, Tifereth) with "water" (=Aaron, Grace); similarly the expression in the following verse (28): "These are (lit. this is) that Moses and Aaron" suggests the fusion of "water" with "wind".

R. Eleazar and R. Abba once spent a night in an inn in Lydda. R. Eleazar expounded there the verse: "Know therefore this day and consider it in thine heart (lebabeka) that TETRAGRAMMATON is God in heaven above and upon the earth beneath; there is none else" (Deut. IV, 39), as follows. 'The use of the form lebabeka instead of libka suggests a plural, "hearts"; and what Moses meant was this: "If thou desirest to know that TETRAGRAMMATON and ELOHIM are one within the other and both are one, consider thine own 'hearts', i.e. thy two inclinations, the good and the evil, which are fused one with the other and form a unity". He also said that sinners impair the supernal world by causing a separation between the "Right" and the "Left". They really cause harm only to themselves, as it is written, "He (Israel) hath corrupted himself (lo) that they are not (lo) his children; it is their blemish" (Deut. XXXII /, 5). "Lo" (himself), and "lo" (not), in this verse suggest that they both cause and cause not: they cause, i.e. prevent the descent of blessings from above, as it is written: "and then the Lord's wrath be kindled against you and he shut up the heaven that there be no rain" (Deut. XI, 17); and they cause not, as the heaven keeps the blessings to itself. Thus the sinners' separation of the good inclination from the evil one by consciously cleaving to evil separates, as it were, the divine attribute of Grace from that of Judgement, the Right from the Left. Consider the tribes: Judah

emanated from the Left and clave to the Right, in order to conquer nations and that his hand might be "in the neck of his enemies" (Gen. XLIX, 8). Had he not clung to the Right, he would not have broken down their armies. But does not the Left awaken Judgement? The truth is that when He judges Israel He pushes them away from Him with His "Left Hand" but brings them near to Him with His "Right Hand", but with the Gentiles it is just the opposite, as it is written, "Thy right hand, O Lord, is become glorious in power; thy right hand, O Lord, hath dashed in pieces the enemy" (Ex. xv, 6). Therefore Judah, who is of the Left, clave to the Right, and the other tribes of his company (v. Numbers II) also clung to the Right; Issachar, who devoted himself to study of the Torah, which comes from the Right (Deut. XXXIII, 2: "from his right hand went a fiery law for them"), and Zebulun, who supported Issachar in his studies by supplying his material needs (cf. Gen. 24lb), also clave to the Right. Therefore Judah effected a double union: north with water, left with right. Reuben, who sinned towards his father, started with the Right, joined the Left and clave to it, therefore all who belonged to his company were of the Left, viz. Simeon, symbolized by an ox (cf. Gen. XLIX, 6), of which it says: "The face of an ox on the left" (Ezek. 1, 10), and Gad, who represents the left thigh (v. Zohar, Gen. 241b). Here the south was fused with fire, right with left. Thus this is the meaning of the words, "Know therefore this day, etc.", to unite the Right with the Left and so to "know that TETRAGRAMMATON is ELOHIM". Said R. Abba: 'Most assuredly so! "This Aaron and Moses"-this Moses and Aaron"; wind fused with water, water with wind.' R. Abba expounded in a similar way the verse: "Thou shalt love TETRAGRAMMATON thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul and with all thy strength" (Deut. VI, 5). 'The holy unification', he said, 'is intimated here, and an earnest appeal is made to man to declare the unity of the Holy Name with a supreme love; viz. "with all thy heart" (lebabka, as above), i.e. with the right and the left, with the good and the evil inclinations; "and with all thy soul", with the soul of David, which is placed between them; "and with all thy strength", i.e. to unite in mind the two Names (TETRAGRAMMATON and ELOHIM) in the transcendental sphere which passes all understanding. This is a perfect unification through the true love of God. Jacob, the unifier of sides (attributes), represents symbolically this love. This is the esoteric significance of the singular pronoun used in connection with Moses and Aaron: the two attributes which they represent are both fused into one, and there is no separation between them.' R. Judah found an example of the same thing in King David, who said of himself: "O, how I love thy Torah! It is my meditation all the day" (Ps. CIX, 97); "At midnight I rise to give thanks unto thee because of thy righteous judgements" (Ibid. v, 62). David guided his people like a shepherd so that they should not turn from the way of truth. During the day he studied the Law, in order to perfect himself in it, and at night he sang praises to the Holy One, blessed be He, until the morning, which he awakened, as he said: "Awake, my glory; awake, psalter and harp; I wake up the morning." During the day he sought to administer justice in order to fuse the Left with the

Right, and during the night he (sang praises) in order to make night also as it were a part of day. And observe that King David in his time brought all those "living creatures of the field" (Ps. CIV, 11) near the ocean, but as soon as Solomon obtained sway the ocean heaved up in its fulness and watered them. Which of them were the first to be given drink? It has already been stated that it was the huge supernal fishes, regarding which it is written, "and fill the waters in the seas" (Gen. I, 22). Said R.

Eleazar: 'Thirteen springs. [Tr.note: These are supposed to symbolize the forces of judgement which issue from the Sefirah Malkuth.] emerge in the upper world, on the right side, which give rise to thirteen deep streams. Of these streams, whilst some are rising others are falling, and their waters mingle with each other. These thirteen streams, issuing from thirteen springs, branch out besides into a thousand rivers, flowing in all directions, namely, four hundred and ninety-nine and a half to the one side, and four hundred and ninety-nine and a half to the other side, the remaining two half rivers being joined into one and metamorphosed into a Serpent, whose head is red as the rose, and whose scales are solid as iron, and who has fins by means of which he propels himself through all the rivers. When he raises his tail he strikes against all fishes coming in his way so that none of them dare stand in his path. His mouth emits a flaming fire. When he sets out to traverse the rivers, all the fishes fall a-trembling, take flight and precipitate themselves into the great ocean. Once every seventy years he crouches on the one side and once every seventy on the other side; the thousand rivers less one are thus filled with him. So he remains for a time; but when he bestirs himself there issues from him a strip of fire in his scales, which stand out and quiver, and the waters of the rivers become turbid and assume a dark-blue colour, and waves surge in every direction. He then lifts his tail and lashes with it upwards and downwards, so that everything flees before him; until finally a flame of fire is projected from the North and a proclamation goes forth, saying: "Arise, ye old females, [Tr.note: Alluding to Lilith, the night-demon, and her female retinue, According to the commentators, there is, besides old Lilith, also young Lilith, who is at the service of Asmodeus.] be scattered into all the four corners, for, behold, there is awakened the one who is about to put fetters on the jaws of the monster." So Scripture says: "And I will put hooks in thy jaws", etc. (Ezek. XXIX, 4). Then they all scatter, and the monster is seized and pierced through his jaws and thrust into the cavern of the great abyss, so that his power is broken. After that he is brought back to his rivers. This performance is repeated every seventy years in order to prevent him from doing damage to the heavenly regions and their foundations. For this we all give thanks and offer up praise, as it is written: "O come, let us bow down and bend the knee; let us kneel before the Lord our Maker" (Ps. xcv, 6). The superior dragons abide on high, to wit, those that were blessed, as we read: "And God blessed them" (Gen. I, 22). These rule over all the other fishes, of whom it is written, "and fill the waters in the seas" (Ibid.) Concerning this it is written: "How manifold are thy works, O Lord! In

wisdom hast thou made them all" (Ps. CIV, 24).'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 28a

SAY UNTO AARON, TAKE THY ROD. Why Aaron's rod, and not that of Moses? Because Moses' rod was more sacred, as in the upper Paradise the Holy Name had been engraved on it, and it was not the desire of the Holy One that it should be defiled by coming into contact with the rods of the Egyptian magicians. There was, however, yet another reason, namely, that all those (impure) powers that come from the Left might be subdued by Aaron, whose grade is that of the Right. R. Hiya asked R. Jose: 'As the Holy One knew that the Egyptian magicians were able to turn their rods into serpents, why did He command Moses and Aaron to perform this sign before Pharaoh? There was nothing wonderful in this to him.' R. Jose replied: 'Pharaoh's dominion originated with the Serpent, and therefore his punishment commenced with the serpent. When the magicians saw it they rejoiced because they knew that they could do the same, but then Aaron's serpent turned into a dry rod again, as it says, "and Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods" (v. 12). Then they were astonished, realizing that there was a superior Power on earth. Thus Aaron showed in fact a double sign, one above and one below: one above, by showing to Pharaoh that there was a higher Serpent which ruled over theirs, and one below by making wood subdue their serpents. Do not think that the magicians' performance was mere make-believe: their rods actually did "become serpents" (Ibid.). It is written: "Behold, I am against thee, Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great dragon (tanin) that lies in the midst of his rivers" (Ezek. XXIX, 4). It is from there that the Egyptian magicians derived their power of witchcraft, but the source of their wisdom was the lowest of all grades.' Observe that their wisdom consisted in subjecting the lowest grades to higher grades, the chiefs of their dominion. These in turn derive their power from the Dragon underneath whom they are situated, as is indicated by the phrase, "who is behind the mill" (Ex. XI, 5).

R. Hiya was sitting one day by the gate of Usha when he saw a bird flying behind R. Eleazar. He said to him: 'It looks as if even when you walk in the streets everyone wants to follow you!' R. Eleazar turned his head and saw the bird, and then he said: 'It must have some message for me. The Holy One has many messengers, and not living creatures only, "For the stone crieth out of the wall and the beam out of the timber answereth it" (Hab. II, 11). How careful, therefore, should a man be not to sin before the Holy One, blessed be He, in secret, imagining that no one can testify against him: the stones and stocks of a man's own house shall cry out against him. Aaron's rod was a piece of dry wood, and yet the Holy One used it for His first sign in Egypt, performing through it two miracles: it swallowed up their serpents, and for a time was turned into a living being. Curse

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 28b

[Note: the last 9 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in our translation.] on those who say that the Holy One will not raise the dead, because it seems to them an

impossibility! Let those fools who are far from the Torah and from the Holy One think a little. Aaron had in his hand a rod made of dry wood, the Holy One turned it to be a living creature for a short time, with spirit and body; can He not also, then, at the time when He will gladden the world, turn into a new creation those bodies which once had spirits and holy souls in them, who kept the commandments and studied the Law day and night, and which He had hidden for a time in the earth?' Said R. Hiya: 'And what is more, from the words, "Thy dead ones will live" (Isa. XXVI, 19), it is evident that not only will there be a new creation, but that the very bodies which were dead will rise, for one bone in the body remains intact, not decaying in the earth, and on the Resurrection Day the Holy One will soften it and make it like leaven in dough, and it will rise and expand on all sides, and the whole body and all its members will be formed from it, and then the Holy One will put spirit into it.' Said R. Eleazar: 'Assuredly so. And the bone will be softened by the dew, as it says: "Thy dead ones shall live... for thy dew is the dew of plants" (Ibid.).' TAKE THY ROD AND STRETCH OUT THY HAND UPON THE WATERS OF EGYPT, UPON THEIR STREAMS, UPON THEIR RIVERS... THAT THEY MAY BECOME BLOOD. Said R. Judah: 'How was this possible? Could one rod so be stretched over all this extent? Moreover, it says later, "And seven days were fulfilled after the Lord had smitten the river" (v. 25), only mentioning the river, and leaving out the other waters of Egypt upon which Aaron had stretched out his hand. The explanation is that the reference is to the River Nile, for out of this all the other rivers, streams, ponds, and pools are filled, so that Aaron needed but to smite that river and all the other waters were smitten. The proof is that it says, "And the Egyptians could not drink of the water of the river" (v. 21).' R. Abba said: 'Observe that the lower waters diverge and spread on every side, but the upper waters draw together and are concentrated in one place, [Tr.note: Yesod.] as it says: "Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place" (Gen. I, 9); and again, "And the gathering together of the waters called He seas"- as we have explained. The firmament in which the sun, the moon, the stars, and the plants are suspended is the great meeting place where the upper waters are gathered, and whence the earth, or lower world, is watered. She thereupon scatters and distributes these waters far and wide, in order that all things may be watered by them. When, however, chastisement impends over the world, then the lower world does not imbibe from that upper firmament of sun and moon, but from the "left side", concerning which it says: "The sword of the Lord is full of blood" (Isa. XXXIV, 6). Woe unto them who must drink from this cup! At such times the sea imbibes from both sides and divides itself into two parts, white and red (mercy and justice). Thus it was the lot of Egypt which was cast into the Nile, and the blow was inflicted both above and below. Therefore Israel drank water, but the Egyptians blood.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 29a

[Note: The first few lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in our translation.] 'Observe that when the Holy One, blessed be He, prepares to inflict chastisement upon the idolatrous nations, the "Left Side" awakens

and changes the whiteness of the moon to blood; then the ponds and the pools below are also filled with blood. So the punishment of the unrighteous is indeed blood. Further, when the doom of blood impends upon a people, it is the blood of slaughter executed by another people whom God brings against them. But against Egypt the Holy One, blessed be He, did not choose to raise up another nation, lest Israel, who dwelt in her midst, might also suffer. Therefore He punished the Egyptians by causing their streams to be changed into blood so that they could not drink from them. And as Egypt's supramundane power was centred in the Nile, the Holy One enforced His will first on that principality, so that the Nile being one of their divinities—their highest power might first of all be humbled. From the lesser idols also blood gushed out, as it is written: "And there may be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, both in vessels of wood and in vessels of stone" (Ibid.).

R. Hiya arose one night to study the Torah, R. Jose the lesser, who was still a youth, being with him. R. Hiya began by quoting: "Go thy way, eat thy bread with joy, and drink thy wine with a merry heart; for God now accepteth thy works" (Eccles. IX, 7). He said: 'What made Solomon say this? Truly, all Solomon's words were uttered in wisdom, and when a man walks in the way of the Holy One, He draws near to him and gives him peace and rest, so that he enjoys his bread and his wine, the Holy One being well pleased with him and his work.' Then said the young man: 'If this is all that the words mean, where is their great wisdom?' R. Hiya replied: 'My son, cook thy meat well [Tr.note:] Al. "When thou comest to ripeness] and thou wilt understand.' Said the youth: 'Even without cooking [Tr.note:] "Even before I ripen.,] I understood the meaning thereof.' Said R. Hiya: 'How so?' He replied: 'I have once heard from my father that in this verse Solomon admonishes man to crown the Community of Israel with joy, which is the "Right Side", represented by bread, and then with wine, which is the "Left Side", in order that she may be firm in faith, since complete and perfect joy is in the union of "Right" and "Left"; and when she is between the two the world is full of blessing, bounty, righteousness, and grace. And all this is accomplished when the Holy One, blessed be He, is satisfied with the works of the children of men.' R. Hiya then went up to him, kissed him, and said: 'Assuredly, I had intended to say this, but purposely left it to thee; [Tr.note: Al. "on account of thee," i.e. thinking thee too young.] and now I perceive that the Holy One desires to crown thee with the Torah.'

R. Hiya then went on to expound the verse: SAY UNTO AARON, TAKE THY ROD, AND STRETCH OUT THY HAND OVER THE WATERS OF EGYPT. Why Aaron rather than Moses? he asked. 'Because the Holy One, blessed be He, said: Aaron represents the principle of water, and the Left Side is eager to draw the waters for himself. It is thus befitting that Aaron, who himself emanates from that side, should stir it up to take possession of the waters, whereby they will turn into blood. Observe that the lowest of the grades was first smitten.' Said R. Simeon: 'The Holy One, blessed be He, began with the lowest grade, smiting each one in succession with every finger of His hand; and when He reached the highest He Himself passed through

Egypt and slew all the firstborn of the land, as the firstborn represented the highest and choicest grade of all. Observe, further, that Pharaoh was the ruler of the waters, as it is written of him: "the great dragon that lieth in the midst of his rivers" (Ezek. XXIX, 3). For that reason the turning of his river into blood was the first plague. Then followed the frogs, who with mighty squealings and croakings entered the very entrails of the Egyptians. They emerged from the river on to the dry land, where they raised a noise all around until they fell dead in the interior of the houses. Esoterically speaking, the ten plagues were wrought by the mighty hand of the Almighty, by the hand that overpowered the grades

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 29b

of the Egyptian divinities, and confused their minds so that they remained helpless. Observe that all their grades, as soon as they emerged into the open to accomplish something that could be seen by all, became powerless to do anything. This was due to the mighty hand which pressed on them.' AND THE RIVER SHALL SWARM WITH FROGS, WHICH SHALL GO UP AND COME INTO THINE HOUSE. R. Simeon quoted here the verse: "A voice is heard in Ramah, lamentation and bitter weeping, Rachel weeping for her children, because they were not" (Jer. XXXI, 15). 'The Community of Israel is called "Rachel", as it says, "As a sheep (rahel) before her shearers is dumb" (Isa. LIII, 7). Why dumb? Because when other nations rule over her the voice departs from her and she becomes dumb. "Ramah" (lit. high) refers to the Jerusalem which is above. "Rachel weeping for her children": as long as Israel is in exile, Rachel weeps, for she is their Mother. "She refuseth to be comforted over her children for he (singular) is not": it ought to be "they are not" (enam); why is the singular used? Because it refers to Israel's Spouse (God), who is her "Voice", and has departed from her and they live in separation. It was not once only that Rachel wept over Israel, but whenever they are in exile she weeps over them so. Because of this the Holy One gave the Egyptians another kind of "voice", in the croaking of the frogs, who made a noise in their insides.' THEY SHALL COME INTO THY HOUSE AND THY SLEEPING-CHAMBER AND THY BED. The bed here is mentioned only in connection with Pharaoh, not with his servants and people. The reason is this. It is written concerning Sarah: "The princes of Pharaoh saw her and commended her before Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house" (Gen. XII, 15). The threefold repetition of "Pharaoh"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 30a

in this verse corresponds to the three Pharaohs, one in the time of Sarah, one in the time of Joseph, and one whom Moses punished with his rod. The first Pharaoh, seeing that Sarah was a beautiful woman, commanded his artists to make a likeness of her. They painted her picture on one of the walls of his bed-chamber, but he was not satisfied until they made a picture of her on wood, which he took with him to bed. Each successive Pharaoh used similarly to feast his eyes on that picture. For that reason Pharaoh was punished more severely than his subjects; the frogs entering even into his bed.

R. Abba said: 'Israel praise God day and night, and in response the Holy One, blessed be He, remembered them in Egypt and brought against Pharaoh creatures that remain still neither day nor night, to wit, the frogs, whose sounds never cease, in punishment for his having made heavy the burden of the holy people, who cease not day or night to chant praises to the Holy One, blessed be He. Through the croakings of the frogs no one in Egypt could converse with his neighbour; through them the very soil became polluted, and babes and young children died from their chatter. Why, it may be asked, were the Egyptians not able to slay them? The explanation is that for every one an Egyptian attempted to kill with a stick or a stone, six came forth out of its belly, running hither and thither, so that people refrained from touching them. Observe that ever so many streams and rivers rise out of the Supernal Sea, which in their courses

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 30b

divide and subdivide again into many other rivers and streams: and the portion that fell to the side of Egypt were waters swarming with such creatures. For all waters issuing from that sea breed various kinds of fishes, to wit, messengers sent into the world to carry out the will of their Master through the spirit of Wisdom. In regard to this a traditional text tells us that there are waters that breed wise men and other waters that breed foolish men, according to the various rivers that branch off into all sides. Now the Egyptian rivers breed masters of sorcery of various kinds, and of ten degrees, as enumerated in the verse, "one that useth divination, a soothsayer, or a charmer, or one that consulteth a ghost or a familiar spirit, or a necromancer" (Deut. XVIII, 10-11). Here we have ten species of sorcery. And at that time the Holy One, blessed be He, stretched forth His finger and disturbed the brooks and rivers of Egypt so that their fishes of wisdom were confounded: some waters turned into blood, others threw up small fishes of no account upon whom the spirit of sorcery never rested. Then there came upon them the plague called 'arob (lit. mixture, i.e. mixture of various beasts) which allegorically indicates that the Almighty confounded their magical arts so that their practitioners were not able to piece them together. Moreover, that confusion produced a mingling of a perverse and hybrid kind similar to those referred to in the words of Scripture, "thou shalt not sow thy field with two kinds of seed; neither shall there come upon thee a garment of two kinds of stuff mingled together" (Lev. XIX, 19). Many were then the legions that bestirred themselves above, but the Holy One, blessed be He, confounded them altogether; these mighty deeds which the Almighty performed in Egypt were accomplished by the raising of one of his hands against them, both on high and below. It was then that the wisdom of Egypt perished, as Scripture says: "and the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid" (Isa. XXIX, 14). Note further the pronouncement: "And I will confuse Egypt with Egypt" (Ibid. XIX, 2), that is to say, celestial Egypt with terrestrial Egypt. For the celestial legions are in charge of the terrestrial ones, and they both were altogether thrown in disorder. They were confused on high so that the Egyptians could not derive inspiration from the celestial sources as

formerly. It was with this object that the Almighty brought on them the 'arob, or mixture and confusion, manifested in a mixed horde of beasts that assailed them; as well as the plague of vermin, engendered from the dust of the earth. Observe that whatever is engendered on earth grows through the stimulus of a celestial Chieftain who has charge over it, and that all on earth is shaped after a celestial pattern. There are on high seven firmaments, and seven zones of earth. Correspondingly, in the lower world there are seven graded firmaments and seven zones of earth. These, as the Companions have expounded, are arranged like the rungs of a ladder, rising one above the other, and each zone has ten divisions, so that there are seventy in all. Each one of these is presided over by a Chieftain, and these seventy Chieftains have under their charge the seventy nations of the earth. These seventy earth-divisions, again, border on and surround the Holy Land, as Scripture says: "Behold, it is the couch of Solomon; threescore mighty men are about, of the mighty men of Israel" (S.S. III, 7), there being, in addition to the threescore mentioned, ten concealed among their number. All these surround the Holy Land. This alludes to the upper world, and the same is reproduced in the lower world. Now at that time the Holy One, blessed be He, stretched forth His finger over the zone that was allotted to the Egyptians, and a fiery flame passed through the whole tract and dried up all the alluvial soil, with the result that the dust of the earth generated vermin. It was Aaron that smote the dust, in order to show that the right hand of the Holy One, blessed be He, breaks His enemies, as we read: "Thy right hand, O Lord, dasheth in pieces the enemy" (Ex. xv, 6). The same punishment is destined to be meted out by the Holy One, blessed be He, to Rome the great Metropolis, as it is written: "And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone" (Isa. XXXIV, 9). Thus "all the dust of the earth became vermin throughout all the land of Egypt".

R. Judah and R. Hiya were once walking together. Said R. Hiya: 'When members of the Fellowship

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 31a

journey together they must be of one heart and mind, and should sinners or persons who have no place in the King's Palace chance to fall in with them, or to be in their company, they must separate from them. They should take example from Caleb, of whom it is written: "But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully..." (Num. XIV, 24). "Another spirit" signifies that Caleb separated himself from the other spies and went alone to Hebron in order to prostrate himself at the cave of Machpelah before the graves of the patriarchs; and Hebron was allotted to him as his inheritance, as it is written: "To him will I give the land that he hath trodden upon" (Deut. I, 36). And why was Hebron given to him? There is an esoteric reason for this, the same which also underlies David's connection with Hebron. For we find that when Saul died and David enquired of the Lord, "Shall I go up into any of the cities of Judah?", the answer was that he should go up into Hebron (2 Sam. II, 1). Now, since Saul was dead and David already the rightful king, why did he not at once proclaim his rule over the whole land? Why was it necessary for him to go to Hebron

and there become anointed as king over Judah only for seven years, not being declared monarch over the whole of Israel till after the death of Ish-Bosheth? Truly, the Holy One, blessed be His Name, had a deep purpose in this. The holy kingdom could not be fully established without first attaching itself to the patriarchs in Hebron. When that contact was established the kingdom was firmly erected with support from the world above, whose symbol, in David's case, was "seven years". seven being the number of perfection, because it contains all. So when it is said of the Temple, "And he built it seven years", the same perfection is suggested. Now, David desired to build the perfect kingdom here below as a counterpart of the Kingdom above; but before he could achieve his desire he had to acquire power for the task by attaching himself to the patriarchs for "seven" years. Thus only was he enabled to establish his kingdom in perfection, in the fashion of the Kingdom of supernal light: a kingdom never to be shaken. And, guided by a similar inspiration, Caleb also went to Hebron.'

R. Jose and R. Hezekiah were once going from Cappadocia to Lydda, and with them was a Jew driving a donkey heavily laden. Note: The last 13 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 31b

Note: The first 17 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.] On their way they arrived at a field where they noticed a number of animals dead and dying. They said: 'Undoubtedly, a cattle plague has broken out in this place.' The Judean then remarked as follows: 'The slaying of the flocks and herds in Egypt was of three kinds. One was through the murrain, one through the hail, and a third was limited to the firstborn. In regard to the first it is written: "Behold, the hand of the Lord is upon thy cattle which are in the field." Whereas previously it is written, "it is the finger of God" (Ex. VIII, 15), here it speaks of "the hand of the Lord", to wit, with all its five fingers, for the reason that five species of cattle were smitten, as enumerated in the passage, "upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the herds, and upon the flocks." They were smitten each one by one of the five fingers, and thus together by the hand of the Lord. Hence we read, "a very grievous murrain", signifying that the cattle died of themselves, suddenly and without any visible cause. Afterwards, as the Egyptians did not repent, the DeBeR (murrain) literally turned about its letters and became BaRaD (hail), which killed all those that survived. The difference between the two was that the former killed gently, and the latter with violence and with fury. Both, however, struck the same species, and by means of the five fingers.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 32a

Note: The first 9 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.]

R. Jose and R. Hiya were walking together. Said R. Jose to R. Hiya: 'Why art thou silent? Without converse on holy matters the walk is not profitable.' R. Hiya burst into tears and said: 'It is written, "Sarai was barren, she had no child" (Gen. XI, 30). Alas, alas! Alas for the time

when Hagar begat Ishmael!' Said R. Jose: 'Why? Did not Sarah afterwards conceive and bear a son of the holy stock?' R. Hiya answered: 'Thou seest and I see, but one may see more than another. And I have heard something from the mouth of R. Simeon, which makes me weep.' 'What is it?' 'I will tell you. Sarah was long in having a son of her own, and she said to Abraham: "I pray thee, go in unto my maid" (Gen. XVI, 2), and Hagar had a son by Abram, and Abram prayed to God: "O that Ishmael might live before thee!" Now, although the Holy One, blessed be He, promised Abraham that he would beget Isaac, yet Abraham was so attached to Ishmael, that the Holy One had to promise him: "As for Ishmael, I have heard thee: behold, I have blessed him... and I will make him a great nation" (Ibid. 20). Through his circumcision Ishmael entered into the holy covenant before Isaac was born. Now, for four hundred years the supramundane representative of Ishmael stood before the Holy One, blessed be He, and pleaded thus with him: "He who is circumcised, has he a portion in Thy Name?" "Yes." "But what then of Ishmael? Is he not circumcised? Why then has he no portion in Thy Name, like Isaac?" The Holy One answered: "Isaac was circumcised according to rule, [Tr. Note: i.e. with the peri'ah, or exposure of the flesh.] not so Ishmael; moreover the Israelites attach themselves to me from the eighth day of their birth, but the Ishmaelites for a long time are far from me." Said he: "Yet, as Ishmael has been circumcised, he ought to have a reward!", Woe, woe, that Ishmael was born into the world and was circumcised! What did the Holy One do? He banished the children of Ishmael from the heavenly communion and gave them instead a portion here below in the Holy Land, because of their circumcision. And they are destined to rule over the land a long time, so long as it is empty, just as their form of circumcision is empty and imperfect; and they will prevent Israel from returning to their own land until the merit of the children of Ishmael shall have become exhausted. And the sons of Ishmael will fight mighty battles in the world, and the sons of Edom will gather against them, and make war against them, some on land, others on sea, and some close to Jerusalem, and one shall prevail over the other, but the Holy Land will not be delivered to the sons of Edom. Then a nation from the furthest ends of the earth will rise against wicked Rome and fight against her for three months, and many nations will gather there and fall into the hands of that people, until all the sons of Edom will congregate against her from all the ends of the earth. Then the Holy One will rise against them, as it says: "A slaughter of the Lord in Bazrah and a great slaughter in the land of Edom" (Isa. XXXIV, 6). He will "take hold of the ends of the earth that the wicked might be shaken out of it" (Job XXXVIII, 13). He will wipe out the children of Ishmael from the Holy Land, and crush all the powers and principalities of the nations in the supramundane world, and only one power will remain above to rule over the nations of the world, namely the power representing Israel, as it is written: "The Lord is thy shadow at thy right hand" (Ps. CXXI, 5). For the Holy Name is at the Right, and the Torah is at the Right, and therefore all depends on the Right, and likewise the future salvation is at the Right, as it says: "Save with thy right hand" (Ps. LX, 7). Concerning that time it is written: "Then I will turn to the peoples a pure language that they may all call upon the name of the

Lord to serve him with one consent" (Haggai III, 9), and on that day "will the Lord be one and his name one" (Zech. XIV, 9). Blessed be the Lord for ever and ever. Amen and amen.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 32b

BO

AND THE LORD SAID UNTO MOSES, GO IN UNTO PHARAOH, FOR I HAVE HARDENED HIS HEART. R. Judah opened here with the verse: Blessed is the people that knows the joyful sound; O Lord, they shall walk in the light of thy countenance (Ps. LXXXIX, 16). He exclaimed: 'How important it is for man to walk in the ways of the Holy One, blessed be He, and keep the commandments of the Torah, that so he may be worthy of the world to come and triumph over all accusations, both on earth and in heaven! For as there are accusers of man here below, so there are also accusers above. But those who keep the commandments of the Torah and walk in righteousness, in fear of their Lord, will never lack intercessors in heaven, for is it not written: "If there be with him an angel-intercessor, one among a thousand... then he is gracious unto him, and saith, Deliver him from going down to the pit: I have found a ransom" (Job XXXIII, 23-24)?' Said R. Hiya to him: 'Why should man need an angel to intercede for him? Is it not written: "The Lord shall be thy confidence and shall keep thy foot from being taken" (Prov. III, 26); "The Lord shall keep thee from all evil" (Ps. CXXI, 7)? Yea, verily, the Holy One Himself beholdeth all that man does, whether it be good or evil, as it is written: "Can a man hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him?" (Jer. XXIII, 24).' R. Judah replied: 'Indeed, thou speakest truth! But it is also written that Satan said: "But put forth thine hand and touch his bone and his flesh", and that the Holy One Himself said to Satan, "And thou movest me against him" (Job II, 3-4); which proves that permission was given to the powers of the "other side" that they might so rise up against man on account of the deeds he had done in this world. And in all this the ways of the Holy One are hidden, and it is beyond me to follow them, for these are the statutes of the Holy One, which men must not examine too closely, save those who walk in the way of wisdom and so are in truth worthy to penetrate into the veiled paths of the Torah, and to comprehend the hidden truths contains therein.'

R. Eleazar then discoursed on the verse: And there was a day when the sons of God came to stand before the Lord, and Satan came also among them (Job I, 6). 'This "day" ', said he, 'was New Year's Day, on which the Holy One sits in judgement on the world. "The sons of God" are the supernal beings who are appointed to watch the actions of mankind. The expression "to stand before the Lord" is parallel to the verse, "All the hosts of heaven standing by him on his right hand and on his left" (I Kings XXII, 19). But in this verse it has a more special significance, viz. to make manifest the love of the Holy One for Israel. For these messengers who are appointed to watch over the works of men roam hither and thither throughout the world, gathering up the deeds of all creatures so that on New Year's Day, the day of judgement, they may stand before the Lord with

their burden of accusations. Yet of all the peoples of the earth, it is only one- Israel-whose works are examined by them carefully and in detail, for the Israelites are the Holy One's children in a particular sense, and when their works are not according to the Divine purpose, they actually weaken the power of the Holy One Himself, but when they do His will they, as it were, increase His power and might-"give strength to God" (Ps. LXVIII, 35). Thus "the sons of God", the supernal messengers, when they "stand" with their accusations against Israel, stand also "against ('al) God". "And Satan came also among them." "Also" signifies that

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 33a

he came with the set purpose of displaying his superior power as the greatest of all the celestial accusers and so making it difficult for Israel to obtain forgiveness. When the Holy One saw that they all came thus to accuse, "He said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? And Satan replied, From going to and fro in the land." Now we know that the control of all lands is entrusted to the supernal Chieftains, save that of the Land of Israel alone. Hence, when the Satan said "the land", God knew that he intended to accuse Israel, and therefore straightway asked him: "Hast thou considered my servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth? ", in order to divert him to another subject and make him leave Israel alone-like a shepherd who throws a lamb to a wolf in order to save the rest of the flock. Thereupon Satan left Israel and turned his attention to Job, saying: "Doth Job fear God for naught?", as if to say, "No wonder the servant fears the Master who gives him all that his heart desires! Remove thy providential care from him and then see what his fear and reverence will be worth!" Mark this! When in the hour of need something is thrown as a sop to the "other side"-like the lamb thrown to the wolf-the representative of the "other side" soon ceases to attack its original victim. This is the reason for the offering of a goat at the New Moon and on the Day of Atonement; for Satan occupies himself with these and leaves Israel in peace. Now the time had come for the "other side" to have its due from the whole seed of Abraham. For Satan had a case against Abraham for having brought as a sacrifice an animal instead of Isaac-an unlawful transaction, since it says, "he shall not alter it (an animal destined for sacrifice) nor change it" (Lev. XXVII, 10). His claim, therefore, was quite reasonable. Thus, from the time when Isaac was saved and an animal substituted for him as a sacrifice, the Holy One, blessed be He, apportioned unto Satan another branch of Abraham's family that he might accuse it, namely the (heathen) descendants of his brother Nahor, the family of Uz (and Job was from the land of Uz). Now Job was one of the closest counsellors of Pharaoh, and when the latter formed the intention of exterminating the children of Israel, Job advised him: "Do not kill them, but take their possessions from them and subject their bodies to severe toil." Then said the Holy One: "As thou livest, thou shalt be judged according to thine own judgements!" Therefore, when Satan said, "But put forth thine hand now and touch all that he has and touch his bone and his flesh" (V.11), the Lord placed in his power all Job's possessions and his flesh, only bidding him to "save his soul " (v. 12)-that is, his life. It is

true, the text says, "And thou movedst me against him to destroy him without cause" (Job. II, 3), which would seem to show that Job's sufferings were undeserved. We should, however, translate not "against him" (bo), but "in him", i.e. in his opinion, this being only Job's own idea, not the real fact.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 33b

R. Abba here interposed, saying: 'All that is correct to a point, but we have been taught that Satan, the "old but foolish king" (Eccl. IV, 13), has the right to accuse only individuals, not humanity as a whole; for the judgement of the world is executed by the Holy One Himself, as it says concerning those who built the Tower of Babel: "And the Lord came down to see" (Gen. XI, 5.); also in connection with Sodom and Gomorra: "I will go down now and see" (Ibid. XVIII, 21); for the Holy One would not rest satisfied to condemn the world to perdition merely on the strength of the word of Satan, who is the great accuser and whose only desire is to destroy the world. The truth is, however, that on New Year's Day two "sides" stand before the Holy One, blessed be He, for the reception of mankind. Those men of whom good deeds and repentance can be recorded are privileged to be inscribed in the roll of that side which is life and which brings forth life, and whoever is on its side is inscribed for life; but those whose works are evil are assigned to the other side, which is death. Sometimes, however, it happens that the world is, as it were, exactly balanced between the two. Then if there is but one righteous person to turn the scale, the world is saved; but if one wicked, then the whole world is condemned to death. And in just such a condition were the affairs of men in the time of Job, when the Accuser "stood before the Lord", eager to denounce the world. Straightway the Holy One asked him: "Hast thou considered my servant Job?" And as soon as Satan heard this name, he concentrated all his attention upon him. For this reason we are taught that it is wrong to isolate oneself and be separated from the corporate community, since one is then liable to be singled out and accused in the upper realm. Therefore the Shunammite woman said, "I dwell among my people" (2 Kings IV, 13), meaning that she had no desire to separate herself from the majority, having dwelt hitherto among her people and being known above merely as one with them. Job, however, was known apart from his people: he was singled out; and this was Satan's opportunity. Said he: "Doth Job fear God for naught? Hast not thou made an hedge about him and about his house?... " (Job 1, 9-10), meaning, "Take away all the good things with which thou hast endowed him, and he will curse thee to thy face (v. 11): he will leave thee and become attached to the 'other side'. At present he eats thy bread; take that away and we shall soon see of what stuff he is made and to whom he will cleave!" Whereupon "the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath is in thy hand" (v. 12). Thus permission was given to the Satan to persecute Job and to show that his motives were not really pure; for as soon as he was tried he left the right way and did not remain steadfast: "He did not sin with his lips" (II, 10), but he did sin in his mind, and later also in his speech. He did not, however, go so far as to attach himself to the "other side", as Satan had predicted. His trials lasted twelve months, for this is the space of time allotted to the "other side",

as, according to tradition, sinners are judged in Gehenna for twelve months. And because Job did not attach himself to the "other side", "the Lord blessed the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 34a

latter end of Job more than his beginning" (XLII, 12).

R. Simeon said: 'The Holy One, blessed be He, did not tempt Job in the same way as He tempted other righteous men; it does not say concerning him, as it says concerning Abraham (Gen. XXII, 1), that God tempted him. Abraham led with his own hands his only begotten son to be sacrificed to the Holy One, but Job gave nothing to Him. Indeed, he was not bidden to do anything of the kind, as God knew that he would not be equal to the trial. He was merely delivered to the Accuser, and the Holy One spurred Satan, through the medium of the attribute of Justice, to test him, as it says: "Hast thou considered my servant Job? "...'

Said R. Simeon: 'It is written concerning Cain that he brought a sacrifice "at the end of days" (Gen. IV, 8), and we have laid down that this expression indicates the "other side" (v. Zohar, Gen. 62b). And of Abel it says that "he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof" (Ibid. 4). The expression "he also" (gam hu) suggests that, unlike Cain, he brought his offering primarily to the Holy One, and spared only "the fat thereof" to the "other side"; whereas Cain offered primarily to the "other side", and gave only a part to the Holy One, and therefore his sacrifice was not accepted. Now we read in regard to Job that "his sons went and feasted... and sent and called for their three sisters to eat and to drink with them" (Job 1, 4). While they thus feasted and made merry the Accuser was daily present in their midst, but he could not prevail against them, as it is written: "Hast not thou made an hedge about him and about his house?" And when Job made sacrifices, he did not give Satan any part whatsoever, for it says, "He offered burnt-offerings according to the number of them all" (Ibid. 5), this being an offering which ascends ('olah) entirely on high, so that he gave no portion to the "other side". Had he done so, the Accuser would not have been able to prevail against him. Hence in the end he only took what was his due. As to the question which might be asked, why then did God allow Job to suffer thus, the answer would be that, had he given Satan his due, the "unholy side" would have separated itself from the holy, and so allowed the latter to ascend undisturbed into the highest spheres; but since he did not do so, the Holy One let justice be executed on him. Mark this! As Job kept evil separate from good and failed to fuse them, he was judged accordingly: first he experienced good, then what was evil, then again good. For man should be cognizant of both good and evil, and turn evil itself into good. This is a deep tenet of faith.'

R. Simeon continued: 'It is now fitting to reveal mysteries connected with that which is above and that which is below. Why is it written here, "Come (bo) unto Pharaoh"? Ought it not rather to have said "go" (lekh)? It is to indicate that the Holy One, blessed be He, guided Moses through a labyrinth right into the abode of a certain supernal mighty dragon-that is to say, Egypt's celestial representative- from whom many

lesser dragons emanate. Moses was afraid to approach him, because his roots are in supernal regions, and he only approached his subsidiary streams. When the Holy One saw that Moses feared the dragon, and that none of the supernal messengers was able to overcome him, He proclaimed: "Behold, I am against thee, Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great dragon (tanim) that lieth in the midst of his rivers, which hath said: My river is my own, and I have made it for myself" (Ezek. XXIX, 3). Yea, truly, the Lord Himself had to war against this dragon, and no lesser being. This is the mystery of the "great dragon" for those who are familiar with the esoteric lore.' Said R. Simeon further: 'It is written: "And God created the great dragons (taninim) and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind" (Gen. 1, 21). This verse', he said, 'we have already discussed, but the words "He created the great dragons" contain a yet more special and particular mystery: they refer

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 34b

to the Leviathan and his mate, which last was slain and is preserved by the Holy One for the regaling of the righteous (in the days of the Messiah). The great dragon reposes between nine rivers, the waters of which are turbulent; and there is a tenth river whose waters are calm, and into the depth of which the blessings of the waters of Paradise descend three times a year. Into this river the dragon enters, making there his habitation; and thence he sallies forth and swims down to the sea, and devours there fish of all kinds, and then returns again to the river. The nine swift rivers are banked by trees and fringed with flowers. The parent river issued from the Left Side and from it three drops fell into a certain channel, and each of the three was divided again into three, and every drop became a river. These are the nine rivers which flow through all the firmaments. And from the final moisture that remained when all the drops had issued forth yet another drop was formed, which issued gently, and of this drop was formed that tenth river, which flows calmly. Into this river also flows a drop from the blessings poured forth from the Right side by the "perennially flowing stream", and it is greater than all the rest. When the four rivers which flow out of the Garden of Eden divide, the one called Pison flows into and is fused with the calm tenth river of which we have spoken. Out of the calm river, thus augmented, are fed and filled all the other rivers; in each of which a dragon dwells, so that the number of the dragons is nine. And each of these nine has a hole in his head, and the great dragon as well, because each of them emits breath upwards and not downwards. It is written: "In the beginning God created..." and also "And God created the great dragons". This indicates that all the ten acts of Creation had their counterpart in these ten rivers, on each of which one of the dragons breathes heavily. Now, that great dragon, when he raises his fins, heaves up the waters around him, and all the earth is shaken and all the lesser dragons, and this takes place every seventy years.' Said R. Simeon: 'Verily, though the members of the Fellowship are students of the story of Creation, having knowledge of its wonders and perception of the paths of the Holy One, blessed be He, yet even among them there are few who know how

to interpret it in connection with the mystery of the great dragon. [Tr. Note: Here follows, in the original, an elaboration of the same theme belonging to a later section ("The Book of Concealed Mystery").]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 35a

Note: The Hebrew text does not appear in the translation as explained in the Translator's note on page 34b.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 35b

[Note: The first 16 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation as explained in the Translator's note on page 34b.] FOR THE LORD WILL PASS THROUGH.... R. Jose commented on the expression, "The Lord shall see the blood... and pass over". 'Does God then', he said, 'require a sign? Are not all secrets revealed to Him? The explanation, however, is that only when a thought-be it good or evil-is translated into action, does it bring about its due result above, whether for reward or punishment, saving only the intention of idolatry, of which it says, "Take heed to yourselves that your heart be not deceived" (Deut. XI, 16).' As to the significance of the hyssop, R. Jose explained that all the streets and market-places of the Egyptians were filled with idols, and all their houses with implements of magic to link them with lower "crowns", and therefore it was necessary to purge the doors with the hyssop, in order that these powers might be exorcised; and this was done in three places, namely upon the lintel and the two side-posts. THEREFORE THE LORD WILL PASS OVER THE DOOR AND WILL NOT SUFFER THE DESTROYER TO COME IN UNTO YOUR HOUSES, because he will see the design of His Holy Name upon the door. Said R. Judah: 'But if so, why was blood only required, seeing that, as we have been taught, the divine attributes are symbolized by three colours, white, red, and a colour which is between the two and combines both?' R. Jose replied: 'The blood was of two kinds, that of circumcision and that of the Passover lamb, the former symbolizing mercy and the latter justice.' 'Not so,' rejoined R. Judah. 'It is even as we have been taught, that the Holy One made the blood a symbol of mercy, as if there were white in it, and therefore it says: "And when I passed by thee and saw thee polluted in thine own blood, I said unto thee: In thy blood live" (Ezek. XVI, 6). To this end was the door smeared with blood in three places, viz. on two sides and in the middle.' R. Hezekiah, however, held that two kinds of blood appeared on the doors to represent the two "crowns" which were manifested at that moment in the regions above. R. Jose maintained that it was one crown consisting of two sides blended,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 36a

viz. mercy and justice. Said R. Abba: 'In how many ways does the Holy One show His lovingkindness to His people! A man builds a house; says the Holy One to him: "Write My Name and put it upon thy door (mezuzah), and thou wilt sit inside thy house and I will sit outside thy door and protect thee!" And here, in connection with the Passover, He says: "You inscribe on your doors the sign of the mystery of My Faith and I

shall protect you from the outside!" They inscribed the likeness of the Holy Name in the form of the letter He'. As the Holy Name was then turned from Mercy to Judgement, chastisement came into (God's) view at that time. Everything was turned into red, as a symbol of vengeance on Israel's enemy. Esoterically speaking, it is fitting to show below the colour corresponding to the state above, whether mercy or judgement. And as it was then even so shall it be in the future, as it says: "Who is this that cometh from Edom (=Rome), with dyed garments from Bozra?" (Isa. LXIII, 1); for He will clothe Himself entirely in judgement to avenge His people.' AND NONE OF YOU SHALL GO OUT AT THE DOOR.... The reason is found in the dictum of R. Isaac, that, when punishment impends over a place a man should not go out into the open, since, once the Destroyer is given leave, he does harm indiscriminately, and makes no distinction between the righteous and the unrighteous; therefore the people of God should hide themselves lest they be consumed in that vengeance which is the due of the Destroyer. R. Jose said that the same power which exercised judgement on the Egyptians was the agent of mercy to Israel, as it is written: "When I see the blood I will pass over you" (v. 13). For, as we have been taught, all the holy crowns above contain at one and the same time both judgement and mercy. R. Hezekiah drew the same inference from the verse, "And the Lord shall smite Egypt, smiting and healing" (Isa. XIX, 22), i.e. smiting the Egyptians and healing Israel, to wit, from the wound of circumcision, the phrase "the Lord will pass over the door" suggesting the "door" of the body, which is the place of circumcision. R. Simeon interpreted it in a similar way: at the moment when the night was divided and the Holy Crown (the Sefirah Kether) was moved to unite with the masculine principle which is the supernal Grace- for they never manifest themselves one without the other- one smote and the other healed. Also, "the Lord passed over the door": that door which is the opening of spirit and body. That circumcision is of such significance can be seen from Abraham: before he was circumcised he was, as it were, a closed vessel, impervious on all sides, but when he was circumcised, and the sign of the letter yod of the Holy Name was manifested in him, he became open to supernal influences, this being the inner meaning of the words, "he sat at the door of the tent in the heat of the day" (Gen. XVIII, 1), i.e. of the supernal holy Tent. R. Eleazar said that when the yod was manifested he received the glad tidings that Grace was confirmed with Righteousness. R. Abba said it refers to the tenth crown (that of Grace), with which he was then endowed, as indicated by the words "in the heat of the day", namely at the time when Grace predominates. According to another explanation,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 36b

the word "pass" here signifies that God passed over the pleadings of the lower crowns, which were connected with certain celestial crowns, and loosened them from their foundations, and did constraint to Himself in order to execute judgement on them and to guard Israel. And so whenever the word "pass" is used of the Almighty, it means "constraining or forcing Himself", whether to exercise mercy or severity. [Tr. Note: This explanation is based on the use in Talmudic Hebrew of the

expression "‘abar'al middothav" (lit. passed beyond his usual qualities), to mean "forcing or constraining oneself".] I AND IT CAME TO PASS THAT AT MIDNIGHT THE LORD SMOTE ALL THE FIRSTBORN IN THE LAND OF EGYPT. R. Hiya and R. Jose were once journeying from Usha to Lydda, the former mounted on an ass. Said R. Jose: 'Let us pause awhile and pray, for the time of the afternoon prayer is at hand and we have been taught particularly never to neglect this prayer. Why so? Because severity is then dominant, and therefore a man should pay special heed to this prayer.' R. Hiya descended and they recited their prayers, after which they continued on their way. As they journeyed, evening drew on, and they saw that the sun was setting. Said R. Hiya: 'Why art thou silent?' R. Jose replied: 'I was reflecting that the condition of mankind depends entirely on their leaders: when these are worthy, the world and all in it prosper, but when they are unworthy, woe to the world and woe to the people!' Said R. Hiya: 'Indeed thou speakest the truth, for it is written, "I saw all Israel scattered upon the hills as sheep that have not a shepherd, and the Lord said, These have no master; let them return every man to his house in peace" (I Kings XXII, 17). Instead of "let them return to" (yashubu) we should expect the text to say "let them stay in" (yeshbu be-) their houses, since they had as yet not left them! The explanation is that, as we have been taught, when the head (in this case, the king of Israel) is unworthy, the people are punished for his guilt, as David expressed it: "Lo, I have sinned... but these sheep what have they done?" (2 Sam. XXIV, 17); but as "these have no master (because Ahab was punished for his disobedience and killed in the battle) let them return... in peace". Thus, when the head of the people is punished, the people escape punishment, for then the attribute of Justice can claim no power over them (having already been appeased). And Jehoshaphat also would have been punished for joining Ahab had he not "cried out" (I Kings XXII, 32).'

As they thus proceeded on their journey, night came on. They said: 'What shall we do? Should we go on we shall be lost in the darkness, and to stay here may be dangerous.' So they turned off the road a little way, and sat down under a tree, keeping themselves awake by conversing on Scriptural subjects. At midnight they heard a sound, and lo, a hind passed by, crying loudly. R. Hiya and R. Jose started up, trembling. Then they heard a voice, proclaiming in a loud tone: 'Ye who are awake, arise! Ye who are sleeping, wake! Ye worlds prepare to meet your Lord.' Said R. Hiya: 'It must now be just midnight, and this is the voice that "maketh the hinds to travail" (Ibid.). The esoteric significance of it is as follows. At the hour when the Lord thus shows Himself in the Garden, all the Garden assembles and keeps close to Eden, from whence the stream of life flows forth into numerous channels. The Garden is called "the Bundle of Life", and in it the pious are beatified with the light of the world to come. And at the hour when the Holy One, blessed be He, reveals Himself to these saints, a voice is heard, crying: "Awake, O north wind, come, O thou south, blow upon my garden, may its spices flow out. Let my beloved into his garden come, his pleasant fruit to eat" (S.S. IV, 16). The "pleasant fruit" signifies the sacrifices which are offered to the Holy One out of the soul-essence of the

righteous. These offerings take place at midnight.'

After R. Hiya had spoken thus, he and R. Jose sat down. Said R. Jose: 'It has often seemed strange to me that the smiting of the Egyptian firstborn took place at midnight instead of by day, when its wonder would have been manifest to all; also that the firstborn of the "captives in the dungeon and the firstborn of the cattle" (Ex. XII, 29) died, and not the kings, princes, and warriors, as in the case of Sanherib, of whom it is written, "And the angel of the Lord slew in the camp of Assyria, etc." (2 Kings XIX, 35). On that occasion, tradition tells us, the whole camp consisted of kings, princes, and mighty men of war, so that one angel there must have shown

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 37a

more power than was shown here by God Himself.' Said R. Hiya: 'This is a good question, which I am unable to answer. However, I have heard that R. Simeon ben Yochai is at present "purifying the streets of Tiberias" (cf. Midrash, Gen. R. 170a), therefore let us go to him.' They remained beneath the tree until the morning, and then set forth. When they reached the place where R. Simeon was, they found him sitting deep in study, with an Haggadic book in his hand. He was commenting on the verse: "All nations are before Him as nothing and they are counted to him as less than nothing" (Isa. XL, 17). 'The word "nothing",' he said, 'describes the religion of the pagans, who do not bring the heavenly and the earthly into union and adopt a faith of folly; and they are "counted less than nothing", like chaff blown about by the wind.' He also interpreted the verse: "God created the (eth) heavens and the (eth) earth" (Gen. I, 1), referring the first eth to the Right Hand and the second to the Left Hand; and these two "stand together" (Isa. XLVIII, 13) through the agency of the Crown which is called zoth and which comprises both Mercy and Judgement. Thereupon R. Hiya said: 'Will our master allow us to explain why we have come? It is written: "and it came to pass that at midnight the Lord smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt", and from what we have just heard we gather that this verse contains the same idea which you have been expressing, so that we have just come at the right time to consult you.' R. Simeon prefaced his answer with a reference to the verse: "Who is like unto the Lord our God who dwelleth on high, and yet humbleth himself to behold the things that are in heaven and earth?" (Ps. CXIII, 5), which he expounded thus: ' "Who is like unto the Lord our God", who ascends to the highest spheres in order to be crowned with the supernal holy crown, the splendour of which is more resplendent than the glories of all lesser crowns; "and yet he humbleth himself" to descend from crown to crown, that is, from one sphere to another, from one abode of light to another, and each one lower than the last, and all this in order to exercise His providential care for the higher and lower worlds?' He then proceeded: 'Instead of "at midnight" in this passage we should have expected "about (ka-hazi) midnight", which was the phrase actually used by Moses when he predicted the event. Our colleagues, we know, explain that Moses used the word "about", so that, were the event not to occur at the exact second of midnight, the Egyptian astrologers should have no chance of calling

him a liar. But this hardly solves the difficulty, for in that case he should not have put the expression in the mouth of the Lord (Ex. XI, 4). Another difficulty is that Moses, when speaking of the death of the firstborn, referred to the "firstborn of the maidservant that is behind the mill" (v. 5), yet in our verse we read of the "firstborn of the captive that was in the house of the pit". And on top of all comes your question, which is the last straw that breaks the camel's back. The whole subject, however, is explained esoterically among "the reapers of the field", for it contains a supreme mystery, having been proclaimed by the faithful prophet, even Moses, of whom it is written, "Thou art fairer than the children of men; grace is poured into thy lips; therefore God hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 37b

above thy fellows" (Ps. XLV, 3, 8). "Thou art fairer than the children of men" refers to Seth and Enoch; "grace is put into thy lips" means that Moses was greater than Noah and his sons; "therefore God hath blessed thee" signifies that he was above Abraham and Isaac; "oil of gladness" suggests that Moses was greater than Jacob; and "above thy fellows" that he was above all other prophets. Could a man so great, who ascended to degrees not attained by any other, have spoken with such a lack of precision? The truth, however, is as follows. It is written: "Who is this that cometh out of the wilderness like pillars of smoke?" (S.S. III, 6). This smoke symbolizes the Crown which is called Zoth (lit. this, i.e. the Sefirah Malkuth- Kingdom) and "Woman"; as it is written, "This (le-zoth) shall be called woman" (Gen. II, 23). This Crown which is called zoth rules over the middle of the night, so that it is able to be at one and the same moment white to Israel and black to the heathens; and so long as the night is not divided it cannot perform this function, as we learn from the case of Abraham, for whom, as we are told, "the night divided against them" (Gen. XIV, 15). So here, Moses used the expression ka-ha.zoth, meaning thereby "when the night is divided", knowing that it would not perform its function till then; but the latter expression "in the middle" (lit. half) means "in the second half", which is always the period when this zoth executes judgements. As to the references to the "firstborn behind the mill", and to the "firstborn of the captive and of the cattle", they relate to the three grades of impurity, with all their spirits and powers, higher and lower, with whom Pharaoh, being himself the wildest of all his magicians, endeavoured to entangle the Israelites so subtly and so inextricably that they should never again be free. Here it was that the power of the Holy One, blessed be He, was revealed:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 38a

for He loosened all the bonds of impurity and broke all those "crowns" of magic, that His children might be liberated. Therefore it is written: "Who would not fear thee, O king of nations... forasmuch as among all the wise men of the nations and in all their kingdoms there is none like unto thee" (Jer. x, 7).'

Having spoken these things, R. Simeon wept, meditating on the greatness of the Lord; then he lifted up his voice, and said: "And so you thought this

passage a bundle of contradictions! But verily, the significance of the Exodus is great indeed! For this reason the Holy One, blessed be He, frequently reminds Israel of her deliverance, as when He says: "Who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt." (Ex. xx, 2). Now, as there are ten crowns above, so likewise there are ten such below; and all are concealed in the three grades symbolized by "the firstborn of Pharaoh", "the firstborn of the maidservant that is behind the mill", and "the firstborn of the cattle", by means of which Pharaoh sought to keep the Israelites captive for ever. Blessed indeed are ye, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, for whose sake the knots of magic were loosed, because the Holy One, blessed be He, recollected in His mercy and lovingkindness the indissoluble bonds of your faithfulness, as it says: "And the Lord remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob" (Ibid. II, 24). Festivals, Sabbaths, and all days of moment in Israel have this "remembrance" for their object and basis, therefore the deliverance from Egypt is mentioned in connection with such days. Truly, this "remembrance" is the foundation and root of the whole Torah, the basis of all the commandments and of the real faith of Israel. Now, as to your question why the last act did not take place by day, the fact is that in this connection there is an apparent contradiction, since on the one hand we read, "to-day come ye out" (Ex. XII, 4), and on the other, "The Lord thy God brought thee out of Egypt at night" (Deut. XVI, 1). However, it is true that Israel's essential redemption took place at night, because only at night does the Holy One exercise judgement, therefore it was night when the knots of sorcery were loosened and the bonds of darkness rent in twain; yet were they led out by day, before the eyes of the world, that all men might marvel at the works of the Lord; therefore they were freed "with a high hand, in front of all the Egyptians" (Num. XXXIII, 3).'

R. Simeon then ceased, and R. Hiya and R. Jose prostrated themselves before him and kissed his hand, saying, with tears in their eyes: 'Surely not only earthly creatures, but also celestial beings, look out from their abode to catch a sight of thee! The Holy One, blessed be He, built Jerusalem below as a counterpart of the Jerusalem above. He made the walls of the city and the gates thereof holy. None may enter the city unless the gates be opened for him, nor ascend unless the steps of the walls are firm. Who is able to open the gates of the city, who can fix the steps of the walls but R. Simeon ben Yochai? For it is he who opens the gates of the mysteries of wisdom, and fixes the ladder to the higher spheres! It is written, "Three times in the year all thy males shall be seen before the face of the Lord" (Ex. XXII, 17). Who then is this "face of the Lord"? None other than R. Simeon ben Yochai! And as to the reference to the "males" appearing before him, indeed only "the males of the males" (the truly manly, i.e. students of the esoteric lore) may draw near to him.'

R. Simeon continued: 'I have not yet finished answering your questions. You ask why the smiting of the firstborn took place at night. It was because then they were all at home, and not abroad in the fields. Further, tradition tells us that night was as bright as a day in Tamuz, therefore the whole Egyptian people could witness the mighty hand of the Holy One: "the night shined as the day; the darkness was as light"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 38b

(Ps. CXXXIX, 13). Nothing so miraculous was witnessed since the creation of the world. 'Come and see,' he said, 'it is written: "It is a night (leyl) of observations unto the Lord for bringing them out from the land of Egypt; this is that night (ha-layla) of the Lord, observations to all the children of Israel" (Ex. XII, 42). Now, why "observations" in plural, and "night" first in the masculine gender (layil), and then in the feminine (layla)? To indicate the union which took place on that night between the Masculine and Feminine aspects in the Divine attributes, and also the same union which will take place in the future Redemption: "As in the days of thy coming out of Egypt will I show unto him marvellous things" (Micah VII, 15).'

R. Hiya and R. Jose sat down and R. Simeon taught them the mysteries connected with the book of Leviticus, and they used to come every day and study with him. One day R. Simeon went out for a walk, and they, following, came upon him in a wood. They all sat down, and R. Simeon began to speak thus: 'It is written: "All things have I seen in the days of my vanity: there is a righteous man that perisheth in his righteousness, and there is a wicked man that longeth his life in wickedness" (Eccl. VII, 15). How could Solomon, the wisest among men, have spoken thus? He must have intended some inner meaning, for we see for ourselves that the ways of the Holy One, blessed be He, are not thus, for He "giveth every man according to his ways and according to the fruit of his works" (Jer. XVII, 10). But Solomon hinted here at two things. When the "eyes" of the Holy One "run to and fro through the whole earth" (Zech. IV, 10), and the world is full of sinners, their guilt is visited upon the one righteous of his generation, whereas God is patient with the wicked and waits for their repentance. If they do not repent, they are left without an intercessor, for "the righteous perisheth", i.e. he has been taken away from the world. It is on this account that the Rabbis have warned us to live only in a place which is the abode of men of pious deeds, and woe betide him who fixes his dwelling among the wicked! He will surely be "seized" for their sins! Conversely, when one lives among pious people one shares the reward of their goodness. Rab Hisda may serve as an example. Originally he lived among the Cappadocians, and suffered great poverty (cf. T. B. Shab. 140b) and many grievous ills; but when, after some time, he left those parts and removed to Sepphoris, all went well with him: he benefited both materially and spiritually, and he remarked, "all these blessings have come upon me because I have made my abode among people on whom the Holy One bestows His lovingkindness.'. There is, however, another explanation of the passage, arising out of another difficulty in the text. How could Solomon say, "All things have I seen in the days of my vanity (hebli)"? Did not Solomon attain to wisdom beyond all his contemporaries (I Kings v, 10, 11)? And did not his seven names-Solomon, Jedidiah, Agur, Jakeh, Ithiel, Lemuel, Koheleth (cf. Midrash Rabbah, Eccl. 1,2)- correspond to the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 39a

seven supernal grades, the greatest of which is

Koheleth, the essence of them all, signifying the supernal Holy Assembly of ten (Sephiroth)? Could he whose names thus symbolize grades of wisdom, and whose three books contain the whole essence of it—the Song of Songs representing Grace; Koheleth, Judgement; and Proverbs, Mercy—could such a one as he have said: “In the days of my vanity”, and “vanity of vanities”? However, hebel is here to be understood in the literal sense, namely “breath”, and conveys a very precious lesson. From the “breath” which issues out of the mouth the voice is formed, and according to the well-known dictum the world is upheld only by the merit of the “breath” of little school children who have not yet tasted sin. Breath is itself a mixture, being composed of air and moisture, and through it the world is carried on. Esoterically speaking, the breath of the little ones becomes “voice”, and spreads throughout the whole universe, so that they become the guardians of the world. Solomon inherited this “breath” from his father, and through it he saw with clear vision. Hence he said, “I have seen all things in the days of my breath (hebel)”. And what did he see? “The righteous perishing in his righteousness.” That is to say, if this breath emanates from the sphere of Judgement, then “a righteous man perisheth in his righteousness”; but when the breath derives from the attribute of Mercy, then it may happen that “there is a wicked man that prolongeth his life”. Therefore it says “in the days”, and not “in the day”, as it all depends on the “when” and the “whence” the “breath” emanates.’

As they thus sat listening to the master's expositions, they suddenly beheld smoke ascending and descending at a little distance, where there was a clearing in the wood. Said R. Simeon: ‘The ground has been heated by the light from above, and now this field emits an aroma of all spices, passing sweet. Let us remain here, for the Shekinah is present with us. It is “the smell of the field which the Lord hath blessed” (Gen. XXVII, 27).’ Presently he began to comment on this verse and referred to the tradition (cf. Midrash, Rab., Gen., LXV, 18; Zohar, Gen. 142b) that the “precious garments” which emitted a sweet odour when Jacob appeared before Isaac originally belonged to Adam, and in time came into the hands of Nimrod, “the mighty hunter”, and finally to Esau, who was also a hunter. ‘It has been remarked’, he said, ‘that these garments were made by the Holy One Himself (Gen. III, 21), by the agency of both Divine Names, TETRAGRAMMATON and Elohim, which is more than can be said for heaven and earth, which were created only by Elohim (Gen. I, 1). It is rather difficult to understand how they came to Esau. For in the first place we are told that God made garments for Eve also (Ibid.), and what became of these? And surely Adam and Eve would have been

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 39b

buried in them and not abandoned such a precious gift. The truth is, however, that no other human being ever wore those garments, which placed Adam and Eve on a par with supernal beings. And as for the “goodly raiment” which Rebekah put upon Jacob (Gen. XXVII, 15), this was royal apparel of silk and gold, which it is usual to keep in perfumes, and this is what Isaac smelt, and he said, “See the smell of my son” (Ibid. 27),

because he knew that the smell was so sweet on account of him. How, it may be asked, did Isaac know of “the smell of the field which the Lord hath blessed” (Ibid.)? From two sources, which are essentially the same. It says, “and Isaac went out to meditate in the field” (Gen. XXIV, 63). Why in the field? Did he not have a house or any other place in which to pray? The truth is that that field was actually the very one which Abraham bought from the sons of Heth, that field which was near the cave of Machpelah; and when Isaac passed it the Shekinah was present there and the field emitted holy heavenly aromas, and Isaac, recognizing the Presence, made it a regular place for his prayer. The second fact was that Isaac smelled the myrrh ascending from Mount Moriah. Thus, when Jacob approached him, the Paradisiacal savours brought back to him the recollection of the sweet odour he smelled in that field. ON THE TENTH DAY OF THIS MONTH THEY SHALL TAKE TO THEM A LAMB. According to R. Abba, the tenth day was chosen because on this day the Jubilee illumines the Moon (i.e. Binah communicates light to Malkuth); for of the Jubilee it is written: “On the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement” (Lev. XXIII, 27). “They shall take a lamb.” Why a lamb? Because it symbolized the power of the lowest “crown”, which the Holy One broke, the “crown” to which all the other inferior “crowns” cling, forming the unholy triad signified by the phrase, “lambs, menservants, and womenservants”, sent by Jacob to Esau, as a sop, as it were, to the evil powers which the latter represented. The Holy One said: “Do ye perform this act of slaughtering the Passover lamb, and I myself will nullify its power above. Do ye let it pass through fire (v. 8) here below, and I shall lead the impure principality which it represents through the fiery Stream.” And why was the lamb to be tied up on the tenth day and slaughtered on the fourteenth? Because, according to R. Abba, the four days corresponded to the four hundred years that Israel was subjected to the power of Egypt. And why was the slaughter performed in the evening? Because that is the time when judgement predominates above and below, and also because it was at this time (“between the evenings”) that Israel's exiles were foretold

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 40a

to Abraham, as it is written: “And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abraham, and lo, a horror of great darkness fell upon him” (Gen. xv, 12). “Horror” signifies one supernal “crown” which represents Egypt; “darkness” is a second such, representing Babylon; and “great” refers to the Edomite (Roman) exile, which was to be the hardest of all. Thus it is seen that the Israelites did not go out of Egypt until all the supernal powers and principalities which were Israel's enemies had been brought to nought; but when these things had come to pass the people were freed from their domination and brought under the holy and heavenly sway of the Holy One, blessed be He, and were joined to Him and to Him alone, as it is written: “For unto me the children of Israel are servants; they are my servants whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt” (Lev. xxv, 55). Similarly, R. Simeon interpreted the verse: “Even the first day ye shall put away leaven (hamez) out of your houses, for whosoever eateth

leavened bread (mahmezeth), etc.” (Ex. XII, 15). Said he: ‘Seor,hamez, and mahmezeth all mean one and the same thing, and are symbols of the same supernal grade, namely the powers appointed to represent all the other nations, which are pagan and enemies of Israel, and are termed variously “evil imagination”, “foreign domination”, “strange god”, and “other gods”.’ Said God to Israel: ‘All these years ye have been subject to an alien power, but now you are free men, you shall put away leaven, etc.’ Said R. Judah: ‘If so, why is leaven prohibited on these seven days only?’ R. Simeon answered: ‘This ceremony is only necessary when the Israelite requires to demonstrate the fact of his freedom. If a king raises a man to a high office, the latter will celebrate his elevation by rejoicing and donning costly festive garments for a few days; but subsequently he merely celebrates the anniversary as it comes round. The same is true of Israel: they, too, have each year their season of joy and gladness when they celebrate the high honour which the Holy One, blessed be He, showed them when He brought them out of the power of impurity into the invincible power of His holiness. Therefore it is written, “seven days ye shall eat mazoth (unleavened bread).”’ Said R. Simeon further: ‘The unleavened bread is called “the bread of poverty” (Deut. XVI, 3), because at that time the moon was not at full strength, the reason being that, although the Israelites were circumcised, the rite had not been completed by “peri’ah”, and therefore the seal of the covenant was not revealed in its complete form. But later, when this completion had been achieved—namely at Marah, where Moses “made for them a statute and an ordinance” (Ex. xv, 25)—the Holy One spake unto them, saying: “Until now ye have eaten the ‘bread of poverty’, but from now on your bread shall emanate from a far other region: ‘I will rain bread from heaven for you’ ” (Ibid. XVI, 4). This phrase means literally “from heaven”, that is, from the very centre of Grace, and not, as previously, from the blemished “Moon”. Therefore the holy Israelites observe as a memorial the anniversary of the days when they came under the wings of the Shekinah, and eat the bread which emanates from Her. And why was the rite not brought to its completion in Egypt? Because the Exodus would then have been delayed until those who had undergone this operation had recovered.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 40b

Observe that when the Israelites were about to enter the Holy Land, Moses described it as “a land wherein thou shalt eat bread without scarceness” (Deut. VIII, 9), in contrast to the “bread of misery, of poverty”, which was their food in Egypt, when the moon did not derive blessing and light from the sun, when she was not illumined by the Jubilee. And because they did not carry out the peritah in Egypt, the unification and harmonization of the Divine attributes was not manifested in its fulness. Why they continued to eat the “bread of poverty” in the land of Israel was in remembrance of Egypt.’ R. Simeon also connected the words, “Also on the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement” (Lev. XXIII, 27), with the words, “In the tenth day of this month” (Ex. XII, 3), used in regard to the Passover lamb; for the one “tenth day” is dependent on the other. [Tr. Note: From here to the end of the section (p. 43b) is from the Ray’a

Mehemna]. [Note: As mentioned in the preceding note, the printed volumes, both Hebrew and English, contain here a passage from the Raya Mehemna. In the CD version, it can be found in the “Raya Mehemna” menu choices for the Hebrew and English Zohar submenus. Look for pages 40b-43b.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 44a

BESHALAH

AND IT CAME TO PASS WHEN PHARAOH SENT AWAY THE PEOPLE, ETC R. Simeon discoursed here on the verse: “A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet upon shigionoth” (Hab. III, 1). ‘Why’, he said, ‘is this vision of Habakkuk designated “prayer”, a title unique in the prophetic writings? Why do we find only a prayer of Habakkuk and not of Isaiah or Jeremiah? To explain this we must go back to the tradition which says that he was the son of the Shunammite woman who befriended Elisha, and that his name contains an allusion to Elisha’s words,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 44b

”about this set time, according to the time of life, thou wilt embrace (hobeketh) a son” (2 Kings IV, 16). The promise was fulfilled, but the child subsequently died. Why? Because it was given to her and not to her husband; it came from the “feminine” region alone, and everything emanating from the feminine principle ends in death. Elisha, seeing that the child was dead, realized the reason; and therefore “he lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands, and he stretched himself upon the child, and the flesh of the child waxed warm” (Ibid. 34); that is to say, he connected him with another supernal region where there is an abundance of life, not uprooting the child from the former region, but awakening a new spirit from above and restoring his soul to him. “And the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes” (v. 35). Now this child became the prophet Habakkuk. The duplicate form of his name (Habakkuk instead of Habuk=embraced) suggests that he owed his life to two “embracings”: one of

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 45a

his mother (cf. v. 16), and one of Elisha, one coming from the sphere to which he was attached at first, and the other from the higher supernal grade. Hence his prophetic utterance took the form of a prayer, as issuing from the place to which he was first attached; and it was “upon shigionoth” (lit. errors), because the day on which his birth was announced was New Year’s day, when the “errors” of mankind are judged by the Almighty. Hence, whenever the spirit of prophecy was stirred in him, he trembled, saying: “O Lord, I have the report of thee, and I am afraid” (Hab. III, 2). Therefore he prayed: “O Lord, revive thy work (i.e. himself) in the midst of the years... in wrath remember mercy” (Ibid.). Moreover, the fact that it does not say shegioth (errors), but shigionoth, shows that the reference is to the musical instruments, like “shigayon of David” (PS. VII, 1), which were used by all the prophets (except Moses, who was independent of external aids to prophecy), in

order to enter into an ecstatic mood before receiving the spirit of prophecy (cf. I Sam. x, 5; 2 Kings III, 15), and Habakkuk needed the calming influence of music more than anybody.'

R. Simeon continued: 'When the children of Israel went out of Egypt their spirits were broken because of their past sufferings, and there was no energy left in them and no will to participate in the joy, singing and exultation of Moses and Miriam (Ex. xv, 1-21). But when all those celestial hosts and chariots who accompanied the Shekinah on the way from Egypt began to sing and to praise the Lord for His glorious deeds, the Holy One awakened the spirits of the Israelites, putting new life into them, and they who had tasted death were healed by His touch, as it is written: "And the Lord went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light" (Ex. XIII, 21). All the ways emitted healing savours which entered into their bodies, and the singing of the celestial hosts entered into their souls, filling their spirits with joy and gladness. Pharaoh, however, and his hosts, and all the celestial principalities of Egypt and the other heathen nations, followed them from behind, until they reached Etham, on the edge of the wilderness.' AND IT CAME TO PASS... THAT GOD LED THEM NOT THROUGH THE WAY OF THE LAND OF THE PHILISTINES, FOR IT WAS NEAR. That is to say, they were in near danger of breaking the oath which had been administered to Abraham by Abimelech king of Gerar in the land of the Philistines, that he should deal with his people "according to the kindness that I have done unto thee" (Gen XXI, 23, 24).

Mark the wondrous punishment that overtook the enemies of Israel. On the night of the Exodus there were three slayings in Egypt. First, the firstborn killed whomsoever they could lay hands on; then, the Holy One executed His judgement at midnight; and, lastly, Pharaoh, on seeing the havoc wrought upon his own household, himself arose and with bitterness and fury smote those princes and nobles who had advised him to persecute Israel. He rose up at midnight; yea, even at the hour and moment when the Holy One Himself began His judgement (Ex. XII, 30), did Pharaoh likewise rise up in wrath, and kill his officers and nobles,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 45b

just as a dog, if hit with a stone, goes and bites another dog. Having done this, Pharaoh roamed through the market-places crying, "Rise up and get you forth from among my people" (Ibid. v, 31); and in fear he added, "and bless me also" (v. 32), as if to say, "let me live". Then, so eager was he to be rid of them that he himself accompanied them, as it says, "he sent the people away" (beshallach, lit. escorted). AND GOD LED THE PEOPLE ABOUT THROUGH THE WAY OF THE WILDERNESS OF THE RED SEA. This was to pave the way for the manifestation of the Divine power at the Red Sea. R. Judah asked: 'Why was it that when the children of Israel were still in Egypt, and were not yet circumcised, nor in full communion with the Holy One, He yet spoke of them as "my people" (Ex. v, 1), and "my firstborn Israel" (Ibid. IV, 22), whereas now that they were circumcised, and had duly sacrificed the

Passover lamb, and were fully joined to the Holy One, they are referred to merely as "the people"? The answer is that they were spoken of not only here, but in many other places (e.g. Ex. XXXII, 1, 35)-as "the people" because of the "mixed multitude," which went out with them.'

R. Isaac and R. Judah were once journeying from Usha to Lud, and with them was a certain Jose driving a train of laden camels. On the way this Jose turned aside and misconducted himself with a heathen woman who was gathering herbs in a field near by. R. Isaac and R. Judah were greatly shocked, and the latter exclaimed: 'Let us abandon this journey, since God has given us a sign that we should not associate with this wicked man or have any further intercourse with him'. So they changed their course. On making inquiries they found that his mother was a heathen woman and that his father had been born in illegitimacy, and they blessed God for saving them from him. R. Isaac was reminded of the verse: "Fret not thyself because of the evildoers" (Ps. XXXVII, 1). 'The evildoers,' he said, 'as opposed to "sinners" or "wicked men", are those who defile themselves and all who come into contact with them.' Said R. Judah: 'One must indeed beware of making friends (re'im) with the evildoers (mere'im), lest one should suffer for their deeds and be included in their judgement. Mark this. Were it not for that "mixed multitude", which joined and mingled with the Israelites, the sin of the "golden calf" would never have been perpetrated, and the children of Israel would not have had to suffer for it as they did. Nay, but for that sin Israel would have been, then and forever, that which the Holy One had ordained them to be; namely, pure as the angels and free from all evil: free from death and free from the dominion of earthly powers. But that sin brought upon them death and subjection, and through it the tablets were broken and many thousands were slain. All this came from their association with the "mixed multitude"; and it was on their account that they are called here not "children of Israel", nor "Israel", nor "my people", but simply "the people"'. As for the expression in the same verse, "And the children of Israel went up harnessed out of the land of Egypt", this refers to the period before the "mixed multitude" joined them.' R. Jose objected that at the Red Sea Moses said to the Israelites, "the Egyptians whom ye have seen to-day ye shall see them again no more" (Ex. XIV, 13), and yet according to R. Isaac's interpretation they saw the "mixed multitude" every day. To this R. Judah answered that the "mixed multitude" were not Egyptians, but members of other peoples living in Egypt. Moreover, they had all been circumcised, and therefore would not in any case be called Egyptians. They were accepted as proselytes on the authority of Moses; for which reason

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 46a

it says in a later passage, "Go, get thee down, for thy people which thou hast brought out of Egypt have corrupted themselves" (Ex. XXXII, 7). AND THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL WENT UP ARMED (hamushim). This signifies that the "mixed multitude" numbered one in every five (hamishah). According to R. Jose, for every five pure Israelites there was one who belonged to the mixed multitude. R. Judah said

one in fifty (hamishim). R. Simeon saw in the word hamushim an allusion to the "Jubilee" which led them out of Egypt. For the same reason, fifty days had to pass before the Israelites received the Torah on Mount Sinai, since the Torah also emanated from that same region of the "Jubilee". AND MOSES TOOK THE BONES OF JOSEPH WITH HIM. Why did Moses do this rather than anyone else? Because Joseph was the leader in the descent into exile. Moreover, this was a sign of redemption to him, for Joseph "had strictly sworn the children of Israel" concerning it, the meaning of which has already been explained in another connection. Blessed be Moses, who, when the children of Israel were busy borrowing jewels from the Egyptians, saw to the fulfilment of the pledge given to Joseph! Some say that Joseph's coffin had been in the river Nile and Moses removed it from there by the power of the Holy Name; and that he also said: "Joseph, arise! The time of the redemption of Israel has arrived!" Some say that his body was buried among the kings of Egypt, and had to be removed from there. Others, again, hold that his body was put into the Nile in order that the Egyptians should not worship him as a god, and that Serah, the daughter of Asher, showed Moses the exact spot where it lay. [Tr. note: Cf. Midrash, Deut. Rabbah XI.] AND THE LORD WENT BEFORE THEM BY DAY. R. Jose discoursed upon the verse: To the chief musician, upon the hind of the morning (Ps. XXII, I). 'Great', he said, 'is the love which the Holy One, blessed be He, has lavished upon the Torah, in that all those who devote themselves to her are blessed for her sake. He who studies her diligently shall find favour in the upper and lower spheres, and the Holy One shall hearken to the words of such a one, and never leave him in this world or the world to come. The Torah must, however, be studied by day and by night, as Moses said to Joshua: "Thou shalt meditate therein day and night" (Joshua I, 8), and as it also says, "My covenant (shall be with thee) night and day" (Jer. XXXIII, 20). The night must be added to the day in order that the Holy Name may be with him in harmony and perfection. And as the day is not complete without the night, so the study of the Torah is not complete unless it is carried on by night as well as by day. The word "night" is commonly taken to include those evening hours which fall before midnight; but the real night only begins with the actual stroke of midnight, for at that moment the Holy One, blessed be He, enters the Garden of Eden in order to have joyous communion with the righteous. For this reason it behoves the pious man to rise also at that time, for then the Holy One and all the righteous in the Garden listen to his voice, as it is written, "Thou that dwellest in the gardens, the companions hearken to thy voice" (S.S. VIII, 3), and we refer this to the Community of Israel when she extols the Holy One by studying the Torah at night. Happy he who joins her in this praise! When morning dawns the Community of Israel still rejoices in her Lord, and He extends the sceptre of His grace over her and over every individual who participates in her rejoicings and communion with Him. It is on this account that the Community of Israel is known as "the hind of the morning".' Said R. Simeon: 'When the dawn is about to break the sky darkens: at that moment the Spouse enters her husband's chamber. On the other hand, when the sun is about to set, it grows light for an instant, and then night comes,

and the light is removed, and all the gates are closed; asses begin to bray, and dogs bark. But with the midnight the King arises, and the Matrona sings, and the King draws nigh to the gate of the Palace, and knocks thereon, crying, "Open unto me, my sister, my love!" (S.S. v, 2), and He enters in, and has joyous communion with the souls of the righteous. Then is he indeed blessed who at that moment shall arise to study the Torah. For all those who dwell in the palace of the Matrona arise at that time to sing praises to the King, but the praise which ascends from this far-away world is the most pleasing of all to the Holy One. When the night passes and the dawn breaks, at that moment when the sky is darkened, the King and the Shekinah unite in joy, and He reveals celestial and hidden beauties to Her and all Her train, and presents them all with gifts. Blessed indeed is he who is numbered among them!' AND THE LORD WALKED BEFORE THEM BY DAY. The expression "and the Lord" means the Holy One, blessed be He, and His Council.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 46b

'This illustrates what we have been taught,' said R. Isaac, 'namely, that the Patriarchs were the Shekinah's chariot. Abraham is indicated by the words "walked before them by day"; Isaac by "in a pillar of cloud"; Jacob by "to lead them the way"; and David by the words "by night in a pillar of fire"; and all these four formed a supernal holy Chariot, for the assistance and guardianship of Israel, to the end that she might walk in harmony, completeness and peace, and that the Fathers might behold the redemption of their children. TO GO BY DAY AND BY NIGHT. Why had the children of Israel thus to go by night as well as by day like a pack of runaways? Had they not the Holy One Himself to protect and to lead them? The reason, however, was in order that the harmony of the whole (i.e. of the divine attributes of Mercy and Justice, symbolized by day and night) might be manifested in them. As for the "pillar of fire", it rose up at night to give light on either side, and it was as a beacon unto the Egyptians, luring them on to pursue, in order that the name of the Holy One, blessed be He, might be glorified in their overthrow. Also, it was to mislead the Egyptians into thinking that it was all a mere accident. Therefore it was that they went day and night.' Said R. Abba: 'Blessed are the Israelites for that the Holy One brought them out from Egypt in order that they might be His portion and possession! Observe that Israel gained freedom from the side of the "Jubilee"; since it shall be thus once again in the future time, as it is written, "And it shall come to pass in that day that the great trumpet shall be blown" (Isa. XXVII, 13). Moreover, on account of that supernal "Jubilee" they waited fifty days before receiving the Torah on Mount Sinai. And as they walked by day so they also walked by night, so that the days should be perfect; and still they went in ease and comfort. When they received the Law fifty days had passed, each consisting of day and night, and each being but the half of one whole. Thus, after they had journeyed for fifty complete days, the light of the fifty days of the Jubilee shone upon them.' AND IT WAS TOLD THE KING OF EGYPT.... By whom was it told? According to R. Isaac, the magicians, who were Pharaoh's ministers, discovered by their dark arts that the Israelites walked both by day and by night, and

concluded that they were running away, the more so as they also observed that they did not take the direct route, but went by a devious way, as it says, "And they returned and encamped before Pi-Hahiroth". AND HE TOOK SIX HUNDRED CHOSEN CHARIOTS. R. Jose said that this number corresponded to the number of the Israelites who went on foot-six hundred thousand footmen (EX. XII, 37). The "chosen chariots" were meant as a counterpart to the fighting men, who formed the flower of Israel, while "all the chariots of Egypt" corresponded to the "little ones" of the Israelites. Pharaoh acted entirely on the advice of his sorcerers and magicians. The word "warriors" (shalishim, from shelishi, third) signifies that every chariot contained three warriors, and this was planned with a deep purpose, that they might correspond to the Supernal grades (Sephiroth), which also go in threes (viz. right, left, and intermediary). According to R. Isaac, however, shalishim means simply "supervisors", as in the Aramaic translation (Targum). R. Hiya illustrated from the verse, "The Lord shall punish the host of the high ones on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth" (Isa. XXIV, 21). 'When the Holy One', he said, 'shows favour unto the celestial representatives of a nation, granting them dominion and power, He deals similarly with the earthly nation which they represent; and when He lessens His favour and diminishes their power above, He does likewise below.' [Note: The last 6 lines of the Hebrew text are omitted from the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 47a

AND PHARAOH DREW NEAR. Said R. Jose: It has been pointed out that the word hikrib (drew near, lit. brought near) is in the causative form, signifying that he brought the Israelites near to God by repentance. So the Scripture says elsewhere, "O Lord, they have visited thee in trouble, they have poured out prayer when thy chastisement was upon them" (Isa. XXVI, 16), i.e. Israel do not turn to the Almighty when they are at ease, but only when they are "in trouble"; when He chastises them, then "they pour out prayer". They are like the dove in the story which took refuge from a hawk in the cleft of a rock and found a serpent there. They drew nigh unto the sea; but when they beheld how stormy it was, and how its waves roared and broke, fear overtook them. Then they looked back, and lo! there was Pharaoh with all his hosts and their manifold weapons! Their fear increased at this sight, and their terror knew no bounds. Then "they cried". Thus they came near to their heavenly Father, whose aid they invoked; and of this Pharaoh was indirectly the cause. AND MOSES SAID UNTO THE PEOPLE, FEAR YE NOT, STAND STILL AND SEE THE SALVATION OF THE LORD. Said R. Simeon: 'Blessed were the Israelites to have a shepherd like Moses! It is written: "Then he remembered the days of old, Moses his people" (Isa. LXIII, 11). This indicates that Moses was counted as of equal importance before the Lord with the whole people, and that the people's shepherd does not merely represent them, but actually is himself the people. If he is worthy, then is the whole people likewise worthy; and if he be not so, then is the whole people punished for his guilt, as we have shown on another occasion. "Stand still and see", i.e. "you have no occasion to fight, the Lord shall fight for you and ye

shall hold your peace". On that night the Holy One gathered together His whole celestial Family to judge Israel, and had it not been for the merit and intercession of their ancestors they would not have been left unscathed.' R. Judah said: 'The merit of Jacob protected them from punishment, as it says, "If it were not for the Lord who was on our side, may Israel say" (Ps. CXXIV, 2), where the reference is to the patriarch Israel.' THE LORD SHALL FIGHT FOR YOU AND YE SHALL HOLD YOUR PEACE. R. Abba discoursed here on the verse: If thou turn away thy foot from the Sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on my holy day" (Isa. LVIII, 13). He said: 'Blessed are the Israelites that of all nations the Holy One singled them out for fellowship with Him and gave them, out of love, the Torah and the Sabbath! The Sabbath, the holiest of days, the most restful, the most joyous! The Sabbath, which is equal in significance to the whole Torah, so that he who keeps the Sabbath keeps, as it were, the whole Torah. "And call the Sabbath a delight" (Ibid.): a delight for the soul, and a delight for the body; a delight for those who are above, and a delight for those that are below. "And call the Sabbath." Call it, invite it, as one invites an honoured guest and prepares everything bounteously and concentrates one's attention on him,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 47b

"not doing one's own ways, nor finding one's own pleasure, nor speaking (profane) words" (Ibid.). For every word that man speaks, whether it be good or bad, causes a vibration in the higher spheres, and he who disturbs the Sabbath joy by uttering profane words causes a blemish in the holy day. When one has been invited to the king's banquet he would commit a great offence against the king if he were to neglect him in order to converse with some other person: the Sabbath is such a banquet. The week days must be devoted to all needful occupations, with their corresponding vibrations above; on the Sabbath, however, the vibration must be caused entirely by religious acts and words, by the sanctification of the day. Here, however, when Pharaoh was about to start the battle against Israel, the Holy One did not wish His people to start any movement from below, because the awakening was to come from above, namely, from their ancestors, the Patriarchs, whose meritorious intercessions stood before the Holy One. Hence Moses said: "The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace", which means, "ye need not utter a word to cause a vibration above: the initiative has already come from there." It may be noted that the initials of the words Tetragrammaton yilahem lakem-"the Lord shall fight for you"-make a part of the Holy Name (of the seventy-two letters), as the members of the Fellowship have pointed out.'

R. Jose and R. Judah were once walking together. Said R. Jose: 'We have been taught that the Name TETRAGRAMMATON in every connection signifies mercy; even when it is related to war and judgement, the judgement is executed in mercy; but here we read, "TETRAGRAMMATON shall fight for you", and yet the attribute of mercy was not manifested at all in the Egyptians' defeat, for "there remained not so much as one of them" (v. 28).' R. Judah replied by quoting a remark of R. Simeon on this subject, showing that here

also mercy and kindness was manifested (in the execution of judgement). For when the Egyptians were drowned, the sea spat them out, while the earth refused to take in the bodies, until the Holy One, in order not to deprive them of the last honour, stretched out to the earth His right hand and commanded her to receive them, as is indicated by the words, "Thou stretchedst out thy right hand, the earth swallowed them" (xv, 12). Therefore the Israelites had to be silent, for had they caused an awakening from below, it was not the attribute of Mercy that they would have awakened, and so judgement would have been executed on the Egyptians without mercy, and the heavenly design would have been frustrated.' Said R. Jose: 'What of the verse: "And TETRAGRAMMATON will come out and fight against those nations" (Zech. XIV, 3)?' R. Judah replied: 'There also mercy will be shown in that God will allow them to die without suffering. In fact, this Name always signifies judgement in mercy, except in one connection, namely the war of the future, of which it says: "The Lord shall go forth as a giant... like a man of war" (Isa. XLII, 13). But even here all that is meant is that the judgement will be exceptionally severe, and mercy will still be fused with it: the particle "ke" (like) has a qualifying effect, showing that the Lord is only compared to a "giant" and to a "man of war"; and although He will exercise judgement, He will have mercy on those whom He created.' AND THE LORD SAID UNTO MOSES, WHEREFORE CRIEST THOU UNTO ME ? The significance of this question has been dealt with in the Book of Concealed Mystery, and the esoteric interpretation thereof belongs there. R. Judah connected this verse with the story of Jonah. 'We read there', he said, 'that "the Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah" (Jonah III, 1). Now the word minah (prepared) means strictly "to allot as a portion", as, for instance, when it says, "the king allotted them a daily provision" (Dan. I, 5); therefore in this case it would seem more appropriate

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 48a

to have said "and the Lord apportioned Jonah to the fish" than that the fish was prepared for Jonah. However, the fact is that the fish was a great boon to Jonah; for, once inside it, he was guarded from all the other fishes. Further, he beheld wondrous things there. He saw in the fish's belly an open space like unto the halls of a palace, and the two eyes of the fish shining like the sun at noon. Inside was a precious stone which illumined all around, and made visible to him all the wonders of the deep. If this was so, it may be asked, why does it say that he "called out of his affliction," (Ibid. II, 2), seeing that he was so well situated? The answer is, as R. Eleazar has told us, that when God saw Jonah enjoying himself with the sight, He said, "Was it for this that I brought thee in here", and straightway killed the fish. Then all the other fishes came round it and gnawed at its carcase from all sides so that Jonah found himself in dire straits, and it was then that he prayed "from out of the belly of sheol", to wit, of the dead fish. And the Holy One hearkened unto his prayer and brought the fish to life again, and lo! it arose from the sea and came up on to the land before the eyes of all, and it vomited out Jonah, and all saw the power of the Almighty. Now it is written, "And Jonah prayed unto the Lord his God out of the fish's belly"; i.e.

to the grade of the Deity to which he was attached. Similarly here: "And the Lord said unto Moses: Why criest thou unto me ?" (as much as to say, it is time to address a higher grade, viz. the Ancient of Days). And this is the significance of the words, "Speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward", i.e. from the grade they are at present addressing to a higher one.' BUT LIFT THOU UP THY ROD, AND STRETCH OUT THINE HAND OVER THE SEA, AND DIVIDE IT. This signifies: "Lift up thy rod, on which is engraved the Holy Name; stretch out thine hand with the side bearing this Holy Name, so that the waters, beholding it, may flee before the power that is in its letters. The other side of the rod will be used for other ends." Said R. Eleazar: 'How is it that the rod is termed sometimes "the rod of God" and sometimes "the rod of Moses"? R. Simeon replied: 'In the book of R. Hamnuna the ancient it is rightly remarked that the two names are equivalent, the purpose of the rod in either case being to stir up the powers of Geburah (Might, or Judgement). "Thine hand" indicates the Left Hand, which is that connected with Geburah. Woe', R. Simeon continued, 'unto those who are deaf to the lessons of the Torah, which it proclaims to them every day. Water originates from the side of Geburah and issues thence. Now, therefore, that God desired to dry up the water, why did He bid Moses use his left hand? The answer is that Moses was bidden to "lift up his staff" to dry the waters, and to "stretch forth his hand" to bring them back on the Egyptians, through the agency of Geburah-the two operations being distinct. What is called here "sea" is later called "deeps" (Ex. xv, 8). This shows that God performed one miracle within another: causing the deeps to congeal in the heart of the sea, so that "the children of Israel went on dry land in the midst of the sea" (xv 8, 19).'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 48b

AND HE TOOK OFF THEIR CHARIOT WHEELS THAT THEY DRAVE THEM HEAVILY. R. Simeon discoursed on the verse: Now I beheld the living creatures (Hayoth), and behold one wheel upon the earth by the living creatures, with his four faces (Ezek. I, 15). 'This verse', he said, 'we can explain as follows. The Holy One reveals His dominion and power in all things, a power which shall never be shaken. He manifested His power in the Patriarchs, and particularly in Jacob. Now Jacob is united with the Tree of Life, over which death has no dominion, since in it all life is contained, emanating from it unto all those who are in perfect union with it. For this reason Jacob did not really die. He died in a physical sense when "he gathered up his feet into the bed" (Gen. XLIX, 33), which bed is mysteriously called "the bed of Solomon" (S.S. III, 7), the bed of the "strange woman" whose "feet go down to death" (Prov. v, 5). But of all the Fathers the Holy One chose Jacob to be the centre of perfection and fulfilment, as it is written: "Jacob whom I have chosen" (Isa. XLI, 8). Mark also this! All the supernal hosts with their cohorts and lightful chariots of celestial speed are joined one to another, grade to grade, the lower to the higher, each to its counterpart; and above them all a holy "Living being" (Hayah) (cf. Ezek. I) is set, and all those myriads of armies move and rest according to its will and direction. This is that Living Creature to which all Hayoth are linked, as each is also to each, all

moving and swimming in the sea, concerning which it is written: "This is the great and wide sea, wherein are things creeping innumerable, both small and great beasts" (Ps. CIV, 25). Now, when the wheels of the sea arise all the boats which sail thereon do heave and toss, and air and waters are mightily stirred so that a great storm arises; and the fishes that dwell in the depths of the sea are whirled about by the violence of the tempest, and are buffeted towards the four corners of the earth, some to the east, and some to the west, some to the north, and some to the south; and there they are caught by the nets of fishermen, as they reach the ocean's shallower depths, where the sands of the shore slope down to meet the breakers of that sea. At that time the boats steer no course, either certain or uncharted, but only toss and heave in one place. At last a swift but subtle current arises amid the tumult of the stormy waters, and gradually their strife is stilled and peace descends upon the waves; then the boats steer a straight course for their bourne, and swerve not nor falter; concerning which it is written: "There go the ships; there is that Leviathan whom thou hast made to play therein" (Ibid. v, 26). And all the fishes of the sea gather to their places, and all the creatures rejoice over it and the Hayoth of the supernal fields, as it is written: "And all the beasts of the field play there" (Job XL, 20). Come and see! The likeness of that which is above is that which is below, and what is below is also in the sea, and the likeness of that which is above is that which is in the supernal sea, and what is below is also in the lower sea. As the higher sea has length and width and head and arms and hair and a body, so also the lower sea.' Said R. Simeon: 'How many chariots there are whose wheels run speedily, carrying the framework upon them without delay! Yet here "God made him drive heavily". We interpret these words of the heavenly chariot, which was the guardian angel of Egypt, and which then was rendered imperfect. There were many others dependent on this one, and when it lost its power the lower chariots lost their power, as it is written: "Behold, I will punish the multitude of No, and Pharaoh, and Egypt, with their gods, and their kings; even Pharaoh and all them that trust

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 49a

in him" (Jer. XLVI, 25). At that time Egypt's Principality was superior to that of all other nations, but as soon as its power was broken, the power of all the other nations was also broken, as it is written: "Then the dukes of Edom were amazed, the mighty men of Moab, trembling took hold upon them..." (Ex. xv, 15). For they were all in Egypt's vassalage, and were linked with Egypt and were dependent on her for their existence, and therefore when they heard the mighty works of the Holy One in Egypt, they lost courage, and fear and trembling fell upon them. Verily, as soon as Egypt's power was broken above, the power of all those who were joined to her was also broken. Therefore it says: "and removed the wheel (ofan) of his chariots, not "wheels", signifying that when this was removed all the chariots dependent on it were unable to proceed. Happy are the Israelites who are linked to the Holy One who chose them to be His portion: "Ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive to-day" (Deut. IV, 4). He brought them forth from the holy seed in order that they might be His portion, and therefore He gave them

His Torah, the holy one, the supernal one, which was hidden for two thousand years before the creation of the world. He gave it to them out of love, so that they may cleave to it. Now all the supernal hosts and chariots are linked to one another, grades to grades, lower to higher, wheels within wheels: and a holy Hayah is over them all, and all the multitudinous hosts and powers are under her direction and control; when she moves they move, when she rests they rest. Therefore when the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to bring the hosts of Pharaoh down even unto the depths, He first removed that supernal influence which led and directed all the other powers and principalities. When that guardian was removed the others could not continue on their way, and as soon as their power was removed the guardian of Egypt lost his power as well, and had to pass through the Fiery Stream, and thus the dominion of Egypt came to nought. Therefore the Egyptians said: "Let us flee from the face of Israel" (V. 25).'

Said R. Isaac: 'In that hour when the Israelites drew near to the sea, the Holy One summoned unto Him the great angel appointed over the sea, and said: "When I created this My world I appointed thee over the sea, making at the same time a pact with the waters that they should divide for My children in their time of need. Now their hour of trial is come, and they must cross the sea." Hence it says, "and the sea returned to his strength", the word "leethano" (his strength) suggesting "lithnao" (his compact). And when the Israelites reached the shore and there beheld the waves of the sea heaving and tossing, and lifting up their eyes beheld so close behind them Pharaoh and all his hosts, they were grievously affrighted, therefore crying out unto the Lord. "Also the sea saw and fled" (Ps. CXIV, 3). What saw it, and why did it flee? It saw the coffin of Joseph, the man who "fled and went outside" (Gen. XXXIX, 12). We likewise read that the Egyptians said "Let us flee". Why said they so? Because they suddenly perceived the land of Egypt as it were on fire.'

R. Hiya and R. Jose were once walking in the desert. Said R. Hiya to R. Jose: 'Let me tell you something. When the Holy One, blessed be He, wishes to remove a certain nation from its dominion on earth, He first removes or casts down its celestial representative; but not before another such is appointed in the first one's stead, in order that there should be no break in their service in heaven,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 49b

as it is written: "He giveth it (the kingdom) to whomsoever he will" (Dan. IV, 14).' 'Quite so!' rejoined R. Jose. Then he took up the thread of their discourse thus: "It is written: O Lord our God, how glorious is thy name over all the earth, who hast set (asher tenah) thy glory above the heavens (Ps. VIII, 2). The words "asher tenah" (lit. which set) in the second half of the sentence are peculiar; we should expect either asher natata (which Thou hast set), or simply tenah (imperative, set) without the "asher" (which, who). In reality, however, this passage contains the mystery of the deepest "river" which flows out of Paradise; and the "asher" is a reference to "Ehye asher ehye"-I shall be that which I shall be"; and of this river David prayed that it should

manifest itself above the heavens, in order that all the worlds might be united in one perfection and harmony of joy, and the Matrona (the Shekinah) be crowned by the King, and all the strength of the heathen nations be made as nought, and their dominion be ended, and their greatness be cast down, and all their power and glory vanish, that every one who cleaves unto the Shekinah should lift up his head, perceiving the glory of the Lord and dwelling in the peace of His Kingdom.'

Whilst the two were thus conversing, they saw a man approaching, who carried a bundle on his shoulders. On perceiving him R. Hiya exclaimed: 'Let us hurry on, since this man may be a heathen, or an ignoramus, and it would be wrong for us to travel in his company.' R. Jose, however, said: 'Nay, rather let us sit down here and wait till he comes up with us, since he may be a great and wise man.' So they waited by the roadside. After some time the stranger drew near: when he reached them he paused and addressed them, saying: 'The way by which you are going is dangerous, except for a large company together. I know of a different way which would be better for you, and I feel it incumbent on me to tell you so as not to transgress the commandment: "Thou shalt not put a stumbling block before the blind" (Lev. XIX, 14), for you are, as it were, indeed blind in regard to this road and its danger, and may risk your lives.' Said R. Jose: 'Blessed be the Merciful One for causing us to wait here till thou camest by!' So they joined him, and he told them not to speak till they should have left the spot. He then led them by a different road. When they were at a safe distance from the place where they had halted he said: 'Once on a time two priests, one a scholar and the other an ignoramus, passed along that road; and the latter rose against the former and killed him. Since that time anyone who passes the spot where the crime was committed is in danger of his life, for all the brigands and felons that dwell among the mountains do congregate there, and lie in wait for passers by, and fall upon all that venture by that way, and rob and kill them: and the Holy One requires the blood of that priest every day.'

The stranger then began to expound the verse: As yet shall he (Sanherib) remain in Nob that day, he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion (Isa. x, 32). He said: 'This passage has already been interpreted by the masters of the academy, but I shall give you an esoteric interpretation which I have learnt. "That day." Which day? Now it is written: "And Aaron took Elisheba the daughter of Aminadab to wife" (Ex. VI, 23). This, allegorically interpreted, refers to the Community of Israel, in which Aaron is the "friend of the Bride", to prepare the house, to serve her, to lead her to the King, in order that she may unite herself with him. From that time every priest who ministered in the Sanctuary had the same office as Aaron (to unite Israel with God). Achimelech was a great high priest, and all the priests who ministered under him were "friends of the Matrona", and when they were killed by king Saul the Matrona remained alone without her friend, and there was none to minister to her, to prepare her "house", and to lead her to the union with the King. Hence, from that day she passed to the "Left Side", and it has ever been lying in wait to fall upon the world. It killed Saul and his sons, and the kingship passed from

his line, and thousands and myriads of Israelites perished. And the guilt of that act hung over Israel until Sennacherib came and stirred it up again at Nob, the city of priests, the city of Achimelech. This is "the day-in Nob", the fateful day, when the Community of Israel lost her bridal "friend", when she remained without the "Right Hand" to join with the "Left", for the priest belongs to the Right Hand. "Gibeia of Saul is fled" (Ibid.): Saul is mentioned because he killed the priests and was the cause of the Right Hand being uprooted from the world. So also here: since that priest was killed, no one dares pass this spot, lest he endanger his life.' Said R. Jose to R. Hiya: 'Did I not say, perhaps he is a great man?' Then he applied to him the words, "Blessed be the man that findeth wisdom and the man that getteth understanding" (Prov. III, 13), saying: 'Such are

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 50a

we who found thee and acquired from thee a word of wisdom and were inspired with understanding to wait for thee! We are of those for whom the Holy One prepares a present when they are journeying, to wit, the manifestation of the Shekinah, as it says: "The path of the righteous is as the shining light, that shines more and more unto the perfect day" (Ibid. IV, 18).'

So they walked on. Then the man began to give an exposition of the verse: "A psalm of David. The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof; the world and they that dwell there" (Ps. XXIV, 1, 2). 'Sometimes', he said, 'the title is "of David a psalm", and sometimes "a psalm of David". What is the difference? "Of David a psalm" signifies, as here, that David sang concerning the Community of Israel; but "a psalm of David" signifies that he sang concerning himself. "The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof" refers to the Community of Israel and all the multitudes who are attached to her and are called "fulness". "The world and they that dwell therein" refers to the lower world called tebel, which is under the aegis of Judgement, as it is written: "He will judge the world (tebel) in righteousness" (Ibid. IX,9). Whether as individuals, or nations, or the whole world, they are all linked to this sphere of judgement. Behold, Pharaoh imbibed from that source, so that he and his whole people perished. As soon as this judgement was awakened against him his celestial guardian was removed from his dominion, shaken in his power, and all whom he represented on earth fell with him. This is the significance of the words, "and he took off their chariots' wheel", to wit, He annulled the power of their supernal guardian, and the result was that all the Egyptians died in the sea. Why in the sea? Because the supernal "sea" was roused against them and they were delivered into its hands.' Said R. Hiya 1: 'Quite so. And therefore it says: "His chosen captains also were drowned in the sea of Suph" (the Red Sea), for "Suph" suggests "soph", an end, namely the end of the grades of the supernal powers.' Said R. Hiya: 'The expression "that they drave them heavily" (bi-kebeduth), in this verse, is a proof that man receives measure for measure. Pharaoh made his heart "heavy" (kabad), and the Holy One drave him "heavily".' AND THE EGYPTIANS (Mizraim) SAID, LET US FLEE FROM THE FACE OF ISRAEL. Mizraim here signifies the celestial chief who was in charge of Egypt. Said R.

Jose: 'This presents a difficulty. For inasmuch as he was already removed from his dominion, how could he pursue the Israelites? But the truth is that in this sentence Mizraim signifies the Egyptians of this world, but in the second half of the verse, "for the Lord fighteth for them against the Egyptians", the term Mizraim refers to their chieftain on high. The verse thus amounts to saying that as their power was broken on high, so was their power broken below, and when the Egyptians perceived the overthrow of their celestial might and power, they said: "Let us flee from the face of Israel". Observe that when the Community of Israel bestirs itself, there is a stirring among all the legions attached to it, both on high and below, Israel rising above them all. For Israel derive their force from the body of the Tree of Life, and it is for this reason that Israel are attached to that Tree more closely than the idolatrous nations. And when they bestir themselves the power of all those who have sway over them is shattered. The celestial chieftain of Egypt oppressed Israel with all manner of hardship, but after he was crushed the lower kings were crushed with him. Hence the words of Scripture, "for the Lord fighteth them in Egypt", alluding to the celestial chieftains.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 50b

R. Hiya applied to the Community of Israel the verse: "She is like the merchant's ship; she bringeth her food from afar" (Prov. XXXI, 14). 'The Community of Israel', he said, 'indeed brings her salvation from afar, to wit, from a certain grade that rests upon her, through which are transmitted all the streams that flow into the sea. To this grade they return, to be emptied into the sea once more, so that there should be a perpetual flow, as it says, "to the place whence the rivers go, there they return to go" (Eccl. I, 7), once more to the sea. The name of this grade is Zaddik.' R. Isaac said: 'There is still a higher sphere in which is contained and consummated the love-union of the Divine aspects which are never thereafter separated.' R. Judah asked: 'Who is worthy to know of it?' R. Isaac replied: 'He who has a portion in the world to come.'

Said R. Abba: 'How many thousands, how many myriads, of celestial cohorts surround the Holy One and follow in His train! Princes of supernal countenances are there, and beings full of eyes; lords of the sharp weapons, lords of the piercing cry, lords of the heralding trumpet, lords of mercy, lords of judgement; and above them the Lord has appointed the Matrona to minister before Him in the Palace. She for her own bodyguard has armed hosts of sixty different degrees. Holding their swords, they stand around Her. They come and go, entering and departing again on the errands of their Master. Each with his six wings outspread they circle the world in swift and silent flight. Before each of them coals of fire burn. Their garments are woven of flames from a bright and burning fire. A sharp flaming sword also is at the shoulder of each to guard

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 51a

Her. Concerning these swords it is written: "The flaming sword which turned every way to keep the way of the tree of life" (Gen. III, 23). Now, what is "the way of the

Tree of Life"? This is the great Matrona who is the way to the great and mighty Tree of Life. Concerning this it is written: "Behold the bed which is Solomon's; the three score valiant men are about it, of the valiant of Israel" (S.S. III, 7), namely, the Supernal Israel. "They all hold swords" (Ibid. 8), and when the Matrona moves they all move with her, as it is written: "and the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them" (Ex. XIV, 19). Is, then, the Shekinah called "the angel of the Lord"? Assuredly! For thus said R. Simeon: "The Holy One prepared for Himself a holy Palace, a supernal Palace, a holy City, a supernal City, which is called 'Jerusalem, the holy city'. He who wishes to see the King, must enter through this holy City and thence take his way to the King: 'this is the gate of the Lord into which the righteous shall enter' (Ps. CXVIII, 20)." Every message which the King wishes to send out is sent through the Matrona, and, conversely, every message sent from the lower spheres to the King must first reach the Matrona, and from her it goes to the King. Thus the Matrona is the messenger between the upper regions and the lower. For this reason she is called "the angel (messenger) of God". It may be asked, is it consonant with the dignity of the King that the Matrona should declare war for him and receive petitions to him? The following parable may explain. A king married a noble lady, whose worth he esteemed so highly that in comparison with her he regarded all other women as a mere vulgar herd. "What shall I do to honour her?" he thought. "I will give her full control over the palace and over my whole household!" So he made a proclamation that all the king's business should pass through the hands of the queen. He also handed over to her all the weapons of war, all his military advisers and generals, all his regalia, and indeed all his treasures of every sort, and said: "From now anyone who wishes to speak to me must first make known his suit unto the queen." Similarly, the Holy One, blessed be He, out of His great love for the Community of Israel (represented by the Shekinah) has entrusted everything to her (i.e. the Shekinah), proclaiming all the other nations to be of no account in comparison with her. "There are threescore queens, and fourscore concubines, and virgins without number; but my dove, my undefiled is but one" (S.S. VI, 8, 9). He resolved that His whole household be given into her keeping, and delivered to her all his armoury, all the lances, all the swords, all the bows, all the arrows, all the spears, all the catapults, all the citadels, and all weapons of warfare, the "sixty valiant men, the valiant of Israel". He said: "From now let My warfare be entrusted to Thee; My weapons, My fighters! From now Thou must guard them all. From now, he who wishes to speak to Me must first make known his concerns to Thee! " Hence "the angel of God went behind them." Why behind them? In order to face all the grades of fighting principalities and powers, all the hosts of celestial representatives of the enemy who had come to fight against Israel. For, as we have learnt, at that hour the greatest prince appointed to represent Egypt in the supernal spheres arrived and with him six hundred chariots, directed by six hundred angelic adversaries of Israel. That prince was Samael.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 51b

When did the Holy One requite him? In the battle of

Sisera, when He rooted out all those chariots and delivered them unto the Matrona, as it is written, in the Song of Deborah: "The river Kishon swept them away, that ancient river, the river Kishon" (Jud. v, 21). And in the future all of them shall be delivered up, as it says: "Who is this that cometh from Edom...?" (Isa. LXIII, 1). And this indeed is the significance of the words: "And he went behind them" that the Shekinah will uproot them all at the end of days.' AND THE PILLAR OF THE CLOUD REMOVED FROM BEFORE THEM AND STOOD BEHIND THEM. What was this pillar of cloud? R. Jose said that it was the cloud which is always seen with the Shekinah, the cloud into which Moses entered (Ex. XXIV, 18). R. Abba said that it was that which supports the Zaddik, coming from the side of Grace (Hesed), wherefore it went by day, while there was another cloud which went by night and was called "pillar of fire". R. Simeon said that the pillar of cloud by day represented Abraham (Mercy), and the pillar of fire by night, Isaac (Severity), both attributes being united in the Shekinah, through the agency of the grade mentioned by R. Abba. 'The word "removed", in this sentence', he said, 'implies that there was a movement from Grace to Severity, for the time had arrived for the Holy One to clothe Himself with judgement.' R. Simeon further said that the "Moon"-the Shekinah-was then in her fulness and perfection, manifesting both attributes and representing in herself seventy-two holy Names according to the threefold order. [Tr. note: Of the letters of the three verses, Ex. XIV, 19-21, containing the mysterious Divine Name of seventy-two letters, and producing, when combined according to certain rules, no less than seventy-two other distinct names.] In virtue of the first order of letters, she clothed herself with the garment of Grace, shining with the resplendence of the light which the Supernal Father caused to shine for her; in virtue of the second she adorned herself with the implements of war, expressing Severity, and sixty "whips" of fire, emanating from the Supernal Mother. The third order of the letters represents Her in garments of purple, the adornment of the Holy Supernal Father, designated "Beauty" (Tiphereth), which is communicated to the Holy Son (i.e. the letter Vau in the Tetragrammaton) in seventy crowns from the side of the Father (Yod) and of the Mother (He,). We have been taught that from the side of Grace there are seventy-two witnesses; from the side of Severity, seventy-two scribes; from the side of Beauty, seventy-two colours of glory. In the transcendent sphere they are all linked one to the other, forming the Holy Name, the mystery of the Divine Chariot. Here (in the three verses, Ex. XIV, 19-21) are inscribed the patriarchs in unison, forming the Holy Name of seventy-two letters [Tr. note: each of these verses in the original contains 72 letters--a fact to which the Cabbalists attached a mystic significance.] of the three verses. And this is the order of their combination: the first verse (19) is to be written straight, for all its initial letters are found in Hesed; the second verse (20) is to be written backward, for all its second letters are found in Geburah; in this way Judgement may be roused, with all those powers that emanate from the left side. The letters of the third verse when written out show forth the colours which crown the Holy King; and all these letters are united in Him, and He is crowned with His diadems in the proper manner, like a king fully crowned. Here is the Holy Name engraved in seventy-

two letters, which are crowned with the Fathers who are the supernal Holy Chariot. Should the question arise, why the third group is not to be written partly straightforward and partly backwards, so as to be in touch with both sides (as Tifereth is in touch with both Hesed and Geburah), we must picture a king who combines in himself the balance and harmony of all attributes, and therefore his countenance always shines like the sun, and he is serene because of his wholeness and perfection; but when he judges, he can condemn as well as acquit. A fool, seeing that the king's countenance is bright, thinks that there is nothing to be afraid of; but a wise man says to himself, "although the king's countenance shines, it is because he is perfect and combines benevolence with justice, and in that brightness judgement

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 52a

is hidden, and therefore I must be careful". The Holy One is such a king. R. Judah found this idea expressed in the words: "I, the Lord, have not changed" (Mal. III, 6), meaning, "in Me all the attributes are harmoniously combined, the two aspects of mercy and severity are one in Me."

Said R. Simeon: 'Eleazar my son, observe this. When the Holy Ancient illumines the King, He crowns Him with supernal holy crowns. When these reach Him the Fathers are crowned, and there is completeness. Then the Matrona, participating in this celestial procession, is crowned by them all and is endowed with the power issuing from all of them.'

Said R. Isaac: 'When the Israelites encamped by the sea they saw many hosts,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 52b

many armies, many camps, above and below, all united against Israel, and in their distress they prayed unto the Lord. The sea was stormy, its waves roared, behind them were all those hosts, all those armies of the Egyptians, and above them were all those celestial foes; and they began to cry to God. Then "the Lord said unto Moses: Why criest thou unto me?" Then the Most Holy Ancient One appeared, and Mercy was manifested in all the upper worlds and all the lights were lit.' R. Isaac said: 'When the lights were lit the Sea began to exercise supreme judgements, and the upper and lower beings and powers were delivered unto its hands: hence the expression, "as difficult as the dividing of the Red Sea", because this depended on the Holy Ancient One.' Said R. Simeon: 'There is a certain hind on earth for which the Holy One, blessed be He, does many things: when she cries He hearkens to her afflictions and delivers her. When the world is in need of mercy, of water, she cries aloud and the Holy One answers her prayer. This is signified by the verse: "As the hind panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God" (Ps. XLII, 2). When she is about to bear a child and is in difficulty, she puts her head between her knees, and cries bitterly, and the Holy One sends a serpent which stings the place, and straightway deliverance comes to her.' R. Simeon, however, added: 'In this matter, "thou must not ask nor tempt the Lord".' **THUS THE LORD SAVED ISRAEL...**

AND ISRAEL SAW THE EGYPTIAN(S) DEAD. God showed them Egypt's celestial chieftain passing through the fiery stream, which was at the shore of the Ocean. "Dead" means that he was deprived of his power. AND ISRAEL SAW THE GREAT HAND.... R. Hiya said: 'Here was the Supernal Hand completed with all its fingers, and the Left Hand was included-as in its perfect manifestation it must ever be-in the five fingers of the Right Hand. For we have been taught that all is included in this Right Hand and all depends upon it, as it is written, "Thy right hand, O Lord, is become glorious in power; thy right hand, O Lord, hath dashed in pieces the enemy" (Ibid. xv, 6).' R. Isaac said: 'No one ever hardened his heart against the Lord to the same degree as Pharaoh.' Said R. Jose: 'What of Sihon and Og? Were they not equally hardened?' R. Isaac answered, that whereas they hardened their hearts against Israel, Pharaoh turned against the Lord Himself, although every day he witnessed His wonderful works. R. Judah said in the name of R. Isaac that Pharaoh was himself far wiser than all his sorcerers, yet by all the craft of his magic he could not divine there was a possibility of redemption for Israel: for he had knowledge of all the supernal sources inimical to the Israelites, but knew not that there was still another bond, the bond of Faith, which dominates all, and therefore he hardened his heart. According to R. Abba, it was the Holy Name which hardened Pharaoh's heart, for when Moses said to him: "Thus said TETRAGRAMMATON," this very Name hardened his heart: "And TETRAGRAMMATON hardened the heart of Pharaoh", for with all his wisdom he was not aware that this Name has power on earth, and said: "Who is TETRAGRAMMATON?" R. Jose remarked that later he did say: "I have sinned to TETRAGRAMMATON, TETRAGRAMMATON is the righteous" (Ex. IX, 27). R. Hiya said: 'Job was thinking of Pharaoh when he said, "It is all one thing, therefore I said: He destroyeth the perfect and the wicked" (Job IX, 22). The words "it is all one thing" have an esoteric meaning. They refer to a certain Crown also referred to in the verse, "My love, my undefiled is but one" (VI, 9), and when God judges by means of this Crown, then "He destroyeth the perfect and the wicked",

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, page 53a

for the righteous are then punished for the guilt of the wicked, as it is written: "He said to the angel that destroyed the people, It is enough" (2 Sam. XXIV, 16). Job, when he said these words, was thinking of his own fate in being made to suffer with the Egyptians, but he did not finish his observation.' Said R. Hiya: 'When Job saw how he suffered, he said: "If this is so, then God makes no distinction between wicked and righteous. Pharaoh hardened his heart, and said, "Who is TETRAGRAMMATON, whose voice I should hear?", and he deserved punishment; but I have not done anything of the kind, why should I have such a fate? "For it was of him that it is written, "He that feared the word of the Lord among the servants of Pharaoh..." (Ex. IX, 22). AND ISRAEL SAW THE GREAT HAND... AND THE PEOPLE FEARED THE LORD AND BELIEVED IN THE LORD AND MOSES HIS SERVANT. First they are called "Israel" and then "people"; why? R. Judah said: 'Israel here refers to the patriarch Jacob, who, having come with his children to

Egypt, and having suffered the bitterness of exile with them, now actually saw, although he was dead, the vengeance wrought by the Holy One, blessed be He. The Lord said unto him: "Arise and behold what I am doing for thy children's sake, how I am bringing them out of the clutches of a mighty people." This tallies with what R. Jesse said, that when the Israelites went into exile to Egypt, fear and trembling came over Jacob, so that God had to say to him: "Fear not to go down to Egypt," (Gen. XLVI, 3). Even then he was still afraid lest they might be exterminated there, so God reassured him by telling him that He Himself would go down with him to Egypt. Then he expressed his fear that he would not be buried with his fathers, nor witness the redemption of his children and the mighty works of the Lord. Then it was that the Holy One promised him "I will also surely bring thee up again", the emphatic expression indicating that he would be first brought up to be buried with his fathers and then again to witness Israel's redemption. R. Isaac found an added indication of this in the words: "Because he loved thy fathers... he brought thee out in his sight with his mighty power out of Egypt" (Deut. IV, 37); "in his sight" referring to Jacob. According to R. Hezekiah, however, "in his sight" (lit. countenance) refers to Abraham, of whom it says that he fell "on his countenance" when the Lord announced to him the birth of a son (Gen. XVII, 17), because it was hard for him to believe that a man of his age could be father to a newborn son, and the Holy One had to reassure him, revealing to him that he was destined to be the father of a great nation; and therefore, when the children of Israel went out from Egypt in their myriads, He let Abraham view their progress. R. Abba said that all the patriarchs were witnesses of the redemption. R. Eleazar finds this indicated in the above verse: "in his sight" referring to Jacob; "with his power" to Isaac; and "great" indicating Abraham. R. Simeon added that it is always for the sake of the patriarchs that the Lord redeems Israel, as it is written: "And I shall remember my covenant with Jacob, also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham, and the land I shall remember" (Lev. XXVI, 42); the "land" representing King David, who completes a Chariot with the Patriarchs.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 53b

AND ISRAEL SAW THE GREAT HAND WHICH THE LORDS DID UPON THE EGYPTIANS. They had seen how God had smitten the Egyptians even before this; but only now did they behold the Hand of full five fingers, which hand is called "great" because it includes other "five fingers", namely those of the Left Hand, as we have already made clear, and every "finger" symbolizes many Divine powers and signs, by means of which all the grades of inimical celestial powers were brought to nought; and it is of this that the Israelites had a revelation at that moment by the sea shore. AND THEY BELIEVED IN THE LORD. Was it only then that they believed? Do we not read that "the people believed" as soon as it was proclaimed to them that the Lord intended to bring them out from Egypt (Ex. IV, 31)? Had they not seen before many mighty works of the Holy One in Egypt itself? Yes, but this statement concerning their belief refers particularly to what Moses told them: "Fear not, stand still and see the salvation of the Lord" (v. 13). 'How is it', asked R. Jesse, 'that after

Moses had said to the people, “for the Egyptians whom ye have seen to-day, ye shall see them again no more for ever” (Ibid.), we are now told that “Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea shore” (v. 30)?’ R. Jose, in answer, pointed out that after all they did not see them alive. This reply did not satisfy R. Jesse, nor R. Abba, who explained the verse thus: ‘There is, according to our teaching, a world (’olam) above[Tr. note: Binah.] and a world below. [Tr. note:] Malkuth] Now from the world above begins the kindling of lights which is afterwards completed in the world below, this world subsuming in itself all (the emanations). From this lower world issue punishments to mankind, and through it also God did wonders and miracles for Israel. And when this world was aroused to perform wonders, the Egyptians were through it cast into the sea at the same time that deliverance was wrought for Israel. Hence the words, “ye shall see them again no more for ever” (’ad ’olam, lit. until a world), meaning, “ye shall not see them until that world (’olam) will be roused, and they will be delivered to judgement”; and as soon as that took place “Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea shore... and they believed in the Lord and Moses His servant”.’ THEN SANG MOSES.... R. Judah applied to Moses the words: “Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee, and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations” (Jer. I, 5). ‘Happy is the lot of Israel,’ he said, ‘that the Holy One, blessed be He, loved them more than any other nation, and out of the abundance of His love appointed to them a prophet of truth and a faithful shepherd, within whom He awakened the holy spirit more than in any other faithful prophet, communicating to him a part of His very self. Jacob dedicated the tribe of Levi to the Holy One, blessed be He, and as Levi was His in a special sense, He took him and crowned him with many crowns, and anointed him with the oil of the holy spirit from above, so that the holy spirit should issue forth to the world through him as from the representative of the holy faith. When the hour arrived at which Moses the faithful shepherd and prophet was to descend into this world, God brought forth a holy spirit from the depths of a sapphire stone in which it was hidden, and crowned it with crowns, and illumined it with two hundred and forty-eight lights, and stationed it before Him and gave over unto its charge the whole of His own Household, with the one hundred and seventy-three keys. Then He crowned it yet again with five diadems, each of which ascended and illumined a thousand worlds of lights and lamps stored in the secret treasures of the holy and highest King. Then the Holy One led it through all the lightful splendour of the Garden of Eden, and brought it to His Palace through all the ranks of the celestial legions. These were greatly amazed, and cried aloud: “Turn aside! For the Holy One has roused a Spirit to rule and to shake the worlds.” One voice murmured: “Who is he, this stranger, in whose hands are all the keys?”

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 54a

But another rebuked the first, and proclaimed: “Receive him in your midst! For on a day, and that right soon, he will descend to dwell among men, and the Torah, the most hidden treasure, shall be delivered into his hands to shake worlds both above and below.” Then all

trembled and followed Moses, saying: “Thou hast caused a man to ride over our heads; we went through fire and through water” (Ps. LXVI, 12). The letter Mim of the name of MoSHE drew nigh and crowned itself with its crown, and then crowned Moses with three hundred and twenty-five crowns, delivering also its keys into his hand. The letter Shin of the three Patriarchs crowned him with three holy crowns, and delivered into his keeping all the keys of the King and appointed him the faithful steward of the Household. The letter He drew nigh and crowned him with its crown. Then the spirit descended in one of the boats that sail on the great Sea, and received him in order to train him for sovereignty, and gave him, Moses, weapons with which to vanquish and punish Pharaoh and his whole land. And when he came down to earth in the seed of Levi, four hundred and twenty-five lights glittered before the face of the King, and four hundred and twenty-five esoteric formations of letters, expressing Divine mysteries, accompanied the spirit to its place. When he came forth into the world, the letter He of the Holy Name shone from his face, and the house wherein he dwelt was filled with his radiance. At that hour the Holy One proclaimed: “Before I had formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I made thee a prophet unto the nations.”

Said R. Isaac: ‘At the moment when the Holy One slew the great chieftain of the Egyptians, and Moses and the children of Israel saw him, they began to sing.’ THEN SANG MOSES AND THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL THIS SONG UNTO THE LORD. Said R. Abba: I have examined all the songs which Israel sang unto the Holy One, and I find that all of them began with “then” (az) (Cf Jos. x, 12; I Kings VIII, 12; Num. XXI, 17.) The reason for this is that all the wonders, and all the mighty deeds which were done to Israel when the light of the Holy Ancient One shone in His crowns, are engraved in the letters Aleph and Zain[Tr. note: Aleph symbolizes the first Sephirah, and Zain the seventh (after the first three), and when the light of the Crown—the first Sephirah—illumines the seventh, namely Malkuth-Kingdom, the power of God is manifested.]. Then there is song, the song of all sides. “Yashir” (lit. will sing): the tense suggests that this song fitted that occasion and will also fit the future Redemption, when it will again be sung by Israel. The expression “Moses and Israel” proves that the righteous of the past ages, although they have entered into the highest regions and are united with the “Bundle of life”, will all rise again in bodily form and behold the signs and mighty works which the Holy One shall show to Israel, and sing this hymn.’ R. Simeon established this fact by the following verse: “And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the rest of his people” (Isa. XI, 11). ‘“The rest”’, he said, ‘are “the remnant”, the righteous, like Eldad and Medad, who “remained” in the camp (Num. XI, 26), the righteous of whom it has been said that the world is sustained by them, who make themselves mere “remainders”, as it were. It is they who will be brought to life again at the future Redemption. And why? Are they not already bound up with the “Bundle of life”? Why bring them down to earth again? Let the experience of the past give the answer. It has pleased the Holy One, in former time, to send down to earth

those spirits and souls who belonged to the highest supernal grade. Should He not, then, let the spirits of the righteous men come down again in the future when He will make the crooked straight (i.e. redeem the world)? For, indeed, "there is not a righteous man upon earth that doeth good and sinneth not" (Eccl. VII, 20). And even the sinless ones who only died because of the "counsel of the Serpent" [Tr.note: T. B., Sabb. 55b, Benjamin, Amram, Jishai, and Kaleb, David's son, were sinless and died not for their own sins, but because of the "serpent's counsel", i.e. of "original sin"] will arise and be counsellors to the Messiah. "Moses and the children of Israel will sing this song." The same is implied in the words: "As in the days of thy going out of the land of Egypt will I show unto him marvellous things" (Micah VII, 15), where the "him" refers to Moses. Also: "I will show him the salvation of God" (Ps. L, 24); "I will show him my salvation" (ibid. XCI, 16).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, page 54b

Moses and the children of Israel will then sing "this song unto the Lord": the song of the Matrona to the Holy One, blessed be He. We have been taught that every one who sings this hymn daily with true devotion will be worthy to sing it at the Redemption that is to be, for it refers both to the past world and to the future world; it contains confirmations of faith and mysteries relating to the days of the Messiah. The Shekinah will sing this song to the Lord, because the King will receive Her with a radiant countenance. R. Jose said that the Shekinah will praise the Lord for all the concentration of light and holiness which the Holy King shall direct towards her. Said R. Judah: 'If this is the song of the Shekinah, why does it say that Moses and the children of Israel sang it? Blessed were they that they knew how to praise Him for all the power and might which the Shekinah receives and shall receive from Him, the Holy King!' According to R. Abba, the singing is to be directed, not to any of the emanations of the Deity, but to the Holy King in His very essence, as it says, concerning the song of Moses and the children of Israel, that they sang "to the Lord". R. Jose said that the words "this song to the Lord" refer to the "river that issues forth from Eden" (Gen. II, 10), from which all the abundance of oil issues to kindle the lights; whereas the words "I will sing unto the Lord" (ibid.) refer to the Supernal Holy King. AND SPAKE, SAYING.: this repetition denotes that it is to be sung in all generations, in order that it should never be forgotten, for he who is worthy to sing this song in this world shall be worthy to sing it in the world to come, and to declare praises with it in the days of the Messiah, when the Community of Israel will rejoice in the Holy One. "Saying" means saying at the time of the Exodus, saying when Israel was in the Holy Land, saying in exile, saying when Israel will be redeemed, saying in the world to come. I WILL SING UNTO THE LORD. As stated above, they spoke in the name of the Shekinah, hence the singular. "To the Lord"-to the Holy King. For highly exalted is He (gaoh gaah): He ascends to be crowned with His crowns in order to dispense blessings, and perform wonderful works, and to be exalted in and through all; exalted in this world, exalted likewise in the world to come; exalted in order that He may crown Himself with His crowns and be glorified in perfect joy. THE HORSE AND HIS RIDER HATH HE

THROWN INTO THE SEA. The dominion below and the dominion above, which are bound up the one with the other, have been delivered to that great "Sea" and that great sovereignty for punishment, as we have been taught that the Holy One does not exercise judgement below until He has done so above on the celestial representative of the particular nation, as it says: "The Lord shall punish the host of the high ones in the height (heaven) and the kings of the earth upon the earth" (Isa. XXIV, 21). R. Judah said: 'On that night extreme severity was roused, for the Matrona asked that all the hosts below and all the powers above should be delivered unto Her. And so they were.'

R. Hiya discoursed on the verse: Thou hast beset me behind and before, and hast laid thine hand upon me (Ps. CXXXIX, 5). He said: 'How greatly is it incumbent on the children of men to glorify the Holy One, blessed be He! For when He created the world

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, page 55a

He looked on man and designed to make him to rule over all earthly things. He was of dual form and resembled both celestial and earthly beings. The Lord sent him down in splendour, so that when the lesser creatures beheld the glory of his state they fell down before him in awe, as it says: "And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth and upon every fowl of the earth" (Gen. IX, 2). The Holy One brought him into the garden of His own planting, so that he might guard it and have endless joy and delight therein. A canopy of precious stones the Holy One also devised and fashioned to enfold man with glory: and the supernal angels rejoiced in his presence. Then the Lord gave him the commandment concerning the one tree: and, alas! man failed in his obedience and was not steadfast in the commandment of his Master. We find in the book of Enoch that after the Holy One, blessed be He, had transported Enoch to the supernal regions and shown him all the treasures of the King, both the celestial and the terrestrial, He permitted him to behold the Tree of Life and that Tree of which Adam was warned, and showed him the place where Adam had dwelt in the Garden of Eden, and Enoch perceived that if Adam had been obedient he would have so dwelt for ever, having eternal life and perpetual joy in the glory of the Garden. But because he broke the commandment of his Lord, he was punished.' R. Isaac said: 'Adam was created as a double personality (male and female), as previously explained. "And he took one of his ribs..." (Gen. II, 21): He sawed him in two, and thus two persons were formed, one from the east and one from the west, as it says: "Thou hast beset me behind and before", i.e. from the west and from the east.' Said R. Hiya: 'What did the Holy One do? He formed the female, perfected her beauty exceedingly, and brought her to Adam, as it is written: "And the Lord God formed the side (zela', cf. Ex. XXVI, 20) which he had taken from man into a woman" (ibid. 22).' R. Judah said: 'The Holy One gave to Adam a supernal soul and endowed it with wisdom and understanding that he might know all things. From which place did He take the soul?, 'From the place whence the other holy souls emanate.' Thus R. Isaac. Said R. Judah: 'We learn this from the verse: "Let the earth bring forth the living soul after its kind" (Gen. II,

24). "The earth" signifies the place where the Sanctuary stood, and "living soul" refers to the soul of the first man.' R. Hiya said: 'Adam knew more of the supernal wisdom than the angels above; he was able to penetrate into all things and to be in closer union with his Master than any of the other beings in the universe. But when he sinned, all the springs of wisdom were closed to him: "And the Lord God sent him forth from the garden of Eden to till the ground" (Ibid III, 24).' Said R. Abba: 'The first man consisted of male and female, for it says: "Let us make man in our image after our likeness" (Ibid. I, 26), which indicates that male and female were originally created as one and separated afterwards. When it says, "the ground from whence he was taken" (Ibid.), the "ground" represents the feminine principle, and the Holy One associated with this to create man.' MY STRENGTH AND SONG IS KAH. R. Jose said: The Yod and the He in the Divine Name are mingled, and one is contained in the other and they are never separated, being for ever united in love, being the source whence emanate all those streams and springs of blessing and satisfaction to the universe. The waters of these springs never "deceive" (Isa. LVIII, 11). Hence: "and He became my salvation", since for this purpose and unto this end the Holy King reveals His power below, and the Right Hand is moved to perform marvellous deeds.' THIS IS MY GOD AND I WILL MAKE HIM A HABITATION; THE GOD OF MY FATHER, AND I WILL EXALT HIM. "This is my God" refers to the Zaddik, from whom blessings emanate on the married state; "and I will make him a habitation" in the place where love is found, namely in the Sanctuary. "The God of my father, and I will exalt him" was said by Moses (the Levite) in regard to the supernal sphere whence the Levites derive, so that in this way there should be symmetry and perfection in that place. R. Isaac said that "and he became my salvation" refers to the Holy King, as in Isa. XII,2.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2,Page 55b

R. Hezekiah interpreted the verse: "A friend loveth at all times, and a brother is born for adversity" (Prov. XVII, 17), as follows. ' "A friend" is the Holy One, of whom it is written, "Thine own friend and thy father's friend, forsake not" (Ibid. XXVII, 10). The Israelites are "brethren and friends" of the Holy One, and therefore when their enemies afflict them, God says, "For my brethren and friends' sake I will say, Peace be within thee" (Ps CXXII, 9). He is a brother to meet the "adversity that is born".' Rabbi Judah refers the word "born" to the Holy One, for when one of His friends suffers tribulation through his enemies, the Holy King is roused in His strength to avenge him: His power is "born", that is, manifested. R. Jose said: 'How great should be man's love for the Holy One! Verily, love is the only true worship, and he who worships God in love is called "beloved" by Him.' There is an apparent contradiction in the two verses: "Thine own friend and thy father's friend forsake not", and "Withdraw thy foot from thy friend's house" (Ibid. xxv, 17). The members of the Fellowship have, however, explained it by applying the verses to different kinds of sacrifice. One should be diligent in sacrificing burnt-offerings and peace-offerings, but in regard to sin-offerings it is better to sin not, and so "withdraw thy foot from thy Friend's house",

the Temple. Indeed, "thou must not forsake thy Friend", thou must worship Him, cleave to Him, keep His commandments, but "withdraw thy foot from thy evil impulse that he should not become thy master, withdraw it from thy house, namely from the holy soul which thy Friend has put into thee". The true worship of the Holy One, blessed be He, consists in loving Him above all and in all, as it is written: "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God" (Deut. VI, 5).

All the Israelites beheld at the sea what even the prophet Ezekiel was not privileged to see, and even the embryos in their mothers' wombs beheld the wonderful works of the Holy One, and sang praises to Him, saying: "This is my God and I extol Him; the God of my father and I exalt Him", namely the God of father Abraham. Said R. Jose: 'Does the God of Abraham need our exaltation? Is He not already exalted high above our comprehension?' R. Jesse replied: 'Yet man can and must exalt Him in the sense of uniting in his mind all the attributes in the Holy Name, for this is the supremest expression of worship.'

R. Judah sat one day at the feet of R. Simeon, and he began to expound the following verse: The voice of thy watchmen, they lifted up their voices, they shall sing altogether... when the Lord shall return to Zion (Isa. LII, 8). 'These "watchmen" ', he said, 'are those who "watch" for the time when the Holy One will build His House once again. The use of the past tense "lifted", where we should rather have expected the future "shall lift", conveys the lesson that he who has lifted up his voice in weeping and lamentation over the destruction of the Temple shall be worthy to be numbered among those of whom it says "they shall sing altogether", and to enjoy the privilege of beholding the Holy One when He shall inhabit His House once more. The words "when the Lord returns (to) Zion" are to be understood as meaning "when the Lord brings back Zion". For when the earthly Jerusalem was destroyed, and the Community of Israel was scattered over the face of the earth, the Holy King drew Zion[Tr. Note: According to the commentators, in this place Zion=Yesod.] up to Himself and stretched it out before Him, because the Community of Israel was banished. When, however, the Community of Israel shall be restored, the Holy King will restore Zion to its place, to unite itself with her in perfect bliss; and the children of Israel will sing: "He is my God, and I have prepared for Him an habitation." Concerning this it is written: "This is the Lord, we have waited for him, let us be glad and rejoice in his salvation" (Isa. xxv, 9)- meaning, literally, "in His own salvation". THE LORD IS A MAN OF WAR, THE LORD IS HIS NAME. R. Abba referred in connection with this verse to the words: "Therefore it is said in the book of the wars of TETRAGRAMMATON: 'Vaheb in Supha, and in the brooks of Arnon'" (Num. XXI, 14). He said: 'How assiduously should one ponder on each word of the Torah, for there is not a single word in it which does not contain allusions to the Supernal Holy Name, not a word which does not contain many mysteries, many aspects, many roots, many branches.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2,Page 56a

Where now is this "book of the wars of the Lord"? What

is meant is, of course, the Torah, for, as the members of the Fellowship have pointed out, he who is engaged in the battle of the Torah, struggling to penetrate into her mysteries, will wrest from his struggles an abundance of peace. All other wars involve strife and destruction, but the war of the Torah is one of peace and love: "Vaheb in Supha" may be read "ahabah besophah", "love is in her end", for there is no love nor peace like this. The word "book" is used, and not "torah" as we might expect, for an esoteric reason, viz. that there is a divine sphere called "Book", as it says: "Seek ye out of the book of the Lord and read" (Isa. XXXIV, 16), on which all the mighty works of the Lord depend and from which they emanate. With this, God made war against a certain sphere at the end (soph) of the grades called Vaheb. God also fought against the "brooks", the subsidiary principalities attached to it. He waged war from the region called "Arnon", which is the sphere of the supernal marital union [Tn. note: Hokmah and Binah.] which is never dissolved. Therein it is rooted and spreads its branches to make war on every side and to manifest great and glorious power. When the mighty works of the Lord are roused and His battles begin to be waged, how many celestial warriors are stirred up to do martial deeds on every side! Then swords and spears are whetted, and mighty deeds begin. The sea grows stormy and the waves thereof rise mightily, and the boats toss on the heaving waters. Then the fray commences with catapults, spears, swords, and arrows, and the Lord takes command of His hosts to conduct the battle. Woe unto those against whom the Holy One declares war! "The Lord is a man of war." From the letters of this phrase lines of battle are formed against the wicked, the enemies of the Lord. These letters are known to the initiated, as has been explained elsewhere. In time to come the Holy One, blessed be He, will conduct a stupendous warfare against the heathen nations, to the glory of His Name: "Then shall the Lord go forth and fight against those nations" (Zech. XIV, 3); "Thus will I magnify myself and I will be known in the eyes of many nations" (Ezek. XXVIII, 23). PHARAOH'S CHARIOTS AND HIS MIGHT HE CAST INTO THE SEA AND THE CHOSEN ONES OF HIS KNIGHTS WERE DROWNED IN THE RED SEA. R. Judah said: When the Israelites were about to cross the sea, the Holy One said to the angel who is appointed over the sea: "Divide thy waters!" "Why?" said the angel. "So that My children may pass through." "Do they really deserve this redemption?" said the angel. "Wherein lies the difference between them and the Egyptians?" Said the Holy One: "I made this condition with the sea when I created the world! " Thereupon He exerted His power and the waters were piled up, wherefore it is written: "The waters saw thee, O God, the waters saw thee, they were afraid; the depths also were troubled" (Ps. LXXVII, 17). Then He said to the angel: "Exterminate all those hosts", and it then covered them, as it says, "the chariots of Pharaoh and his host he cast into the sea".

Said R. Eleazar: 'Behold, how many chariots, how many hosts, the Holy One has formed above! How many camps, how many divisions! And all of them are

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 56b

linked to one another, all are chariots one to another,

manifold grades, diverse and yet united! From the left side the chariots of the unholy principalities rise up. They also are linked one with the other, grade to grade, the greatest of them being, as we have already pointed out, "the firstborn of Pharaoh", whom the Holy One killed. All of these unholy powers are delivered unto the judgement of the Kingdom, the which is called "the great sea", in order that they may be uprooted each in his own grade, and be utterly cast down, and when they are broken above, all their counterparts below are also broken and lost in the "lower sea". As to the "captains" (shalishim) who were drowned in the Red Sea, it has already been made clear that all these grades consist of three (shalosh) attributes each (two and one, the triad, corresponding to the holy triad above). They were all delivered unto Her (the Shekinah's) hand, that their power might be broken. All the ten punishments which the Holy One brought on Egypt were achieved by the power of one "hand", for the "left hand" is included in the right, the ten fingers forming one entity in correspondence to the Ten expressions by which the Holy One is designated. Then came a punishment which was equal to all the rest, that of the sea: "The last one was the hardest" (Isa. VIII, 23). And in the future the Holy One will deal similarly with all the hosts, princes and chieftains of Edom (Rome), as it is written: "Who is he who cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save" (Isa. LXIII, 1). PHARAOH'S CHARIOTS AND MIGHT HE CAST INTO THE SEA. R. Isaac referred to the verse: "When he uttereth his voice, there is a multitude of waters in the heavens" (Jer. X, 13), and said: 'According to tradition, the Holy One created seven heavens, and in each heaven stars and planets are fixed. Arabot is above them all. The length of each heaven is such that it would take two hundred years to traverse, and the distance between each heaven and the next would take five hundred years to traverse. As for Arabot, one would need one thousand five hundred years to cover its whole length, and the selfsame number for traversing its breadth. All the heavens are lighted from the radiance of Arabot. Above Arabot is the heaven of the Hayoth, and above this latter sphere another heaven, brighter than all, as it is written: "And the likeness of the firmament upon the heads of the Hayoth" (Ezek. I, 22). And below there are many chariots at the right hand and at the left, of many grades, each with its own name. And beneath them are others, smaller and yet more varied, which are the smallest ranks of this celestial but unholy order; as it is written: "The sea is great... small beasts and great are there" (Ps. CIV, 25), as we have affirmed, that on the left side below there is a ruler, the "other side", attached to those above, but they are crushed by the great holy power, according to our interpretation of the words, "Pharaoh's chariots and his might he cast into the sea". THY RIGHT HAND, O LORD, GLORIFIED IN POWER. R. Simeon said: 'In the hour when the morning breaks, the Hind (Shekinah) rises and starts from her place in order to enter the two hundred palaces of the King. When a man studies

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 57a

the Torah in solitude at midnight, at the hour when the north wind springs up and the Hind desires to be astir,

he is taken with her into supernal realms, to appear before the King. When dawn brightens and he recites his prayers, and unifies the Holy Name in manner due, he is encircled with a thread of grace; he looks into the firmament, and a light of holy knowledge rests upon him. As the man is thus adorned and shrouded with light all things tremble before him, for he is called the son of the Holy One, the son of the King's Palace. Concerning him it is written, "The Lord is nigh to all who call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth" (Ps. CXLV, 18). The words "in truth" have the same significance as in the verse, "Thou wilt give truth to Jacob" (Micah VII, 20), "truth" here meaning the full knowledge which enables the worshipper perfectly to unite the letters of the Holy Name in prayer, which is indeed the true service of the Holy Name. He who knows how to unify thus the Holy Name establishes the one, the peculiar people in the world, as it is written: "And who is like thy people Israel, one people on earth?" (2 Sam. VIII, 23). Therefore it has been taught that a priest who knows not how to unify thus the Holy Name cannot perform proper service, for on the achievement of that unity hangs both celestial and terrestrial worship. The priest must, therefore, strive to concentrate heart and mind on the attainment of this unification, so that those above and those below may be blessed. And if a man comes to unify the Holy Name, but without proper concentration of mind and devotion of heart, to the end that the supernal and terrestrial hosts should be blessed thereby, then his prayer is rejected and all beings denounce him, and he is numbered with those of whom the Holy One said, "When ye come to see (reading *lir'oth* instead of *lera'oth*) my countenance (*panim*, lit. countenances), who hath required this from your hand, to tread my courts?" All the "countenances" of the King are hidden in the depths of darkness, but for those who know how perfectly to unite the Holy Name, all the walls of darkness are burst asunder, and the diverse "countenances" of the King are made manifest, and shine upon all, bringing blessing to heavenly and earthly beings. He who comes to unify the Holy Name must do so from the side of *zoth* (lit. "this", a name for the *Shekinah*), as it is written, "with this (*be-zoth*) shall Aaron come into the sanctuary" (Lev. XVI, 3), in order that the *Zaddik* and Righteousness may be perfectly united, and through this union all things may be blessed. But if he attempts to unify the Holy Name without bringing himself into the fitting frame of mind, if he come not in fear and love, then God says unto him: "Who hath required this (*zoth*) of your hand to tread my courts?" (Ibid.). No blessing appertains to such prayer; nay, rather, he who prays in such a fashion merely invokes upon himself and upon all things the attribute of Judgement. Now all light, all blessing, all joy, emanates from the "Right Hand" of the Holy One, blessed be He. Yet at the same time the "Left Hand" participates in the activities of the Right, just as in a human being, for though the right is the leader, yet when it is active the left becomes active likewise. When a man raises up his hand in prayer, his purpose is to bless God. But with God it is the reverse: when He raises up His right hand, then woe unto those below, yea, woe and tribulation; for then all blessing and support is removed from them. We learn this from the verse: "Thou stretchedst out thy right hand, the earth swallowed them" (Ex. xv, 12), meaning, that so soon as

God raised His right hand they perished. (The Targum also renders, "Thou liftedst up Thy right hand".) When the Right Hand is in its place, the Left Hand is under its dominance, therefore stern justice can have no power among men. But if the Right Hand is lifted up, the Left remains alone, and stirs up mighty judgement in the world.' Each time that R. Simeon came to the words, "He hath drawn back his right hand," (Lam. II, 3), he used to weep, interpreting them to mean that the Lord permitted the Left Hand to be powerful and to have sole dominion over the worlds, while the Right Hand remained in another place, far off. R. Simeon interpreted

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 57b

the words "hazaddik abad" (lit. "the righteous comes to grief", is lost, perishes (Isa. LVII, 1), in the sense that when the Temple was destroyed, of all the aspects of the King it was the one that is known as "Righteous" (*Zaddik*) that "lost", in a twofold sense. He lost because blessings no longer abode with Him as before; and He also lost because His spouse, the Community of Israel, was parted from Him. Thus the Righteous "lost" more than all. Moreover, concerning the time to be, which is the time of the Messiah, it is written: "Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion, shout, O daughter of Jerusalem, behold thy king cometh unto thee, he is righteous and saving himself (*nosha'*)" (Zech. IX, 9). It does not say "*moshia'*"-"saving" or "a saviour", but "*nosha'*"-"being saved", literally. **THY RIGHT HAND, O LORD, GLORIFIED IN POWER, THY RIGHT HAND DASHES IN PIECES THE ENEMY.** The form "*ne'ddari*" (glorified) instead of "*ne'ddar*" suggests a plural, referring as it does to the joining of the Left Hand with the Right. Said R. Simeon: 'It is as we have explained. Just as man was divided physically, in order that he should receive a wife and both together form one body, so the Right Hand was divided, as it were, in order that it might take unto itself the Left and both become one, and therefore it is that God smites and heals with one and the same Hand. Note that this whole song has a reference both to the time of its composition and to the future; hence it does not say "hath dashed", but "dashes" (*tirtaz*, lit. will dash), i.e. when the Messiah shall arise. The same applies to the following verse: "In the fulness of thy majesty thou wilt overthrow (*taharos*) thine opponents; thou wilt send forth (*teshalah*) thy wrath; it will devour them like stubble." Thus the words, "Thy right hand, O Lord, glorified in power", refers to this time, to this world; the words "Thy right hand will dash the enemy" to the time of the Messiah; "In the fulness of thy majesty thou wilt overthrow thine opponents" to the time of Gog and Magog; "Thou wilt send forth thy wrath, it will devour them like stubble" to the time of the resurrection, of which it says, "and many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt" (Dan. XII, 2). Blessed are those who will be left in the world at that time t And who will they be? None will remain, except the circumcised who have accepted upon themselves the sign of the holy covenant and have entered into this holy covenant in its two parts, [Tr. note: i.e. the actual circumcision and the *peri'ah*, or folding back of the flesh.] as we have pointed out, and have guarded the covenant against contact with an alien sphere. These

will remain and their names will be written "to life eternal", as it says: "And it shall come to pass that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called 'holy', even everyone that is written to life in Jerusalem" (Isa. IV, 3). "Zion" and "Jerusalem" symbolize the two grades (Foundation and Kingdom) into which he who will be circumcised shall enter. Such shall remain at that time, and the Holy One, blessed be He, will renew the world with them and rejoice together with them. Concerning that time it is written: "May the glory of the Lord remain for ever; may the Lord rejoice in his works" (Ps. CIV, 31).'

R. Hiya once went to visit R. Eleazar, whom he found with R. Jose, the son of R. Simeon ben Lekunya, his father-in-law. As R. Eleazar raised his head he noticed R. Hiya. Said the latter: 'What is the meaning of the words, "Her ways are ways of pleasantness" (Prov. III, 17)?' He replied: 'How foolish are the sons of men that they neither know nor heed the words of the Torah! These words are the "ways" by which one merits that "pleasantness of the Lord" of which the Psalmist speaks (Ps. XXVII, 5). As we have pointed out on another occasion, the Torah and her ways emanate from this "pleasantness".' Said R. Hiya: 'We have a tradition that when the Holy One, blessed be He, gave the Torah to Israel a light shone forth from that sphere which is called "Pleasantness", a light wherewith the Holy One crowned Himself, and from which were irradiated all worlds,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 58a

all firmaments, and all crowns, and concerning which it is written: "Go forth, O ye daughters of Zion, and behold king Solomon with the crown wherewith his mother crowned him in the day of his espousals, and in the day of the gladness of his heart" (S.S. III, 11). When the building of the Temple was completed, the Holy One, blessed be He, crowned Himself with this crown and seated Himself on His Throne. But since the destruction of the Temple He has not donned this crown, and the "Pleasantness" is concealed and hidden.' Said R. Eleazar: 'When Moses entered the cloud (Ex. XXIV, 18), like a man traversing the region of the Spirit, a certain great angel, whose name, according to tradition, is Kemuel, and who is appointed guardian and chief over twelve thousand messengers, sought to attack him. Thereupon Moses opened his mouth and uttered the twelve letters of the Holy Name which the Holy One had taught him at the bush, and the angel departed from him to a distance of twelve thousand parasangs. And Moses walked in the midst of the cloud, his eyes flaming like coals of fire. Then another angel met him, greater and more eminent than the first. His name, according to tradition, is Hadraniel, and he is set above all the other angels and celestial cohorts, yea, is even removed from them by a distance of one thousand and sixty myriads of parasangs, and his voice, when he proclaims the will of the Lord, penetrates through two hundred thousand firmaments which are surrounded by a white fire. On seeing him, Moses was struck dumb with awe, and would have thrown himself down from the cloud, but the Holy One, blessed be He, admonished him, saying: "Moses, thou didst speak much with Me at the bush and didst desire that I should reveal to thee the Holy Name, and wast

not afraid, and art thou now affrighted before one of My servants!" When Moses heard these words from the voice of his Master, he took courage; opening his mouth, he uttered the Supreme Name of seventy-two letters. At this, Hadraniel trembled, and drew near to Moses and cried: "Happy indeed is thy lot, O Moses, for that thou hast been vouchsafed knowledge such as is denied even to the supernal angels!" He then went along with Moses until they came to a mighty fire belonging to an angel whose name is Sandalphon, and who, as tradition tells us, is removed from his fellow angels through the magnitude of his splendour by a distance of five hundred years, and who stands behind the "curtain" of his Master, and out of the prayers of Israel weaves crowns for his Lord, and when such a crown is placed on the head of the Holy King, He receives Israel's supplications, and all the heavenly hosts begin to tremble in awe, and to shout: "Blessed be the glory of the Lord from his place" (Ezek. III, 12). Said Hadraniel to Moses: "Moses, I can no longer be with thee, lest the powerful fire of Sandalphon burn me". At that moment Moses began to quake with mighty dread, but the Holy One took hold of him and made him sit before Him and taught him the Torah, and spread over him the radiance of that "pleasantness", so that his countenance shone in all those firmaments and all the hosts of heaven trembled before him when he descended with the Torah. When the Israelites committed the sin of the Golden Calf below, the Holy One took away from Moses one thousand parts of that splendour, and the supernal angels and all those hosts came to burn him. When the Holy One said to him: "Go, get thee down, for thy people... have corrupted themselves" (Ex. XXXII, 7), Moses trembled and could not utter a word. Then he began to pray and intercede for Israel. Said the Holy One to him: "Moses lay hold of My Throne and gain courage therefrom!" And the Holy One rebuked all those hosts, and Moses took hold of the two tablets of stone and brought them down. Concerning this event it is written: "A wise man scaleth the city of the mighty, and bringeth down the strength of the confidence thereof" (Prov. XXI, 22). And from the remnants of that brightness Moses's countenance shone. Now, if merely because of this remnant of brightness the children of Israel could not steadfastly behold the face of Moses, how glorious must the splendour have been in its original state!" Said R. Hiya: 'The words, "Thy right hand, O Lord, glorified in power", refer to the Torah. This "right hand" does "dash in pieces the enemy"; for there is nothing which can break the power of the heathen nations save the power of the Torah, in the study of which Israel is absorbed. For as long as they are faithful students of the Torah the "Right Hand" is powerful and breaks down the domination of the heathen, and therefore the Torah is called "Strength", as it says, "The Lord will give strength to his people" (Ps. XXIX, 11). Contrariwise, when Israel neglects the Torah, the "Left Hand" predominates, and with it the power of heathendom and the nations rule over Israel and issue tyrannous decrees against them, and Israel is scattered among the nations, as it is written:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 58b

"Why doeth the land perish and is burned up like a wilderness?... Because they have forsaken my Torah "

(Jer. IX, 11-12).’ Said R. Eleazar: ‘It is indeed so. As long as the voices of the Israelites are heard in the synagogues and in the houses of study they are powerful: “the voice is the voice of Jacob”; but if not, then “the hand are the hands of Esau” (Gen. XXVII, 22), as has been explained on another occasion.’ IN THE GREATNESS OF THINE EXCELLENCY (lit. uplifting) THOU OVERTHROWEST THEM THAT RISE UP AGAINST THEE. R. Hezekiah found here the same idea as in the verse: “Why standest thou afar off, O Lord? Why hidest thou thyself in time of trouble?” (Ps. x, 1). ‘The sins of mankind,’ he said, ‘cause the Holy One to ascend higher and higher, and then men cry bitterly but without avail, because the Holy One has departed from the world, and they are unable to return to Him.’ R. Isaac, however, applied these words to the time when the Holy One will adorn Himself with majesty in face of the nations who will gather against Him, of whom it says: “The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together against the Lord and against his anointed” (Ps. II, 2). We are told that the seventy guardians of the nations will at that time gather from all sides with the armies of the whole world and start war against Jerusalem the holy city, and take counsel together against the Holy One. They will say: “Let us rise first against the Patron, and then against His people and against His sanctuary!” Then “He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh; ehe Lord shall have them in derision” (v. 4). He will put on His majesty and shall dash them in pieces.’ R. Abba said, in the name of R. Jesse the Elder and R. Simeon made the same remark- that the Holy One will bring to life again all those kings who afflicted Israel and Jerusalem: Hadrian, Lupinus, Nebuchadnezzar, Sennacherib, and all the other kings of the nations who have destroyed His house, and set them up again as rulers, and they shall gather many nations, and then He will do vengeance and justice upon them near Jerusalem, as it is written: “And this shall be the plague wherewith the Lord will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem” (Zech. XIV, 12). On the other hand, here it says: “In the greatness of thy excellency Thou wilt overthrow thine opponents”, which refers to the Messianic times; and so this song has an eternal significance. THE ENEMY SAID: I WILL PURSUE, I WILL OVERTAKE. “The enemy” is the celestial guardian of the Egyptians. When power was given to him over Israel, he desired to make an end of them, but the Holy One remembered the “Mountains of the world” (the Patriarchs), and these shielded them. And this applies to all the supernal guardians of the nations: they all have the same desire to do away with Israel, but the Holy One remembers the merit of the “Mountains of the world” and protects them. When Moses realized this, he sang praises to the Holy One, blessed be He, saying: WHO IS LIKE UNTO THEE AMONG THE GODS, O LORD? Said R. Simeon: ‘There is a mighty and wondrous tree in the celestial sphere which supplies nourishment to beings above and below. It has twelve boundaries and stretches along the four sides of the world which encompass it. Seventy branches ascend from it and imbibe nourishment from its roots. Each branch, as the time arrives for it to be dominant, endeavours to drain the whole life of the tree, which is the essence of all the branches, and without which they would not exist. Israel clings to the main body of the tree, and when its

time comes to be dominant

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 59a

it endeavours to protect the branches and to give peace to all. This is also symbolized by the seventy oxen offered on the feast of Tabernacles. Therefore it says: “Who is like unto thee among the gods (elim), O Lord?”; elim in the sense of “trees”, as in the passage, “for ye shall be ashamed of the elim (terebinths) which ye desired” (Isa. I, 29). “Who among these is like unto Thee, Who hast pity on all? Among the surroundings of the tree is any like unto Thee, eager to be the guardian of all, even when it dominates them”, not wishing to destroy them? “Who is like unto Thee, glorified in holiness?” Namely, in that supreme power called “Holiness”, “power of the Lord”, “pleasantness of the Lord”, as already stated.’

“Who is like unto Thee? “ R. Jose discoursed on the verse: “I have seen all the works that are done under the sun, and, behold, all is vanity and breaking of spirit” (Eccl. I, 14). ‘How could Solomon,’ he said, ‘the wisest of men, say that all human actions are vanity? Can this be said of acts of righteousness and lovingkindness, of which it is written, “and the work of righteousness shall be peace” (Isa. XXXII, 17)? However, as has been pointed out, “all is vanity” refers to “works that are done under the sun,” whilst “the work of righteousness” is above the sun. So far so good. But what, then, is the meaning of “all is breath (hebel) and breaking of spirit” in regard to the “works that are done under the sun “? Have we not been taught that “hebel” (breath) is the basis of the world above and the world below? It has been explained in the following way, and it is truly so. Every action done here below, if it is done with the intention of serving the Holy King, produces a “breath” in the world above, and there is no breath which has no voice; and this voice ascends and crowns itself in the supernal world and becomes an intercessor before the Holy One, blessed be He. Contrariwise, every action which is not done with this purpose becomes a “breath” which floats about in the world, and when the soul of the doer leaves his body, this “breath” rolls about like a stone in a sling, and it “breaks the spirit”. The act done and the word spoken in the service of the Holy One, however, ascend high above the sun and become a holy breath, which is the seed sowed by man in that world, and is called zedakah (righteousness, lovingkindness), as it is written: “Sow for yourselves according to righteousness” (Hos. x, 12). This “breath” guides the departed soul and brings it into the region of the supernal glory, so that it is “bound with the bundle of life with the Lord” (I Sam. xxv, 29). It is concerning this that it is written: “Thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the Lord shall gather thee up” (Isa. LVIII, 8). That which is called “the glory of the Lord” gathers up the souls of that holy breath, and this is indeed ease and comfort for them; but the other is called “breaking of spirit”. Blessed are the righteous whose works are “above the sun” and who sow a seed of righteousness which makes them worthy to enter the world to come, and concerning whom it is written: “Unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings” (Mal. III, 20).’ R. Simeon said: ‘When the Temple was built below, it was built under the aegis of severity and wrath, as it is written:

"For this city hath been to me as a provocation of my anger and of my fury from the day that they built it" (Jer. XXXII, 31); but in the time to come the Holy One will build it and restore it on another noble basis, called "Righteousness", as it is written: "In righteousness shalt thou be established" (Isa. LIV, 14), and therefore it will endure.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 59b

THOU STRETCHEDST OUT THY HAND, THE EARTH SWALLOWED THEM. Said R. Isaac: The members of the Fellowship have remarked that when the Holy One brought the Egyptians dead out of the sea, He bade the earth "take them in", but she refused, until He stretched out His right hand and adjured her, and then she swallowed them.' R. Eleazar said that the "stretching out" of the "right hand" was to separate it from the "left" so that judgement might be executed. THOU LEADEST THROUGH THY MERCY THE PEOPLE WHOM THOU REDEEMEST; THOU GUIDEST THEM THROUGH THY MIGHT TO THY HOLY HABITATION. The divine attributes are indicated here in the same way as in the verse, "Thy right hand, and thine arm, and the light of thy countenance, because thou hast thy delight in them" (PS. XLIV, 4). "Thy right hand" corresponds to "thy mercy" and symbolizes Gedulah (Greatness); "thine arm", corresponding to "Thou guidest them through Thy might", stands for Geburah (Might); and "the light of Thy countenance", corresponding to "Thy holy habitation", indicates the Zaddik (Righteous One). FEAR AND DREAD FALL UPON THEM. R. Simeon interpreted the word aymathah (dread, instead of the usual aymah) as aymath he', "the fear of He" (i.e. the Shekinah), since there is no letter or word in the Torah that does not contain profound allusions. THOU WILT BRING AND PLANT THEM IN THE MOUNTAIN OF THINE INHERITANCE. The superfluous vau in tebiemo and wetitaemo ("Thou wilt bring and plant them") is an indication, given by the holy spirit, that these words refer to a later generation of Israelites who were circumcised by Joshua, and in whom the holy sign of the Divine Name was imprinted. They were qualified to inherit the land; for he who is circumcised and in whom the holy sign is revealed, and who guards it from profanation, is called "righteous", and "the righteous will inherit the land" (Isa. LX, 21). Truly, there is not a word or even a small letter in the Torah which does not contain profound allusions and holy indications. Happy is the lot of those who apprehend them! [Note: At this point, the printed volumes, both Hebrew and English, contain a passage from the Raya Mehemna. In the CD version, it can be found in the "Raya Mehemna" menu choices for the Hebrew and English Zohar submenus. Look for pages 59b-60a.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 60a

Said R. Abba: 'Happy indeed are those who are worthy to sing this song in this world! They will be found worthy to sing it again in the world to come. This hymn is built up out of twenty-two engraved letters and of ten Words of Creation, [Tr. note: i.e. the thirty-two paths of wisdom.] and all are inscribed in the Holy Name, and are the completion and harmony of that Name. This, however, has already been explained.' Said R. Simeon:

'When the Israelites stood at the Red Sea and sang, the Holy One, blessed be He, revealed Himself to them with all His hosts and chariots, in order that they should know their King who had wrought all those signs and mighty works for them, and that each one of them should perceive of the Divine more than was vouchsafed to any prophet. Should anyone say that they did not know and did not cleave to the Supernal Wisdom, this song that they sang in perfect unison is a proof to the contrary; for how could they, without the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, have all sung together as if through one mouth? Yea, even the embryos in their mothers' wombs sang it in unison and beheld things that the prophet Ezekiel could not see. They all beheld the Divine glory eye to eye, and when their singing was ended their souls were so filled with joy and ecstasy that they refused to continue on their journey, desiring yet more perfect revelations of that glorious mystery. Then Moses said to the Holy One: "Thy children are loth to depart from the sea, because of their eagerness to behold Thee." What did the Holy One do? He hid His glory and transferred it from there to the wilderness, half disclosing it to them there. Moses bade them many times to proceed, but they refused, until he took hold of them and showed them the light of the glory of the Holy One in the wilderness. Concerning this it is written: "They went out into the wilderness of Shur" (v. 22), which, being interpreted, means that they went into the wilderness of "Beholding" (shur= to look round). AND THEY WENT THREE DAYS IN THE WILDERNESS AND FOUND NO WATER. In Scripture "water" stands as a symbol for the Torah: "Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters" (Isa. LV, 1). 'But', remarked R. Jesse, 'the time for the giving of the Torah was not yet, and how could they expect to find this "water" there?' Said R. Eleazar: 'They went out into the wilderness to see the glory of the Holy One, but could not, for He removed it from there. We learn from this that "water" is the symbol of the Torah, and the Holy One and the Torah are one.' Said R. Simeon: 'There in the wilderness a strange power, representing the nations of the world, the ruling spirit of the desert, appeared to them, but they soon discovered that it was not the radiance of their King's glory. Hence it says: AND WHEN THEY CAME TO MARAH THEY COULD NOT DRINK OF THE WATERS OF MARAH, FOR THEY WERE BITTER, and they did not feel the same "sweetness" in their souls as before. Moreover, this power came to act as an accuser against them. Then HE (Moses) CRIED UNTO THE LORD, AND THE LORD SHOWED HIM A TREE,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 60b

WHICH, WHEN HE CAST IT INTO THE WATERS, THE WATERS WERE MADE SWEET. The tree is a symbol of the Torah, which is "a tree of life to those who lay hold upon her" (Prov. III, 18), and the Torah and the Holy One, blessed be He, are one.' R. Abba said: 'The "Tree" is a direct symbol of the Holy One, for it says: "The tree of the field is (the supernal) Adam" (Deut. XX, 19). The "field" is the "Field of the holy apples". Thus, when the light of their King's glory manifested itself to them, "the waters were made sweet", and the accuser became an intercessor.' THERE HE MADE FOR THEM A STATUTE AND ORDINANCE. Said R. Abba: 'At first, when the

Israelites entered into the Covenant of the Holy One, there was something lacking in them, namely the final act of circumcision, the "peri'a", so that the holy sign was not manifested in them, but as soon as they arrived at this place they entered into both aspects of the holy sign, through the laying bare of its impress. These two aspects are symbolized by the two terms "statute" and "ordinance. AND THERE HE PROVED THEM: by this holy sign. In the book of R. Jesse the Elder there is a recondite interpretation of this tree (which God showed Moses). AND SAID: IF THOU WILT DILIGENTLY HEARKEN TO THE VOICE OF THE LORD THY GOD. And said. Who said? As it is not directly stated, it refers to the Holy One, blessed be He. R. Hezekiah pointed to a similar expression in the passage: "And to Moses he said, Go up unto the Lord" (Ex. XXIV, 1). R. Jose said that from the context it is clear to whom the "he said" refers. Why, however, does the text continue, "if thou wilt hear the voice of the Lord thy God", instead of "My voice"? To indicate that voice to communion with which they had attained. R. Abba said: 'When the holy sign was manifested in them they entered into a dual holy state, as has been pointed out above; and having entered into these two holy conditions, they thereby entered into communion with two other holy conditions, so that they should not be deprived of any blessings from above, blessings emanating from the Holy King Himself. All this is indicated in the above verse: "and he said", namely the Holy King; "the voice of the Lord thy God" refers to the Shekinah as representing the Community of Israel; "wilt do what is right in His sight" refers to the Zaddik; "and will give ear to His commandment" refers to Nezah (Victory), while Hod (Majesty) is indicated in the words: "and keep all His statutes". Further, the words "I am the Lord that healeth thee" refer to the Holy King. From this we learn that he who guards the sign of the covenant rises eventually to the perception of the Holy King. R. Isaac said: 'He who is worthy of the perception of Zaddik is also worthy to perceive Nezah and Hod, the triad by which the Community of Israel is blessed; and he who is worthy of these reaches the perception of the Holy King, and so has communion with all four. In correspondence with these four grades the holy impress (of circumcision) has to be guarded from four things (intercourse with a menstruous woman, a bondwoman, a heathen woman, and a harlot). Once a man cleaves truly to the Holy King, then "I will put none of these diseases upon thee which I have brought against the Egyptians: for I am the Lord that healeth thee". Observe with what tenderness and loving speeches the Holy One drew Israel to His Torah! He was indeed like unto a father tenderly leading his son to school, promising him good things.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Pages 61a-61b

[Note: The Hebrew text does not have this passage up to the section on 62a beginning, "BEHOLD I WILL RAIN". The text that does appear in the Hebrew for page 61a corresponds to the end of the translation of 60b.] AND THE LORD SAID UNTO MOSES, BEHOLD I WILL RAIN BREAD FROM HEAVEN FOR YOU. R. Judah quoted here the verse: Blessed is he who considereth the poor: the Lord will deliver him in time of trouble (Ps. XLI, 2). 'These words', he said, 'have been applied to a man who is lying dangerously ill. Such a

one is a prisoner of the King-his neck yoked and his feet in chains. On either side warders keep guard over him. His limbs war with one another, and he is unable to eat. But in his helplessness a guardian angel is appointed to watch over him and to intercede on his behalf before the King, recalling all his virtues and any good deed that he may have done. Happy is then the counsellor who teaches the afflicted one the way of life so that he may be delivered from judgement and be brought back to his Lord; he becomes an intercessor for him above. And what will be his reward? "The Lord will deliver him in time of trouble".

R. Hiya said: 'I have often wondered at the words, "For the Lord heareth the poor" (Ps. LXIX, 34). Does He then hear only the poor?' R. Simeon replied: 'These words signify that the poor are indeed nearer to the King than all others, for it is written, "a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise" (Ps. LI, 18) and no one in the world is so broken in heart as the poor man. Mark this! Most human beings appear before the Holy One in body and in soul, but the poor man presents himself before the Throne of the Most High in soul only, and the Holy One is nearer to the soul than to the body.'

At one time there lived in the neighbourhood of R. Jesse a poor man of whom no one took any notice; and to beg he was ashamed.

One day he fell ill, and R. Jesse went to visit him. And as he sat by the sick man's bedside the Rabbi heard a voice saying: "Wheel, [Tr. note : i e. the wheel of destiny.] wheel, a soul is flying to me before its rightful time has come! Woe unto his fellow townsmen that none were found among them to sustain him, that he might live!" R. Jesse, having heard these words, stood up and put into the mouth of the sick man the water of a certain herb, bidding him drink; and this made him so to sweat that the illness left him and he recovered. When R. Jesse came again to the house of that poor man the latter said: "By thy life, Rabbi! My soul had actually left my body and was conducted to the Palace of the King and brought before His Throne; and it would fain have remained there for ever, only God desired to give thee the merit of restoring me to life. I heard them proclaim in the highest courts of Heaven: "R. Jesse's spirit shall have its abode in a holy chamber which the members of the Fellowship will occupy at their awakening", and three thrones were prepared for thee and for thy friends.' From that time the neighbours of the poor man looked after him. A similar tale is told of R. Isaac. One day he was walking along the highway when a poor man passed him, having in his hand half a mea (small coin) in silver. He said to R. Isaac: 'Save, I pray thee, my life and the life of my sons and daughters.' Said R. Isaac: 'How can I do this, seeing that I possess no more than half a mea?' 'Nevertheless,' the poor man replied, 'two half meas are better than one.' So R. Isaac took out his coin and gave it to the man. Later, R. Isaac dreamt that he was walking by the sea in a strange place, and some persons wanted to throw him into it, and then he saw R. Simeon stretching out his hand to him, and the poor man whom he had assisted came up and pulled him out, and brought him safe and sound to R. Simeon. When he awoke, the verse: "Blessed is he who

considereth the poor: the Lord will deliver him in time of trouble" came automatically to his lips.

Every day dew from the Holy Ancient One drops into the "Lesser Countenance" and all the holy apple-fields are blessed. It also descends to those below; and it provides spiritual food for the holy angels, to each rank according to its capacity of perception. It was this food of which the Israelites partook in the wilderness: "each of them ate the food of celestial princes" (abirim) (Ps. LVIII, 26). Said R. Simeon: 'Even at this time there are those who partake of similar food, and that in a double measure. And who are they? Fellows of the mystic lore, who study the Torah day and night. See now, when the Israelites went out of Egypt into the desert, uniting themselves with the Holy King, when the sign of the Covenant was manifested in them in its fulness, they were granted a more spiritual, more supernal food than the "unleavened bread" which they ate immediately after they left Egypt; for of the manna it says: "I will rain bread from heaven for you." It was indeed heavenly food, emanating from the sphere called "heaven". But the sons of Wisdom, namely, the students of the Torah, derive their nourishment from a still higher region, the sphere of Wisdom, as it is written: "Wisdom keeps alive her owners" (Eccl. VII, 12).' 'If that is so,' asked R. Eleazar, 'why are they more frail than ordinary men?' R. Simeon replied: 'That is a good question, and the answer is as follows. Ordinary food, by which the majority of people are nourished, is constituted of the elements of heaven and earth, and is therefore of a gross, material quality; the unleavened bread, which was eaten by the Israelites when they left Egypt, emanated from the sphere of "Judgement" and was somewhat subtler in quality; the manna was a still finer food, emanating from the sphere of "Heaven", and was assimilated by the soul more than by the body-"angels' bread"; but the food of those absorbed in the Torah nourishes only the soul and the spirit, but not the body, coming as it does from the sphere of "Wisdom", from the highest and most glorious supernal region. Hence it is hardly to be wondered at that Wisdom's children are more frail than other men, for they do not eat the food of the body at all.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 62a

Truly, "Wisdom keeps alive her owners"! Blessed is that body which can derive benefit from the food of the soul! R. Eleazar thereupon remarked: 'It is indeed so, but where do we find these foods in our days?' R. Simeon replied: 'This is also a good question, and the real answer is this. First, there is the food for the whole of humanity, natural food for ordinary men. Then there is the food which emanates from the sphere of "righteousness" (zedek), the food of the poor, which is turned into "beneficence" (zedakah), both to him who gives and to him who receives: "righteousness" is turned into "mercy" (hesed), and "a man of mercy does good to his own soul" (Prov. XI, 17). A more supernal food is the one by which sick people are nourished, the food of the Holy One, as it says: "The Lord will strengthen him upon the bed of languishing" (Ps. XLI, 4)-as it were sacrificial food, concerning which it says, "To sacrifice unto me fat and blood" (Ezek. XLIV, 15). Then there is the food of spirits and souls, a supernal, holy, and precious food, emanating from the

"Pleasantness of the Lord". The subtlest and most precious food, however, is, as I have said, that by which the students devoted to the Torah are sustained; for the Torah emanates from the sphere of the Supernal Wisdom, and those whose minds are centred in her enter into the very essence of Wisdom, and their nourishment is derived from that holy source.' Then came R. Eleazar and kissed R. Simeon's hand, and said: 'I am truly blessed to hear such words! Blessed are the righteous who meditate on the Torah day and night I Blessed are they in this world, and blessed are they in the world to come! Truly, "He is thy life and the length of thy days" (Deut. xxx, 20).' BEHOLD, I WILL RAIN BREAD FROM HEAVEN FOR YOU. R. Jose meditated here on the verse: "Thou openest thine hand and satisfiest every living thing according to thy will" (Ps. CXLV, 16). 'In the preceding verse,' he said, 'it is written: "The eyes of all wait upon thee, and thou givest them their meat in due season". All living beings wait upon, and lift up their eyes to the Holy One for food, but the "sons of Faith" must not merely wait, but also pray for their daily bread. Such prayer has the power of bringing blessing every day upon the Tree whence all nourishment for body and soul emanates. Thus even when he has a sufficiency of food, a man of faith ought to pray for "daily bread" in order that through him there may be each day an increase of blessing in heaven, and this is the meaning of the words, "Blessed be the Lord by day'. For this reason it is not right to cook food on one day for the next, so that one day should not interfere with another in regard to blessings above. Therefore it says concerning the manna: "The people shall go out and gather a day's portion every day" (Ex. XVI, 4); except on the sixth day, when they prepared for the Sabbath (Ibid. 5). Prayer for daily bread secures the favour of the Holy Ancient One, so that food is distributed to all, and the one who prays thus is indeed a "faithful son", a son through whose cooperation blessings are found in heaven. R. Abba dwelt on the verse: "The Lord taketh pleasure in them that fear him, in those that wait for his mercy" (Ps. CXLVII, 11). 'How much should one endeavour to walk in the way of the Holy King and in the ways of the Torah, in order to become the medium of blessing to all, to those above and to those below!

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 62b

For the Lord dispenses favour (rozeh eth) to them that fear Him, and those who fear Him are those "that wait for His mercy", that is, who are entirely dependent on Him for their daily bread.' R. Jesse the Elder never used to prepare his meal before praying for it. He was wont to say: 'Let us ask the King first!' Then he would wait for some time and say: 'The time has arrived for the King to give us food; prepare the meal! This is the way of those who fear the Lord and are afraid of sin. As for the ungodly, it is not so with them, for their ways are crooked: "Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink" (Isa. v, 11). But "The Lord taketh pleasure... in those that wait for His mercy"; and herein are the sons of faith different from others. Hence it is written: "The people shall gather a certain rate every day in his day, that I may prove them whether they will walk in my Torah or not." The peculiar expression "in his day" indicates that the sons of faith are known by their "daily" walking in the

straight way of the Torah. R. Isaac found the same truth in the following verse: "The righteous eateth to the satisfaction of his soul" (Prov. XIII, 25), which he interpreted to mean: "The righteous has his meal only after he has satisfied his soul with prayer and study." Said R. Simeon: 'Observe that before the Holy One gave Israel the Torah He tried them to see who would be a son of faith and who would not be. How did He try them? By the manna. All those who were found to be sons of faith were signed with the sign of the crown of Grace by the Holy One Himself; and from those who were not found to be thus, this supernal crown was withheld.

'It has been said at that hour Israel was perfected below according to her prototype above, for it is written, "and they came to Elim, where were twelve wells of water and threescore and ten palm trees" (Ex. xv, 27). Now the Holy Tree [Tr. note: Tifereth.] spreads to twelve boundaries on the four quarters of the earth, and to seventy branches closely intertwined, so that what was above should have here its counterpart below. At that hour holy dew dropped down from the Hidden Most Ancient One and filled the head of the Lesser Countenance, the place which is called "Heaven". From this dew of the supernal holy light the manna descended, and in so doing dispersed itself into flakes and became solidified "as thin as the hoar frost on the ground" (Ex. XVI, 14). And all the sons of the Faith went out, gathered it, and praised the Holy Name for it. The manna diffused the scents of all the spices of the Garden of Eden, through which it had passed in descending. Each one found in the manna the taste he most desired; and as he ate he blessed the Supernal Holy King for His goodness, and was himself blessed with understanding of the Supernal Wisdom. Therefore that generation was called "the generation of knowledge". These were the sons of Faith, and to them was given the privilege of contemplating and comprehending the holy Torah. But of those who were not truly faithful it is written, "and the people roamed about (shatu) and gathered (the manna)" (Num. XI, 8). The word "shatu" (roamed about) indicates that these people allowed "stupidity" (shatuta) to enter into them, because they were not sons of Faith. And what do we read of them? "And they ground it in mills or beat it in a mortar" (Ibid.). Why should they have gone to all this trouble?

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 63a

Merely because they were not sons of Faith. They are the prototypes of all those who have no faith in the Holy One, blessed be He, and have no desire to meditate on His ways: they likewise labour day and night for food, in fear that they may be short of bread—all because they are not of the faithful. Thus "the people roamed about and gathered" and "ground it", making diverse foolish efforts and labouring greatly. And what did all their trouble avail them? Only this: "and the taste of it was the taste of fresh oil" (Ibid.). No other flavour rewarded them. Why? Because they were not sons of Faith. As to the actual taste of the manna, some say it was of paste mixed with oil; some, that it was only like paste in that it could be variously moulded and pounded; R. Judah said that it was indeed only the flavour of fresh oil.'

R. Isaac said: 'It is written: GATHER OF IT EVERY MAN ACCORDING TO HIS EATING (okhlo). Did, then, the one who ate little gather little, and the one who ate much gather much? Is it not written, "he that gathered much had nothing over, and he that gathered little had no lack" (Ex. XXVI, 18)? The term "okhlo", however, signifies that they gathered according to the number of the consumers. It was in this way. Two men would dispute concerning a servant, each one saying that she or he was his, and they would take their controversy to Moses that he might decide it. He would say to each: "How many persons have you in your family?" and having ascertained this, he commanded: "To-morrow let everyone gather the manna according to the number of his people, and bring it all to me." Next morning they would come to Moses, and he counted for every person of each house an omer; having done which he found that one of the disputants had yet another omer over and above those which were the portion of the number of his household, which proved that the servant was his. Hence it says: "An omer for every man, according to the number of your persons" (V. 12).' AT EVEN THEN YE SHALL KNOW.... Said R. Jose: 'How were they to know? We may explain as follows. It has been taught that every day the judgements of the Holy One, blessed be He are manifested, and in the morning Grace predominates in the world, but at the time called "evening" Justice rules in the world, and for this reason, as we have learnt, Isaac instituted the afternoon prayer. Therefore it says: "In the evening ye shall know"; that is, when Judgement is awakened in the world you shall know that by the power of that Judgement God has brought you out from the land of Egypt; whereas "in the morning ye shall perceive the glory of the Lord", for all that time Grace is awakened in the world, and shall indeed bring down food for you, and "ye shall be given food to eat".' Said R. Hiya: 'Not so! The true meaning of the passage is the opposite, viz. that when the children of Israel said, "when we sat by the flesh pots, etc." (Ex. XVI, 3), then was awakened the attribute of Justice, symbolized by the "evening"; but nevertheless Grace also awakened with it, as it says, "ye shall know that the Lord brought you out of the land of Egypt", i.e. you shall know the Grace He showed you in the hour of judgement by bringing you out of Egypt. "In the morning you shall see the glory of the Lord"; and we know what is meant by "Glory". And why all this? For that He heareth your murmurings against the Lord.' Said R. Jose: 'The Holy One does not alter His judgements; it is the wicked in the world who turn Mercy to Judgement, as we have already made clear.' R. Eleazar taught that in the coming age the righteous shall eat of this manna, but of a much higher quality, a quality which was never seen in this world, as it is written: "To behold the beauty of the Lord and to visit his Temple" (Ps. XXVII, 4); "Eye hath not seen... what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him" (Isa. LXIV, 4).

R. Hezekiah discoursed on the verse: "A song of degrees. Out of the depth have I cried unto thee" (Ps. cxxx, 1, 2). 'This Psalm', he said, 'is anonymous, because

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 63b

all men can apply it to themselves in all generations. Whoever prays before the Holy King must do so from the depths of his soul so that his heart may be wholly turned to God and his whole mind be concentrated upon his prayer. David had already said "I seek thee with my whole heart" (Ps. CXIX, 10). Why, then, should he now go further and say "out of the depths"? The reason is that when a man prays before the King he should concentrate mind and heart on the source of all sources, in order to draw blessings from the depth of the "Cistern", from the source of all life, from the "stream coming out of Eden" (Gen. II, 19), which "maketh glad the city of God" (Ps. XLVI, 5). Prayer is the drawing of this blessing from above to below; for when the Ancient One, the All-hidden, wishes to bless the universe, He lets His gifts of Grace congregate in that supernal depth, from where they are to be drawn, through human prayer, into the "Cistern", so that all the streams and brooks may be filled therefrom.' AND MOSES SAID UNTO THEM, LET NO MAN LEAVE OF IT UNTIL THE MORNING. R. Judah said: Every day the world is blessed through that superior day, the Seventh. For the six Days receive blessing from the seventh, and each dispenses the blessing so received on its own day, but not on the next. Hence the Israelites were commanded not to leave of the manna till the morning. The sixth day has more blessing than the rest, for on this day, as R. Eleazar has said, the Shekinah prepares the table for the King. Hence the sixth day has two portions, one for itself and one in preparation for the joy of the union of the King with the Shekinah, which takes place on Sabbath night, and from which all the six days of the week derive their blessing. For that reason the table has to be prepared on the Sabbath night, so that when the blessings descend from above they may find something on which to rest, as it were, for "no blessing rests on an empty table". Those who are aware of this mystery of the union of the Holy One with the Shekinah on Sabbath night consider, therefore, this time the most appropriate one for their own marital union.' SEE FOR THAT THE LORD HATH GIVEN YOU THE SABBATH. What is the meaning of the word "Sabbath"? The day in which all the other days rest, the day which comprises the other days, and from which they derive blessing. R. Jose said: 'The Community of Israel is also called "Sabbath", for she is God's spouse. That is why the Sabbath is called "Bride", and it is written, "Ye shall keep the Sabbath, for it is holy unto you" (Ex. XXXI, 13): it is holy to you, but not to other nations; "it is a sign between me and the children of Israel" (Ibid. v, 17): it is Israel's eternal heritage.' ABIDE YE EVERY MAN IN HIS PLACE, LET NO MAN GO OUT OF HIS PLACE ON THE SEVENTH DAY. This "place" is the "Place" where it is right to walk. The inner meaning of the word is as in the verse: "Put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground" (Ex. III, 5): the noted Place (i.e. stage of contemplation) where one is aware of the Supernal Glory. Therefore when man adorns himself with the supernal holy Crown (i.e. celebrates the Sabbath), he must take great care not to utter any word which might

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 64a

profane the Sabbath, and similarly to guard his hands

and also his feet, so as not to walk beyond the permissible limit of the two thousand cubits. Again, the "place" here refers to the glorious Place of Holiness, outside of which are "strange gods". "Blessed be the glory of the Lord" is the Supernal Glory; "from His place" is the terrestrial Glory. This is the secret of the Sabbath Crown. Therefore: "let no man go out of his place on the seventh day". Blessed is the lot of him who is worthy of the glory of the Sabbath: blessed in this world and blessed in the world to come. AND THE LORD SAID UNTO MOSES, GO ON BEFORE THE PEOPLE AND TAKE WITH THEE, ETC. R. Hiya began his interpretation by quoting the following verse: "The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him and delivereth them" (Ps. XXXIV, 8). He said: 'Blessed are the righteous, in that the Holy One is more concerned for their honour than for His own! See how He ignores those who scorn and blaspheme the Supernal! Sanherib, for instance, said: "Who are they among the gods of the countries... that the Lord should deliver Jerusalem out of mine hand?" (2 Kings XVIII, 35), and yet the Holy One exacted no requital from him; but as soon as he stretched out his hand against Hezekiah "the angel of the Lord smote in the camp of the Assyrians" (Ibid. v, 19). Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, worshipped heathen gods, brought incense and sacrificed to them, and yet God did not requite him for his sin; but when Iddo the prophet came to warn him, and Jeroboam stretched out his hand against him, then "his hand which he put up against him dried up and he could not pull it in again to him" (I Kings XIII, 4). Pharaoh scorned and blasphemed, and said: "Who is the Lord?" (Ex. v, 2), but the Holy One did not punish him until he refused to let Israel go, as it is written: "As yet exaltest thou thyself against my people... Behold tomorrow at this time I will cause it, etc. (Ex. IX, 17). And so it is always the case that the Holy One avenges the insult done to the righteous more than one offered to Himself. Here, however, when Moses said "They be almost ready to stone me" (Ex. XVII, 4), God said to him: "Moses, now is not the time to exact reparation for the insult done to thee. However, go before the people, and I shall see who will stretch out his hand against thee! Art thou in their power or in mine?" AND THE ROD WHEREWITH THOU SMOTEST THE RIVER TAKE IN THINE HAND. The rod was to be taken because it was inscribed with miracles, and the Holy Name was impressed on it. BEHOLD, I WILL STAND BEFORE THEE THERE UPON THE ROCK. This "rock" is the same as the one mentioned in the verse: "The rock, perfect is his work" (Deut. XXXII, 4); and, as the rod had formerly been a serpent, Moses here knew "the way of a serpent upon a rock" (Prov. xxx, 19). Said R. Judah: 'If that is so, what are we to make of the next words: "and thou shalt smite the rock and there shall come water out of it" (Ibid.)?' R. Hiya replied: 'Certainly it is so. Of all the names of the Holy One, blessed be He, there is not one which does not effect signs and wonders, producing all that the world needs.' 'But does it not say,' objected R. Judah, 'Behold, he smote the rock, and the waters gushed out' (Ps. cv, 41)?' R. Hiya replied: 'A strong hammer is known by the sparks it produces (i.e. a sharp mind is recognized by the problems it raises), and dost thou ask such a question? Listen. Everywhere "rock" symbolizes "Geburah" (Force), and when the Holy One wishes to wound and to smite, this "Geburah" is awakened and it is this that

executes the act. Hence, we read: "The Rock smote, and the waters gushed out." Without this the waters would not have gushed out.' But,' said R. Judah, 'is it not written, "The Rock that begat thee thou hast neglected", or, as we interpret, "weakened" (Deut. XXXII, 18)?' R. Hiya replied: 'Surely! For if sinners knew that this Rock was going to be awakened and punish them, they would not sin; it is, however, weak in their estimation because they do not contemplate it nor observe its ways.'

R. Abba said: 'There are two Rocks: from the Supernal Rock emanates a lower Rock. That is to say, from the side of the "Mother" comes "Strength" (Geburah), as R. Eleazar has said, that, although the Supernal Mother does not in Herself signify Judgement, yet judgement issues from Her side, since

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 64b

Geburah emanates from her. Therefore She is called "Supernal Rock". And in the same verse the words, "And hast forgotten God that formed thee" refer to the brightness of the Father, viz. the Supernal Grace.'

R. Abba further said: 'We know that "water" everywhere symbolizes God's kindness, "Grace", and yet the Holy One, blessed be He, on this occasion caused water to come from the "Rock" (the symbol of Judgement), though it ought to be connected with "Greatness" (=Grace). In this, however, consisted the "sign" and wonder of the Holy One: "Who turned the Rock into a pool" (Ps. CXXIV, 8). "Turned" suggests that it is not the usual function of the rock to produce water. Therefore He caused water to come from the place below by means of the Supernal Rock. And what is the name of the place below? "Sela", for it is written: "And thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock (sela)" (Num. xx, 8). And wherewith did this sela' bring forth water? By the power of the Supernal Rock.'

R. Simeon said: 'Moses in his Song, first said "The rock, perfect is his work" (Deut. XXXII, 4), referring to the occasion when water issued from the rock, doing the work of him who was called "perfect", namely Abraham (Gen. XVII, 1), who symbolizes Grace. But on the second occasion, when Moses tried to bring forth water from that rock (Num. xx), it did not turn to "perfection", because of Israel's sins; and in reference to this Moses said: "The Rock that begat thee thou hast weakened" (Deut. XXXII, 15), meaning, "thou hast weakened it from what it was to thee before; it does not now represent 'perfection' but 'judgement'; it is not now what it was when thou wast begotten as a people'.'

Said R. Abba: 'What did the Israelites mean when they said: IS THE LORD AMONG US OR NOT (ain, lit. nothing)? Were they so blind as not to know that He was in their midst? Did not the Shekinah encompass them and the clouds of glory surround them? Had they not seen the radiance of their King's glorious majesty at the sea? It is, however, as R. Simeon explained, that they desired to know whether the Divine manifestation which they had experienced was that of the Ancient One, the All-hidden One, the Transcendent, whose designation is Ayin (Nought), because He is above comprehension, or of the "Small Countenance", the

Immanent designated TETRAGRAMMATON. Hence the word "ayin" (nothing) is used here instead of "lo" (not). If so, it may be asked, why were they punished? Because they differentiated between these two aspects in God and "tempted the Lord"; for they said to themselves: "If it is the One, we shall pray in one way, and if it is the Other, we shall pray in another way".' THEN CAME AMALEK AND FOUGHT WITH ISRAEL IN REPHIDIM. R. Jose quoted in connection with this the following verse: Blessed are ye that sow beside all waters, that send forth thither the feet of the ox and the ass (Isa. XXXII, 20). 'Water', he said, 'has many symbolic meanings: there are many kinds of water. Blessed are the Israelites who "sow beside the water"-the water which is under the branches of the Holy One's Tree, a Tree great and mighty, containing food for the whole universe. This Tree is encompassed by twelve frontiers and adjoins all four sides of the world, and has seventy branches, and Israel is in the "body" of the Tree, and the seventy branches encompass her. This is symbolized by the "twelve wells of water and the threescore and ten palm trees", as we have often explained. But what do the words "and they encamped there by the water" signify? This. At that time the Israelites had control over the waters which are under the branches of that Tree, those which are called "the insolent waters," (Ps. CXXIV, 5). And this is the meaning of the words, "blessed are ye that sow beside all waters, that send forth thither the feet of the ox and the ass", namely, the two "Crowns of the Left", to which are attached the pagan nations who are called "ox and ass". When the Israelites are worthy, then they dismiss these evil powers, and they have no dominion over them.' Said R. Abba: 'When the two (i.e. the ox and the ass) are united, the inhabitants of the world cannot stand up against them. For this reason

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 65a

it is prohibited to "plough with an ox and an ass together" (Deut. XXII, 10). From them, when united, emanates the power, called "dog", which is more insolent than all of them. Said the Holy One, blessed be He: "Ye said, 'is the Lord in our midst or not?' Behold, I will deliver you to the dog!", and straightway came Amalek.'

R. Judah said: 'It is written, "Amalek is the first of the nations; but his latter end shall be that he perish for ever" (Num. XXIV, 20). Was, then, Amalek the first of the nations? Were there not many tribes, nations, and peoples in the world before Amalek came? But the meaning is that Amalek was the first nation who feared not to proclaim war against Israel, as it says, "and he feared not God" (Deut. XXIV, 18); whilst the other nations were filled with fear and trembling before Israel at the time of the Exodus, as it says: "The peoples heard and were afraid; trembling took hold of the inhabitants of Pelesheth" (Ex. xv, 14); in fact, apart from Amalek there was no nation that was not awestruck before the mighty works of the Holy One, blessed be He. Therefore "his latter end shall be that he perish for ever".'

Said R. Eleazar: 'Observe that although the "Rock" (i.e. Geburah, Severity) dealt graciously with them in supplying them with water, yet it did not cease to

perform its natural function, so that "Amalek came". R. Abba discoursed on the verse: There is a sore evil which I have seen under the sun, namely, riches kept for the owners thereof to their hurt" (Eccl. v, 13). "There is a sore evil." Are there then two kinds of evil, one that is sore, and another that is not sore? Yes, indeed! There is a particularly sore evil, for we have a tradition that from the Side of the Left emanate many emissaries of punishment who go down to the hollow of the great Sea, and then emerge in a body and, cleaving the air, advance upon the sons of men. Each one of them is called "evil", and it is to this that the words "there shall no evil befall thee" (Ps. xc, 10) refer. When a certain one of these "evils" befalls a man, it makes him miserly with his money, so that when a collector for charity or a poor man comes to him it strikes his hand saying, "do not impoverish yourself". It will not even let him buy food for himself. In fact, from the moment that that "evil" comes upon the man, he is "sore" like a sick man who can neither eat nor drink. King Solomon proclaimed in his wisdom: "There is an evil which I have seen under the sun... A man to whom God hath given riches, wealth, and honour, so that he wanteth nothing for his soul of all that he desireth, yet God giveth him no power to eat thereof, but a stranger eateth it" (Eccl. VI, 1-2). On the surface, the end of this verse would appear to contradict the beginning: if God has given him riches, etc., how can we say that he has no power over it? The meaning, however, is that he has no power over that "evil" to which he clings and entrusts himself, and therefore he is like a sick man who does not eat, nor drink, and he keeps his money tight until he leaves this world and another man comes and takes possession of it, and becomes its master.' We may also explain the verse as follows. When a young man who lives at ease in his father's house begins to make

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 65b

all sorts of complaints and demands, saying, "I want this, and I do not want that", he attaches himself to that "sore evil", and he will be punished both in this world and in the world to come. Concerning such a case, King Solomon said: "There is a sore evil... riches kept for the owners thereof to their hurt." Such was the case of the Israelites: the Holy One, blessed be He, carried them on eagles' wings, encircled them with the clouds of glory, made the Shekinah go before them, gave them manna to eat, and sweet water to drink, and yet they complained! Hence, "and Amalek came".

R. Simeon said: 'There is a deep allusion in the name "Rephidim". This war emanated from the attribute of Severe Judgement and it was a war above and a war below. The Holy One, as it were, said: "when Israel is worthy below My power prevails in the universe; but when Israel is found to be unworthy she weakens My power above, and the power of severe judgement predominates in the world.' So here, "Amalek came and fought with Israel in Rephidim", because the Israelites were "weak" (raphe) in the study of the Torah, as we have explained on another occasion.' AND MOSES SAID UNTO JOSHUA, CHOOSE US OUT MEN, AND GO OUT, FIGHT WITH AMALEK. Why did Moses abstain from fighting the first battle which God Himself commanded? Because he was able to

divine the true meaning of his Master's command. Hence he said: "I will prepare myself for the war above, and thou, Joshua, prepare thyself for the war below." This is the meaning of the words: "When Moses lifted up his hand, Israel prevailed" (Ibid. v, 11), namely Israel above. Therefore Moses did not participate in the war on earth, so that he might throw himself with greater zeal into the war in Heaven, and thus promote victory on earth. Said R. Simeon: 'Let us not think lightly of this war with Amalek. Verily, from the creation of the world until then, and since then till the coming of the Messiah, there has been and will be no war like that, nor can even the war of Gog and Magog be compared with it; and this not because of the mighty armies taking part in it, but because it was launched against all the attributes of the Holy One, blessed be He.' AND MOSES SAID TO JOSHUA. Why to him, who was then but a "youth" (Ex. XXXIII, 11)? Were there in Israel no greater warriors than Joshua? The reason was that Moses in his wisdom was aware that it was not going to be merely a battle against flesh and blood, but against Samael, who was coming down to assist Amalek. Now Joshua, "the youth", had reached at that time a high degree of spiritual perception, not, indeed, as high as Moses, who was united with the Shekinah, but his soul was, in fact, attached to the supernal region called "Youth" (=Metatron).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 66a

Now when Moses perceived that Samael was going to fight for Amalek, he thought: "this young man, Joshua, will surely stand against him and prevail", and therefore he said unto him: "go and fight against Amalek! It is thy battle, the battle here below, and I will prepare myself for the battle above. Choose worthy men, righteous and the sons of the righteous, to accompany thee". Said R. Simeon: 'At the moment when Joshua, the "young man", started out to fight Amalek, the "Young Man" above was stirred, and was equipped with weapons prepared by his "Mother" (the Shekinah) for the battle in order to "avenge the covenant" (cf. Lev. XXVI, 25) with the "sword" (Ex. XVII, 13). Moses equipped himself for the war above. "His hands were heavy" (Ibid. v, 12), that is to say, "weighty, honourable, holy hands", that had never been defiled, hands worthy to wage the war above. AND THEY TOOK A STONE AND PUT IT UNDER HIM AND HE SAT THEREON: to participate in the distress of Israel. AND AARON AND HUR STAYED UP HIS HANDS, THE ONE ON THE ONE SIDE, AND THE OTHER ON THE OTHER SIDE: AND HIS HANDS WERE STEADY (emunah, lit. faith). This cannot be taken in the literal sense; what it means is that Aaron represented his "side" (the attribute of Grace), Hur his "side" (the attribute of Strength), and Moses' hands between the two represented Faith. AND IT CAME TO PASS THAT WHEN MOSES HELD UP HIS HAND, ISRAEL PREVAILED, AND WHEN HE LET DOWN HIS HAND, AMALEK PREVAILED. "Hand" here refers to the right hand, which he held up above the left, and so long as he did so, Israel, i.e. the Supernal Israel, prevailed; but when Israel below ceased praying Moses could not keep his hand up and "Amalek prevailed". From which we derive the lesson that, although the priest spreads out his hands at the sacrifice to make his mediation complete, yet Israel must co-operate with him in prayer. AND THE LORD

SAID UNTO MOSES, WRITE THIS FOR A MEMORIAL IN THE BOOK, ETC. Note that in the previous verse it says, "And Joshua disabled (vayahlosh) Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword." Why is the word "disabled" used here instead of "slew"? Because the word halash has also another meaning, namely, "to cast lots" (cf. Isa. XIV, 2). Joshua did indeed first cast lots, [Tr. note: i.e. as to which of the multitude of nations that Amalek brought with him (vide infra) should first be put to the sword.] and then the sword, executing the vengeance of the covenant, slew them. WRITE THIS FOR A MEMORIAL: "this" in the first place, AND REHEARSE IT IN THE EARS OF JOSHUA, namely, that he is destined to slay other kings. FOR I WILL UTTERLY BLOT OUT (lit. for blotting out I will blot out); that is, both their celestial forces and their power here below: similarly THE REMEMBRANCE of them on high as well as below. Said R. Isaac: 'Here it is written: "For I will utterly blot out", whereas in another passage it says, "Thou shalt blot out the remembrance of Amalek" (Deut. xxv, 19). The Holy One, blessed be He, said in effect: "Ye shall blot out his remembrance on earth, and I will blot out his remembrance on high".' R. Jose said: 'Amalek brought with him other peoples, but all the rest were afraid to commence war against Israel. Hence Joshua cast lots which of them to slay.' AND MOSES BUILT AN ALTAR AND CALLED THE NAME OF IT TETRAGRAMMATON NISSI (the Lord is my sign). He built an altar below to correspond to the Altar above.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 66b

R. Jose said: 'The altar was intended to bring atonement and forgiveness to them. "He called the name", namely the name of the altar, "TETRAGRAMMATON NISSI", just as Jacob called the altar which he built El Elohe Yisroel, "the God, the God of Israel" (Gen. XXXIII, 20).' He meant to indicate that the miracle was wrought for them because they had been properly circumcised, so that the sign of the Covenant was visibly imprinted upon them. Hence we learn that when a father performs the act of circumcision on his son, revealing the impress of the sign of the holy Covenant, the sacrificial act is, as it were, an altar of propitiation.

R. Jose said: 'How are we to understand the words, "and they saw the God of Israel" (Ex. XXIV, 10)? Who can see the Holy One? Is it not written: "No man can see Me and live"? It means that a rainbow appeared above them in radiant colours resplendent with the beauty of His grace. Therefore the saying that he who gazes at a rainbow gazes, as it were, at the Shekinah. For the same reason it is not right to look at the fingers of the priests when they spread out their hands to bless the people (the Shekinah "showing Herself through the lattice", i.e. through the priests' fingers).' R. Jose further said: 'They saw the light of the Shekinah, namely him who is called "the Youth" (Metatron-Henoch), and who ministers to the Shekinah in the heavenly Sanctuary. As for the "paved work of a sapphire brick" mentioned in the same verse, this was an impression of one of the bricks with which the Egyptians "embittered" the lives of the children of Israel (Ex. I, 14). There is a story concerning a Hebrew woman in Egypt who, when a child was born to her, being in fear of Pharaoh's decree, hid him under a brick. Then a hand was

stretched out, took hold of the brick, and placed it under the "feet" of the Shekinah. There it remained until the earthly Temple was burned down. It is concerning this that it is written in the book of Lamentations (II, 1): "He remembered not his footstool in the day of his anger." Said R. Hiya: 'The radiance of the Sapphire extended towards seventy-two sides' (in accordance with the seventy-two Divine Names).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 67a

[Note: The first 3 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.] THE LORD WILL HAVE WAR WITH AMALEK FROM GENERATION TO GENERATION. R. Judah said: There never was a generation of men, nor ever will be, in this world without this evil seed, and the Holy One, blessed be He, carries on His war against it. Of such it is written: "Let the sinners be consumed out of the earth, and let the wicked be no more. Bless thou the Lord, O my soul. Hallelukah!" (Ps. CIV, 35).'

JETHRO

NOW JETHRO, THE PRIEST OF MIDIAN, MOSES' FATHER-IN-LAW, HEARD OF ALL THAT GOD HAD DONE FOR MOSES AND FOR ISRAEL. R. Hezekiah opened here with a discourse on the verse: And Aaron lifted up his hand [Tr. note: So the k'tib.] toward the people and blessed them (Lev. IX, 22). 'The use of the word "hand" here', he said, 'in the singular indicates that he meant to lift up his right hand above his left; and this for a certain esoteric reason. We find, namely, in the book of King Solomon, that he who lifts up his hand towards heaven without any devotional intention to utter prayer or blessing will be cursed by ten celestial powers, the "ten potentates which are found in the city" (Eccl. VII, 19), namely, the ten supernal beings who are appointed over the "spreading of hands", to receive the blessings or prayers offered therewith, and to endow them with a power through which the holy name [Tr. note: Adonai] is glorified and blessed from below. And when, through the "spreading of hands", the name is blessed from below, it receives blessings from above also, and is thus glorified from all sides. And these "ten potentates" will then take of the blessings above, and pour them down upon him who is below. Therefore when man lifts up his hand to heaven, he must be careful that his intention should be to pray or bless or supplicate, for if he lifts them idly, [Tr. note: i.e. for cursing.] those powers that brood over the "spreading of hands" will curse him with two hundred and forty-eight curses. Of such a one it is written: "As he loved cursing, so let it come unto him" (Ps. CIX, 17). Moreover, the spirit of impurity rests on such hands, for it is wont to hover over an empty spot, and blessing does not rest there. Thus the hand must be lifted up to heaven only as an expression of prayer or of blessing. Indeed, this "spreading of hands" has a profound symbolical significance. When a man spreads out his hands and lifts them up in prayer and supplication, he may be said to glorify the Holy One in various ways. He symbolically [Tr. note: Because the pair of hands contain ten fingers] the ten Words (Sefiroth), thereby unifying the whole and duly blessing the Holy Name. He also, as it were, unites the inner Chariots and the outer Chariots, so that the Holy Name may be blessed from all sides, and all become one, both that which is

above and that which is below. The ten powers of which we spake are the lower ten Words (Sefiroth), symbolized by the inscribed letters corresponding to those above, and they have charge, in the first instance, of the raising of the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 67b

fingers in prayer. And when the whole side of holiness is united above, the "other sides" are subdued, and they also confess and praise the Holy King.

'Observe this. In the mystic doctrine of the Holy Name we speak of King and Priest, both above and below. The King above is the mystic Holy of Holies. [Tr. note: Binah.] and under him there is a Priest, the mystic Primeval Light, who ministers before him; he is the priest who is called "great" and is stationed at the right hand. There is a King below, in the likeness of the King above, who is king over all that is below; and under him there is a Priest who ministers to him: this is he whom we call Michael, the High Priest, who is at the right hand. All this constitutes the true object of faith, that of the side of holiness. On the "other side", the side which is not holy, there is also a king, the one who is called "an old king and a fool" (Eccl. IV, 13), and the priest, who is under him and ministers to him, is On (=aven, nothingness, idolatry); he is alluded to in the verse: "And Ephraim said, Yet I am become rich, I have found me out power", namely, the celestial unholy power which presided over the act of idolatry committed by Jeroboam (I Kings XII, 28), without which he would not have been able to succeed. Now, when this king and this priest of the "other side" are subdued, and their power broken, all the "other sides" follow suit, and are also subdued and broken, and acknowledge the sovereignty of the Holy One, and in this way He alone rules above and below, as it is written: "And the Lord alone will be exalted in that day" (Isa. II, 11). In just the same way God broke here on earth the power of an "old and foolish king", namely Pharaoh, who, when Moses said to him, "The God of the Hebrews hath met with us", replied, "I know not the Lord," but when the Holy One, desiring that His Name should be glorified on earth as it is in heaven, punished him and his people, he came and acknowledged the Holy One. Subsequently his priest also, namely Jethro, the priest of On, i.e. idolatry, was also humbled, so that he came and acknowledged the Holy One, saying: "Blessed be the Lord, who hath delivered you.... Now I know that the Lord is greater than all the gods..." (Ex. XVIII, 10, 11). So when that king and that priest acknowledged the Holy One, blessed be He, and were humbled before Him, He was exalted above and below, and then, and then only did He give forth the Torah, as undisputed sovereign over all.'

R. Eleazar meditated on the words of the Psalm: "God be merciful unto us" (Ps. LXVII). Said he: [Tr. Note: There appears to be a lacuna here in the text.] 'King David rose and praised and thanked the Holy King. He was studying the Torah at the moment when the north wind rose and touched the strings of his harp, so that it made music. Now, what was the song of the harp? See now. When the Holy One moves towards the chariots and the hosts to give nourishment to all those supernal beings-as it is written, "She (the

Shekinah) riseth while it is yet night and giveth food to her household and a portion to her maidens" (Prov. XXXI, 15)- all are filled with joy and song. They begin their hymning with the words: "God be merciful unto us and bless us, and cause His face to shine upon us"; and the north wind, when it awakens and breathes upon the world, sings: "That thy way may be known upon earth, thy salvation among all nations"; and the harp, when it is played upon by that wind, sings: "Let all peoples praise Thee, O God; let all the peoples praise Thee." As for David, when he was awakened and the Holy Spirit moved him, he sang: "Then shall the earth yield her increase, and God, even our God, shall bless us; God shall bless us, and all the ends of the earth shall fear him." This he sang so as to draw down the goodness of the Holy One from above to the earth below. Later David arranged all these songs into one psalm. The song of the harp ("Let all peoples praise thee") signifies that when the heathen nations acknowledge the Holy One, His glory is consummated above and below.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 68a

When Pharaoh acknowledged Him by saying: "The Lord is the righteous" (Ex. IX, 27), all other kings had to follow suit: "Then the dukes of Edom were terrified" (Ibid. XVI, 15); for Pharaoh was then the overlord of the whole world. Then came Jethro, that great and supreme priest of the whole pagan world, and confessed his faith in the Holy One, saying, "Now I know that the Lord is greater than all the gods"; then the Holy One was exalted in His glory above and below, and then it was that he gave the Torah in the completeness of his dominion.'

Said R. Simeon to R. Eleazar, his son: 'Concerning this, it is written: "Let all peoples praise thee, O Lord; let all peoples praise thee." Then R. Eleazar came and kissed his hand. But R. Abba wept and said: 'A father pitieth his children. Who will pity R. Eleazar and bring his words to completion except he have the Master's pity? How happy can we consider ourselves that we were privileged to hear these words so that we shall not be ashamed of our ignorance in the world to come!'

R. Abba continued: 'It does not say that Jethro was a priest of On, but of Midian.' R. Simeon replied: 'It is all one; at first the father-in-law of Joseph was called a "priest of On", and then "the father-

in-law of Moses" was called a "priest of Midian", and both have the same symbolism, for both Moses and Joseph were in that grade symbolized by the two Vau's that are one.' Then R. Abba put his hands on his head, wept again, and said: 'The light of the Torah now reaches the highest throne in heaven. But who will light the lamp of the Torah when the Master shall have passed away? Woe to the world which will be orphaned without thee. However, the words of the Master will shine in the world until King Messiah appears, when "the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea" (Isa. XI, 9).' NOW JETHRO HEARD OF ALL THAT GOD (Elohim) HAD DONE FOR MOSES AND FOR ISRAEL, HIS PEOPLE, AND THAT THE LORD (TETRAGRAMMATON) HAD BROUGHT

ISRAEL OUT OF EGYPT. Said R. Hiya: 'We note that there is a transition in this verse from the name Elohim to the name TETRAGRAMMATON. There is an inner reason for this. The first name indicates the Shekinah who protected Israel in exile, always being present with them and with Moses; and the second name signifies the supreme emanation which brought them out from Egypt, and is symbolically known as "Jubilee". According to another interpretation, "What God had done for Moses" refers to the time when he was thrown into the Nile and when he was saved from Pharaoh's sword, and "for Israel his people" to the time when "He heard the groaning".' R. Jose here quoted the verse: "He sent redemption unto his people; he hath commanded his covenant for ever; holy and awful is his name" (Ps. CXI, 9). He pointed out that this and the following verse ("The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom; a good understanding have all they that do his commandments; his praise endureth for ever") each consists of three parts, the first letters of which are in alphabetical order, whilst the rest of the Psalm has but two such parts in each verse. And his explanation was that the last two verses between them complete the alphabet on six sides. The first corresponds to the three redemptions of Israel, apart from the Egyptian (i.e. Babylonian, Syrian, and the future one); the second to the three divisions of Scripture: Torah, Prophets and Sacred Writings. "He sent redemption unto His people", namely, when He redeemed Israel from the Egyptian exile; "He hath commanded His covenant for ever", that is, when Jethro came and the Holy One received him into His Covenant and brought him near to Himself that he might worship Him. Since then all proselytes have been brought to rest under the wings of the Shekinah, and hereby "holy and awful is His Name", for the Holy Name is hallowed when the "other side" is subdued and broken, as in the case of Jethro. NOW JETHRO... HEARD. Was Jethro the only one who heard of all that God had done? Does it not say, "Peoples heard, they were afraid" (Ex. xv, 14)? Indeed, the whole world did hear, yet Jethro alone

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 68b

renounced idolatry and accepted the Holy One to worship Him.

Said R. Abba: 'We have frequently affirmed that whatever the Holy One has made, whether it be above or below, has a purpose: He is truth and His work is truth, and therefore no phenomenon in the world is to be spurned as of no account, since everything is formed according to a divine pattern, and therefore is of some necessity. Once, for example, R. Eleazar was walking along accompanied by R. Hezekiah, when they came across a snake. R. Hezekiah was about to kill it, but R. Eleazar said: 'Nay, leave it alone, do not kill it!' Said R. Hezekiah to him: 'But is it not a noxious creature which kills people?' To which R. Eleazar replied: 'It is written: "Doth the serpent bite without enchantment? (lit. whispering)" (Eccl. x, 11). The serpent does not bite unless it be whispered to from above and commanded to kill some one, so as to prevent that person from committing some evil; thus the very poison is used by the Holy One in order to perform some miracle. It is, in truth, all in His hands; it is all according to His plan, and if it had no purpose He

would not have created it. And if it is wrong to despise anything in this world, how much more sinful must it be to think lightly of any word or act of the Holy One, blessed be He. It is written: "And God saw everything that He had made, and, behold, it was very good" (Gen. I, 31). The "living God" (Elohim Hayyim) purposed to give us light and to care for us in His Providence; and in His creation all are united, above and below, the "Right Side" and the "Left Side", the angel of life and the angel of death: all are part of His plan, and it is "very good"; it is all part of the same mystic doctrine, apprehended by those who contemplate the mystery of wisdom.

'It was Jethro who gave Moses sound advice concerning the administration of justice. And in this is contained an allusion to his confessing the Holy One, namely, in his awareness that "judgement is Gof's" (Deut. I, 17), and belongs not to the "other side", and that law and right were given to Israel and not to any of the heathen nations, as it is written: "He sheweth his words unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgements unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation; and as for his judgements, they have not known them" (Ps. CXLVII, 19, 20). So one must beware of despising anyone, since the words of an ordinary person may be of great consequence,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 69a

as it says of Moses that he "hearkened to the voice of his father-in-law, and did all that he had said (Ex. XVIII, 24).

R. Eleazar continued: 'It is written, "Therefore I shall praise thee, O Lord, among the nations, and sing praises unto thy name" (Ps. XVIII, 50). David said this under the prompting of the Holy Spirit, when he saw that the glory of the Holy One is not exalted and honoured in the world as it should be, unless other nations also contribute. It is true that the Holy One is glorified for Israel's sake alone; but while Israel are the foundation of the divine light from out of which issues forth light for the whole world, yet when heathen nations come to accept the glory of the Holy One and to worship Him, then the foundation of the light is strengthened, and all its rays are unified, and then the Holy One reigns above and below. This is exactly what happened when Jethro, the high priest of paganism, was converted to the worship of the true God of Israel: the whole world, hearing of the mighty works of the Holy One, and seeing that the great sage, Jethro, had been drawn to worship the God of Israel, gave up their idols, realizing their impotence, and in this way the glory of the Holy Name of God was exalted on all sides. For this reason the narrative concerning Jethro has been preserved in the Torah, with Jethro's name at the head.

'Pharaoh had as his counsellors three sages: Jethro, Balaam, and Job. Jethro, as already set forth, was the minister of worship, and there was no celestial Chieftain or star of which he did not know the appropriate cult. Balaam was an arch-sorcerer, in word and act. Job displayed pre-eminently the sense of religious awe and fear; for in the sphere of supramundane relationships, whether in the region of

holiness or of unholiness ("the other side"), man cannot draw down the spirit from above and unite himself with it without a sense of fear and awe, the concentration of heart and mind, and self-effacement. Without this fear the worshipper, even if he be an idolater, cannot properly link his will to the power above; he will only be able to attain to some small sparks of that power and even these require concentration of will and a sense of fear. Jethro's religious activity had to be continuous, and independent of the needs of the worshippers; for, in order that he might be able to use the power when he needed to do so, he had always to be connected with it. Balaam clung to his mediums of sorcery, as we have stated, and Job, because of that overpowering sense of awe which was in him, when he saw the mighty works of the God of Israel in Egypt, turned to worship Him with the same amount of fear and awe. But Jethro was not converted until later. Only when the Israelites had actually left Egypt, when he realized that all the bonds by which the Egyptian magicians had attempted to retain Israel in their power were futile, and when he saw that the Egyptians themselves had all perished in the Red Sea, only then did he turn to worship the Holy One, blessed be He. Balaam, again, was not converted at all, for the impurity of the "other side" clung to him. Yet even he saw something of the Divine and the Holy, although from a distance, through the mist of his impurity and attachment to the "other side". For in the "other side" there is an admixture or outer ring of light which surrounds the darkness, as it is written: "A whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud... and a brightness was about it" (Ezek. I, 4). And he saw this brightness from a distance, but, as it were, through a partition; therefore, although he prophesied, he knew not what he prophesied: he looked at the light with a "closed eye" (Num. XXIV, 4), for there is no sphere of the "other side" that entirely lacks

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 69b

some streak of light from the side of holiness, as even in a field of straw there are some grains of wheat, save only certain minor powers of special shamelessness and uncleanness. And it is this little spot of light which Balaam saw. Blessed is Moscs who moved in all the supernal holy regions, and who beheld that which it is not given to any other human being to behold. Moreover, as Balaam saw from a distance a small light from within the "other side", as it were through a partition, so Moses saw through the great light, as through a wall, a streak of darkness at its edge; but even he did not see it always, just as Balaam did not always see the streak of light. Happy was the lot of the faithful prophet Moses, for what is it that we read concerning him? "And an angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush" (Ex. III, 2). The bush was indeed in that region of holiness and clave to it, for all things cleave to one another, the pure and the impure, there is no purity except through impurity; a mystery which is expressed in the words: "a clean thing out of an unclean" (Job XIV, 4). The brain is contained in a shell, a shell which will not be broken until that time when the dead shall rise again. Then will the shell be broken and the light shine out into the world from the brain, without any covering on it. Blessed are the righteous in this world and in the world to come.' AND JETHRO TOOK ZIPPORAH AND

HER TWO SONS. Why are they called "her two sons" and not "sons of Moses"? R. Hiya said because she had brought them up. R. Eleazar, however, explained it differently, saying that because Moses had united himself with a supernal sphere of holiness (the Shekinah), it would have been irreverent to call them "his sons", although they were in fact his sons, and later, when he had separated himself for the time being from the Shekinah, and went out to meet his father-in-law, we read: "And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came with his sons" (v. 5). Said R. Simeon: 'Eleazar, Eleazar! I see that the beginning of thy interpretation is quite right, but not the end. Certainly, because of the honour of the Shekinah, who was united with him at the time, it is written, "her sons", but when it says afterwards "his sons" it refers not to Moses but to Jethro, who begat sons after Moses had come to him, like Laban, who had no sons before Jacob came and dwelt in his house. For Moses' sake, and through his merit, did Jethro beget sons, whom he then brought with him to Moses, so that they might all enter together under the wings of the Shekinah. Therefore it says also in the following verse (6): "I, thy father-in-law, Jethro, am come unto thee, and thy wife, and her two sons with her." And that Jethro did have sons is definitely stated: "And the children of the Kenite, Moses' father-in-law..." (Judges I, 16), and he left his sons to be with Moses.'

Then R. Simeon went on to expound in connection with this theme the words of the prophet Isaiah (II, 3): "And many people shall go, and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob." 'A time will come', he said, 'when the heathen nations will wear their feet out to go and be brought under the wings of the Shekinah. "Let us go up", they will say- since all paganism is a descent, but cleaving to the Holy One is an ascent-" to the mountain of the Lord", i.e. the God of Abraham, who said: "In the mount of the Lord it shall be seen" (Gen. XXII, 14); for as the mountain is free to all to ascend, so is this holy place open to receive all comers. The verse continues: "to the house of the God of Jacob", because Jacob called the same place "a house of God" (Ibid. XXVIII, 17). Or, rather, it is called "mount" and is also called "house", although it is the same sphere of the Divine,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 70a

since it is a "mount" for the nations of the world, who have to ascend it if they desire to enter under the wings of the Shekinah, but a "house" to Israel, to whom the Shekinah stands in the relationship of a wife to a husband, united in love and joy, hovering over Israel like a mother over her children. Of Jethro we read: "And Jethro... came with his sons... to Moses into the desert." When it says "to Moses", why add "to the desert"? Because herein lay the whole significance of his coming; the "desert" symbolized the "mountain of the Lord", the place for the reception of proselytes; in other words, Jethro came to Moses with the intention of becoming a proselyte and entering under the wings of the Shekinah. Everyone who comes to this region called "Mountain" becomes a participant in this mystery, and is called "a proselyte of righteousness". However, although he is joined to this holy supernal sphere, yet is he called "Ger" (proselyte, lit. sojourner), a person living out of his own country, because he has

left his own people and kin and taken up his abode in a new place. MOREOVER, THOU SHALT LOOK ABOUT AND CHOOSE OUT OF ALL THE PEOPLE, ABLE MEN. R. Isaac and R. Jose were one day studying the Torah in Tiberias. R. Simeon passed by and asked them what they were engaged upon. They answered him: 'The words which we have learned from thee, Master,' 'Which?' said he. They replied: 'It arises out of the verse: "This is the book of the generations of man; in the day when God created man, in the likeness of God made he him" (Gen. v, 1). We were taught,' they said, 'that this verse indicates that the Holy One showed to the first man all the future generations of mankind: all the leaders, all the sages of each period. We were further taught concerning the mystery contained in the words "this is the book" that there are two books, an upper and a lower book. The lower book is the "book of remembrance", and the upper one is called "this". And in order to show that the two are not separated, but form one, it is written "this is the book". There are two grades, male and female. For all the souls and spirits that enter human beings are alluded to in the words "generations of man (Adam)", for they all issue from the "Righteous One", and this is the "watering of the river that went out of Eden to water the garden" (Gen. II, 10). There is also another, a lower "Adam", alluded to in the words, "on the day that God created man (Adam)", in the same verse.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 70b

In regard to the upper Adam, the union of male and female is at first only distantly alluded to in the words "this is the book", but after they produced offspring they are called openly "Adam". Then it is said that God made man in the "likeness" of God. By the word "likeness" we are to understand a kind of mirror in which images appear momentarily and then pass away. According to another explanation, the word "likeness" refers to the union of male and female organs: and so the Master affirmed. Furthermore: "This is the book of the generations of Man", viz. the book which reveals the inner meaning of the features of man, so as to teach the knowledge of human nature. The character of man is revealed in the hair, the forehead, the eyes, the lips, the features of the face, the lines of the hands, and even the ears. By these seven can the different types of men be recognized. 'The Hair. A man with coarse, upstanding, wavy hair, is of a truculent disposition. His heart is as stiff as a die. His works are not upright. Have no fellowship with him. A man with very smooth, sleek and heavy-hanging hair, is a good companion, and one benefits from association with him. When left to himself he is not quite reliable. He cannot keep secrets

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 71a

unless they are of great importance. His actions are sometimes good and sometimes the reverse.

'A man whose hair lies flat, yet is not sleek, is fearless and insolent. He has a strong desire to do good, for he perceives the beauty of goodness, but alas! his good intentions are never realized. In his old age he becomes God-fearing and pious. Great secrets are not to be entrusted to him, but he is safe enough

with small ones. He can make much out of little and his words are listened to with respect. He is under the esoteric sign of the letter Zain, according to the scheme which our Master has taught us.

'A man whose hair is black and extremely glossy will succeed in all his doings, particularly in secular matters such as commerce, for instance. He is generous. But he prospers only as an individual; anyone associating himself with him will also have success, but not for long. He is also under the letter Zain.

'One whose hair is black but not glossy is not always successful in mundane affairs. It is good to associate oneself with him for a while in business matters. Should he be a student of the Torah he will succeed in his studies, and others who will join him will likewise succeed. He is a man who can keep a secret, but not for long. He is of a despondent nature, but will prevail against his enemies. He is under the sign of the letter Yod when it is not included in the letter Zain, but is numbered independently among the small letters.

'A man who is bald is successful in business, but is not straightforward. There is always a scarcity of food in his house. He is hypocritical; that is, when his baldness begins in youth. If he becomes bald in his old age he changes and becomes the opposite of what he was before, for good or for ill. This, however, only refers to the baldness which occurs on the forehead, at the spot where the phylactery is put on. Otherwise, it is not so. He is not

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 71b

deceitful, but is given to backbiting and insinuation. He is occasionally sin-fearing. He is under the sign of the letter Zain when it includes the letter Yod. So much for the mysteries revealed by the different kinds of hair, mysteries revealed and entrusted only to those well versed in holy lore, those who comprehend the ways and mysteries of the Torah, by which they may find out the hidden propensities of men. 'The forehead. The secret of the forehead belongs under the sign of the letter Nun, which forms the completion of the letter Zain; sometimes this is included in the symbolism of Zain and sometimes it stands separately. 'A forehead which rises sharply upward from the nose, being straight and flat without any outward curve or rounding, indicates that its owner is somewhat thoughtless. Such a man will consider himself wise, though in reality he knows little. His temper will be quick, and his tongue like a serpent's. If his forehead has large uneven furrows when he speaks, but other lines on his forehead lie even, he is not a person to associate with save for a brief period. Whatever he plans or does is only for his own advantage; he cares for no one but himself. He is incapable of keeping any secret entrusted to him, and the saying, "A tale-bearer revealeth secrets" (Prov. XI, 13) is true of him; indeed, he cares not what he says. This type of person belongs to the mystery of the letter Nun when it is contained in the letter Zain. Such a one may be thought of as anything but reliable. 'A fine and rounded forehead indicates a man of great penetration, but whose judgement is sometimes clouded. He loves cheerfulness, and is kindhearted to all. He has high

intellectual interests. Should he study the Torah he will become very proficient. When he speaks three large wrinkles appear on his forehead and three smaller ones above each eye. If when he is angry he weeps, he is better than he appears to be. In word and deed he is forthright and cares nothing for anyone. He will study the Torah with profit. Anyone

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 72a

who allies himself with him will derive benefit from the association and will profit even in secular matters. He is not consistently pious. In legal affairs he will always be unlucky, and should therefore avoid such embroilments as far as possible. This type stands in the symbolism of the letter Nun alone when it is not included in the Zain. It is for this reason that he must shun legal matters, since he does not belong to the region of justice, but to that of love and mercy. 'A person whose forehead is large and yet unrounded- the kind of man who always bends his head, whether he stand or move- this type can be divided into two classes, both witless. The madness of the one is evident, apparent to all; such a person is an acknowledged idiot. On his forehead are four large wrinkles, which usually appear when he speaks. Sometimes, however, the skin of his forehead is stretched and the wrinkles are not evident, but other larger ones appear close to his eyes. He laughs for no reason, and at nothing. His mouth is large and loose. Such a man is of no worth or use. The other kind of madness included in this type is less apparent, and is unnoticeable in common intercourse. Such a man may pursue study with success, even the study of the Torah, though he will not take it up for its own sake, but only to make a show. He makes a great parade of his religion, to give the impression that he is deeply pious, but in reality he has no thought of God, but only of man. The one object of all his thoughts and behaviour is to draw attention to himself. This type, with its two distinct variants, also stands under the sign of the Nun when it is contained in the Zain. 'A large rounded forehead indicates one who is openminded and generally gifted. He can acquire any kind of knowledge, even without a teacher. His undertakings are uniformly successful, except when they are concerned with money matters, in which he sometimes comes to grief. He can infer great things from small; hence he is rightly called discerning. He is detached from the things of this world, and even when he knows that he will suffer

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 72b

by not considering earthly matters he pays them no heed. He is tenderhearted. His forehead is deeply furrowed by two wrinkles, set high upon his brow, one over each eye. His forehead also has three long lines, and between his eyes is the double vertical furrow which signifies deep thought. He is always concerned with realities and not with appearances, because he does not care what men say about him. He is never afraid for long. He is very conciliatory. To outsiders his acts appear sometimes childish and sometimes wise- This type also stands in the sign of the Nun when it is separated and not included in the Zain. So much for the mystery connected with the study of the forehead. 'The eyes. The eyes are connected with the symbolism of the letter Samech. There are varieties of colour and

of form. In the substances which go to compose the visible discernible eye are contained four colours. There is the white of the ball, which is common to all sorts of eyes. Enclosed within this white is the darker hue of the iris- thus white and dark are united. Included in this dark there is yet another shade, a bluish tinge; and the inmost circle of colour is black, this being the pupil. 'A man whose eyes are evenly set is straightforward and free from guile. A person with such eyes is always merry and full of jokes. He has good intentions, but seldom carries them out because of his fickleness. His mind is chiefly occupied with worldly things, but he has the capacity for spiritual matters if he should turn his thoughts towards them; therefore he should be encouraged in this direction. His eyebrows are long, slanting downward. In the midst of these several colours of the eye are sundry fine red veins, which are called the "small letters" of the eyes, because, when the colours shine,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 73a

their light causes the letters to be revealed in those veins to the initiated, these veins being formed in the shape of the letter Samech when it contains the letter He'. 'A man who has blue eyes set in white will be of a kindly disposition, but at the same time selfish. If the black is not noticeable in his eyes he will have strong desires, but not for evil, though he will not resist evil when it approaches. He can be trusted when he speaks of matters within his own knowledge, but not otherwise. He can keep a secret so long as it is a secret, but once it has leaked out he tells everything, since he does nothing perfectly. The colours of such an eye and the type to which its possessor conforms are contained in the mystery of the letter He' when contained in the letters Zain and Samech. 'He whose eyes are of a yellowish-blue colour has madness in his veins; he therefore suffers from megalomania and is grandiloquent in his manner and speech. In discussion he is easily defeated. He is not worthy to be instructed in the mystical meanings of the Torah, as he does not accept them meekly but becomes puffed up with his knowledge. This type belongs to the mystery of the letter He', which is included in the letter Zain only, being far removed from the letter Samech on account of his conceit. When such a man speaks, many wrinkles appear on his forehead. 'One whose eyes are pale with a certain admixture of a greenish hue is of an irascible disposition, but is also often kind-hearted enough. When angered, however, he becomes cruel. He cannot be entrusted with a secret. He belongs to the sign of the letter He' when it is included in the letter Samech. 'The man whose eyes are white and blue, with only a spot of black in them, can be trusted with secrets and makes good use of them. If he makes a good beginning in anything

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 73b

he goes on prospering. His enemies cannot prevail against him, they can do him no evil, and eventually they are entirely subdued by him. He is under the sign of the letter Kaph when it is included in the letter Samech. 'So much for the mysteries concerning the eyes, which are revealed unto the wise. 'The lineaments of the countenance. For the masters of the

inner wisdom the features of the face are not those which appear outwardly, but those within formed by internal forces; for the features of the face are moulded by the impress of the inner face which is concealed in the spirit residing within. This spirit produces outward traits which are recognizable to the wise, the true features being discernible from the spirit. Man has a spirit on which the letters of the alphabet are in a way designed. All these letters are enclosed in that spirit, and for a time the designs of those letters enter into the face; and as they enter, the face appears with the design of these letters upon it. But this semblance lasts for a short time only, save upon the faces of adepts in wisdom, on whom it is always visible. 'There is a place which is called "the world to come", from whence issues the mystery of the Torah with its alphabet of twenty-two letters, which is the essence of all things. Now that "river which goes out of Eden" carries all this along with it, so that when the spirits and the souls emerge therefrom they are all stamped with the imprint of those letters; the which, when the spirit of a man be thus stamped by it, makes also a certain impression on the face.' Said R. Simeon to them: 'If so, the likeness of the Mother is not impressed upon the form of that spirit.' They replied: 'This, Master, is the teaching which we have heard from thine own lips: The design of the letters proceeds from the side which is above, and the image of the Mother is impressed upon the spirit, while below the form of the letter is hidden in the spirit. The design of the Mother which is outwardly discernible follows the four prototypes- Man, Lion, Bull, and Eagle, in the Supernal Chariot, and the spirit projects the image of them all for a time, because whatsoever belongs to the domain of

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 74a

the spirit thrusts itself forward and is both visible and invisible. All these forms are designed in the shape of the letters, and although they are hidden they are discerned for a short space by those who have eyes to see, by the wise who can comprehend the mystery of wisdom, to contemplate therein. Now, these are the four designs, their manifestations and significance: '1. When a man walks in the way of truth, those who know the mysteries of the inner wisdom can recognize him, because the inner spirit is duly prepared in him, and projects the full design of itself from within to without, from invisible to visible. And that design it is which becomes the outer form of a man. That is the design which is more perfect than any other. This design is the one which is made visible for a little unto the eyes of Wisdom and the children thereof. When one looks on the face of such a man one is moved to love him. On it is traced the design of four letters by means of a fine vein which is projected from the right side, and another vein, itself containing two more, which is projected from the left. These four signs severally form the four letters which make up the word edut (testimony). The sign of the first letter is represented by the vein which is on the right side, and each of the other three letters by one of the other three veins. This we find expressed in the words: "A testimony (edut) in Joseph" (Ps. LXXXI, 6), for everyone who looked upon him loved him, and he was perfected in love. In the seed of David the colours are reversed, and this it was that misled Samuel (I Sam. XVI, 7). Such a face contains all forms. Such a

man is even-tempered, self-controlled, even when he is angered, and quickly appeased.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 74b

'2. When a man, not entirely bad, changes his ways and turns to the Lord, a good spirit begins to rest upon him, so that he is enabled to prevail against the evil that was in him, and for a time this new spirit thrusts itself forward into the expression of his face in the form of a lion. At a first casual examination his face would not inspire love, but gradually it becomes better comprehended and so better loved. When people look at him a sense of shame for his past misdeeds comes over him, for he feels that everyone knows his former evil ways, and the blood rushes to his face, and then again he turns pale. On his face are three veins, one on the right, one going up to the bridge of the nose, and a third which is joined thereto and branches downward from them. These veins form the shapes of the letters which are traced upon his face. They usually stand out prominently and quiver, but when he is penitent and gradually becomes accustomed to walking in the way of truth they subside. The mystery of these letters is contained in the word Karib (Koph, Resh, Yod, Beth, "near"), signifying that he had been far from holiness.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 75a

Although there are also other veins in his face, these do not protrude, except when he treads the paths of crookedness and iniquity. Here again the seed of David are the reverse of other men, first appearing in the form of Man and then in that of Lion, finally separating and taking the form of the "other side". '3. When a man deserts the ways of the Torah and follows ways of iniquity, the holy spirit, which formerly dwelt in his inner self, removes its influence from him and another spirit takes up its abode there, with another form which impresses itself on the outer lineaments and is there manifested to the vision of the wise in the form of an Ox. When they gaze at the person thus possessed, they mentally behold this form, and they observe in him two red, berry-like veins on the right side of the face, and three on the left. These are the symbolic letters of his type which shape themselves thus visibly in his face: one spherical and thin, the two others, also round, above it. The eyes of such a man are sunk deep in his head. The symbolic expression of these letters is as follows: The first vein is in the form of the letter Kaph, and the other two severally in that of Resh and Tau (Karet=to be cut off). The same letters are denoted by the veins on the left side of the face. Their significance is indicated by the words: "The shew (ha-Karath) of their countenance doth witness against them" (Isa. III, 9). These veins swell in the face more than all the others; but when the sinner repents and turns from the way of the left side back to the right hand of mercy and righteousness, that spirit whose form is the ox is subdued, and the spirit of holiness prevails; these thin veins then protrude no more, but recede into the inner reaches of the flesh and are lost sight of, and those which are the symbol of the good spirit become evident in their stead. With the seed of David the reverse was the case: first the lion held sway, and afterwards the ox. Two dark veins were made

visible in his face, one on the right side of it and one on the left, which formed the two letters, Daleth and Ain; this being quite the reverse of other men. '4. This is the sign of a man who is perpetually in the state of making reparation for past misdeeds, making good the defects of his former life on earth. He is symbolized by the form of an eagle. His spirit is weak. No protuberant veins with a symbolic significance can be discerned in the lineaments of his countenance, since these were lost during the period of his former life. But this is the sign by which he can be recognized. His eyes do not sparkle even when he is joyful, because his spirit does not shine in the letters, and the spark of light which was in him in his former state has been extinguished. He does not belong to the grade of those whose character can be read in their faces. To him can be applied the words: "Wherefore I praise the dead which are already dead more than the living which are yet alive" (Eccl. IV, 2). The seed of David, however, is indicated in the words: "The secret of the Lord is with them that fear Him, to show them His covenant." Thus in the spirit of man, as we have shown, are inscribed letters which press through into visibility. To penetrate through these reflections to the inner symbols and to decipher those symbols aright is the privilege of the wise alone, that they may finally attain to knowledge of the spirit of which the symbols are the manifestation, through the esoteric significance of the words "This is the book" (Gen. v, 1). Through this all is revealed to them save that countenance which is to be judged by a different rule, according to the domination

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 75b

of the spirit or the Lord of the spirit. Happy and blessed indeed are they to whom is entrusted knowledge of all these things! So much for the mystery of the countenance. The lips. The mystery of the lips belongs to the letter Pe' when it is included in the letter Samech. A man whose lips are big and thick is a tale-bearer, without shame or fear, a man of strife and mischief. He cannot keep a secret, but when he happens to be a student of the Torah he can for a time cover and keep hidden secret matters. His sign is the letter Pe' when it is included in the letter Resh, but not in Samech. He makes a show of being pious, but is not; one should not have any dealings with him, because all his words proceed out of his mouth alone, but not from his heart. 'Thick dry lips indicate a man of quick temper and insolence, intolerant, speaking evil of his fellows, without any sense of shame. He likes to mock and jeer at others. One should avoid a man of this kind. And when his whole face becomes hairy his evil tongue witnesses clearly against him. He is totally shameless, loving strife. In worldly matters he is apt to be successful. He is of a vengeful spirit, and relentless towards his enemies. Concerning him it is said: "A wicked man hardeneth his face" (Prov. XXI, 29). He stands under the sign of the letter Pe' alone when it is not included in the Samech, though it may sometimes be included in the letter Resh. The ears. Excessively large ears are a sign of stupidity in the heart and madness in the mind. Small shapely ears denote wisdom and sensibility, and their owner likes to try everything. His type is under the sign of the letter Yod when it is included in all the other letters. So much for the mysteries of the human physiognomy. Now we turn

to other mysteries contained in the letters, but not set forth upon the countenance, being concerned with the apprehension of times and seasons: mysteries of which we are unworthy.' R. Simeon said: 'Ye are worthy in this world and ye are worthy in the world to come. Blessed are my eyes that will be worthy to see it all when I enter the world to come. For my soul calls to the Ancient of Days: "Thou preparest a table before me in the presence of my enemies; thou anointest my head with oil; my cup runneth over" (Ps. XXIII, 5). And the Holy One, blessed be He, calls concerning us: "Open ye the gates, that the righteous people which keepeth truth may enter in" (Isa. XXVI, 2).' Then they began to discourse on the verse: "And they (the Hayoth) had the hands of a man, under their wings, on their four sides" (Ezek. I, 8). 'This', said they, 'has been explained by the Fellowship as referring to the hands stretched out to receive penitents who return to God. But the expression "the hands of a man" also signifies all those forms and supernal mysteries which the Holy One has stamped upon man and ordered in his fingers outwardly and inwardly and in the "palm" (Kaph). When the Holy One created man He set in him all the images of the supernal mysteries of the world above, and all the images of the lower mysteries of the world below, and all are designed in man, who stands in the image of God, because he is called "the creation of the palm", and this is the mystery of the letter Kaph. Supernal mysteries and symbols are contained in this; the Ten Words, five belonging to the right side and five to the left, are all united in it as one mystery. Therefore it says: "I will also smite my one palm (kaph) upon the other" (Ezek. XXI, 17), meaning that the Lord will cause the two hands to be divided, so that blessing will depart from the world and the glory of Israel shall be given over to the nations. But when they are united as one, it is as it says: "One vessel (kaph, lit. palm) of ten shekels of gold" (Num. VII, 14). When they were united "God created Man in His own image." Man was in the Divine mind, in the inner mystery. God created him, male and female in one, "in the image of God", symbolized by the palm. For when man was created, what is it that is written concerning him? "Thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh, and hast fenced me with bones and sinews" (Job x, 11).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 76a

'What, then, is man? Does he consist solely of skin, flesh, bones and sinews? Nay, the essence of man is his soul; the skin, flesh, bones and sinews are but an outward covering, the mere garments, but they are not the man. When man departs (from this world) he divests himself of all these garments. The skin with which he covers himself, and all these bones and sinews, all have a symbolism in the mystery of the Supernal Wisdom, corresponding to that which is above. The symbolism of the skin is as the Master has taught us in connection with the words: "Who stretchest out the heaven like a curtain" (Ps. CIV, 2); and again: "Rams' skins, dyed red, and badgers' skins" (Ex. xxv, 5, in connection with the tabernacle). These skins are a garment which protects a garment, viz. the extension of the heavens, which is the outer garment (of the Divine). The curtains (of the Tabernacle) are the inner garments; corresponding to the skin upon the flesh. The bones and the sinews symbolize the Chariots and

the celestial Hosts, which are inward. All these are garments upon that which is inward; which also is the mystery of the Supernal Man, who is the innermost. The same is found here below. Man is something inward, and his garments correspond to that which is above. The bones and sinews, as we have said, correspond to the Chariots and Hosts. The flesh is a covering to those hosts and chariots, and manifests itself outwardly, and is symbolically connected with the "other side" (the purely sensuous element). The skin, covering all, corresponds to the firmaments which cover all things. And all these are merely garments to clothe himself withal, for within is the essential man. Everything below corresponds to that which is above. This is the significance of the words: "And God created man in His own image; in the image of God created He him." Esoterically, the man below corresponds entirely to the Man above. Just as in the firmament, which covers the whole universe, we behold different shapes formed by the conjunction of stars and planets to make us aware of hidden things and deep mysteries; so upon the skin which covers our body and which is, as it were, the body's firmament, covering all, there are shapes and designs—the stars and planets of the body's firmament, the skin through which the wise of heart may behold the hidden things and the deep mysteries indicated by these shapes and expressed in the human form. Concerning this it is written: "The viewers of the heavens, the stargazers" (Is. XLVII, 13). But all this can only be discerned, in the case of the stars, in a clear sky, and, in man, when the face shines and is not clouded with anger, for then another rule applies. But when the faces of men are serene, and they are in their normal state, their shapes and lineaments reveal to the wise the inner thoughts and propensities of the mind. So by the lines of the hands and of the fingers it is possible to discern hidden facts of a man's personality. They are the shining stars which reveal the varieties of human types and their relationships to the upper treasures.' [Tr. Note: Here follows in the original a discourse on palmistry.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 76b

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 76a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 77a

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 76a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 77b

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 76a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 78a

[Note: The first 17 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation since they continue the discourse begun on page 76b] MOREOVER THOU SHALT PROVIDE (lit. behold) OUT OF ALL THE PEOPLE, ETC.. Said R. Simeon: It does not say "thou shalt choose", but "thou shalt behold", namely, by means of the gift of inner sight of those characteristics which we have mentioned. All are indicated in this

verse: "thou shalt look" refers to the hair; "of all the people" to the forehead; "for able men" to the face; "God-fearing" to the eyes; "men of truth" to the lips; and "hating covetousness" to the hands. All these are the signs by which to recognize men: signs, that is, to those on whom the spirit of wisdom rests. And yet Moses had no need of these signs, for we read: "And Moses chose able men out of all Israel" (V. 25); he chose them by the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, for we read: "When they have a matter, he cometh unto me" (v. 16); this "he" in the singular instead of "they" in the plural indicates that it refers to the Holy Spirit. So there was no necessity for him to use the gift of inner sight in order to find out who were the right persons: he knew at once whom to choose through the enlightenment of the Holy Spirit. Similarly Solomon, in all the legal cases brought before him, could give his decisions without the aid of any witnesses, because the Holy Spirit was present at his throne, and everyone coming near to it was overcome with fear and trembling. There was an invisible figure hidden in the throne, and when any one uttered a false plea it made a sound by which Solomon knew at once that the person was not telling the truth. But the Messiah will discern persons by their odour, for of him it says: "His scent will be in the fear of the Lord, and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears" (Isa. XI, 3). These three judged without witnesses and without warning; all others must judge according to the law, and must decide by the word of witnesses. The wise who are adepts in physiognomical lore must warn men and provide healing for their souls. Blessed are they in this world, and blessed in the world to come.' IN THE THIRD MONTH, WHEN THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL WERE GONE FORTH OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT.... The third month is the one in which the celestial chief Uriel has sway. He has three hundred and sixty-five myriads of camps with him, corresponding to all the days of the year. All have three hundred and sixty-five keys of light issuing from the inner supernal sphere called "Hashmal" (v. Ezek. I, 4), which is hidden and veiled, in which the mysteries of the holy celestial letters of the Holy Name

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 78b

are suspended. This "hashmal" receives the most supernal and recondite lights, and passes them on, so that all the camps receive those keys of the light [Tr. Note: Tifereth.] which issues forth from that sphere. And that light is contained in two lights, which yet are one. The first light [Tr. Note: Hesed] is white, too bright for the eye to behold. It is the light which is hidden away for the righteous in the world to come, as it is written: "Light is sown for the righteous" (Ps. xcvi, ii). The second light [Tr. Note: Geburah.] is one which gleams and sparkles redly. The two are united and become one. Uriel, the head of the angels, and all those hosts, partake of this light. As it is contained in two lights, it is called the "Twins". Therefore, in that month in which the Torah was given (Sivan), the constellation of the "Twins" rules, and from them issue lights of various grades below to illumine the world. Among all the other signs of the Zodiac there is not one possessing mouth or tongue, but this one has both, and the two are one. Therefore it is written in regard to the Torah: "And thou shalt meditate therein day and

night" (Jos. I, 8), "day" corresponding to the tongue, and "night" corresponding to the mouth. And both these are one. Therefore the word *teomim* (twins), in connection with Jacob and Esau (Gen. xxv, 24), is written in a defective form, in order to indicate that Jacob alone is under the sign of this constellation. For Jacob had two months, Nisan and Iyar, as his, and is therefore within the symbolism of the "twins"; while Esau's months are Tamuz and Ab, and only nine days in Ab, so it can be seen that he is not included in the Twins. He separated himself and turned towards impurity, in chaos and desolation. And because Jacob is in the sign of the Twins the Torah was given to his children in the months of the Twins, being itself "twin", viz. written and oral; it was given in the third month (Sivan), symbolizing the treble Torah (Law, Prophets, Writings). R. Hiya said: 'At the time when the Israelites approached Mount Sinai, the Holy One gathered their families to Him and examined them as to their lineage, and He found them all of a holy seed, of genuine birth. So he said to Moses: "Now do I wish to give the Torah unto Israel. Draw them to Me by telling them of My love to their fathers and to themselves, and also concerning all the signs and wonders that I have manifested unto them. And thou shalt be My messenger." AND MOSES WENT UP UNTO GOD, AND THE LORD CALLED UNTO HIM OUT OF THE MOUNTAIN. He went to the region where the wings of the Shekinah are outspread, concerning which it is said: "He bowed the heavens and came down" (Ps. XVIII, 10). Said R. Judah: 'As long as the tracings of the Supernal King [Tr. Note: The emanations of the Godhead.] adhere to their proper places all worlds are impregnated with joy and all creation is upright and stable. Concerning this it is written: "And all the people among whom thou art shall see the work of the Lord that it will be terrible" (Ex. XXXIV, 10).' What is the meaning of "terrible"? Said R. Eleazar: 'It signifies the highest perfection of all, as in the expression: "A great, mighty, terrible God" (Deut. x, 17).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 79a

We have a boraitha to the same effect.' R. Jose once said: 'One day I stood before R. Judah the ancient. I asked him to explain to me the meaning of the words: "And he (Jacob) was afraid, and said, How terrible is this place!" What did he see there to call it terrible? His answer was: "Jacob saw manifested in that region the consummation of the holy faith, which corresponded to the reality above. And any place where such a consummation is revealed is called 'terrible'." I then asked him: "If that is so, why then does the Targum translate the word 'nora' (terrible) with 'fear' (d'hilu), and not with 'complete' (sh'lim)?" His answer was that there is no true fear and awe except in a place where there is completeness, as it is written "O fear the Lord, ye his saints, for there is no deficiency (mahsor) to them that fear him" (Ps. XXXIV, 10), and in the sphere where there is no deficiency, there is completeness.' A boraitha also tells us that R. Jose once expounded the verse: Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? Who hath gathered the wind in his fists? Who hath bound the waters in a garment? Who hath established all the ends of the earth? What is his name, and what is his son's name? (Prov. xxx, 4). 'It is Moses who ascended up to heaven, as it says: "And Moses

went up unto God." It is Aaron who gathered the wind in his fists, as it says: "His fist full of sweet incense" (Lev. XVI, 12). It is Elijah who "hath bound the waters in a garment", for he said: "There shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word" (I Kings XVII, 1). And it is Abraham who "hath established all the ends of the earth", for it says concerning him: "These are the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created (behibar'am)" (Gen. II, 4), the last word having the same letters as Abraham.' This was R. Jose's first interpretation. He then gave a different one, saying: ' "Who hath ascended up into heaven?" The Holy One, of whom it says: "God hath ascended with a shout" (Ps. XLVII, 6). "Who hath gathered the wind in his fists?" The Holy One, "in whose hand is the soul of every living thing" (Job XII, 10). "Who hath bound the waters in a garment?" The Holy One, who "bindeth up the waters in his thick clouds" (Ibid. XXVI,8). "Who hath established all the ends of the earth?" The Holy One, of whom it says: "in the day when the Lord God made heaven and earth" (Gen. II, 4).' Finally, he affirmed that the words indicate the four knots (elements) of the universe: fire, air, water, earth. Said R. Jesse: 'It is evident that R. Jose's various applications of this verse are incompatible one with the other!' But when these interpretations came to the ears of R. Simeon, he put his hands on R. Jose's head and blessed him, saying: 'That which thou hast said is quite right. It is perfectly true, but whence hast thou these interpretations?' 'From my father, who heard it from R. Hamnuna the ancient,' replied R. Jose. One day R. Simeon sat at the gate of Sepphoris, when R. Jesse said to him: 'R. Jose applied the verse, "Who hath ascended, etc.", first to Moses, then to the Holy One, and finally to the four elements, and I saw that thou, Master, didst bless him!' Said R. Simeon: 'What he said was perfectly true. All the applications signify one and the same thing, since they all have their root and fulfilment in the Holy One, and they are all practically equivalent.' R. Jesse was deeply impressed by these words and said: 'Now I see that this is indeed so. And I have also heard it on another occasion from the mouth of the Master. But what is the meaning of the words, "And what is his son's name?" ' R. Simeon replied: 'The inner meaning of this I myself have taught my son, R. Eleazar.' 'I pray thee, tell it to me, for I did ask thee concerning it in a dream, but when I awoke I had forgotten thine answer.' 'And now, when I tell thee, wilt thou remember it?' 'I surely will,' replied R. Jesse, 'I always remember what my Master tells me.' Said R. Simeon: 'The words must be understood in the light of the expression, "My first-born son Israel" (Ex. IV, 22), and "Israel, in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3). "Israel" here refers to the supernal world, and it is this which is called "son". Whereupon R. Jesse replied: 'With all due respect to the Master, this is a secret which I already know.' But yet again he forgot it. He was much perturbed. But when he went into his house and lay down to sleep, he saw in his dream an haggadic book, wherein it was written: "Wisdom (.Hokmah) and glory (Tifereth) in His sanctuary." When he awoke, he straightway went to R. Simeon, kissed his hand, and said: 'This night I saw in my dream an

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 79b

haggadic book wherein were written the words:

"Wisdom and glory in His sanctuary", "Wisdom" above, "Glory" below, and "in His sanctuary" at the side. This I saw in a dream, and I found it on my lips when I awoke.' Said R. Simeon to him: 'Until this time thou wast too young to join the company of the "reapers of the field", but now everything has been shown unto thee! Thus the meaning is: Wisdom (Hokmah) is His Name and Glory (Tifereth) the name of His son.' AND MOSES WENT UP UNTO GOD. Blessed indeed was Moses to have been worthy of this honour, to which the Torah herself testifies. Said R. Judah: 'See what a difference there is between Moses and other men: "Going up" in regard to ordinary men means "getting rich", "getting on", in honours, in office, in rank, etc. But Moses "went up unto God". Truly, he was blessed.' R. Jose remarked that this is one of the passages from which the members of the Fellowship derive the lesson that "he who comes to be purified is assisted from above": because Moses "went up unto God", therefore "the Lord called unto him out of the mountain". AND THE LORD CALLED UNTO HIM OUT OF THE MOUNTAIN, SAYING, THUS SHALT THOU SAY TO THE HOUSE OF JACOB, AND TELL THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL. R. Isaac referred in this connection to the verse: "Blessed is the man whom thou chooseth, and causet to approach unto thee, that he may dwell in thy courts" (Ps. LXV, 5). 'Blessed is the man', he said, 'whom the Holy One befriends and brings near to him to dwell in the holy Palace! He who is united with Him in worship has on him a sign inscribed from above to make it known that he is one who has been chosen by the Holy King to dwell in His courts. A man who has upon him such a sign can pass through all the supernal gates without let or hindrance.' R. Judah said: 'Blessed was Moses, concerning whom that verse was written! Of him we read: "And Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was" (Ex. xx, 21); and also, "Moses alone came nigh to the Lord, but they did not" (Ibid. XXIV, 2). THUS SHALT THOU SAY TO THE HOUSE OF JACOB: this refers to the females; AND TELL THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL: this means the males. R. Simeon connected the "thus" (Koh) in this verse with the "thus" in the ordinance of the priestly benediction: "Thus (Koh) shall ye bless" (Num. VI, 23); also with, "Thy saints bless Thee" (yebarakukah), which last word can be separated into two words: yebaraku Koh, "they bless with Koh" (i.e. the Sephirah Malkuth); "Saying" indicates the side of Justice (Severity), while "telling" indicates the side of Mercy, as in the verse: "And he declared (wa- yagged) unto you his covenant (mercy)" (Deut. IV, 13), and also in the declaration made by the Israelite on bringing the basket of firstfruits to the priest: "I proclaim (higgadti) this day unto the Lord thy God" (Ibid. XXVI, 3). Said R. Jose: 'As we have mentioned this verse, I should like to ask why it says "to the Lord thy God" instead of "the Lord our God"?' R. Simeon replied: 'This is not the only case where "thy" is used instead of "our". For instance: "the Lord thy God will bring thee into a good land" (Ibid. VIII, 7); "for the Lord thy God is a consuming fire" (Ibid. IV, 23). Moses himself, who used this expression, could not say "our" God, because, according to our dictum, "he who lives outside the Land of Israel is, as it were, without God." So he said to the children of Israel, who were going to settle in the Holy Land and to receive the Shekinah there, "thy God", but he could not well say "our God", since he was not to enter himself into the

Holy Land.' 'But', retorted R. Jose, 'why did the Israelites have to say "thy God", seeing that they were already in the land?' R. Simeon's reply was that they had to proclaim that it was due to the Supernal Grace that they were so favoured by God and blessed with so many good things. All this they said to the priest who, as such, is connected with the attribute of Grace (forgiveness of sin and mediatorship)." Say to the house of Jacob" is the form fitting for them, "and tell the children of Israel" is the more perfect form fitting for them. For Jacob and Israel represent two grades (Malkuth and Tifereth), and though they unite into one, yet the complete product is termed Israel.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 80a

Hence "thou shalt tell the children of Israel", to reveal to them wisdom, and to tell them in the spirit of wisdom the grace and the truth which the Holy One, blessed be He, has shown to them. R. Jose once told the following story: 'It chanced one day when I was out walking, accompanied by my son, R. Hiya, that we came upon a man collecting medicinal herbs. As we drew near to him I asked: "Tell us what these bundles of herbs are for?" He gave no reply, and did not even raise his head. Said I to R. Hiya, my son: "Certainly this man is either deaf or mad, or very wise." So we sat down near to him. When he had collected all the herbs and made them into bundles and covered each bundle with vine leaves, even to the last bundle of all, he turned to us, and said: "I see that ye are Jews, and it is said that the Jews are clever people. Yet, if I did not have pity on you, you would from henceforth have to shun the company of your fellows, for you become as lepers; because, as I perceive, the odour of one of these herbs has entered into your body, and it will cause you to be outcasts for three days. But now eat this garlic and you will be healed." We did as we were bid, and fell into a deep sleep. I awakened to find myself bathed in perspiration. Then the man said: "Now your God is with you indeed, for He has ordered it that you should find me and that the cure of your bodies should be accomplished through me." As we went along he said to us: "Every person must converse with his fellows according to the sex and class to which they belong." I was struck by this remark, and said to R. Hiya, my son: "This accords with the Scriptural verse: 'Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel.' " Then the man said: "You probably wondered why I did not speak to you or pay you any apparent heed when you addressed me first. The reason is that my father was the greatest expert in herbs and their properties, and from him I learnt the powers and uses of every plant with healing properties, and I spend the whole year among them. Now with regard to the herb which ye saw me bind into bundles and cover with vine leaves. In a northern corner of my dwelling there is a place in which stands a millstone, from the hole of which a man emerges from time to time, and this man has two heads and carries a sharp sword in his hand. He strikes terror into the hearts of all who behold him, and, indeed, is the bane of our lives. On account of him I gathered this herb. Now follow me, and you shall see what virtue there is in it, and what the supreme God has revealed in the world, and how even the wise cannot surmise or fathom all His mysteries." So we followed him. On the way to his house we

passed a hole in the ground in which the man deposited some of the herb. When he had done so, a serpent with an enormous head issued from the hole. The man took from his girdle a piece of cloth and bound the serpent as though it were a little lamb. We were much afraid, but the man said: "Follow me until we come to his abode"; and we followed him. Presently we reached his house, and there we saw the place of which he had spoken: in the dark, behind a wall. He took a candle and kindled a fire around the place where the millstone was set; then he said to us: "Do not be frightened at what ye see, and keep silence." As he said this he loosened the serpent's bonds and set him free, then ground some of the herb to powder and sprinkled this upon the serpent's head. Immediately the serpent descended into the opening of the millstone, and we suddenly heard a voice which made the whole place shake. We wanted to run away, being sore afraid, but the man took hold of our hands, saying: "Fear not, come close to me." Presently the serpent reappeared and we saw that it was dripping blood. Again it entered the opening of the millstone. After a short time a man with two heads issued from the opening, with the serpent wound about his neck. Three times he entered the opening of the millstone and emerged again, saying: "Chameleon, chameleon, woe to his mother who brought him there!", when the millstone was torn from its place and man and serpent together were hurled out at our feet, where they fell down and died. We were terrified, but the man who had brought us there said: "Thus is manifested the power of the herb which I collected in your presence! This was the reason why I did not look up at you or speak even a word. If

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 80b

men but knew the wisdom of all that the Holy One, blessed be He, has planted in the earth, and the power of all that is to be found in the world, they would proclaim the power of their Lord in His great wisdom. But the Holy One has purposely hidden this wisdom from men, in order that they should not turn from His way by trusting in that wisdom alone, forgetting Him." "When I afterwards recounted the happenings of that day to R. Simeon, he said: "Surely, that was a wise man! For it is indeed as he said. Mark this! There is no grass or herb that grows in which God's wisdom is not greatly manifested and which cannot exert great influence in heaven. We may see this from the hyssop. Whenever the Holy One desires that men should purify themselves from defilement, he orders that hyssop be used as a means of purification. Now why is this? In order that the power above which is represented by that herb should be roused to exterminate the spirit of impurity, that the defiled one may be cleansed. And as to thee, I say: Blessed be the Merciful One who delivered thee." ' YE HAVE SEEN WHAT I DID UNTO THE EGYPTIANS. AND HOW I BARE YOU ON EAGLES' WINGS. What do "eagles' wings" denote? According to R. Judah, the "eagles" are a symbol of mercy, as it says: "As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young, spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her wings, so the Lord..." (Deut. XXXII, 11). As the eagle watches lovingly over its own young, but is cruel towards others, so does the Holy One manifest His loving mercy to Israel and His severe judgement to the heathen nations. R. Simeon

found the same indication in the verse: "The way of an eagle in the heavens" (Prov. xxx, 19). R. Eleazar once went from Cappadocia to Lydda, accompanied by R. Jose and R. Hiya. They had risen at sunrise, and as the light appeared, R. Hiya said: 'I see before me the vision of the prophet, "As for the likeness of their (the Hayoth) faces, they four had the face of a man and the face of a lion, on the right side; and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; they four also had the face of an eagle" (Ezek. I, 10). Thus the lion is on the right hand, the ox on the left; but what about the eagle?' R. Eleazar replied: 'It belongs to the sphere of the "child" (i.e. Mercy), for the eagle combines mercy and cruelty; and so God led Israel with love and dealt sternly with others, and the expression, "the way of an eagle in the heavens" is thus to be taken literally, for love (mercy) is, as it were, in the centre of heaven. Hence the lion is at the right, the ox at the left, and the eagle between, uniting them. As for "man", he comprises all, as it is written: "And upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it" (Ezek. I, 26).' AND IT CAME TO PASS ON THE THIRD DAY. R. Abba connected this with the following verse: "We have a little sister, and she hath no breasts; what shall we do to our sister in the day when she will be spoken for?" (S.S. VIII, 8). 'The "little sister" is the Community of Israel, who is called the Holy One's sister; "she hath no breasts", i.e. when they approached Mount Sinai she had no merits, no good works to protect her; "what shall we do to our sister?", when the Holy One shall reveal Himself on Mount Sinai to proclaim the words of the Torah, and her soul will fly away (out of fear).' Said R. Jose: 'When the Israelites approached Mount Sinai, on that night which followed the three days during which the people abstained from conjugal intercourse, the heavenly angels came and received them with brotherly affection. For as they are angels above, so are the Israelites angels below; as they sanctify the Supreme Name above, so do the Israelites sanctify it below. And the Israelites were crowned with seventy crowns on that night. Then it was that the angels said: "We have a little sister, and she hath no breasts. What shall we do to our sister? How should we honour her on the day when the Holy One will reveal Himself to give her the Torah?' ' R. Simeon said that when the Holy One came to reveal Himself

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 81a

on Mount Sinai, He called together His whole celestial Family and said to them: "At present the Israelites are like children, they will not know how to deport themselves in My Presence. If I should reveal Myself to them in the attribute of Power (Geburah) they will not be able to bear it, but when I manifest Myself to them in love (Rahamim) they will accept My Law." Therefore the manifestation on Mount Sinai took place on the third day, which is the Day of love (Rahamim). In this manner did He reveal Himself first in Love; and then gave them the Torah from the side of Power; and that on the third day, for it is because of the "Three" that they are called Israel; and in the morning, in "a morning without clouds" (2 Sam. XXIII, 4), since had it been a cloudy morning darkness would have been found in it, and Grace would not have been revealed. And when does Grace reveal itself? In the morning: "The morning

is light"; for as soon as the day breaks Grace is manifested and Judgement passes away, but when the light of morning does not enter the judgements do not vanish away, as it is written: "When the morning stars sing together, and all the sons of God shout for joy" (Job XXXVIII, 7; i.e. the angels of judgement shout for joy as long as night continues); but as soon as those stars set and the sun shines, behold there is "a morning without clouds", and Grace is awakened in the lower world.' R. Jose said: 'The Holy One began to reveal Himself on Mount Sinai "in the morning", and we have been taught that it took place when the merit of Abraham, who "rose up early in the morning" (to sacrifice Isaac, Gen. XXII, 3), was aroused. 'AND THERE WERE THUNDERINGS (voices) AND LIGHTNINGS AND A THICK CLOUD UPON THE MOUNT, AND THE VOICE OF THE TRUMPET EXCEEDING LOUD. Said, R. Abba: 'As koloth (voices) is written in a defective form, it indicates that there were two voices united as one, the one emanating from the other: air [Tr. Note: Tifereth.] from water [Tr. Note: Hesed.] and water from air, two that were one and one that was two.' R. Jose, however, was of the opinion that the defective form of the word, suggesting the singular, indicates that it is identical with the "great voice that did not cease" (Deut. v, 19), for all other Divine voices do break off sometimes, for, as we have been taught, four times a year the "Voice" ceases, and chastisement is sent into the world, but this great and mighty Voice [Tr. Note: Binah.] never stops and never abates of its full force. We have been taught also that this Voice is "the voice of voices", the voice which contains all other voices. R. Judah said: 'The "Voice" unites air, fire, and water, and one voice makes another; hence the plural "voices": "And lightnings." Said R. Jose: 'Therefore it says: "He maketh lightnings for the rain" (Ps. cxxxv, 7), flame being combined with moisture in a supernatural union of love and affection.' R. Judah said that the Torah was given from the side of Power. Said R. Jose: 'In that case, it must have been given from the left side.' 'No,' replied R. Judah: 'the left was turned for the time into the right, for it is written: "From his right hand a fiery law to them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2). Contrariwise we read concerning Egypt's judgement: "Thy right hand, O Lord, glorified in power" (Ex. xv, 6); where the right hand has turned into the left (judgement).' "And a thick cloud upon the mount", that is, a mighty cloud which stayed in one spot without moving. "And the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud": this voice issued from the midst of the heavy cloud, as it is written, "When ye heard the voice out of the midst of the darkness" (Deut. v, 24). According to R. Judah, there were three grades of darkness: darkness, cloud, and thick clouds (araphel), and the voice came forth from out of their innermost depths. R. Jose said that the innermost was the one referred to in the words "with a great and ceaseless voice" (Deut. v, 19). Said R. Abba: 'It is written: "And all the people saw the thunderings" (Ex. xx, 18). Surely it ought to be heard the thunderings? We have, however, been taught that the "voices" were delineated, carved out, as it were, upon the threefold darkness, so that they could be apprehended as something visible, and they saw and heard all those wonderful things out of that darkness, cloud and cloudy darkness; and because they saw that sight they were irradiated with a supernal light, and perceived things beyond the ken of all succeeding generations, and saw

face to face (Deut. v, 4).' And whence did they derive the power so to see? According to R. Jose, from the light of those voices, for there was not one of them but emitted light which made perceptible all things hidden and veiled, and even all the generations of men up to the days of King Messiah. Therefore it says: "And all the people saw the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 81b

voices"; they did actually see them. The word koloth here is preceded by the particle eth, which, as usual, indicates that we are to understand another object in addition to the one mentioned: in this case another voice from below, which gathered into itself all the light [Tr. Note: Shekinah.] emanating from the other voices in which they saw, in sublime wisdom, all the celestial treasures and all the hidden mysteries which were never revealed to succeeding generations and will not be revealed until King Messiah comes, when "they shall see eye to eye" (Isa. LII, 8). In this latter passage (Ex. xx, 18) also we find "fire torches" mentioned instead of the "lightnings" of the former. Both, however, mean one and the same thing; when the lightnings are quite formed and ready to appear they are called "fire-torches" (lapidim). The "voice of the trumpet" mentioned in the same verse is, according to R. Judah, that voice which is itself called "trumpet" in reference to the Day of Atonement (Lev. xxv, 9). According to R. Simeon, the "voice of the trumpet" is the "word which proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord" (Deut. VIII, 3), by which "man lives". It is greater and stronger than all lower voices. On it depends all; it is called "great voice", and also a "still thin voice" (I Kings XIX, 12), i.e. a clear though tiny light which illumines all things, but a "still voice" also because men must be filled with awe and silence to hear it, as it is written: "I said, I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue; I will keep my mouth with a bridle" (Ps. XXXIX, 2). The text proceeds: "And when the people saw it, they trembled and stood afar off" (Ex. xx, 18). The same word (wayanu'u, they shook) is used here of the people as is used of the "posts of the door" in the Temple which moved when Isaiah saw his vision (Isa. VI, 4). And what do we read of Ezekiel when he saw the Presence? "And I looked, and, behold, a whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, and a brightness was about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber (hashmal), out of the midst of the fire" (Ezek. I, 4). The whirlwind, according to R. Jose, was symbolic of the breaking of the power of the four kingdoms. R. Judah added that according to tradition the strong wind which was stirred from the side of celestial Power (Geburah) came from the north, the special region hidden above, out of which justice emanates, as it does not say from "north", but from "the north". "The great cloud and a fire infolding itself" are the elements which awaken judgements three times a day from the region of Power. And what renders it endurable in spite of its severity? "The brightness" that surrounds it, the light which encircles it, so that the judgement is not too hard for men to bear.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 82a

R. Jose, the son of R. Judah, said that the Israelites at Mount Sinai saw more of the Divine than the prophet

Ezekiel, and were all united with the supernal Wisdom. They saw five different grades of voices, by which five the Torah was given-the fifth being the "voice of the trumpet"-but Ezekiel saw but five lower degrees: whirlwind, great cloud, fire, the brightness, and the colour of amber. Said R. Eleazar: 'Of the Israelites it says: "Face to face hath the Lord spoken to you" (Deut. v, 4), but Ezekiel saw only a "likeness" (Ezek. I, 5), like one who looks through a partition.' Said R. Eleazar further; 'If the Israelites saw what no prophet ever saw, how much more true is this of Moses! How happy a lot was his, who "was there with the Lord" (Ex. xxxn, 28), and with whom He spake "in sight but not in riddles" (Num. XII, 8)!' R. Jose drew attention to the expression used of Ezekiel, "The word of the Lord came (hayo haya) unto Ezekiel" (I, 3), indicating that his vision lasted but for a short space of time. R. Eleazar remarked that the expression hayo haya suggests that he both saw and did not see, heard and did not hear (i.e. his vision and hearing were imperfect): as he says, he saw something like hashmal, but not actually hashmal itself; but of the Israelites it is said: "They saw the voices": every one according to his grade actually saw; for there is a tradition that they stood in groups and divisions, and each one saw as befitted it. According to R. Simeon, the chiefs of the tribes stood by themselves, the women by themselves, and the leaders of the people by themselves, five grades at the right and five at the left, as it is written: "Ye stand this day all of you before the Lord your God; your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, with all the men of Israel"-these were five grades at the right; "your little ones, your wives, the stranger that is in thy camp, from the hewer of thy wood unto the drawer of thy water" (Deut. XXIX, 9)-these were the five grades who stood at the left. All these grades corresponded to the ten celestial grades, and to the Ten Words (Decalogue), which are Israel's eternal possession, the essence of all the commandments, the good portion of Israel. We have been taught that when the Holy One revealed Himself on Mount Sinai all the Israelites saw the Divine manifestation as one sees a light streaming through the glass of a lamp, and by means of that light each one of them saw more than did the prophet Ezekiel, since those celestial voices were all revealed together, whilst to Ezekiel only the Shekinah was revealed in Her Chariot, and he but caught glimpses of it as though through many barriers. Said R. Judah: 'Blessed was Moses, concerning whom it says: "And the Lord came down upon Mount Sinai... and the Lord called Moses up to the top of the mount", and blessed was that generation concerning whom it says: "And the Lord came down upon Mount Sinai before the eyes of the whole people." As the Torah, however, was given from the Right Hand ("from his right hand went a fiery law for them", Deut. XXXIII, 2), what essential difference was there between the manifestation to the people and the manifestation to Ezekiel?' R. Jose replied: 'On Sinai the "Head" and the "Body" of the King were revealed, as it is written: "He bowed the heavens and came down" (2 Sam. XXII, 10); but to Ezekiel it was, as it were, only the "Hand" which was shown: "And the hand of the Lord was there upon him" (Ezek. I, 3). And even the "Hand" has two aspects, a higher and a lower. Observe that he says: "The heavens were opened and I saw visions (maroth) of God" (Ezek. I, 1). "Maroth" is written in a defective form, to indicate that

he merely had a vision of the Shekinah.' Said R. Jesse: 'But is the Shekinah not a representation of the whole of the Deity?' R. Jose replied: 'The "Head" of the King is not to be compared to His "Feet", although both are in the "Body" of the King.' Observe that Isaiah said "I saw (eth) the Lord" (Isa. VI, 1), but Ezekiel said "I saw visions of God".' They meant, however, the same thing, and both belonged to the same grade (of spiritual perception).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 82b

Why, then, did Isaiah not give a detailed account of his visions, like Ezekiel? According to R. Jose, it was necessary that Ezekiel should speak in a detailed manner in order to impress the people in exile with the fact that the Holy One loved them, and that the Shekinah and Her Chariots had gone down into exile also, to be present with them. R. Hiya asked, why did the Shekinah reveal Herself in "the land of the Chaldeans" (Ezek. I, 3), of which it says: "Behold the land of the Chaldeans, a people which is not" (Isa. XXIII, 13, i.e. degraded)? If it was for Israel's sake, surely She could have been present among them without manifesting Herself in that inauspicious place? However, had She not revealed Herself the people would not have known that She was with them. Besides, the revelation took place "by the river Chebar" (Ezek. I, 3), by undefiled waters where impurity has no abode, that river being one of the four which issued from the Garden of Eden. [Tr. Note: v. Zohar, Genesis, 85a.] It was there, and nowhere else, then, that "the hand of the Lord was upon him", as is directly stated. R. Hiya also expounded, in accordance with the esoteric teaching, Ezekiel's vision: "Out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four living creatures (Hayoth), and this was their appearance, they had the likeness of a man" (Ibid. v, 5), saying that there is a sacred Hall in which dwell four living Creatures, which are the most ancient celestial beings ministering to the Holy Ancient, and which constitute the essence of the Supernal Name; and that Ezekiel saw only the likeness of the supernal Chariots, because his beholding was from a region which was not very bright. He furthermore said that there are lower beings corresponding to these upper ones, and so throughout, and they are all linked one with another. Our teachers have laid down that Moses derived his prophetic vision from a bright mirror (cf. Midr. Lev. R., p. 145d), whereas the other prophets derived their vision from a dull mirror. So it is written concerning Ezekiel: "I saw visions of God", whereas in connection with the difference between Moses and all other prophets it says: "If there is a prophet among you, I the Lord will make Myself known to him in a vision.... My servant Moses is not so, who is faithful in all my house: and with him I will speak mouth to mouth" (Num. XII, 7-8). R. Jose remarked that all the prophets are in comparison with Moses like females in comparison with males. The Lord did not speak to him in "riddles" (Ibid.), but showed him everything clearly. Blessed, indeed, was the generation in whose midst this prophet lived! Said R. Jose the son of R. Judah: 'The Israelites saw the splendour of the glory of their Lord face to face; and, moreover, there were neither blind, nor lame, nor deaf, among them: they all saw (Ex. xx, 18); they all stood (Ibid. XIX, 17); they all heard (Ibid. XIX, 8). And of the Messianic Age it

says: "Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped, then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing" (Isa. xxxv, 5-6). AND GOD SPAKE ALL THESE WORDS SAYING. R. Judah reflected here on the verse: "Who can utter the mighty acts of the Lord? Who can show forth all his praise?" (Ps. CVI, 2). Said he: 'In how many ways does the Torah testify to the glory of God and admonish man not to sin! Howmany are the forms in which it counsels him not to turn from the way, either to the right or to the left! And how numerous the signs which it scatters in his way to lead him back into the true path so that he may return to the Lord and receive forgiveness! We have been taught that the Holy One, blessed be He, gave six hundred and thirteen counsels unto man, in order that he might be perfect in attachment to his Lord, for the Holy King desires only his good, both in this world and in the world to come; but more especially in the world to come, since whatever good the Holy One bestows upon man in this world is taken from the sum of good which he is entitled to receive in the world to come. Why is this? Because, as we have been taught, the world to come is, as it were, God's own possession. This is not to say, of course, that this present world is not His also, but, as it has been said, it is like unto an antechamber in comparison with the hall itself; [Tr. Note: Pirke Aboth, IV, 21.] and the reward of a truly worthy man is taken from that which is God's very own, as it says of the tribe of Levi: "He shall have no possession among his brethren, for the Lord is his possession" (Deut. XVIII, 2). How happy is the lot of one who is accounted worthy of such a supernal heritage! He is indeed blessed in this world and in the "house" of this world, as well as in the world to come and in the heavenly holy House of that world, as it is written: "Even unto them I will give in my house and within my walls a place and a name..." (Isa. LVI, 5).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 83a

Blessed is he who is worthy to dwell with the King in His own House.' Said R. Simeon: 'Blessed is he who is worthy of that most inestimable privilege which is foretold in the words: "Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord" (Ibid. LVIII, 14). It does not say, "with the Lord", but "in the Lord", namely in the place from whence the upper and the lower worlds alike derive being, and to which they return, that sphere of which it is written: "I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills, from whence cometh my help" (Ps. CXXI, 2), and again: "and came to the Ancient of Days, and they brought him near before him" (Dan. VII, 13). The longing and delight of the righteous is to contemplate that splendour from whence all lights emanate, and all celestial crowns are illumined.' R. Simeon continued: 'We have expounded the closing words of this verse, "I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth", to mean the supramundane world, called "heaven", and God is above this.' R. Abba said that "the Lord" here means Heaven, and the high places of the earth the "Land of the Living", consisting of Zion and Jerusalem which are above, the supernal heaven and the supernal earth. This, however, is quite in harmony with R. Simeon's interpretation, as it is all one celestial sphere. Then he said to R. Simeon: 'Would it please the Master to deign to interpret the whole verse,

including the last words, "and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father"? R. Simeon then repeated what he had said before, and added that the last words are a reference to Isaac's blessing, "And God give thee of the dew of heaven" (Gen. XXVII, 28), this being "the heritage of Jacob". Now this blessing wherewith Isaac blessed Jacob was made in regard to that "heaven" of which we have spoken, and in these words he indicated that Jacob's children will rise again from the dead at the time of the Resurrection, by means of that heavenly dew, at the time when it shall issue forth from the Ancient of Days to the "Small of Countenance". R. Abba thought for a while, and said: 'Now everything is clear, and I see that there is even more significance in Isaac's blessing than I had thought.' AND GOD SPARE ALL THESE WORDS. According to R. Simeon, the word "spake" denotes a proclamation. When the Holy One revealed Himself and began to speak, the celestial and the terrestrial beings began to tremble mightily, and the souls of the Israelites left their bodies because of their mighty dread. Then the Divine word descended from heaven, being on its way engraved upon the four winds of the universe; and then rose once more and again descended. When it rose up it drew from the mountains pure balsam

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 83b

and was watered with the heavenly dew, and when it reached this earth it encompassed the Israelites and brought them back their souls. Then it encircled them again and impressed itself upon the tablets of stone, until the whole Ten Words were designed thereon. R. Simeon said further that every word contained all manner of legal implications and derivations, as well as all mysteries and hidden aspects; for each word was indeed like unto a treasure-house, full of all precious things. And though when one Word was uttered it sounded but as itself, yet when it was stamped upon the stone seventy different aspects were revealed in it, fifty crowns less one on the one side and fifty less one upon the other, [Tr. Note: i.e. the so-called "forty- nine aspects of clean and forty-nine of unclean... v. Midrash Rabba. Shir Ha-shirim, II, 4.] "like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces" (Jer. XXIII, 29), and all Israel saw eye to eye and rejoiced exceedingly; and the souls of all the children of Israel, past and present and to be, born and unborn, were present there, that all might accept the Torah given on Mount Sinai, as it is written: "Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath, out with him that standeth here... and also with him that is not with us here this day" (Deut. XXIX, 13, 14). And every one according to his grade saw and received the Words. AND GOD SPAKE. The word "God" (Elohim) here indicates that the proclamation emanated from the region of Power (Geburah); the next word, eth, that Geburah was joined with the Right Hand; the word kol (all), that the other Crowns were also associated; the word hadebarim (words), that the words issued continuously; the word haeleh (these), that they included all secret meanings, reasons, and penalties; and the word lemor (saying), that it was a heritage of all. Said R. Isaac: 'Why was the Torah given in fire and darkness? In order to show that he who is constantly and diligently occupied with the study of it will be saved from the fire of hell

(Gehenna) and from the darkness of exile in heathen lands. It was the merit of Abraham which saved Israel from hell fire, as, according to tradition, the Holy One said to Abraham: "As long as thy children shall be absorbed in the ways of the Torah they will be saved from punishment, but should they turn from her and forget her paths the fire of hell will have dominion over them and they will be subjected by the nations of the earth." And Abraham pleaded: "Two punishments are surely too much; if it be Thy will, let them escape hell fire and rather go into exile." The Holy One replied: "So be it then." And so it was. For this reason it says: "Their rock had sold them, and the Lord had shut them up" (Deut. XXXII, 30), meaning that Abraham, their "rock", was the cause of their going into exile; "and the Lord had shut them up" because He accepted Abraham's petition and abode by his choice.' R. Judah said: 'Fifty days elapsed between the Exodus and the giving of the Law. Why was this? In order that the number of days should correspond to the number of years of the Jubilee, as it is written: "And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year and proclaim liberty..." (Lev. xxv, 10).' R. Simeon remarked that it was the Jubilee which led Israel out from Egypt; that is to say the divine liberation emanated from the side of Jubilee, and from the same side was judgement stirred up against the Egyptians. For this reason the deliverance from Egypt is mentioned fifty times in the Pentateuch in such expressions as "I have brought thee out

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 84a

of the land of Egypt", "I have brought thee out with a strong hand", etc. R. Simeon further said: 'When the Israelites received the Torah the Jubilee crowned the Holy One, blessed be He, even as a king is crowned in the midst of his host, as it says, "Go forth, O ye daughters of Zion, and behold King Solomon with the crown wherewith his mother crowned him in the day of his espousals" (S.S. III, 11). Who is His "mother"? The Jubilee. And the Jubilee crowned itself with perfect joy, as it is written: "The mother of the children rejoiced" (Ps. CXIII).' R. Judah said: 'Concerning this it is written: "Thy father and thy mother shall be glad, and she that bore thee shall rejoice" (Prov. XXIII, 25).' Said R. Isaac: 'In the hour when the Holy One, blessed be He, revealed Himself on Mount Sinai, that mountain began mightily to shake and all the other hills and high places of the earth trembled in accord with it, so that they heaved and quaked until the Holy One stretched out His hand and calmed them, and a voice was heard: "What aileth thee, O thou sea, that thou fleddest, and thou Jordan that thou wast driven back? Ye mountains that ye skipped like rams, and ye hills like young sheep?" And the answer was: "Tremble, O earth, at the presence of the Lord, at the presence of the God of Jacob" (Ps. CXIV, 5-7). Now, "the Lord" in this verse refers to the "Mother" (Binah); "earth", to the "Mother" below (Malkuth); "the God of Jacob", to the Father (Hohmah), whose "firstborn son is Israel" (Ex. IV, 23), whom "his mother crowned in the day of his espousals": she crowned him with the symbolic colours, white, red, and green, in which all other colours are included, and in him they were all united.' According to R. Judah, the "crown" symbolizes Israel, who is God's glory, as it is written: "Israel, in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3); "and I will glorify the house of

my glory" (Ibid. LX, 7). Said R. Isaac: 'The Torah was manifested in a black fire which was superimposed upon a white fire, signifying that by means of the Torah the "Right Hand" clasped the "Left Hand" that the two might be fused, as it is written: "from his right hand a fiery law to them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2).' Said R. Abba: 'When the smoke came out of Mount Sinai a fire ascended enveloped therein, so that its flames were of a blue colour. They flared high and dwindled again, and the smoke emitted all the aromas of Paradise, displaying itself in the colours of white, red, and black, as it says, "perfumed with myrrh and frankincense, with all powders of the merchant" (S.S. III, 6). It was the Shekinah who manifested Herself thus at the giving of the Law in the wilderness on Mount Sinai, as it says, "Who is this (zoth) that cometh up from the wilderness like pillars of smoke?" (Ibid.)' Said R. Judah: 'But surely it is not necessary to go so far afield to discover this. Have we not the direct statement that "Mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the Lord descended upon it in fire, and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace" (Ex. XIX, 18)? Blessed were the people who beheld this wondrous thing and apprehended the mystery thereof!' Said R. Hiya: 'When the letters were engraved upon the two tablets of stone they were visible on both sides of the tablets. The tablets were of sapphire [Tr. Note: Heb. sanpirinon, prob. lapis-lazuli, v. Jastrow, s.v.] stone, and the letters were formed of white fire and covered again with black fire, and were engraved upon both sides.' According to R. Abba, the tablets were not engraved, but the letters fluttered on to them, being visible in two colours of fire, white and black, in order to demonstrate the union of Right and Left, as it is written, "length of days is in her right hand and in her left hand is riches and honour" (Prov. III, 16). But are we not told that "from his right hand (came) a fiery law to them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2)? The truth is that although the Torah emanated from the side of Power—that is the Left—the Left Side was included in the Right, and thus Justice was tempered by Mercy, which was symbolized by the two fires: white for Mercy, black for Power and Severity. It is written: "And the tablets were the work of God" (Ex. XXXII, 18). They were indeed so, for, as R. Judah said: 'The word haluhoth (the tablets) being written in a defective form, indicates that although they were two they appeared like one, and the Ten Words were engraved upon them, one section of five being included in, or superimposed on, the other five, so that they should be included in the emanations of the Right Side, that is, of Mercy; and in this way they were indeed the very "work of God".'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 84b

R. Isaac said: 'They were originally two sapphire stones which were rough-hewn, but the Holy One caused a wind to blow upon them, which smoothed them and transformed them into two tablets.' To this R. Judah demurred, maintaining that they only looked like sapphire, being in reality a new creation. 'This', he said, 'must be so, since it says that they were "the work of God".' To which R. Isaac retorted: 'But is not the sapphire, the most precious of all stones, itself a "work of God"? ' Said R. Judah: 'Why then does it say that these specially were a "work of God"? ' R. Isaac replied: 'It does not say that the stones were a special work of God, but the tablets; and the spelling of the

word *luhoth* (without *vau*) suggests that the miraculousness was not so much in the stones themselves as in their formation as tablets, and in the writing.' Said R. Simeon: 'Both interpretations are correct. These two tablets existed from before Creation, but were perfected on the sixth day of Creation specially for this purpose; thus they were a special creation of the Holy One.' Of what were they formed? Of the supernal dew which issues from the Holy Ancient One, of which, when it was descending on the "Field of the Holy Apples", the Holy One took two drops, causing them to solidify and turn into two precious stones. Then He blew on them and they became flat like tablets. Thus both the stones and the writing were "a work of God", "written with the finger of God" (Deut. IX, 10). That "Finger" has the same symbolic significance as the "Finger of God" of which the Egyptian magicians spoke (Ex. VIII, 19), each "finger" expanding into ten until it becomes the complete hand, such as Israel saw at the sea.' Said R. Judah: 'When it says that the "writing was... graven upon the tablets" (Ex. XXXII, 16), it means that the tablets were pierced, so that the writing could be seen from either side; the writing formed an engraving within an engraving.' According to R. Abba, it was possible from one side to see the other side, and read the writing thereon. Said R. Eleazar: 'They were written miraculously in order that every man might discern that it was "God's writing", being unable to find any other explanation of this double appearance. Besides, if the tablets were pierced, as has been suggested, why does it not say that the writing was graven "in the tablets" instead of "upon the tablets"? The fact, however, is, as we have been taught, that five Words were written on the right and five on the left, and those of the left were included in those of the right, and from (within) the right one could see those of the left, so that all was on the right, and all were fused one with the other. He who stood at one side could see (therein) what was on the other side and read it, for we have been taught that the Left was turned into the Right. Thus it was, indeed, "the writing of God". What happened was this: he who stood on one side read, 'I am the Lord thy God', and out of these letters he could see the words, "Thou shalt not murder." Then he read, "Thou shalt not have (other gods)", and at the same time could see the words "Thou shalt not commit adultery". Then he went on reading, "Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain", and saw from the other side the words, "Thou shalt not steal", and so on. And conversely, if he looked at the other side.' AND MOSES WENT DOWN UNTO THE PEOPLE AND SAID UNTO THEM. R. Jose asked: What is the point of this remark, seeing that we are not told what he said?' R. Isaac replied: 'It is well known that when a person is expecting some great good fortune or misfortune to befall him, before the event happens he is in a state of great nervous tension and can hardly control himself; but once the best or the worst is known, he regains his equanimity. Now in this case Moses actually prepared the Israelites for the great event which was about to take place, and yet when it came it almost overwhelmed them, so we may imagine what would have happened if he had not prepared them. And this is the meaning of "he said": he told them what was going to happen so as to fortify them beforehand. And with all this, as has been

already mentioned, they could not endure the revelation when it came, for, as R. Judah said in the name of R. Hiya, in the name of R. Jose: "When the Israelites heard the words of the Holy One, their souls flew from them and ascended up to the Throne of Glory in order to cleave to it. Said the Torah to the Holy One: 'Was it then for nothing and to no purpose that I was fashioned two thousand years before the creation of the world? Is it all in vain that in me is inscribed "Every man

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 85a

of the children of Israel", "speak to the children of Israel", "the children of Israel are servants unto Me", "These are the children of Israel", and diverse other words of a like character? Where, then, are these children of Israel? At that hour the children of Israel received again the souls which had fled in the wake of the Divine splendour, for the Torah returned them every one to its own place; yea, she took hold of them and gave them back to their owners, each to the body which was its proper dwelling. This is the significance of the words: "The Torah of the Lord is perfect, returning (meshibath) the soul" (Ps. XIX, 7): "returning" in the literal sense.' There is a tradition concerning King Solomon, that when he first sat on his throne the Moon was in her fulness, as he was the fifteenth in descent from Abraham, the pedigree being Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Judah, Perez, Hezron, Ram (Ruth IV, 19), Aminadab, Nahshon, Shalmon, Boaz, Obed, Jesse, David, Solomon. Therefore it is written: "Then Solomon sat on the throne of the Lord" (I Chr. XXIX, 23), and also "six ascents had the throne", thus being a replica of the Supernal Throne. In the days of Zedekiah, the Moon was in her wane, and the face of Israel was darkened. He was the fifteenth from Solomon, his pedigree being Rehoboam, Abiah, Asa, Jehoshaphat, Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, Amaziah, Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hezekiah, Manasseh, Amon, Josiah, Zedekiah. When Zedekiah came the Moon waned and remained thus, for it is written: "He (the king of Babylon) blinded the eyes of Zedekiah" (Jer. LII, 11). Then "He cast down from heaven unto the earth the beauty of Israel" (Lam. II, 1). The earth was removed far from the heaven and became dark. When the Israelites stood by Mount Sinai the Moon began to shine forth, as it is written: "He bowed the heavens and came down" (2 Sam. XXII, 10), meaning that the Sun approached the Moon, and the Moon began to shine, this being expressed in the words: "And on the east side toward the rising of the sun shall they of the standard of the camp of Judah pitch throughout their armies" (Num. II, 3). On Mount Sinai was Judah appointed chief in the kingdom. R. Isaac found this expressed in the words: "But Judah still ruleth with God, and is faithful with the saints" (Hos. XII, 1), which means, that when God was ruling in His Kingdom on Mount Sinai, Judah was ruling in his; when the Holy One said to Israel: "And ye shall be unto Me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation", Judah was found faithful and worthy to receive the kingdom, and therefore the Moon began to shine. I AM THE LORD THY GOD WHO BROUGHT THEE OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT. R. Eleazar referred to the verse: "My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the Torah of thy mother" (Prov. I, 18). "The instruction of thy father", he said, 'refers to the Holy

One; "the Torah of thy mother" to the Community of Israel.' According to R. Judah, "father" represents Wisdom (Hokhmah) and "mother" Understanding (Binah). Said R. Judah: 'Both interpretations mean one and the same thing, for we have been taught that the Torah emanated from the Supernal Wisdom.' R. Jose said that the Torah emanated from Understanding, for it says: "to perceive the words of understanding" and "forsake not the Torah of thy mother". Said R. Judah: 'The Torah is an emanation of both Wisdom and Understanding, and combines the influence of both, for it says: "My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the Torah of thy mother".' R. Abba said: 'It contains the influence of all the emanations, in virtue of containing those two: grace, judgement, and mercy, and every one required for perfection. When the King and the Matrona are in harmonious union all attributes are harmoniously united, and wherever these are found all the others are found as well.' R. Jose said: 'The "I" in the first commandment represents the Shekinah, as in "I will go down with thee to Egypt" (Gen. XLVI, 4).' R. Isaac said that after "I" there is a pause, and the next words, "the Lord is thy God", refer to the Holy One, blessed be He, identical with the "Heavens", as it is written: "Out of heaven he made thee to hear his voice" (Deut. IV, 36), and again, "Ye have seen that I have spoken to you from heaven" (Ex. xx, 22). The "who" (asher) which follows designates the sphere which all consider blessed (ashar)

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 85b

The "bringing out of Egypt" designates the "Jubilee", as we have been taught that the "Jubilee" was the immediate cause of Israel's exodus from Egypt; for which reason this event is mentioned fifty times in the Torah. Fifty days passed from the Exodus to the Revelation on Sinai, and fifty years had to pass for the liberation of slaves. "From the house of slaves": as it is written: "The Lord smote all the firstborn of the land of Egypt" (Ex. XII, 29), which, as we have been taught, signifies the lower "crown" which the Egyptians worshipped. For, indeed, as there is a "House" above, so also there is a "house" below; a holy "house" above-"with wisdom is a house builded" (Prov. XXIV, 3)-and an unholy "house" below, a "house of slaves". We have been taught that when the "I" was proclaimed, all those commandments of the Torah which are united in the "Body" of the Supernal Holy King were comprised in it; for, indeed, all the commandments have their unifying centre in the "Body" of the King; some in the "Head", some in the "Trunk", some in the "Hands", and some in the "Feet", and none of them ever step out and become separate from the "Body" of the King or lose connection with it. He, therefore, who transgresses against even one of the commandments of the Torah is as though he transgressed against the "Body" of the King, as it is written: "And they shall go forth and look upon the carcases of the men that have transgressed against me" (Isa. LXVI, 24)-as it were, "against My very Self." Woe unto the sinners who break the words of the Torah- they know not what they do! And thus said R. Simeon: 'The Place against which a sin is committed itself reveals the sin. When a sin has been committed against the Holy One, it is He Himself

who reveals it, as it is written: "The heaven shall reveal his iniquity and the earth shall rise up against him" (Job. xx, 27). "The heaven" signifies the Holy One; "the earth" the Community of Israel. We have also been taught that "heaven" reveals man's guilt and "earth" executes judgement on the sinners, as it is written: "The earth shall rise up against him." ' Said R. Jose: 'We have been taught in the name of R. Simeon that in the hour when the Torah was given to Israel Mother and children were together in perfect harmony, as it is written, "the mother of the children rejoiced" (Ps. XCIII, 9).' Thus "I" in this verse refers to the Shekinah, called "daughter" in the dictum "Abraham had a daughter, the Shekinah". "The Lord thy God" has the same reference as in the verse, "My firstborn son Israel" (Ex. IV, 22) (i.e. Tifereth); while the words "who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt" refer to the mystery of "Jubilee" (the Mother). Thus the Mother was there and the Children were there, all in joy and completeness; so that we apply the verse "the Mother of the children rejoices". Hence we have learnt that a man should be careful not to sin lest he cause the Mother to depart from the Children.' R. Isaac said: 'All these expressions refer to the Holy One, blessed be He, and this is a thing disclosed to the "reapers of the field".' R. Eleazar said: 'From the fact that in one place it says: "In the beginning God created heaven and earth", and in another, "On the day when the Lord God made earth and heaven" (Gen. II, 4), it has been concluded that both heaven and earth were created as one; the Holy One stretched out His right hand and created the heaven, and then He stretched out His left hand and created the earth. Also, when it says: "And it shall come to pass on that day that I will answer the heavens, and they shall answer the earth" (Hos. II, 21), it refers to the supernal heavens and to the supernal earth, the earth which is called "My footstool" (Isa. LXVI, 1). The significance whereof is that the heaven longed for the earth, that it might unite itself with her in the sphere called "Righteous", as it is written: "The righteous is the foundation of the world" (Prov. x, 25). From the head of the King to the place where this Righteous One commences flows a holy river

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 86a

, the oil of anointment, which pours itself out in fulness of desire upon this earth; and the earth having received it therefrom nourishes all both above and below.' Said R. Isaac: 'We read: "And the Lord came down upon Mount Sinai" (Ex. XIX, 20); "He bowed the heavens and came down" (2 Sam. XXII, 10). Whither came He down? For the text tells us that He descended upon (lit. above) Mount Sinai and not on to Sinai.' R. Jose replied: 'He came down from grade to grade, from crown to crown, until He reached this "earth", and then the Moon shone and was revealed in completeness in the heavens. Hence it says, "He descended above Mount Sinai." What stands above Mount Sinai? Surely, the Shekinah.' THOU SHALT HAVE NO OTHER GODS BEFORE ME (lit. before My Face). Said R. Isaac: 'This prohibition of "other gods" does not include the Shekinah; "before My Face" does not include the "Faces of the King" (the Sephiroth), in which the Holy King manifests Himself, and which are His Name and identical with Him. That they are His name is shown by the verse: "I am TETRAGRAMMATON, that is My

Name" (Isa. XLII, 8). Thus He and His Name are one. Blessed be His Name for ever and ever.' R. Simeon taught: 'Blessed are the Israelites, for that the Holy One calls them 'IMen" (Adam), as it is written, "Ye are my sheep; the sheep of my flock; ye are men" (Ezek. XXXIV, 31). Why are they called "men", in contradistinction to the heathen nations? Because they "cleave to the Lord their God" (Deut. IV, 4). When a Jewish child is circumcised he enters at once into the Abrahamic covenant; and when he commences to keep the precepts of the Torah he enters into the grade of "man" and becomes attached to the "Body of the King" and so obtains the title of "man". Contrariwise Ishmael was a "wild man" (Gen. XVI, 12); he was only partly a "man": there were the beginnings of "manhood" in him, because he was circumcised, but this "manhood" did not come to fruition in him, because he did not receive the commandments of the Torah. But the seed of Israel, who were perfected in all things, they are "men" in the full sense: "For the Lord's portion is his people; Jacob is the lot of his inheritance" (Deut. XXXII, 9).' Said R. Jose: 'Therefore the graving and painting of all forms is permitted, except the human figure.' Said R. Isaac: 'The reason is, because when a human figure is represented in sculpture or painting, it is not only the body which is fashioned in the image of the person, but as it were the wholeness of the man is being reproduced, his inner form, namely his spirit, as well as his outer bodily form'; Said R. Judah 'This accords with the popular saying: "As the breath of the craftsman, so the shape of the vessel." ' R. Judah went once from Cappadocia to Lydda to see R. Simeon, who was sojourning there at that time, and R. Hezekiah accompanied him. Said R. Judah to R. Hezekiah: 'What R. Simeon taught us concerning the meaning of the term "wild man"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 86b

applied to Ishmael is perfectly true and quite clear, but what is the meaning of the second half of the verse: "and he shall dwell in the presence (lit. faces) of all his brethren"? R. Hezekiah replied: 'I have heard no interpretation and I shall not give any, for it is written: "And this is the Torah which Moses set before the children of Israel" (Deut. IV, 44). What was set by Moses we can enunciate; what he did not set we cannot enunciate.' Then said R. Judah: 'It is written: "For he is thy life and the length of thy days" (Deut. xxx, 20). He who is worthy of the Torah and separates not himself from her is worthy of two lives: life in this world and life in the world to come. But he who separates himself from her separates himself from life. And he who separates himself from R. Simeon separates himself from all things. Here is a verse to which he has already opened a door, and yet we cannot enter it nor penetrate further without his aid; how much more difficult then will it be for us to enter into the more recondite words of the Torah! Woe to the generation from which R. Simeon will be removed! As long as we are in his presence the springs of the heart are open on every hand to the apprehension of truth, and everything is unfolded, but as soon as we separate ourselves from him we know nothing and all the springs are closed.' Said R. Hezekiah: 'It is written: "And he took of the spirit that was upon him (Moses) and gave it unto the seventy elders" (Num. XI, 25). It was like a

light from which many lights are kindled, and which yet retains its brightness. R. Simeon is such a light; he illumines everyone and yet his light is not diminished, but remains steadfast in its full splendour.' They walked on until they reached the place where he was dwelling at the time. They found him absorbed in the study of the Torah. He was meditating aloud upon the verse: "A prayer of the afflicted (poor) when he is wrapped in darkness (languishing), and poureth out his complaint before the Lord" (Ps. CII, 1). He said: 'All prayers of Israel are effective, but the prayer of the poor man more so than all others. Why? Because it reaches the Crown of the King's Glory and becomes, as it were, a garland for His Head, and the Holy One clothes Himself with this prayer as with a garment. "When he is wrapped...." He is not wrapped in garments, for he has none, being needy, but the word ya'atof has the same significance here as in the words, "the life of the young children that faint ('atuphim) for hunger" (Lam. II, 19). He "poureth out his complaint before the Lord". This is pleasing to the Lord, for the world is sustained by such. Woe unto him against whom a poor man complains to his Master! For the poor are nearest to the King. Concerning him the Lord says: "When he crieth unto me I will hear, for I am gracious" (Ex. XXII, 26), which signifies that the prayers of others are sometimes accepted and sometimes rejected, but the poor man's prayer is always answered. And why? Because the King dwells in broken vessels: "To this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit" (Isa. LXVI, 2). "The Lord is near to those who are of a broken heart" (Ps. XXXIV, 19): "A broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise" (Ibid. LI, 19). Hence we have learnt that whosoever wrongs a poor man wrongs the Shekinah. "For the Lord will plead their cause" (Prov. XXII, 23): their Protector is omnipotent; he needs no witnesses, no other judge, no pledge does he accept, except that of the soul: "and spoil the soul of those who spoil them (the poor)" (Ibid.).' He went on: 'A prayer of the poor....' Wherever the word "prayer" (tephillah) is mentioned, it signifies something precious, something which ascends to a supernal sphere-to the phylactery of the head worn by the King.' At this point R. Simeon turned his head and saw R. Judah and R. Hezekiah approaching him. When he had finished his reflections he looked at them, and said: 'You look as if you had lost something valuable.' 'Yes,' they replied, 'for the Master opened a precious door and yet we cannot enter into it.' 'And what is it?' said he. Said they: 'We refer to the verse concerning Ishmael: what is the meaning of the last words: "and he shall dwell upon the faces of all his brethren"? The beginning of the verse is clear to us, but what of this? We know not what the significance of these words is. The end does not seem to suit the beginning.' 'By your life!' replied R. Simeon, "both parts of the verse have one significance and point to the same truth. We know that the Holy One has many aspects (faces) in His manifestations to men: He manifests to some a beaming face, to others a gloomy one; to some a distant face,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 87a

to others one that is very near; to some an external, to others an inner, hidden aspect; to some from the right side, to others from the left. Blessed are the Israelites, for they are united with the uppermost "face" of the

King, with the face wherein He and His Name are one. Contrariwise, the heathen nations are joined to the most distant "face", to the "lower face", and therefore they are at a great distance from the "Body" of the King. For we see that all those nations, like the Egyptians, for instance, who are related to Ishmael-for he had many brothers and relatives-were connected with the "lower", the "distant" faces of the Divine. Ishmael, however, when he was circumcised, had the privilege, for Abraham's sake, of having his dwelling-place and his portion in the sphere which dominated all those distant and lower faces, the faces of the Divine which are turned towards the other nations. Therefore it says of him: "His hand will be in all (kol) [Tr. Note: One of the lower grades of the Divine.]... and he shall dwell upon the faces of all his brethren", namely, he will be in a superior sphere to any of the other heathen nations; he will rule over all the "faces" that are below.' Then R. Judah and R. Hezekiah approached him and kissed his hands. Said R. Judah: 'This is an illustration of the proverb: "Wine settled on its lees and a bubbling spring are a wonderful combination." [Tr. Note: i.e. R. Simeon combines deliberate judgement with a perennial flow of learning.] Woe to the world when the Master will be removed from it! Blessed the generation that is privileged to hearken to his words! Blessed the generation in which he lives!' Said R. Hezekiah: 'But have we not been taught that a proselyte when circumcised is merely called a "proselyte of righteousness" and nothing more? Yet according to thy interpretation of this verse, Master, "his hand will be in all (kol)"?' R. Simeon replied: 'Quite so! Ishmael was not merely a "prosclyte", he was a son of Abraham, a son of the holy man, to whom the Lord gave the promise: "As concerning Ishmael, behold... I have blessed him" (Gen. XVII, 20); which "blessing" has a reference to the statement, "And the Lord blessed Abraham in all things (kol)"; which again is connected with the promise to Ishmael that "his hand will be in all (kol)...." This indicates that proselytes from among other nations, Ishmael's kin, would be called "proselytes of righteousness", but the nation whom he himself represents should be above them, "he shall dwell above the faces of his brethren".' Said R. Judah: 'Hence the commandment to Israel: "Thou shalt have no other gods upon My face", meaning "Thou shalt even avoid conceiving Me in those aspects (faces) which form Ishmael's religion".' [Tr. Note: i.e. Mohammedanism.] THOU SHALT NOT MAKE UNTO THEE ANY GRAVEN IMAGE, OR ANY LIKENESS OF ANYTHING THAT IS IN HEAVEN ABOVE OR THAT IS IN THE EARTH BENEATH. We have already mentioned, in reference to this prohibition, the remark of R. Jose that 'all pictorial presentations are permitted, except that of a human countenance, because this countenance has dominion over all things'. R. Isaac applied to this commandment the maxim: "Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin" (Eccl. v, 5). 'How careful', he said, 'must one be not to err in regard to the meaning of the words of the Torah, and not to derive any doctrine from them which he has not learnt [from books] or heard from his teachers. He who gives his own interpretations of Scripture, not derived from these sources, transgresses against the commandment: "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image...." The Holy One will punish him in the world to come, when his soul shall desire to enter into her place. She

will then be thrust away, and she will be cut off from that region which is "bound up with the bundle of life" wherein are the other souls. Concerning such a man it is written: "Wherefore should God be angry at thy voice?" (Ibid.), "voice" symbolizing the soul.' Said R. Hiya: 'It is for this reason that to this prohibition are added the words, "for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God". God is "jealous" above all for His Name, either because of the pictorial presentations wherewith His Name (character) is misrepresented, or because of the Torah when she is misinterpreted. For the Torah, as we have been taught, consists entirely of His Holy Name; in fact, every word written therein consists of and contains that Holy Name. Therefore one must beware of erring in regard to this Name and misrepresenting it. He who is false to the Supernal King will not be allowed to enter the King's Palace and will be driven away from the world to come.' R. Abba derived the same lesson from the words from this commandment: "Thou shalt not make... any graven image (pesel)", which he connected with the verse,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 87b

"Hew (pesal) thee two tables of stone" (Ex. XXXIV, 1), interpreting thus: "Thou shalt not 'hew' unto thee another Torah, which thou neither knowest [from books], nor hast learnt from thy master; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God and shall punish thee in the world to come when thy soul shall long to enter into the spheres of glory and stand before My Presence." How many emissaries will then be ready to frustrate its desire and thrust it into Gehenna! [Tr. Note: Al. "To hiss at it and to gaze at it in Gehenna."] According to yet another interpretation, this commandment includes the prohibition against the profanation of the sign of the Abrahamic covenant, which sign is a symbol of the Holy Name. By means of this sign Israel entered into the first Covenant and union with the Shekinah, and he who brings it into a foreign domain is false to the Holy One Himself. THOU SHALT NOT BOW DOWN TO THEM NOR WORSHIP THEM. As R. Eleazar was once walking in company with R. Hiya, the latter said: 'It is written: "When thou goes: out to war against thine enemies... and seest among the captives a beautiful woman... thou shalt bring her home to thine house" (Deut. XXI, 10, 11). How can this be? Is not intermarriage with heathens prohibited?' R. Eleazar replied: 'This only applied to the seven nations [Tr. Note: v. Deut. VII, 7.] when they were independent in their own land. But mark this. There is no woman among the heathen nations who is free from taint. Therefore the section concerning the captive woman is immediately followed by that of the rebellious son, to indicate that children born of such a union are far from good, the impurity of idolatry inherited by the mother being difficult to remove; all the more so if she has been already married, as the taint of her husband cleaves to her. Hence the command of Moses to exterminate the Midianite women who were the cause of Israel's downfall in the wilderness (Num. xxv, 1-9; XXXI, 15-19). Blessed is the man who keeps in purity this heritage (the Covenant), for in this holy possession he unites himself with the Holy One, blessed be He, especially if he keeps the commandments of the Torah! The Holy One then stretches out His Right Hand to receive him, and he cleaves to the Holy Body.

Concerning this it says of Israel: "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God" (Deut. IV, 4); "Sons are ye to the Lord your God" (Ibid. XIV, 1): literally "sons", as it is also written: "My firstborn son Israel" (Ex. IV, 22); "Israel, in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3). 'THOU SHALT NOT TAKE THE NAME OF THE LORD THY GOD IN VAIN. R. Simeon spoke in connection with this on the passage: "And Elisha said unto her, What shall I do for thee? Tell me, what hast thou in the house?" (2 Kings IV, 2). 'What Elisha meant', said he, 'was: "Hast thou nothing upon which the Divine blessing could rest?" For there is a dictum that it is prohibited to say grace after meals over an empty table, because the supernal blessing cannot rest on an empty place. It is therefore necessary to put a loaf or two on the table before saying grace, or at least the remnants of the former meal, in order that the blessing should not, as it were, be uttered "in emptiness". But when the woman said: "Thine handmaid hath not anything in the house, save a pot of oil" (Ibid.), the prophet replied: "Verily, this is fitted to receive a perfect blessing, as it is written: 'The good name (of God) can issue forth from good oil'" (Eccl. VIII, 1). For the Holy Name comes forth from "oil", to bless and to kindle new lights. What is this "oil"? Said R. Isaac: 'It represents the same "good oil" upon the head, that ran down upon the beard, even Aaron's beard" (Ps. CXXXIII, 2, the symbol of blessing, the instrument of which was the high priest). R. Eleazar held that it represents the supernal mountains of pure balsam. R. Simeon interpreted the verse of Ecclesiastes thus: 'How good is the celestial name of the supernal holy lights, when they all radiate from the "good oil" we have mentioned! It is a sin to mention the Name of the Holy One in vain, in emptiness. A man who does that were better not to have been born.' According to R. Eleazar, this also means that one should not utter the Holy Name by itself, but only after a preceding word,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 88a

as in the Torah it only occurs for the first time after two words: Bereshit barah Elohim (In the beginning God created). Said R. Simeon: 'In the Torah the Holy Name is mentioned only in connection with a completed world: "On the day when TETRAGRAMMATON Elohim made the heavens and the earth" (Gen. II, 4). From all this it follows that one should not mention the Holy Name in vain, that is, in "emptiness". One should utter the Holy Name only within a blessing or a prayer. But he who takes the Name in vain, neither in a benediction nor in a prayer, will be punished when his soul will be leaving him: "for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh His Name in vain". R. Jose further remarks in our Mishnah: 'What is the nature of blessing? It is the presence of the Holy Name in the blessing which makes it so significant, for this Name is the source of blessing to the whole universe. Therefore: "Thou shalt not take the Name of the Lord thy God in vain." ' REMEMBER THE SABBATH DAY, TO SANCTIFY IT. Said R. Isaac: 'It is written, "And God blessed the seventh day" (Gen. II, 3); and yet we read of the manna, "Six days ye shall gather it, but on the seventh day, the Sabbath, in it there shall be none" (Ex. XVI, 26). If there was no food on that day what blessing is attached to it? Yet we have been taught that all blessings from above and from below depend upon the

seventh day. Why, then, was there no manna just on this day? The explanation is that all the six days of the transcendent world derive their blessings from it, and each supernal day sends forth nourishment to the world below from what it received from the seventh day. [Tr. Note: Here apparently=Binah.] Therefore he who has attained to the grade of Faith must needs prepare a table and a meal on the Sabbath eve (Friday) so that his table may be blessed all through the other six days of the week. For, indeed, at the time of the Sabbath preparation there is also prepared the blessing for all the six days that shall follow, for no blessing is found at an empty table. Thus one should make ready the table on Sabbath night with bread and other food.' R. Isaac added: 'Also on the Sabbath day.' Said R. Judah: 'One must regale oneself on this day with three meals, in order that this day may be one of satisfaction and refreshment.' Said R. Abba: 'One must do so in order that blessing may spread to those supernal days which receive their blessing from the seventh.' On this day the head of the "Little Face" is filled with the dew which descends from the Holy Ancient One, the Most Hidden One; He causes it to descend into the holy "Field of Apples" three times after the entrance of the Sabbath, in order that all unitedly may enjoy the blessing. Therefore it is necessary, not only for ourselves that we should have these three repasts during the day, but for all creation, for therein is consummated the true faith in the Holy Ancient One, the "Little Face", and the "Field of Apples", and we should rejoice and delight in all three. But he who lessens the number of the meals, as it were brings imperfection and blemish into the regions above, and great will his punishment be.' Said R. Simeon: 'When a man has completed the three meals on the Sabbath a voice proclaims concerning him: "Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord." This is in reference to one meal, in honour of the Ancient, the All Holy. Then it proclaims, "and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth"-this in reference to a second meal, in honour of the holy "Field of Apples"; then, "and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father" (Isa. LVIII, 14)-completing the triad with a reference to the "Little Face". Correspondingly man should complete the number of three meals, and find joy and refreshment in all three and in each one of them separately, because this is a manifestation of perfected faith. Therefore the Sabbath is more precious than all other times and seasons and festivals, because it contains and unites all in itself, whereas no other festival or holy day does so.' Said R. Hiya: 'Because all things are found in the Sabbath it is mentioned three times in the story of Creation: "And on the seventh day God ended his work"; "and he rested on the seventh day"; "and God blessed the seventh day" (Gen. II, 2, 3). R. Hamnuna the ancient, [Tr. Note: Al. R. Abba.] when he sat at his Sabbath meals, used to find joy in each one. Over one he would exclaim: 'This is the holy meal of the Holy Ancient One, the All-hidden.' Over another he would say: 'This is the meal of the Holy One, blessed be He.' And when he

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 88b

came to the last one he would say: 'Complete the meals of the Faith.' R. Simeon used always to say when the time of the Sabbath meal arrived: 'Prepare ye

the meal of the supernal Faith! Make ready the meal of the King! Then he would sit with a glad heart. And as soon as he had finished the third meal it was proclaimed concerning him: 'Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord, and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father.' R. Eleazar asked his father, R. Simeon, in what order the three meals corresponded to the three divine grades. R. Simeon replied: 'Concerning the meal of Sabbath night (i.e. Friday night) it is written: "I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth." In this night the Holy Matrona (Shekinah) is greatly blessed, and the whole "Field of Apples" also, and the man's table is blessed who partakes of his meal duly and with joy, and a new soul is added unto him. This night signifies the rejoicing of the Shekinah. Man therefore has to participate in Her joy and partake of Her meal. Concerning the second meal on the Sabbath day, it is written: "Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord"-that is, in the very Lord (TETRAGRAMMATON); for at that hour the Holy Ancient One reveals Himself and all the worlds are irradiated with joy, and we, in participating in this meal, contribute to that joy. Concerning the third meal it is written: "And feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father." This is the meal of the "Little Face" who is then complete in harmonious perfection, from which perfection all the six days that are to come will receive blessing. Therefore one must wholeheartedly rejoice in these meals, and complete their number, for they are meals of the perfect Faith, the Faith of the holy seed of Israel, their supernal Faith, which is not that of the heathen nations: "A sign between me and the children of Israel" (Ex. XXXI, 17). And mark this. By these meals the children of Israel are distinguished as the King's sons, as belonging to the Palace, as sons of Faith; and he who abstains from one of these meals causes an incompleteness in the regions above; thus such a man testifies of himself that he is not one of the King's sons, not of the Palace, not of the holiness of Israel's seed, and he will be made to bear the burden of a threefold punishment in Gehenna. 'Also mark this. On all festivals and holy days a man must both rejoice himself and give joy to the poor. Should he regale himself only and not give a share to the poor, his punishment will be great. Concerning such a one it is written: "Behold, I will reprove your seed and spread dung upon your face, the dung of your solemn feasts" (Mal. II, 3). This particular verse, however, applies only to festivals, not to the Sabbath. Similarly, the words, "Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth" (Isa. I, 14), do not include the Sabbath. The unique character of the Sabbath is expressed in the words: "Between Me and the children of Israel." And because the Faith is centred in the Sabbath, man is given on this day an additional, a supernal soul, a soul in which is all perfection, according to the pattern of the world to come. What does the word "Sabbath" mean? The Name of the Holy One, the Name which is in perfect harmony at all sides.' [Tr. Note: This idea is based upon the mystic significance of the three letters of the word Sabbath, shin, beth, tau.] Said R. Jose: 'It is indeed so. Woe to him who does not help to complete the joy of the Holy King! And what is His joy? Those three meals of the Faith, the meals wherein Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob participate, and which express joy upon joy, the perfect Faith from all sides. On this day- so we have

been taught-the Fathers crown themselves and all the Children imbibe power and light and joy, such as is unknown even on other festive days. On this day sinners find rest in Gehenna. On this day punishment is held back from the world. On this day the Torah crowns herself in perfect crowns. On this day joy and gladness resound throughout two hundred and fifty worlds. Mark also this. On all the six days of the week, when the hour of the afternoon prayer arrives, the attribute of Justice is in the ascendant, and punishment is at hand. But not so on the Sabbath. When the time of the Sabbath afternoon prayer arrives benign influences reign, the lovingkindness of the Holy Ancient One is manifested, all chastisements are kept in leash, and all is satisfaction and joy. In this time of satisfaction and goodwill Moses, the holy, faithful prophet, passed away from this world, in order that it should be known that he was not taken away through judgement, but that in the hour

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 89a

of grace of the Holy Ancient One his soul ascended, to be hidden in Him. Therefore "no man knows of his sepulchre unto this day" (Deut. XXXIV, 6). As the Holy Ancient One is the All-hidden One, whom neither those above nor those below can comprehend, so was this soul of Moses hidden in the epiphany of God's good will at the hour of the Sabbath afternoon prayer. This soul is the most hidden of all hidden things in the world, and judgement has no dominion over it. Blessed is the lot of Moses. 'On this day the Torah crowns herself with all beauty, with all those commandments, with all those decrees and punishments for transgressions-in seventy branches of light which radiate on every hand. What it is to behold the little twigs which constantly emanate from each branch-five of which stand in the Tree itself, all the branches being comprised in it! What it is to behold the gates which open at all sides, and through which bursts forth in splendour and beauty the streaming, inexhaustible light! A voice is heard: "Awake, ye supernal saints! Awake, holy people, chosen from above and from below! Awake in joy to meet your Lord, awake in perfect joy! Prepare yourselves in the threefold joy of the three Patriarchs! Prepare yourselves for the Faith, the joy of joys! Happy are ye, O Israelites, holy in this world and holy in the world to come! This is your heritage over and above that of all heathen nations-"a sign between Me and you!" ' Said R. Judah: 'It is indeed thus. Hence: "Remember the sabbath day to sanctify it"; "Be ye holy, for I the Lord am holy" (Lev. XIX, 2); "Call the sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honourable" (Isa. LVIII, 13).' All the souls of the righteous-so we have been taught- on this day are feasted on the delights of the Holy Ancient One, the All- hidden. A breath of this rapture is extended through all the worlds; it ascends and descends, and spreads abroad to all the children of the holy, to all the guardians of the Torah, so that they enjoy perfect rest, forgetting all cares, all penalties, all toil and drudgery. It is the day on which "the Lord giveth thee rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve" (Isa. XIV, 3). Therefore the Sabbath is equal in importance to the whole Torah, and whosoever observes the Sabbath fulfils the whole Torah: "Blessed is the man that doeth this, and the son of man that

layeth hold on it: that keepeth the sabbath from profaning it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil" (Ibid. LVI, 2). R. Judai one day met R. Simeon on the road, and he asked him to explain the words of the prophet: "For thus says the Lord unto the eunuchs that keep my sabbaths, and choose the things that please me, and take hold of my covenant; even unto them will I give in my house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name that shall not be cut off" (Ibid. 4, 5). Said R. Simeon: 'Cappadocian! [Tr. Note: i.e. "rude fellow".] Get down from thy donkey and fasten it to a tree, or let him go behind, and do thou follow me! Holy Writ requires quiet and solemn contemplation.' He replied: 'It is for the Master's sake that I have undertaken this journey, and in following him I shall behold the Shekinah.' Then R. Simeon said: 'This subject has already been considered by the members of the Fellowship, but they have not explained it sufficiently. The "eunuchs" are, in fact, students of the Torah, who make themselves "eunuchs" during the six days of the week for the Torah's sake, and on Sabbath nights have their conjugal union, because they apprehend the supernal mystery of the right moment when the Matrona (Shekinah) is united with the King. Such adepts of the mystic lore concentrate their hearts on the Divine union, on the Faith of their Lord, and are blessed in their own union. Therefore it says: "that keep My Sabbaths", meaning "they keep them in their hearts", as in the expression: "But his (Joseph's) father kept the matter" (Gen. XXXVI, 11). They are "eunuchs", because they wait for the Sabbath, in order "to choose what pleaseth Me", namely His union with the Shekinah. Blessed is the man who is sanctified in this holiness, and comprehends this mystery. Mark this. It is written: "Six days shalt thou labour and do all

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 89b

thy work, but the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God." "All thy work": during the six days of the week man has to work, and therefore those who are absorbed in the study of the Torah have their conjugal union at a time when they do not work, but when the Holy One works. And what is His work then? The union with the Shekinah, in order to bring forth holy souls into the world. For this reason the mystics sanctify themselves on this night in the holiness of their Lord with deep contemplation and concentration, and bring good and holy children into the world: children who turn neither to the right nor to the left, children of the King and the Queen: "Children are ye to the Lord your God" (Deut. XIV, 1)-His children in the most real sense. The world is sustained by the merit of these children of God, and when the world is placed on its trial the Holy One looks on these His children and exercises His pity and mercy. They are "altogether a seed of truth" (Jer. II, 21): a holy, perfect seed, according to the promise, "Thou shalt give truth to Jacob" (Micah VII, 20), and "truth" being the Holy One Himself, it means that He enters into their very self.' Said R. Judai: 'Blessed be the Merciful One who sent me here! Blessed be He for that He has permitted me to hear thy words!' And he burst out weeping. 'Why dost thou weep?' R. Simeon asked. 'I weep', he said, "because I think: Woe to the children of the world whose ways are the ways of beasts, without knowledge and understanding! It would

have been better for them not to have been created. Woe to the world when thou, Master, wilt be removed from it! For who will then unfold the mysteries of the Torah? Who will then comprehend and grasp her ways?' Said R. Simeon: 'By thy life! The world belongs only to those who occupy themselves with the Torah and know its mysteries. The Rabbis were right in their hard judgement on those who are ignorant of the Torah and corrupt their ways, not knowing their right hand from their left; for they are indeed like cattle, and it is fitting to chastise them even on the Day of Atonement. Concerning their children it is written: "They are the children of whoredoms" (Hos. II, 6).' Said R. Judai: 'Master, there is a certain peculiarity in the words of this verse. It is written: "even unto them will I glve in my house and within my walls a place and a name better than sons and daughters", and then "I will give him an everlasting name, etc., Why first "them" and then "him"?' R. Simeon replied: ' "House" here is the celestial region of which it says concerning Moses- "He is faithful in all my house"; the "walls" are those of which it says: "Upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, I have set watchmen" (Isa. LXII, 6); "a place and a name" signify that they will draw holy souls from this celestial sphere which, in its harmonious perfection, is "better than sons and daughters"; and "to him", namely to this portion, God will give an "everlasting name". According to another explanation, "I will give him"-namely to him who comprehends this mystery, and knows how to concentrate on it with the right intention-"an everlasting name that shall not be cut off". R. Simeon also explained on that occasion the reason why it is written: "Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the sabbath day" (Ex. xxv, 3). 'It is', he said, 'because fire symbolizes judgement. As to the fire of the sacrifices on the Sabbath day, it rises to hold in check judgement; for, as we have learnt, "there is a fire which consumes a fire": the fire of the altar consumes the fire of judgement. Therefore the Holy Ancient One reveals Himself on this day (Sabbath) more than on any other day, and when He reveals Himself judgement is not in evidence at all, and all the upper and lower celestial beings are in perfect joy, and judgement has no dominion. 'It is written: "For six days the Lord made heaven and earth" (EX.XXXI, 17); it does not say "in six days", which indicates that the days themselves were a special creation. They are holy, supernal days, days in which the Holy Name is contained. Blessed are the Israelites more than all the heathen nations: of them it is written, "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive today".'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 90a

HONOUR THY FATHER AND THY MOTHER. R. Hiya connected this command with the words: "And a river went out of Eden to water the garden" (Gen. II, 10). 'The "river" he said, is the issue of the fountain which flows perennially and from whence the whole Garden of Eden is watered, and this issue [Tr. Note: Tifereth.] of the holy fountain is called Ab-"Father". R. Abba said that Eden itself [Tr. Note: Hokhmah.] is called Father-itself originating from the place called Ain (nought)-as we have laid down, that the place from which the Whole begins to take its being is designated both "Thou" and "Father", as it says: "For thou art our father" (Isa. LXIII, 16). R. Eleazar applied the words "honour

thy father" to the Holy One; "thy mother" to the Community of Israel; and the article *eth* to the Shekinah. R. Judah, however, held that, as "Father" and "Mother" in this commandment are not particularised, they include all aspects of the Divine, and the article *eth* between indicates all that is above and all that is below. R. Jose referred to R. Abba's remark that the sphere whence the "river" issues forth is called "Thou", and confirmed it by reference to the dictum: "What is hidden and has no beginning is designated 'He'; but the point where it begins to manifest itself is called 'Thou' and 'Father', and all are one." Blessed be His name for ever and ever. Amen. Said R. Hezekiah: 'Verily, they are all one: "honour thy father", namely the Holy One, blessed be He; "and thy mother", the Community of Israel. Thus the commandment includes all, both that which is above and that which is below.' According to R. Isaac, it also includes teachers of the Torah, for they are the means of leading men to eternal life. R. Judah, however, held this to be included in the command to honour the Holy One, blessed be He. We have a dictum that the first five commandments include by implication the other five as well: in other words, in the first five the second five are engraved, five within five. How? Take the first commandment: "I am the Lord thy God." Does it not include the first of the second five? Indeed it does, for the murderer diminishes the likeness and image of his Master, man having been created "in the image of God", and it is also written: "And upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man upon it" (Ezek. I, 26). Said R. Hiya: 'It is written: "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed; for in the image of God made he man" (Gen. IX, 6). He who sheds the blood of a fellow-man is thus considered as diminishing the Divine archetype of man as well. Thus the first commandment, "I am the Lord thy God", contains the motive for the sixth, "Thou shalt not murder." The second commandment, "Thou shalt have no other gods", contains the motive for the seventh, "Thou shalt not commit adultery"; for the adulterer perfidiously lies against the Name of the Holy One which is impressed upon man, a sin comprising many other sins and entailing corresponding punishments. He who is unfaithful in this is unfaithful towards the King, as it is written: "They have dealt treacherously against the Lord, for they have begotten strange children" (Hos. v, 7). One is the result of the other. The third commandment, "Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain", corresponds to the eighth commandment, "Thou shalt not steal." For a thief is certainly inclined to swear falsely, as it is written: "Whoso is partner with a thief hateth his own soul, he heareth cursing and tells it not" (Prov. XXIX, 24). The fourth commandment, "Remember the sabbath day", corresponds to the ninth, "Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour"; for, as R. Jose said, the Sabbath is called a witness to God's creative activity, and man is required to testify to the fact that "in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, etc." Hence R. Jose said: 'God has "given truth to Jacob" (Micah VII, 20) in requiring Israel to keep the Sabbath; and he who bears false witness against his neighbour lies against the Sabbath-the witness of truth; and he who lies against the Sabbath lies against the whole Torah. The fifth commandment, "Honour thy father and thy mother", implies also the tenth, "Thou shalt not covet

thy neighbour's wife"; for whosoever has a son born in adultery is "honoured" by him

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 90b

on false pretences. Further, it is written in the fifth commandment "that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee", as much as to say, "what He gives thee is thine-but covet not what is not thine". Thus the first five commandments imply the second five. Therefore: "From his right hand went a fiery law to them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2); for all was included in the five fingers of the Right Hand. Therefore also was the Torah proclaimed in five voices, corresponding to the five Books of the Torah.' R. Eleazar taught that in the Ten Words (Decalogue) all the other commandments were engraved, with all decrees and punishments, all laws concerning purity and impurity, all the branches and roots, all the trees and plants, heaven and earth, seas and oceans-in fact, all things. For the Torah is the Name of the Holy One, blessed be He. As the Name of the Holy One is engraved in the Ten Words (creative utterances) of Creation, so is the whole Torah engraved in the Ten Words (Decalogue), and these Ten Words are the Name of the Holy One, and the whole Torah is thus one Name, the Holy Name of God Himself. Blessed is he who is worthy of her, the Torah, for he will be worthy of the Holy Name. Said R. Jose: 'This means that he will be worthy of the Holy One Himself, as He and His Name are one. Blessed be His Name for ever and ever. Amen.' YE SHALL NOT MAKE WITH ME (iti) GODS OF SILVER, NEITHER SHALL YE MAKE UNTO YOU GODS OF GOLD. R. Jose read *iti* (with me) as *oti* (me), and interpreted thus: 'Although "mine is the silver and mine the gold" (Hag. II, 8), ye shall not represent Me (*oti*) in silver and gold.' R. Isaac connected the words, "Mine is the silver and mine the gold", with the verse: "For as much as there is none like unto thee, O Lord; thou art great and thy name is great in power" (Jer. x, 7). "Thou art great" corresponds, according to him, to "Mine is the silver"; "and Thy Name is great," to "Mine the gold". These represent the two colours which are only visible in their full beauty when they are engraved in a certain place, namely Israel: "Israel, in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 4). R. Judah illustrated from the verse: "I greatly rejoice in the Lord, my soul is joyful in my God; for He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels" (Ibid. LXI, 10). He said: 'Blessed are the Israelites above all heathen nations, for that they have their joy in the Lord (TETRAGRAMMATON, signifying Mercy) and their gladness in their God (Elohim, signifying Judgement). Thus does Israel say: "Whether He deals with us in Mercy or in Judgement we rejoice and are glad in Him." For these two attributes belong to His essential Being, as indicated by the words, "He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation (*yeshua*)", namely with the garments consisting of colours in which one can have a perception, a beholding, of Him (*shaah*=to look). He says: "He who would behold Me must behold My colours (the attributes of Mercy and Justice)." And these two colours are indicated by the words, "as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels". When these

two colours are united their glory is such that all are aflame to behold their beauty.' R. Jose said that two kinds of joy are referred to in the words, "I greatly rejoice in the Lord", and one in the words, "my soul is joyful in my God". Said R. Judah: 'In each there is joy upon joy, but the joy which the Holy One shall vouchsafe unto Israel in the future will excel them all: "And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads; they shall obtain joy and gladness" (Isa. xxxv, 10). "They shall return"; "they shall come with songs"; "everlasting joy upon their heads"; "they shall obtain joy and gladness"-the fourfold glad tidings corresponding to the four exiles of Israel among the nations (Egyptian, Assyrian, Babylonian, Roman). Therefore: "Ye shall say in that day, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the peoples" (Isa. XII, 4).' [Tr. Note: 91a-93b belong to the Sitre Torah and the Ray'a Mehemna, and are too allusive to be made readily intelligible in a translation.] [Note: In connection with the previous note, see the "Raya Mehemna" menu choices for the Hebrew Zohar submenu. Look for pages 91b-93a. Also note the Hebrew text for these pages in the main Zohar volume.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 91a

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 91b

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 92a

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 92b

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 93a

[Note: The Hebrew text is not translated as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 93b

[Note: The first 38 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation as explained in the Translator's note on page 90b] The Ten Words contain the essence of all the commandments, the essence of all celestial and terrestrial mysteries, the essence of the Ten Words of Creation. They were engraved on tables of stone, and all the hidden things were seen by the eyes and perceived by the minds of all Israel, everything being made clear to them. At that hour all the mysteries of the Torah, all the hidden things of heaven and earth, were unfolded before them and revealed to their eyes, for they

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 94a

saw eye to eye the splendour of the glory of their Lord. Never before, since the Holy One created the world, had such a revelation of the Divine Glory taken place. Even the crossing of the Red Sea, where, as has been said, even a simple maid-servant saw more of the Divine than the prophet Ezekiel, was not so wonderful as this. For on this day all the earthly dross was removed from them and purged away, and their bodies became as lucent as the angels above when they are clothed in radiant garments for the accomplishment of their Master's errands; in which garments they penetrate fire without fear, as we read concerning the angel who appeared to Manoah (Jud. XIII, 20). And when all the fleshly impurity was removed from the Israelites their bodies became, as we have said, lucent as stars and their souls were as resplendent as the firmament, to receive the light. Such was the state of the Israelites when they beheld the glory of their Lord. It was not thus at the Red Sea, when the filth had not as yet been removed from them. There, at Mount Sinai, even the embryos in their mothers' wombs had some perception of their Lord's glory, and everyone received according to his grade of perception. On that day the Holy One, blessed be He, rejoiced more than on any previous day since He had created the world, for Creation had no proper basis before Israel received the Torah, as is implied in the words: "But for my covenant with day and night, I had not appointed the ordinances of heaven and earth" (Jer. XXXIII, 25). But when once Israel had received the Torah on Mount Sinai the world was duly and completely established, and heaven and earth received a proper foundation, and the glory of the Holy One was made known both above and below, and He was exalted over all. Concerning that day it is written: "The Lord is King, he hath put on glorious apparel; he hath put on his apparel, and girded himself with strength" (Ps. XCIII, 1). "Strength" signifies the Torah, as it is written: "The Lord giveth strength to his people; he blesseth his people with peace" (Ibid. XIX, 11). Blessed be the Lord for ever. Amen and Amen.

MISHPATIM

AND THESE ARE THE JUDGEMENTS WHICH THOU SHALT SET BEFORE THEM. R. Simeon here introduced the subject of transmigration of souls, saying: 'Onkelos translates the above words as follows: "These are the judgements which thou shalt order before them". In other words, "These are the orders of the metempsychosis; the judgements of the souls, by which each of them receives its appropriate punishment." Associates, the time is now arrived to reveal diverse hidden and secret mysteries in regard to the transmigration of souls. IF THOU BUY AN HEBREW SERVANT, SIX YEARS HE SHALL SERVE. When a soul is doomed to undergo transmigration, should it be one which has emanated from the side of the Servant, Metatron, who represents in himself six aspects, then the successive revolutions of that soul will not be more than six years (i.e. times) until it shall have completed the six stages which lead back to the region from whence it came. But if the soul has emanated from the sphere of the Shekinah Herself, who is symbolized by the number seven, it "shall go forth free", because its owner is righteous, and is not subjected to labour or servitude.' Now it chanced that while Rabbi Simeon spake these things

a certain "ancient one" came down to his side and said: 'If that be so, Master, where is the additional delight of the soul that emanates therefrom, indicated by the words, "In it thou shalt not do any work, thou nor thy son nor thy daughter nor thy manservant, etc." (Ex. xx, 10)?, Rabbi Simeon replied: 'O venerable companion! Should a man of thy learning ask this? This verse assuredly speaks of the soul of the Righteous One, teaching us that even though she may have to undergo transmigration in any of these, even in a manservant or maidservant or in any animal, yet "in it thou shalt do no manner of work", or, what amounts to the same thing, "thou shalt not make him serve as a bondman". But, old man, the difficulty is this. Seeing that Sabbath is an only daughter, and that she is the mate of the Righteous One, what is meant by the words in our text, "if he take him another wife"? He replied: 'These words refer to the weekdays.' 'What do these symbolize?' he asked. 'These', he said, 'are the bondmaid who is the body of the only daughter. Observe this. There is a soul which is called handmaid, and there is also a soul which is called the daughter of the king. Now as for the soul which is doomed to undergo transmigration, if she is the daughter of the Holy One, blessed be He, we cannot suppose that she is sold to an alien body that is under the domination of the evil spirit emanating from the side of Samael, since it is written: "I am the Lord, that is my name, and my glory will I not give to another" (Isa. XLII, 8). Nor is it to be thought that the body which harbours the daughter of the king shall be sold into the power of earthly crowns of defilement. Against this the Scripture says: "And the land shall not be sold in perpetuity" (Lev. xxv, 23). Which is the body of the King's daughter? Metatron; and this same body is identical with the handmaid of the Shekinah. Nevertheless, the soul that is the King's daughter is held prisoner therein, having to undergo transmigration. 'According to another interpretation, "man" here signifies the Holy One, blessed be He; "his daughter" denoting the Community of Israel, who emanates from the sphere of the "Only Daughter". The verse therefore indicates that when God delivers His people from the nations of the world "she shall not go out" as the menservants do, namely, as the children of Israel did when they left Egypt in haste. For at that time they were in the grade of "servants", represented by Metatron, who is but the bearer of the Shekinah; but in the days of the Messiah they shall "not go out with haste, nor go by flight" (Isa. LII, 12) from their captivity. See, now. When a human being is born into the world he is given a soul (nephesh) from the primordial "animal" sphere, the sphere of purity, the sphere of those who are designated "Holy Wheels"-namely, the supernal order of angels. If he is more fortunate he will be endowed with a spirit (ruah) which appertains to the sphere of the Holy Hayoth. Should he possess still greater potential merit he is given a soul (neshamah) from the region of the Throne. These three grades of personality are the "maidservant", the "manservant", and the "bondwoman" of the King's daughter. And if the newly created being deserves still more, the soul which is put into his bodily form derives through a process of emanation (aziluth) from the sphere of the "Only Daughter", and is itself called "the King's daughter". If his merit is still greater he will be endowed with a spirit

(ruah), deriving through emanation from the sphere of the "Central Pillar", and its owner is then called "The son of the Holy One", as it is written: "Sons are ye to the Lord your God" (Deut. XIV, 1). Should he be of even greater worth he is given a soul (neshamah) from the sphere of Father and Mother, concerning which it is written: "And he breathed into his nostrils the breath (nishmath) of life" (Gen. II, 7). What does "life" signify? It signifies the Divine Name YH; and therefore it is written of such souls: "Let the whole soul (all souls) praise KaH" (Ps. CL, 6). But if he should acquire still greater merit, the Holy Name TETRAGRAMMATON is granted to him in its fulness-the letters Yod, He, Vau, He, representing Man in the sphere of the supernal Aziluth, and he is said to be "in the likeness of his Lord", and in him the words, "Have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing" (Gen. I, 28), are properly fulfilled: for his dominion is indeed over all the firmaments and over all the Wheels and Seraphim and Living Beings (Hayoth) and over all the hosts above and below. It is therefore concerning one who has attained to the sphere of the "Only Daughter" and has derived his soul from thence that it says, "She shall not go out as the menservants do".' R. Hiya and R. Jose met one night at the tower of Tyrus, and greatly enjoyed one another's company. Said R. Jose: 'How glad am I to behold the countenance of the Shekinah! For during the whole of my journey here I was molested by the chatter of an old carrier who pestered me with all sorts of foolish questions;

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 95a

for example, "Which serpent is it that flies in the air whilst an ant lies undisturbed between its teeth? What is it that begins in union and ends in separation? Which eagle is it whose nest is in a tree that does not yet exist, and whose young ones are plundered by creatures who have not yet been created, and in a place which is not? What are those which when they ascend descend, and when they descend ascend? And what is it two of which are one and one of which is three? And who is the beautiful virgin who has no eyes and whose body is concealed and yet revealed-revealed in the morning and concealed during the day, and who is adorned with ornaments which do not exist?" So he went on plaguing me the whole of the way. But now I shall have peace and quiet, and we can devote ourselves to discussing the Torah instead of wasting time in empty talk.' Said R. Hiya: 'Dost thou know anything of the old man?' R. Jose replied: 'I only know that there is nothing in him; for if there were, he would have expounded some text of Scripture, and the time spent on the road would not have been profitless.' 'Is the old man in this house?' asked R. Hiya. 'For sometimes it happens that in vessels that seem empty grains of gold can be discovered.' 'Yes,' replied R. Jose, 'he is here, preparing fodder for his donkey.' So they called the carrier and he came to them. The first thing the old man said was: 'Now the two have become three, and the three one!' Said R. Jose: 'Did I not tell thee that he only talks nonsense?' The old man seated himself and said: 'Sirs, it is only recently that I have become a carrier. I have a young son whom I send to school, and whom I wish to bring up in the study of the Torah; so whenever I see a scholar on my way I follow

him in the hope of picking up some new idea in connection with the Torah; but to-day I have heard nothing new.' Said R. Jose: 'Of all the things I heard you say, one specially surprised me, because it showed exceptional folly in a man of your years, or else you did not know what you were saying.' Said the old man: 'What do you refer to?' Said R. Jose: 'That about the beautiful virgin and so forth.' Then the old man began thus: '“The Lord is on my side, I am not afraid; what can men do unto me?... It is better to trust in the Lord than to put any confidence in princes” (Ps. CXVIII, 6, 9). How good, how lovely, how precious, how supernal are the words of the Torah. Shall I tell them in the presence of scholars from whom so far I have not heard even one word of enlightenment? However, I feel impelled to speak, and surely there is no need to be shy in speaking of things spiritual to anyone, whether scholars or no.' The old man then drew his cloak round him, opened his mouth, and said: 'It is written: “If a priest's daughter be married unto a stranger, she may not eat of an offering of holy things” (Lev. XXII, 12). Now this verse is followed by another verse: “But if the priest's daughter be a widow, or divorced, and have no child, and is returned unto her father's house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's meat, but there shall no stranger eat thereof” (Ibid. 18). These verses are plain enough in the literal sense, but the words of the Torah have also an esoteric significance, and every word therein contains hidden seeds of wisdom, comprehensible only to the wise who are familiar with the ways of the Torah. For, truly, the words of the Torah are not mere dreams. And even dreams have to be interpreted according to certain rules; how much more, then, is it necessary that the words of the Torah, the delight of the Holy King, be explained in accordance with the right way! And “the ways of the Lord are upright” (Hos. IV, 10). Now, “the priest's daughter” is the superior soul, the daughter of our father Abraham, the first of proselytes, who drew this soul from a supernal region.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 95b

And “a priest's daughter married unto a stranger” refers to the holy soul which emanates from a supernal region and enters into the hidden part of the Tree of Life. And when the breath of the supernal Priest has breathed souls into that Tree, those souls fly away from there and enter a certain treasure-house. Woe unto the world that knows not how to guard itself! Men draw down the soul along with their evil inclination, which is “the stranger”, and this “priest's daughter”, the soul, flies down to earth and finds her edifice in a “stranger”; and because it is the will of her Master, she enters there and bears the yoke, and cannot assert herself or become perfected in this world. So when she leaves this world she “may eat of an offering of holy things”, like those souls which have perfected themselves in this world. There is still another significance to this verse: it is a great humiliation for the holy soul to enter into a “stranger”, namely into a proselyte, for then she has to fly from Paradise into a habitation builded from an uncircumcised and unclean source. There is here, however, a still deeper mystery. Near to the pillar which supports the wheels where the souls are blown in there are two weighing scales, one at each side: these are the “weights of righteousness” and “weights of

deception” which never cease to move, and souls rise and fall thereon, and appear and disappear. There are souls which are violently captured and oppressed when “man ruleth over man to his own hurt” (Eccl. VIII, 9). For this world is entirely directed by the “tree of knowledge of good and evil”, and when human beings walk in the way of righteousness the scales are weighted on the side of good, and when they walk in the evil way they incline towards the evil side. And all souls found then on the scales are violently caught by the evil side. But this is “to its own hurt”; for these souls tread down and destroy all that they find on the evil side, just as the Philistines captured the holy Ark to their own hurt. And what becomes of these souls? In ancient books it is written that some of them become the souls of pious Gentiles and scholarly bastards of Jewish origin, who, because of their learning, are of a higher merit than even a high priest who has no divine knowledge, although by virtue of his office he enters into the Holy of Holies.' The old man here stopped and wept for a moment. The two companions were astonished but said nothing, and after a while he continued to speak on the following verse: IF SHE (the maidservant) PLEASE NOT HER MASTER, WHO HATH BETROTHED HER TO HIMSELF, THEN SHALL HE LET HER BE REDEEMED; BUT TO SELL HER TO A STRANGE NATION, HE SHALL HAVE NO POWER (V. 8). 'This passage', said he, 'continues the inner meaning of the “man who sells his daughter as a maidservant”. It is written: “Who would not fear thee, O king of the nations? For it becometh thee, as among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms, there is none like unto thee” (Jer. x, 7). How many people misunderstand this verse! They repeat the words, but the sense escapes them. Is the Holy One, blessed be He, the “King of the nations”? Is He not rather the King of Israel? Is it not written: “When the Most High divided to the nations their inheritance, when he separated the sons of men, he set the bounds of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel. For the Lord's portion is his people” (Deut. XXXII, 8, 9), wherefore He is called the “King of Israel”? If the prophet here called God “King of the nations”, he would be praising them more than they praise themselves, for they only claim to be in the charge of His ministers and servitors. The last part of the verse also contradicts this idea, for it says: “As among all the wise men of the nations... there is none like unto thee.” Seeing that the other nations have so much to boast of, it is surprising that with this verse they do not ascend to the very heaven.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 96a

But in truth the Holy One, blessed be He, has blinded their eyes, and “all nations before him are as nothing, and they are counted to him less than nothing and vanity” (Isa. XL, 17). This is the real truth of the matter in their regard.' Said R. Hiya: 'And yet it is written: “God reigneth over the nations”!' The old man replied: 'I see that thou hast been behind their wall, and hast come forward to support them with this verse. I ought first to deal with my own difficulty; but since I have found thee in the way, I will first remove thee, and then go on to remove all other obstacles. See, now. All the Names of the Holy One, blessed be He, and all subsidiary Names, ramify in different directions and are encircled

in each other, as it were, and yet branch out into various paths. Only one aspect is not so scattered: and that is the one definite and particular Name, which is the heritage of the one particular people, namely, the Name TETRAGRAMMATON; for it is written: "For the portion of TETRAGRAMMATON is His people"; "And ye who cleave to TETRAGRAMMATON" (Deut. XXXII, 9, IV, 4), which signifies those that cleave to this very Name itself. Thus it is seen that this Name TETRAGRAMMATON belongs only to Israel. Above all the other names is one which spreads and separates itself towards many diverse ways and paths, to wit, Elohim. This name has been transmitted to the beings of this lower world, and has been shared among the Chieftains and ministering angels who guide other nations. Hence we read: "And Elohim came to Balaam by night" (Num. XXII, 20); "And Elohim came to Abimelech in the dream of the night" (Gen. xx, 3); and the same is true of all the principalities and powers appointed over the nations--all are included in this Name, yea, even their objects of worship find a place therein; and so it is this name and aspect of the Divinity which reigns over the nations, but not the peculiar Name, for in that they have no part, since it reigns over Israel only: the one nation, the holy nation. This, however, does not mean that the words, "Who would not fear thee, O King of the nations", are to be interpreted in this sense, namely, that He is the King of the nations in His attribute of Elohim, representing severity and justice; for, as I have pointed out, this Name signifies even the objects of pagan worship. Since, then, the wall on which you were leaning has been shaken, use a little subtlety to get to the true meaning of the words. This is: "Who is the king of the nations that would not fear thee?" The inversion of the order is similar to that found in the verse: "Praise ye the Lord. Praise ye servants of the Lord" (Ps. CXIII, 1), which does not mean that the servants of the Lord shall be praised, but is to be read as "Servants of the Lord, praise ye the Lord." ' The two companions rejoiced and wept, but said nothing. The old man also wept, even as he had done before. Then he went on: 'It is written: "And she (Sarah) said unto Abraham, Cast out the bondwoman and her son" (Gen. XXI, 10), which has been interpreted by the scholars to signify that Sarah desired to cleanse her house from idolatry, and that therefore Abraham was told: "In all that Sarah hath said unto thee, hearken unto her voice" (Ibid. v, 12). Now here we read, "And if a man sell his daughter to be a maidservant, she shall go out as the menservants do", which, being interpreted, means: When the soul is made to undergo transmigration because of the evil works of this world, when she is "sold" to be a "maidservant"--that is, delivered into the hands of the impure principle through the evil revolution of the wheel, so that she is wrenched violently away from the scale of souls -when her time thus comes to "go out", she shall not go out as the menservants do. And what sort of souls are these which are so violently despoiled and taken away? There is a mystery behind this. They are the souls of infants still at the breast. The Holy One, seeing that should they continue in this world they would lose their sweet savour, their aroma of purity, and, as it were, turn sour like vinegar, gathers them in their infancy while their savour is still sweet, and allows them to be wrenched away by that "maidservant", namely Lilith,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 96b

who, when they have been delivered into her power, gloatingly carries them away to other regions. Do not imagine that had they not been so removed they could have done any good in the world. For therefore it is written, "If she (the soul) pleases not her master", that is, the man in whom it is lodged will cause it to turn sour in course of time. Such a one is wrenched away, but no other. Yet, on the other hand, it does not mean that the Holy One has pre-ordained such a soul to be under the domination of impurity from the very day of her creation. Not at all! For in the revolution of the wheel, when the soul gives forth a good savour, "shall he let her be redeemed", namely, the Holy One will redeem her from her sore bondage and raise her unto the highest heights to be with Him. And it should not be imagined that because she had been once purloined by the impure power the Holy One will condemn her perpetually to enter into the bodies of pious Gentiles or scholarly bastards. No! "To sell her into a strange nation, he shall have no power." She will re- enter into the body of an Israelite and not into a stranger. And when she shall be redeemed from the bondage of the "wheel of impurity", "she shall not go out as the menservants do", but receive her crown with uplifted head. Nor is one to imagine that the "side of impurity" has put the soul in the child: for the impure power only snatched, as it were, at that soul and played with it until it entered into the body of that child. But the impure power visits the child occasionally and longs to possess his body. And after some time the Holy One takes into His own guardianship the soul, and the evil power attains mastery over the body. But eventually body and soul become the possession of the Holy One (in the Resurrection). ' "She shall not go out as the menservants do." What does this mean? When the soul emerges from the scales, and the side of righteousness rejoices, the Holy One, blessed be He, stamps upon her the impress of a seal; and He likewise spreads about her His costly garment--namely the Holy Name Elohah. This is indicated by the words in the text, "be-bigdo bah" (when his garment is upon her, v. 8), for they signify the costly garment (beged) of the King. Therewith she is guarded and so cannot be delivered to a "strange nation", but only to Israel. Concerning this it is written: "He guards me like the days of Eloah" (Job. XXIX, 2). It is also of this mystery that we read here: "To sell her unto a strange nation he shall have no power, seeing he hath put his garment upon her." As long as this costly garment of the King adorns her, what power can the evil side have over her? Observe this. All men are in the power of the Holy King, and all have their allotted time in this world; but for this one there is no appointed time, and therefore it mocks at the evil spirits and gloats over them. Many admonitions to mankind are contained in these verses, and truly much good and excellent advice is to be found in all the words of the Torah, for they are all true and lead to further truth and are comprehended as such by the wise who know that path and walk therein. When the Holy One, blessed be He, came to create the world, it pleased Him to form all the souls which were destined to be allotted to the children of men, and each was shaped before him in the very outline of the body she was afterwards to inhabit. He examined each one, and saw that some of them would corrupt their ways in

the world. When the time of each was arrived, the Holy One summoned it, saying: "Go, descend into such and such a place, into such and such a body." But oftentimes it chanced that the soul would reply, "Lord of the world, I am satisfied to be here in this world, and desire not to leave it for some other place where I shall be enslaved and become soiled." Then would the Holy One respond: "From the very day of thy creation thou hast had no other destiny than to go into that world." At this the soul, seeing that it must obey, would descend against its will and enter into this world. The Torah, which counsels the whole world in the ways of truth, observed this, and proclaimed to mankind: "Behold, how the Holy One has pity upon you! He has sold to you for nothing His costly pearl, for you to use in this world, namely the holy soul." "If a man sell his daughter to be a maidservant"-that is, when the Holy One delivers His daughter, the holy soul, to be a maidservant, enslaved in bondage unto you,.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 97a

I adjure you, when her time comes, let her "not go out as the menservants do", polluted by sins, but free, illumined, and pure, in order that her Master may be able to find joy in her, and to give her goodly reward in the splendours of Paradise, as it is written: "And he shall satisfy thy soul with brightness (zahzahoths lit. places lit by the sun)" (Isa. LVIII, 11); namely, when she shall ascend again thence, bright and pure. But should she "not please her Master", being polluted with sin, then woe to the body which has lost its soul for ever! For when the souls ascend from this world in a bright and pure condition, they are entered into the King's archives, each one by name; and He says: "This is the soul of such a one: she belongs to the body which she left"; as it is written: "Who hath betrothed her to himself." But "if she pleased not her Master", that is, if she be polluted by sin and guilt, He does not again appoint that same body for her, and so she loses it for ever, unless the person should be roused to repentance, for then "shall she be redeemed"-as it is written: "He will deliver his soul from going into the pit" (Job XXXIII, 28); which signifies that man is advised to redeem his own soul by repentance and amendment. In fact, the words "he shall redeem her" have a double significance: they point to man's own redemption of his soul by repentance, followed by the redemption from Gehenna effected by the Holy One. "To sell her unto a strange nation he shall have no power." Who is this "strange nation"? Hapless is the soul when she leaves this world after being attached to a man who has turned away from the right path. She desires to ascend to the heights, in the midst of the holy hosts; for holy hosts stand along the way to Paradise, and "strange" hosts line the other way, to Gehenna. If, then, the soul is worthy and wears the precious protecting garment, multitudes of holy hosts stand ready to join her and accompany her to Paradise. But if she hath not that garment, the "strange" hosts compel her to take the path which leads to Gehenna. Angels of destruction and confusion are they, who will gladly take their revenge on her. But "He shall have no power to sell her unto a strange nation", if "His garment is upon her", by which the Holy One guards her from the "strange nations" of the angels of destruction and despoilment. 'AND IF HE HAVE

BETROTHED HER UNTO HIS SON, HE SHALL ACT TOWARDS HER AFTER THE MANNER OF DAUGHTERS. How careful should a man be not to walk in a crooked way in this world! For if he shall have proved himself worthy in this world, having guarded his soul with all care, then the Holy One, blessed be He, will be well pleased with him, and will praise him daily to His celestial Family, saying: "Behold the holy son whom I have in that lower world! See what acts he performed, how upright are his ways." And when such a soul leaves this world, pure, bright, and unsullied, the Holy One illumines her daily with innumerable radiances and proclaims concerning her: "This is the soul of my son so-and-so: let her be kept for the body which she has left." This is the significance of the words: "And if he have betrothed her unto his son, he shall act towards her after the manner of daughters." What is the meaning of these words, "after the manner of daughters"? This is a secret entrusted to the keeping of the wise alone, and here is the substance thereof. In the midst of a mighty rock, a most recondite firmament, there is set a Palace which is called the Palace of Love. This is the region wherein the treasures of the King are stored, and all His love-kisses are there. All souls beloved of the Holy One enter into that Palace. And when the King Himself appears, "Jacob kisses Rachel" (Gen. XXIX, 11), that is, the Lord discovers each holy soul, and takes each in turn up unto Himself, fondling and caressing her, "acting towards her after the manner of daughters", even as a father treats his beloved daughter, fondling and caressing her, and giving her presents. "Ear hath not heard, nor eye seen... what he doeth to him who waiteth for him" (Isa. LXIV, 3): as that "daughter", the soul, has done her work in this world, so will the Holy One "do" His work on her in the world to come.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 97b

Then the old man prostrated himself in prayer, wept again, and continued: 'IF HE TAKE HIM ANOTHER ONE, HER FOOD, HER RAIMENT, AND HER CONJUGAL COHABITATION SHALL HE NOT DIMINISH. What does it mean by saying, "If he take him another one"? Does it mean that the Holy One will give another soul in this world to the righteous, and not the same one which already had fulfilled in this world the will of her Master? Surely not: for what good tidings would that be for the righteous? However, it is written: "Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it" (Eccl. XII, 7). Now this verse the scholars have applied to the destruction of the Temple: the dust [Tr. Note: The klifah, or evil spirit.] thereof did indeed return upon the earth, so that it reverted to the state in which it was when "the Canaanite was there" (Gen. XII, 6), and the spirit, namely the Shekinah, when she saw that her ten stages were completed and yet Israel did not repent, [Tr. Note: According to a tradition, the Shekinah departed from the Sanctuary at the time of the Exile in ten stages.] returned unto God, and since then the "other side" has had dominion over the Holy Land. All this has been established by the members of the Fellowship. Now the spirit (ruah) of a righteous man is adorned with its own form in the lower Paradise; and on sabbaths, festivals, and new-moons the spirits are

crowned with new crowns, and ascend to the higher realms of Heaven. And as the Holy One deals with the supernal holy soul (neshamah) in the upper Paradise, so also He deals with this spirit in the lower Paradise: He brings it up before Him and says, "This spirit belongs to such and such a body." Then He crowns it with many crowns and finds His joy therein. This, however, does not mean that this occupation with the spirit interferes with the joy which the Holy One gives to the soul. "If he take him another one, her food, her raiment, and her conjugal cohabitation shall he not diminish." These are the three supreme Names which "no eye hath seen, apart from thee, O God" (Isa. LXIV, 8), all of whom are in the world to come and issue forth from thence. One is designated "sheerah" (her food), namely, the emanation of the radiance, the source of which is undiscoverable. It is the food which nourishes all and is called TETRAGRAMMATON with the vowel points of Elohim. The second is called "her raiment": the King's garment which is spread over the soul and protects her always, another emanation of light. And what does the "conjugal cohabitation" stand for? This is the abundance of light and life of the world to come wherein is all bliss. It is TETRAGRAMMATON Zebaoth who shines forth with all the hidden lights of the Tree of Life, and wherein is concealed the mystery of conjugal relations and whence it emanates. These three manifestations of the Divine Grace shall "not be diminished" to the soul, if she be worthy; but if she be not so, then she will not be crowned with any of them: "If he do not these three unto her"-because of the soul's unworthiness-then shall she go out free without money (keseph)" (V. 11). That is to say, the soul is then pushed away without yearning (kisupha) for union with the supernal light, and without the joy of possessing it. 'So far we have dealt with the good counsel which the Torah gives to the children of men: the Torah, which abounds in good counsel. But now let us return to our former subject, namely to the supernal garment which the Holy One spreads over the soul as an armour of protection so that she should not be delivered to a "strange nation". "And if he hath betrothed her unto his son, he shall act towards her according to the rights of daughters." 'Associates,' said the old man, 'When ye shall draw nigh unto that rock upon which the whole world is sustained (R. Simeon), then shall ye tell him to remember the day of snow whereon beans were sown of fifty-two kinds and colours. [Tr. Note: Alluding to a discussion on the word ben (understanding), the numerical value of which is fifty-two.] and having recalled that day to his mind, recall also the fact that on it we read the above verse: which, when ye have awakened in him the memory thereof, he will then unravel for you himself.' But the companions demurred to this, saying: 'Nay, we pray thee: he who began must himself continue!' Said he: 'So be it then! For I know that ye are wise and righteous scholars, worthy to be informed of all the mysteries which have been entrusted to the keeping of the faithful. I shall indeed interpret; but when ye remind him by that sign and token which I have given you, he will duly supplement and complete my words. We must now explain who is he that is called "son" to the Holy One, blessed be He. Come and see.. A boy.

who has reached the age of thirteen becomes a son of the Community of Israel and remains so until he is twenty. When he is twenty, if he be worthy he becomes a son of the Holy One, one of those of whom it is written, "Sons are ye to the Lord your God" (Deut. XIV, 1). Thus, when David had reached his thirteenth year it was said concerning him: "The Lord said unto me, My son art thou, to-day have I begotten thee" (Ps. II, 7). What does this mean? It signifies that up till that time he was not in the state of sonship, and the supernal soul did not rest upon him, because he was in the years of immaturity ('orlah). But as soon as he reached the age when he became, being worthy, a son of the Community of Israel, he was, as it were, begotten anew: "To-day have I begotten thee"-I and not the "other side" as hitherto: I alone. And when Solomon was twenty, what do we read concerning him? "I was a son of my father" (Prov. IV, 3), "father" referring to the Heavenly Father. Thus the words, "And if he have betrothed her unto his son" (in their mystical sense) refer to the time after the age of thirteen when a man emerges from the sphere of impurity to which he had been assigned. Then "he shall act towards her according to the rights of daughters". What is this? We have been taught that every day the Holy One, blessed be He, gazed steadfastly down from the celestial heights upon the young boy who is still held in the power of the unclean spirit ('orlah), noting how he gradually liberates himself therefrom: first by attending school, where he begins to weaken it, and then by going to the synagogue, where he masters it still further. What does the Holy One then do to the soul of such a one? He brings her into His Treasure-house, and bestows upon her rich, glorious and supernal gifts, and adorns her with noble ornaments until the time when the boy is thirteen years and upward, when He brings her under the bridal canopy. "And if he take him another".... What do these words signify? Ah, they indeed contain a mystery of mysteries, such as is entrusted only to the wisest of the wise! One thing must be mentioned as a preliminary. On the Sabbath day, when the day is being sanctified, myriads of new souls emerge from the Tree of Life, and these are breathed into the denizens of earth and enter into them and remain in them during the whole of the Sabbath, and at the close of the Sabbath all these souls ascend once more to the regions of light, there to crown themselves with holy crowns of supernal brightness and splendour. And as at man's birth the Holy One provides him with a soul, so also does He provide him with this "other" soul specially for the Sabbath: at the same time not "diminishing" the food, raiment, etc., from his week-day soul.' Having arrived at this point in his exposition, the old man wept again and then exclaimed, addressing himself: 'Old man, old man! How long, how toilsomely hast thou laboured after the words of wisdom, that thou mightest grasp these holy mysteries; and now thou pourest them all out in a moment! And yet how was it possible for thee to hoard these words and not express them, seeing that the Scripture tells us, "Withhold not good from the owners thereof, when it is in the power of thine hand to do it" (Prov. III, 27)? Verily, wherever the truths of the Torah are expounded, the Holy One and the Community of Israel (the Shekinah) are present, "the owners" of the "good" side of the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, who crown themselves

with all the words of goodness and blessing which they hear spoken on earth. Old man, old man! Art thou, then, uncertain whether the Holy One and the Shekinah are present here, and whether those to whom thou speakest are worthy to hear these mysteries? Fear not! Hast thou not plunged unafraid into the midst of mighty battles, and art now afeared? Nay, nay, be not so: rather say what thou hast to say to the very end, since the Holy One and the Community of Israel are indeed here, for were it not so thou wouldst not have met with these men, nor even begun thy present discourse. So speak on, old man, speak on and have no fear! He then commenced with the text: "O Lord my God, thou art very great; thou art clothed with majesty and beauty; who coverest thyself with light as with a garment; who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain; who layeth the beams of his chambers in the waters; who maketh the clouds his chariots; who walketh upon the wings of the wind; who maketh his angels spirits, his ministers a flaming fire" (Ps. CIV, 1-3). The words "O Lord my God," he said, 'signify the primary hypostasis (lit. beginning of faith), the emergence of the Thought [Tr. Note: Hokmah.] and the Future world, [Tr. Note: Binah.] an absolute unity without division. "Thou art great" refers to the beginning of actual creation, the first of the six primordial Days, the Right Side. The "very" symbolizes the Left Side. "Thou art clothed with majesty and beauty" signifies the two branches of the willows, [Tr. Note: Nezah and Hod.] of which more anon. When the Psalmist came to the Tree of Life [Tr. Note: Tifereth.] it hid itself and would not enter the series on account of that "very", to wit the "Left Side" of all the lower branches, including a certain bitter branch. [Tr. Note: Samael.] On account of this the Tree of Life hid itself and was loth to be included in the sum of these things until the Psalmist returned to the subject and declared God's praise in another fashion, saying: "Who coverest thyself with light as with a garment" to wit, with the light.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 98b

of the first day, and then, "Who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain", thus including the Left Side in the Right, so as to shine under the rubric of "heaven", while the "very" was discarded. Then the verse proceeds: "Who layeth the beams of his chambers in the waters": here we have the emergence in joy of the Tree of Life, the "River going out of Eden", with the two willow shoots, referred to in the words "upper chambers", rooted in its waters, so that it became "as a tree planted by the waters, that spreadeth out her roots by the river" (Jer. XVII, 8). This is also the allusion contained in the words: "The river, the channels thereof shall make glad the city of God" (Ps. XLVI, 8). What are these channels? They are the roots of the willows, which here are called "upper chambers". These and the roots and the channels—all are rooted in those waters of that mysterious river. "The clouds his chariots" in the next verse refers to Michael and Gabriel; "Who walketh upon the wings of the wind" to Raphael, who comes to give healing to the world. From that point on "he maketh his angels spirits, his ministers a flaming fire." Old man, old man! As thou art aware of all these things, fear not, but speak out boldly, and let the words of thy mouth spread light! The two friends rejoiced and listened in ecstasy and delight to

the holy words. Said the old man: 'O ancient, O ancient, upon what a task hast thou entered! Thou hast plunged into the great sea, and now perforce must swim on till thou shalt have gained the farther shore! On, then! "And if he take him another...." How many ancient mysteries never revealed before, regarding transmigration are indicated here! All the matters of which I am about to speak are perfect truth not deviating by one hair's-breadth from the path of truth. Now, in the first place I must remark that the souls of proselytes fly forth from Paradise in a very recondite manner. When the souls which proselytes have obtained from Paradise pass away from this world, to where do they return? According to the traditional law, he who first seizes the possessions of a proselyte at the time of the latter's death becomes their rightful owner. In the same way, all the holy supernal souls which the Holy One has appointed for those that are below go out at certain times and seasons from their bodily owners and ascend to their first home in order to enjoy the delights of Paradise. There they encounter the souls of proselytes, and whichever of them seizes on one claims it as its own. Each soul then clothes herself with that proselyte soul which she has claimed, and stands thus in Paradise, for there the souls must all be clothed. Not that they thereby forfeit any of the bliss which they enjoyed before, since it says "if he take unto him another, her food, etc." Still, when they ascend into the higher Paradise they remove these garments and are clothed only in their own radiance, for there no garb is worn.' Then the old man wept again as he had done before, and said to himself: 'Old man, old man, thou hast indeed reason to weep and to shed tears over every word; but the Holy One and His Holy Shekinah well know that what I say is said with all sincerity and devoutness, because they are the real source of every word uttered by me, and are crowned by it. All the holy souls which come down to this world to take up each its appropriate place in a human body array themselves with the souls of proselytes which they have appropriated, as we have explained; and they enter into the bodies of the holy seed of Israel wearing this garment to be served therewith in this world. When these garments draw to themselves the good things of this world these holy souls regale themselves with the aroma which they gather from the garments. Now, there is no work of the Holy One so recondite but he has recorded it in the Torah; and the Torah reveals it for an instant and then straightway clothes it with another garment, so that it is hidden there and does not show itself. But the wise, whose wisdom makes them full of eyes, pierce through the garment to the very essence of the word that is hidden thereby. And when the word is momentarily revealed in that first instant of which we have spoken, those whose eyes are wise can see it, though it is so soon hidden again. In how many places does the Holy One insist that the holy seed should deal tenderly with the stranger, the proselyte! In the course of such passages a secret emerges from its sheath.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 99a

and as soon as it has been revealed returns thereto and once more conceals itself therein. That is to say, after repeating many times its injunctions concerning the treatment of the proselyte, the Scripture

suddenly lays bare its hidden meaning by declaring: "For ye know the soul of the stranger" (i.e. proselyte, Ex. XXIII, 9). After this, however, the word retires again into its sheath, covers itself up, and hides itself again by adding: "For ye were strangers in the land of Egypt", imagining that because it covered itself up immediately, no one noticed it, to wit, this "soul" of the proselyte. Then the old man expounded in connection with the subject of the soul and her garment the words: "And Moses went into the midst of the cloud and got him up into the mount" (Ex. XXIV, 18). 'Now what does the cloud signify?' he asked, and answered his own question, saying: 'There is a reference here to the words: "I set my bow in the cloud": namely, the rainbow, in reference to which we have learnt that it removed, as it were, its outer garment and gave it to Moses, who went up to the mountain with it and saw through it all the sights with which he was feasted there.' When the ancient one had reached this point he paused, and the two rabbis prostrated themselves before him, wept and said: 'Had we come into this world only in order to hear these thy words from thy mouth it were sufficient.' Said he: 'Associates, I did not begin to speak to you merely in order to tell you what I have told up till now, for, surely, an old man like myself would not limit himself to one saying, making a noise like a single coin in a jug. How many human beings live in confusion of mind, beholding not the way of truth whose dwelling is in the Torah, the Torah which calls them day by day to herself in love, but alas, they do not even turn their heads! It is indeed as I have said, that the Torah lets out a word, and emerges for a little from her sheath, and then hides herself again. But she does this only for those who understand and obey her. She is like unto a beautiful and stately damsel, who is hidden in a secluded chamber of a palace and who has a lover of whom no one knows but she. Out of his love for her he constantly passes by her gate, turning his eyes towards all sides to find her. She, knowing that he is always haunting the palace, what does she do? She opens a little door in her hidden palace, discloses for a moment her face to her lover, then swiftly hides it again. None but he notices it; but his heart and soul, and all that is in him are drawn to her, knowing as he does that she has revealed herself to him for a moment because she loves him. It is the same with the Torah, which reveals her hidden secrets only to those who love her. She knows that he who is wise of heart daily haunts the gates of her house. What does she do? She shows her face to him from her palace, making a sign of love to him, and straightway returns to her hiding place again. No one understands her message save he alone, and he is drawn to her with heart and soul and all his being. Thus the Torah reveals herself momentarily in love to her lovers in order to awaken fresh love in them. Now this is the way of the Torah. At first, when she begins to reveal herself to a man, she makes signs to him. Should he understand, well and good, but if not, then she sends for him and calls him "simpleton", saying to her messengers: "Tell that simpleton to come here and converse with me", as it is written: "Whoso is a simpleton let him turn in hither" (Prov. IX, 4). When he comes to her she begins to speak to him, first from behind the curtain which she has spread for him about her words suitable to his mode of understanding, so that he may progress little by little. This is called

"Derasha" (Talmudic casuistry, namely the derivation of the traditional laws and usages from the letter of Scripture). Then she speaks to him from behind a thin veil of a finger mesh, discoursing riddles and parables which go by the name of Haggadah. When at last he is familiar with her she shows herself to him face to face and converses with him concerning all her hidden mysteries and all the mysterious ways which have been secreted in her heart from time immemorial. Then such a man is.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 99b

a true adept in the Torah, a "master of the house", since she has revealed to him all her mysteries, withholding and hiding nothing. She says to him: "Seest thou the sign, the hint, which I gave thee at first, how many mysteries it contains?" He realizes then that nothing may be added to nor taken from the words of the Torah, not even one sign or letter. Therefore men should follow the Torah with might and main in order that they may become her lovers, as has been described. ' "And if he take him another..." How many, and how wondrous, are the cycles of the soul as indicated in these words! Truly, all souls must undergo transmigration; but men do not perceive the ways of the Holy One, how the revolving scale is set up and men are judged every day at all times, and how they are brought before the Tribunal, both before they enter into this world and after they leave it. They perceive not the many transmigrations and the many mysterious works which the Holy One accomplishes with many naked souls, and how many naked spirits roam about in the other world without being able to enter within the veil of the King's Palace. Many are the worlds through which they revolve, and each revolution is wondrous in many hidden ways, but men neither know nor perceive these things! Nor do they know how the souls roll about "like a stone inside a sling" (I Sam. xxv, 29). Now, as we have begun to disclose these mysteries, it is opportune to reveal that all souls (neshamah) emanate from a high and mighty Tree, from that "River which goes out of Eden" (Gen. II, 10), and all spirits (ruah) from another, smaller Tree-the souls from above and the spirits from below-and they unite after the fashion of male and female. And when they (soul and spirit) unite, they shine with a celestial light, and in their union they are designated "Lamp", as it says, "The lamp of the Lord is the soul of man" (Prov. xx, 27), NeR (lamp) being the abbreviation of Neshamah-Ruah (soul-spirit). Soul and spirit, the union of the masculine and the feminine, bring forth light, but if separate they do not give light. The soul wraps herself in the spirit in order to occupy her station in the upper region, in the hidden Palace, as it is written: "For the spirit becomes a covering (ya'toph) before me and the souls which I have made" (Isa. LVII, 1 6). There above, in the Garden, in the Palace, the soul wraps herself in the spirit in manner due. And when the soul descends to the lower Paradise she wraps herself in another (lower) spirit (the soul of the proselyte), concerning which we have spoken above-a spirit which emanates from that lower Paradise and has his abode there. And the soul clothes herself in this world with all these various spirits, and so abides here. Now the spirit which has left this world without procreation and engendering of children undergoes constant

transmigration, finding no rest, and rolling about "like a stone inside a sling" until a "redeemer". [Tr. Note: The levir, or husband's brother. v. Deut. xxv, 8, 9.] comes forward to redeem it and bring it back to the same "vessel" which it formerly used and to which it claved with heart and soul, as to its life's partner, in the union of spirit with spirit. This "redeemer" builds up that spirit again. For the spirit which was left by the deceased still clinging to that vessel has not been lost since nothing is lost in the world but it is still there and seeks to return to its basis; and so the "redeemer" brings it and builds it up again in its place, and it becomes a new creation, a new spirit in a new body. It may be said, "the spirit becomes the same as what it was": this is so, but it has not been built up save for the sake of the other spirit which was left in that vessel..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 100a

There is here a profound mystery. According to the Book of Enoch, this "building" is indeed constructed by the other spirit which was left in the "vessel", and which draws after him the spirit which roams about in the air naked and alone; and these two spirits are welded together, and if the person is worthy to be built up again, the two spirits become one indeed, an organ in which a superior soul may wrap herself. For just as other men have a spirit which is seized by the over-soul and another higher spirit, and the holy over-soul is clothed with both, so here there are two spirits for the superior soul to wrap herself therewith, and for them another body (the child which is to be borne by the widow who married the near of kin), which is now built anew. 'Now the question arises, what becomes of the body of the man who died without issue? Is it lost because he was not worthy to bring forth a descendant? In that case it was in vain that he endeavoured to keep the commandments of the Torah: and even if he kept only one commandment, we know that "even the emptiest in Israel are full of good deeds as a pomegranate is full of grains" [Tr. Note: v. T. B. Chagigah, sub fin.] This body, although it was not found worthy to bring forth an issue, was yet able to fulfil other commandments, and should it all have been in vain? Friends friends! Open your eyes wide that ye may see more clearly, for I know that at present ye imagine that such bodies are mere figures in the void, incapable of sustained existence. It is, however, not so, and ye must beware of such thoughts. "Who can utter the mighty acts of the Lord? Who can show forth all his praise?" (Ps. Cvi, 2). The body of the first husband is not lost: on the contrary, it will have an existence in the time to come, for it has already suffered a sufficiency of punishment, and the Holy One never curtails the reward of any creature which He has created, except of those who have entirely left the faith and in whom was no good whatsoever, and those who have not bowed down at the Modim [Tr. Note: Lit. "We give thanks"; the opening word of one of the Eighteen Benedictions. Cf. T. B. Baba Kama, 16a.] prayer, who are turned by the Holy One into other creatures, because that body will never again be built into the form of a man, and will not rise for ever. Not so these, however. What, then, does the Holy One do, if that spirit was worthy to be perfected in this world in the body of the other one? Observe now. The "redeemer" brings in his spirit, which mixes with the spirit already in

the "vessel", with the result that there are three spirits there: one that was left there (by the deceased husband); one that is now naked but is drawn back there as to its basis (the spirit of the deceased husband); and one that the "redeemer" now brings in. This would seem to be impossible. But behold the mighty works of the Lord! The spirit which the "redeemer" brought in becomes the garment of the deceased's soul, taking the place of the proselyte's soul, and the naked spirit who has returned there to be built up becomes the covering for the supernal holy soul of the deceased. And the spirit which was left (by the deceased) cleaving to the "vessel" flies away from there, and the Holy One prepares for it a place in the mysterious region of the opening of the rock which is behind the walls of Paradise. There it is stored up and it enters eventually into the former body, together with which it will rise on the Resurrection. This is what I meant when I spoke of two that are one (or one that is two). That body, however, undergoes great punishment before the Resurrection, for, because it was not worthy to bring forth an issue, it was put into the earth in the region which adjoins Arqa. [Tr. Note: v. Zohar, Genesis 39b, 40a.] There it lies for a while, then it is removed to this world, then back again: it has no rest, except on Sabbaths, festivals, and new moons..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 100b

It is concerning such bodies that it is written: "And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life and some to shame and everlasting contempt" (Dan. XII, 2); the latter are those who have not done their duty (by bearing children) in this world. There are the mighty works of the Supernal Holy King, who does not permit anything to perish, not even the breath of the mouth. He has a place for everything, and makes of it what He wills. Even a human word, yes, even the voice, is not void, but has its place and destination in the universe. This body which is built up again and emerges into the world as a new creation has no mate, and therefore the usual proclamation ("the daughter of so-and-so to so-and-so") [Tr. Note: v. T. B. Sotah, 2a.] is not made about him from above. For his mate has been lost to him, the one whom he should have had becoming his mother, and his brother becoming his father. (i.e. it is the brother of the deceased who died without issue, and his wife, to whom it is due that his body should be "built up" again). The old man now addressed himself again, saying: 'Old man, old man, what hast thou done? O, if thou hadst only been silent! Verily, thou hast launched thyself upon the great sea without rudder and without sail! What wilt thou do now? Wouldst thou fain ascend? Thou canst not.. Descend? It is impossible: the deep abyss will swallow thee up. What wilt thou do? O, old man, old man! Thou canst not turn back. Yet let not thy spirit or thy strength fail thee, for thou knowest that no other man in thy generation has ventured to sail in a little boat on the wide ocean as thou art doing. The son of Yohai knows how to guard his way, and even when he does enter into the deep dangerous waters of the high seas he first looks round him to see whether he will be able to cross; but thou, old man, didst not so. Now, old man, as thou art arrived at this pass, do not weaken in thy efforts, do not give up! Sail to the right and to the left, to

the length and to the breadth, down into the depth, and up into the heights! Do not be afraid! Old man, old man, have courage! How many giants hast thou battled with, and how many battles hast thou won! He wept, and then began again. 'It is written: "Go forth, O ye daughters of Zion, and behold King Solomon in the crown wherewith his mother crowned him in the day of his espousals, and in the day of the gladness of his heart" (S.S. III, 11). This verse has already been properly interpreted, and yet we may still ask, How is one to understand the words, "Go forth and behold King Solomon"? This title, we know, refers to the King of Peace, [Tr. Note: v. Zohar, Genesis, 29a.] and who can behold Him who is high above the heavenly hosts in a region which "no eye hath seen apart from thee, O God" (Isa. LXIV, 3)? Him of whose glory the angels above ask: "Where is the place of His glory?" Observe, however, that the text does not say "and the crown", but "in the crown", from which we learn that he who sees the Crown beholds also the loveliness of the King of Peace. Then again, "wherewith his mother crowned him": She (the Shekinah) is sometimes called "Daughter", and sometimes "Sister", and here She is called "Mother". And She is indeed all these. He who penetrates into this mystery has imbibed precious wisdom. Now what shall I do? Should I explain? But such a veiled mystery ought not to be disclosed. Yet should I not explain, these good men will be orphaned of this mystery.' The old man fell on his face and said: 'Into thine hand I deliver my spirit. Thou hast redeemed me, O Lord, the God of truth' (Ps. XXXI, 7). The vessel which was below, how can it be above? The husband who was above, how can he be below? His spouse become his mother! Wonder upon wonder! His brother become his father! If his real father were to redeem him that would be understood. But that his brother should become his father, is this not a wonder? This would indeed be topsy-turvydom: those that should be above are now below, and they that should be below are now above! However, "Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his. And he changeth the times and the seasons.... He knows what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him". (Dan. II, 20-21). He who is in the light cannot see the darkness; but not so the Holy One, blessed be He;.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 101a

although the light dwelleth with Him, He knows what is in the darkness. Out of the light He beholds the darkness and knows all that is there. The mystery of the soul and her revolutions is analogous to the mystery of the Divine Hypostases. [Tr. Note: i.e. in virtue of the fact that the Shekinah can be called sometimes "Daughter" and sometimes "Mother".] When a man reaches the age of thirteen he stands, as we have said, in the grade of sonship. When he is twenty, he reaches a higher grade, the grade of "Joseph": the realm of Masculinity, the sphere of Understanding. Now, at first, the man when he married the woman, was lord over the world of Femininity, over the "small tree" - for the Feminine is in the image of the Small Tree. But when he failed to have children with his wife, and died without leaving an issue, he was excluded from the world of Masculinity, and she, by marrying his brother, became, as it were, his mother

(by bringing forth a successor to her deceased husband); and his brother, "the redeemer", becomes, as it were, his father and enters into the realm of Masculinity which was formerly his. Thus the Tree is turned upside down: what was above is now below, and what was below is now above. Oh, if only people knew the pain which the body of the men who died without children must undergo! There is no pain like unto the pain of the body that is in a state of frustration, when it has been uprooted from the sphere of Masculinity and transferred into that of Femininity. Concerning this, it is written: "If the priest's daughter (i.e. the soul) be a widow or divorced, and have no child, and is returned unto her father's house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's meat, but there shall no stranger eat thereof" (Lev. XXII, 13). We have already pointed out what "the priest's daughter" signifies. If she be a "widow" of the first body, "divorced" in not being able to penetrate into the courtyard of the King - for those who are not in the sphere of the Masculine realm have no part therein - "having no child", for if she had, she would not have sunk into the Feminine sphere, "and is returned unto her father's house", that is to say, unto the realm of Femininity (as that realm is called) where she previously was, then, if she be worthy, "she shall eat of her father's meat".

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 101b

namely, participate in the joys of the Feminine realm, the supernal food coming down from above; but she is still a "stranger", not able to participate in the contemplative joy of the other righteous; she may not eat of "the holy things" (Ibid. v. 10), but may eat the Terumah (the meat of the heave-offering), because this symbolizes the Feminine sphere, and therefore she may eat only at night (v. 7). Whereas holy food which belongs to the world of Masculinity may be eaten only during the day. Therefore "Israel is holiness unto the Lord, the firstfruits (the beginning) of his increase" (Jer. II, 3): the supernal beginning of the whole sphere of the Masculine is holy, and its further development in holiness is Israel. When spirits come to visit the graves, as they do at certain seasons, they do not visit the graves of these men, since they have not merited to rise to that region called "holiness", being only "strangers". Moreover, if that spirit did not succeed in doing its duty (by begetting children) in the period of transmigration, he may not even eat the Terumah, and is called "stranger" even in the lower world. 'So far concerning this mystery. Old man, old man! As thou hast started to sail on the wide sea, go on boldly in all directions and breast its waves! I have now to reveal something more. I said that the "redeemer", when he enters into the "vessel", lets his spirit cleave to that "vessel", so that nothing is lost, not even the breath of the mouth. This is quite correct. Old man, old man! If thou art to reveal mysteries, speak out without fear! What of other men, normal persons, who did procreate and then passed away from this world? We have said that the spirit of a man (the absconditus sponsus) is left in the woman who was his wife. Well, what becomes of it? Supposing she marries again, is it possible that two different spirits of two men should dwell together in one body? For there is no question of a "redeemer" in this case, as the first husband did have children. Is that

spirit then entirely lost? Nay, this cannot be. The same problem arises even when the widow does not marry again. What becomes of her husband's spirit which cleaves to her? All this must now be explained. Old man, old man! See what thou hast done and what thou hast taken upon thyself! Arise, old man, and unfurl thy sail! Arise, old man, and humble thyself before thy Master! He then continued: 'Lord, my heart is not haughty, nor mine eyes lofty: neither do I exercise myself (walk) in great matters, or in things too high for me' (Ps. CXXXI, 1). King David said this: he was a great king, supreme over all kings and rulers from east to west, and yet it never entered his mind to turn from the right path, for he was ever humble before the Lord. When he studied the Torah he summoned up all his strength like a lion, and his eyes looked down at the same time to the earth, out of awe to his Lord, and when he went about among the people he displayed no haughtiness. Hence he said "my heart is not haughty, although I am a mighty king, nor mine eyes lofty, when I stand before Thee studying the Torah, and I do not walk in greatness or haughtiness when I go among the people." Now if David was thus humble, how much more must ordinary people be so! And I, how lowly, and with what downcast eyes must I stand before the Holy King! Far be it from me to be puffed up when I deal with holy words of the Torah.' He wept and his tears trickled on to his beard. Said he: 'Old man, old man, feeble in strength, how fair are the tears on thy cheeks, like "the precious ointment that ran down upon the face of the good old man Aaron" (Ps. CXXXIII, 2). Say thy words, old man,.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 102a

for the Holy King is here! 'What, then, becomes of the spirit of an ordinary man whose widow has married again? Come ye and see the wonderful and mighty works of the Holy King! Who can utter them? When the second husband's spirit enters into the body of the woman the spirit of the first husband contends with it, and they cannot dwell in peace together, so that the woman is never altogether happy with the second husband, because the spirit of the first one is always pricking her, his memory is always with her, causing her to weep and sigh over him. In fact, his spirit writhes within her like a serpent. And so it goes on for a long time. If the second spirit prevails over the first one, then the latter goes out. But if, as sometimes happens, the first conquers the second, it means the death of the second husband. Therefore we are taught that after a woman has been twice widowed no one should marry her again, for the angel of death has taken possession of her, though most people do not know this. Friends, I am aware that on this point you may well object that in that case the second husband's death was not in accordance with Divine judgement. It is not so, however. It is all decided by fair trial, whether the one spirit should prevail over the other or be at peace with it; but he who marries a widow is like unto one who ventures to brave the ocean during a storm without a rudder and without sails, and knows not whether he will cross safely or sink into the depths. 'Now I have said that when the second spirit prevails over the first, the latter deserts the body. But whither goeth it? What becomes of it? Old man, old man, what hast thou done? Thou didst intend to speak

but little, and hast come as far as this! Thou hast entered a place into which no other human being has hitherto entered since the time of Doeg and Ahitophel, when four hundred questions were asked concerning a tower which was suspended in the air, and which no one could answer until Solomon came and made everything clear. [Tr. Note: v. T.B. Sanhedrin, 106b.] Old man, old man! Thou hast commenced to reveal a profound secret. What hast thou done? Old man, old man! thou shouldst indeed have considered beforehand and been careful of thy steps. Now there is no time to hide. Old man, take fresh courage! The spirit that has left the body of the woman, where has it fled?' He wept again and said: 'Friends, the tears which I shed fall not on your account, but for fear of the Lord of the universe, that perchance I have revealed mysteries without permission. It is, however, known to the Holy One, blessed be He, that all I do, I am doing not for my own honour nor for the honour of my father, but because my sole desire is to serve Him. I discern the glory and honour of one of you in the other world; and as to the other one, I know that he is likewise worthy; at first this was not revealed to me, but now I see it clearly. Now where does the first spirit, having been thrust out by the second, go? It roams about in the world for some time, and then visits the grave of the man to whom it belongs, and then it flits about again in the world and reveals itself to men in their dreams, so that they behold in fancy the face of the deceased, who tells them various things after the manner of the original spirit from which this spirit is derived. For as the other spirit is roaming about the other world, so this one roams about this world, making communications to people, and it always visits that grave at the time when the spirits of the dead visit the graves of their bodies. Then the two spirits join one another, the one (the essential) using the other as its garment, and they ascend again. When the essential spirit reaches its place, it puts off its "garment", namely the second spirit, which latter is given a place either.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 102b

within or without the palaces of Paradise, according to merit, there remaining hidden. And when the spirits visit this world and the dead attach themselves to the living they do it only through drawing down the essential spirit, which then wears the other as a garment. And should ye ask, "In that case the essential spirit of the first husband profits thereby, and the woman therefore has done him a favour in marrying again?" I would say it is not so, for had she not married again, and the spirit of the first husband not so been thrust out by that of the second, he would have profited in a different way: his spirit would not have had to roam about in the world and pay visits to the living. Should the question arise, "In that case her remarriage was her own decision and did not depend on a decree from above; why, then, didst thou say that it was providential and that one man should, as it were, be thrust out by the other and explain that the woman was indeed the preordained mate for the second husband and not for the first?" I would answer: "Indeed it is as I said: The spirit of the first husband is ejected by that of the second, just because it is the latter who was really intended from the first to be her consort, and not the first, and,

conversely, if the second husband's spirit is pushed out by that of the first one, it shows that the first one was destined to be her only mate. Hence, he who marries a widow "knows not that it is with the peril of his life" (Prov. VII, 28), for he knows not whether she is predestined to be his real spouse. However, if the widow does not wish to marry again, even when the man who wishes to marry her is meant to be her ideal mate, the Holy One does not condemn her for that, and He prepares another wife for the man whom she had refused, and she is not brought before the heavenly tribunal for her refusal, even when she has no children, because the commandment concerning procreation is not obligatory for women. 'Now what happens to the spirit of a deceased husband whose widow does not marry again? It dwells in her for the first twelve months, visiting his soul (nephesh) every night at the grave, in depression and sadness, and after the twelve months it leaves her and stands before the gates of Paradise, but occasionally visits this world, namely the "vessel" from whence it went out. And when the woman dies that spirit goes out to meet her, and clothes itself in her spirit, and so she comes into contact with her husband; and husband and wife shine together in the closest union. 'As we have come so far, we must now disclose the hidden paths of the Lord of the universe, which the children of men know not, though they are all within the way of truth, as it is written: "For the ways of the Lord are upright; the righteous shall walk in them, and the transgressors shall stumble therein" (Hos. XI, 10). The children of men neither know nor perceive how exalted are the deeds of the Holy One and how strange, yet withal according to the way of truth, turning neither to the right nor to the left. Those who undergo transmigration and are driven out from the other world (because they refused to propagate themselves) without feminine partners, how do they manage to find wives in this world, seeing that no female partner is preordained for them, as for other men? See how wondrous and exalted are the mighty works of God! We have been taught that over him who divorces his first wife the altar sheds tears. Why the altar? Because, as I have said on another occasion all women stand in the image and form of the altar, [Tr. Note: Because it symbolizes Malkuth, the sphere of feminine souls.] for which reason they "inherit" the seven benedictions (used at the marriage sacrament), because they all have the "Community of Israel" (the Shekinah) as their prototype. Thus, when.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 103a

a man divorces his wife he causes, as it were, a defect in the stone of the heavenly altar. Thus it is possible for the divorcements to unite themselves one with the other (i.e. the divorcement of the man's spirit in heaven and of the woman on earth). Concerning this mystery it says: "And hath written to her a bill of divorcement, and gave it in her hand, and sent her out of his house, and she departed from his house, and went and became another man's wife (Deut. XXIV, 1). What is the significance of "another"? It points to the words, "and they shall shoot forth from another place" (Job VIII, 19), i.e. from the region of impurity. Thus the divorcements unite as one, the divorcement of this world and the divorcement of the other world. For this woman who stood formerly in the likeness of the supernal form has

now become attached to the low form. He is called "another" (aher), and he is called "latter", "last one" (ahron), as it says, "and if the last husband hate her" (Deut. XXIV, 3); "if the last husband die" (Ibid.). Now, why is the second husband of the divorced woman called "last" and not "second"? It is as we have said, that it has a higher significance, he being "another" and also the "last". Now the stone rolls in the basket (i.e. there is a difficulty). First, why is he called "another" when the whole building (of the conjugal relationship with the first husband) has been destroyed and turned into dust? And then, why is he called "the last"? If he is the right person, well and good, but if not, there will be another development (and he will not be the last). But mark this. It is written: 'And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good,' (Gen. I, 31), and "good" here has been interpreted to refer to the angel of good, and "very" to the angel of death. [Tr. Note: v. Midrash Rabba, in loco.] Now the Holy One has prepared a remedy for all ills. It is written: "And a river went out of Eden to water the garden" (Gen. II, 10). This "river" never ceases to procreate and to spread itself and to bring forth fruit. But the "other god" (the principle of evil) is emasculated and has no desire to procreate, and does not multiply or bear fruit, for were he to bear fruit, he would reduce the whole world to chaos. Therefore man who causes the "other side" to multiply (by consciously rejecting the commandment of procreation) is called "an evil one", and will nevermore behold the face of the Shekinah, for it is written: "Evil dwelleth not with thee" (Ps. v. 5). A man who undergoes the metamorphosis of the soul, if he sins and joins the "other god" who produces no fruit and engenders no children, is therefore called "other"; the second husband who does likewise is called "the last one" by the Holy One, and not merely "the second", in order to avert an omen pointing to the destruction of the second building also. The Scripture itself teaches us this lesson, since it calls the second Temple "last". (Haggai II, 9), in order to avoid the omen. Therefore "the former husband who sent her away cannot take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled" (Deut. XXIV, 4). It does not say "he should not", but "he cannot", because, as the woman has united herself with another man and been subjected to a lower grade, the Holy One is unwilling that the former husband should lower himself by uniting with a grade that is not his. And mark this. If that woman, having been divorced, did not marry again, even if she should have misconducted herself with many men, the husband, if he wishes, may take her back, but not when she has been legally married to another man. Once she has united herself with a lower grade, the first husband,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 103b

who belongs to the grade of "good", may not associate himself with her any longer nor spread on that side. Other men may marry her, as perhaps she may find a proper mate again. A man who has children by his first wife, and brings such a woman into his house, unites himself with a flaming sword, in two ways: first, because two have already entered and been violently ejected, and now he is the third; and, secondly, how can he let his spirit enter into a vessel which has already been used by others, associate

himself with her and cleave to her? It is not that he is prohibited to do so, but in doing it he chooses a bad companion to himself. R. Levitas, from Kephars Oni, used to jeer and scoff at a person who married a woman of this sort, applying to her the words: "And she shall laugh at the last day" (Prov. XXXI, 25), meaning, the "last one" who unites himself with such a woman will be a laughing stock. 'Now we have to turn our attention to a great and noble spot which once was on the earth, being a very root and stock of truth, to wit, Obed the father of Jesse, the grandfather of David. It has been affirmed that he was such a "last one": how, then, could the root of truth (David) emanate from such a place? The fact, however, is that Obed worked and laboured at the root of the tree, until it was regenerated and made wholesome: it was therefore that he was called Obed (labourer, also, "worshipper"), a name which no other man merited to bear. He came, he digged, he hoed round the root of the tree, he pressed out the bitterness from the branches and made wholesome the crown. Then came Jesse, his son, who further improved and invigorated it, and grafted it on to the branches of another stately tree, joining tree with tree so that they were intertwined. And when David came he found the branches entwined and knit together, and was thus enabled to attain dominion over the world. And all these things which came to pass had their cause and beginning in Obed.' Having spoken thus, the old man wept again and said: 'Old man, old man, did I not say that thou hadst plunged into the midst of the great sea? Now thou art indeed in the very midst of the mighty waves! Old man, old man, thou hast none to blame but thyself; hadst thou remained silent at the beginning all would have been well with thee, but now thou mayest not, and there is none to take hold of thine hand! Thou art alone. But arise, old man, and take courage! Obed remedied himself because he came out from the evil field in which were bad cisterns. Then came Jesse, his son, who improved and hoed round that tree and digged up that which was evil and that which was bitter likewise. This is a mystery of mysteries, and I know not with certainty whether or no to reveal it. Yet say on, old man! Yea, I shall certainly speak, if only in order that these two who shall hear me should be made fully cognizant of the other transmigrations of the souls of men. Now, Obed, as I have said, hoed round the root of the tree, so improving it somewhat; and yet, when King David came, he was left only with the lower, feminine tree, and had to receive life from another tree. Now, if he for whom the way was so well prepared had to develop thus, how much more so ordinary persons who undergo transmigration! Thus, then, it was with Perez, and with Boaz likewise. Obed was also thus. With regard to all of these, the tree emerged from the side of evil and was afterwards joined to the side of good, as we read that "Er, the firstborn of Judah, was wicked in the sight of the Lord" (Gen. XXXVIII, 7); so was Onan (Ibid. 9, 10); so also was Mahlon, although his evil was not so great. Thus, in all these there was a tincture of ill, from which, however, good eventually emerged; as it is written of David, their descendant: "goodly to look to", "and the Lord was with him" (I Sam. XVI, 12, 18). Thus the tree below was purified and remained so, so that "God ruled over the nations" (through the house of David). 'The grades of Israel took root in the supernal foundation from the beginning: Reuben, Simeon, Levi.

But when it comes to Judah it says that Leah, his mother, said: "This time I will praise the Lord... and she left off bearing" (Gen. XXIX, 35); concerning which it is written: "Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear" (Isa. LIV, 1). For when Judah was born the Feminine was united with the Masculine.... Note: The last 4 lines of the Hebrew text are not translated]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 104a

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page does not appear in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 104b

[Note: Only the last two lines of the Hebrew text appear in the translation.] 'All the twelve tribes represent on earth their celestial prototypes, and because they were in reality "sons" in this world, the Shekinah.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 105a

was perfected in them in these twelve "lineaments" (boundaries) of Israel, which are called "Eleh" (these), as it says, "These (eleh) all are the tribes of Israel" (Gen. XLIX, 28), this word, in conjunction with Mi (Who?) forming the name Elohim, [Tr. Note: v. Zohar, Genesis 2a.] and so bringing the building to completion. On this account did the celestial representative of Esau say to Jacob: "Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for thou hast waged war with Elohim and with men and hast prevailed" (Gen. XXXII, 28), i.e. prevailed above, by means of the perfect and original structure, which is also indicated by the words "all these". Therefore Israel can never cease to be. If, God forbid, they should so cease to be, this Divine Name would be ended likewise, as it is written: "When they (the Canaanites) shall cut off our name from the earth, what wilt thou do unto thy great name?" (Josh. VII, 9). The "great Name" is the first building, the first Name, Elohim. And now, when Israel is in exile, the whole building has fallen, as it were. But in the time to come, when the Holy One shall redeem His children from exile, the "Mi" and the "Eleh", which when they were in exile were separated, will be united as one, and the Name Elohim be perfectly established and the world shall be healed. Therefore it is written: "Who (mi) are these (eleh) that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows?" (Isa. LX, 8): the one Name, without any separation, namely Elohim. For because of the exile the Mi ascended, as it were, and left the building, and consequently the building fell, and the Name that was perfect, namely the supernal great Name that was from the beginning, fell. Therefore we pray in the synagogues that this Name may be restored as it was: "May His great Name be magnified and sanctified": "May the great Name be blessed." What is that "great Name"? It is the one that was in the beginning, the first of all, without whom there can be no building. The "Mi" will never be built up without the "Eleh". Therefore at that time (the Messianic age) the "Mi" and the "Eleh" "shall fly as a cloud", and the whole world shall see that the supernal Name has been restored to its perfection; and when the Name has been restored and built up again, then shall Israel rule over all, and all the other Names will be restored; for all the Names depend on that great Name,

the first of all buildings. 'This mystery may be further explained as follows. When the Holy One created the world, before any other thing was built this Name was built, as it is written: "Lift up your eyes on high and see: who hath created these? (Mi barah eleh)" (Isa. XL, 26). He created His Name in its perfection, and when He created "Eleh" He created it with all the hosts appertaining to it, as it is written: "Who bringeth out their host by number (be-mispar)" (Ibid.). What is the significance of "be-mispar"? The Holy One, blessed be He, has a son, whose glory shines from one end of the world to another. He is a great and mighty tree, whose head reaches heaven, and whose roots are set in the holy ground, and his name is "Mispar" and his place, is in the uppermost heaven, and below that heaven are five firmaments, and all these firmaments take this name for his sake, as it is written, "The heavens proclaim (mesaprim) the glory of God" (Ps. XIX, 1). Were it not for this "Mispar" there would be neither hosts nor offspring in any of the worlds. Concerning this it is written: "Who can count the dust of Jacob and the number (Mispar) of the progeny of Israel?" (Num. XXXIII, 10). There are two indeed who did count these without the evil eye having any effect on them. The first "counted the dust of Jacob", the strong rocks, the holy rocks, whence issue waters to the world, concerning which it is written: "And thy seed shall be like the dust of the earth" (Gen. XXVIII, 11, 14); as the world is blessed for the sake of the dust, so will "all the nations of the earth be blessed in thy seed" (Ibid. XXII, 18). And the second shall "number the progeny of Jacob", the females, the pearls of the couch whereon Israel lay..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 105b

In the future (Messianic Age) "the flocks shall yet pass under one who counts" (Jer. XXXIII, 18). We know not who he shall be; but since at that time all will be in union without separation, there will be one "reckoner". Arise, old man; he cried, 'awake, collect thy forces and breast the waves.' Then he continued: "Who can count the dust of Jacob and the number of the progeny of Israel?" When the Holy One shall arise to waken the dead, what will be the plight of those who went through transmigration several times and who have become two in one body, two fathers, two mothers, as we have seen? However, "Who (Mi) shall count the dust of Jacob?" The Lord will make all things straight and nothing will be lost. For so has been expounded the verse: "And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt" (Dan. XII, 2). "The dust of the earth" is a reference similar to that explained in the Book of Enoch, that the associates saw the letters of which these words are composed, and a voice was heard, saying: "Awaken and sing, ye who dwell in the dust" (Isa. XXVI, 19). The first edifice of the world (of the pre-resurrection period) will be as refuse in comparison with the second edifice (of the post-resurrection period), for this last will be perfected according to the Divine plan. Those that are worthy will awake to life in the world below, since they have not merited the world above; and those that are not worthy even of this will awaken to shame and everlasting contempt. As the "other side" will pass away from the world (there being no more evil principle or sin), the

Holy One will leave these specimens of the past and evil world, who belonged to the stream which issued forth from that side, in order that all the children of the world may, in beholding them, be astonished. All this will be caused by those who suffered their fount to fail and produced no fruit here, having no wish to maintain the Holy Covenant. It is they who cause all this and all the transmigrations of which I spake.' The old man was silent for a moment, and the companions wondered, not knowing whether it was day or night, whether they stood on their heads or their feet. Then the old man began again with the verse: "If thou buy an Hebrew servant, six years he shall serve, and in the seventh he shall go out for nothing" (v. 2). 'This verse', said he, 'proves what I have said. Observe, now. Every male before being born is in prototype in the world of Masculinity, and every female in the world of Femininity. Now, so long as a man serves the Holy One, blessed be He, he remains attached to the six first years (i.e. to the six "masculine" emanations); but if he withdraw himself from His service (by neglecting the commandment of procreation), then the Lord separates him from the six years of the world of Masculinity and he is delivered into bondage unto a man [Tr. Note: Metatron,] who does belong to the six sides, in order that he should serve him six years as a punishment for the supernal six years which he rejected. After that he descends lower and is attached to the world of Femininity: as he refused to take his rightful place in the Masculine world, let him now belong to that of the Female! The Female, the seventh year, comes and receives him, and from now on his part is in the world of Femininity. If he does not seek to fix himself therein, and refuses the redemption which it offers him (of making good his neglect), he descends still lower and joins the "other side". From now on he is finally severed both from the Masculine and, the Feminine worlds, and is held fast by the "servants" of the "other side", and he has to be branded and stigmatized, for every stigma comes from the "other side". However, when the Jubilee year arrives, he is freed from that power and begins to undergo transmigration once more, and returns to the world as he was before and is attached to the world of Femininity, but not to a still higher grade. If he be then worthy, he will bring into existence children all of whom will belong to the world of Femininity, symbolically expressed in the words: "The virgins, her companions shall be brought unto thee" (Ps. XLV, 15); it will be a sign of merit, for that he has made good his defect. But should he not be found worthy to procreate even after the Jubilee, he is made as though he were not, having been mercifully returned to this world and yet refusing the opportunity of reparation which was offered to him: "If he came by himself (be- gapo), he shall go out by himself" (v. 8), meaning: "If he enters this world single, without.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 106a

offspring, not having previously desired the engendering of children, and even now leaving this world single, he departs even as a stone which is thrown from a sling, until it reaches the place which is called "the mighty rock", into which he enters. As soon as he is there, the breath of him who is the Single one (Samael), who had to be separated from his feminine

counterpart (Lilith), and who walks after the manner of a serpent, breathes on him, and straightway he leaves that mighty rock and, wandering lonely forth, begins to roam the world until he shall find a "redeemer" through whose agency he can return to this earth. This is the significance of the words: "If he came by himself, he shall go out by himself"; the reference is to a man who refused to get married and beget children. But "if he get married" (Ibid.), that is to say, if he had a wife but was not blessed with children, he is not thus driven out alone, for the Holy One does not let any creature remain unrewarded. "His wife shall go out with him": husband and wife both undergo transmigration and unite again as they were before. Such a man does not marry a divorced woman, but the woman who was previously his wife but did not then bear him children, in order that now both may gain merit by making good their deficiency. The text continues: "If his master have given him a wife, and she have borne him sons or daughters, the wife and her children shall be her master's and he shall go out by himself." Scripture now returns to the former subject, namely to the case of a man who "went out" without a wife (that is, who never married at all), implying that the grade called "the seventh year" should redeem him. This "Seventh" is called "his master": the Master of the whole earth. And if this Master shall have pity on him and bring him back to this world by himself as he was, and give him a wife of the kind for whom the altar sheds tears (i.e. a woman divorced by a man whose first wife she was) and they unite, and she bears him sons and daughters, "the wife and her children shall be her master's", as has been explained. For, as he has made good his former omission, he is received by the Holy King, who restores him to the position intended for him. He is called a "repentant sinner", for he comes into the heritage of his original place in the ever-flowing celestial river. [Tr. Note: Which is the source of all souls.] There is no obstacle in the world that can stand in the way of repentance, and the word begapo (by himself) contains an allusion to the phrase: "upon the back of the highest (gape merome) places of the city" (Prov. IX, 3); that is to say: as Wisdom dwells in high and lofty places, so does the man who has repented of his sin attain an eminent position; therefore sinners who repent can enter where even the perfectly righteous are not admitted. Most assuredly the Holy One accepts every sinner who turns to Him. Such a one is set upon the way of life, and, notwithstanding his former stain, everything is put right and restored to its former position. Even when the Holy One has decreed most solemnly against a person, He forgives entirely where there is a perfect repentance. Thus we find it written concerning Jehoiachin: "As I live, says the Lord, if thou Coniah the son of Jehoiakim wert the signet upon my right hand, yet would I pluck thee hence... write ye this man childless..." (Jer. XXII, 24-30); and yet, when he repented and turned again unto the Lord, we read: "And the sons of Jeconia, Assir, etc." (I Ch. III, 17), showing that after all he was not childless: which proves that repentance annuls all decrees and judgements, and breaks many an iron chain, and there is nothing that can stand against it. This is also indicated in the words: "And they shall go forth and look upon the carcases of the men that transgress against me" (Isa. LXVI, 24). It does not say: "who have

transgressed", but "who transgress": namely those who go on transgressing without thinking of repentance; but as soon as they are penitent and remorseful for their sins the Holy One receives them again. The same applies here: this man (who rejected procreation), although he has sinned and impaired a vital part, when he repents and turns to Him the Holy One has pity on him and receives him again; for He is full.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 106b

of mercy towards all His works, as it is written: "His tender mercies are over all his works" (Ps. CXLV, 9). His mercies extend even to animals and birds, still more to human beings who know how to praise their Lord. As David expressed it: "Many are thy tender mercies, O Lord: quicken me according to thy Judgement" (Ps. CXIX, I 56). Now, if His tender mercies are vouchsafed to sinners, how much more to righteous men! Who is it that needs healing? He who is sick. And who is sick if not the sinner? Therefore, when sinners turn to the Lord for healing and mercy, He stretches out His right hand to receive them. When God draws a man to Himself He draws him with His right hand, but when He pushes him away He does so with His left hand. [Tr. Note: Cf. T. B. Sanhedrin, I07b.] And even when the left hand pushes away, the right draws near, for the Holy One, blessed be He, does not withhold His tender mercy from sinners. Observe how the Scripture says first, "And he went on frowardly in the way of his heart", and immediately afterwards, "I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also and impart consolations (nihumim) unto him and to his mourners" (Isa. LVII, I7, 18). This shows that even when sinners commit sin purposely, walking according to the desires of their own hearts, and heeding not the warnings of others, even for such, when they repent and begin to walk in the way of righteousness, is healing prepared. Now this verse will repay a little closer consideration. The question is, does it refer to the living or to the dead? For the beginning and the end seem to conflict with one another, the first part referring to the living and the second to the dead. We may, however, interpret thus. As long as a man is alive and walks "frowardly in the way of his heart" because the evil inclination is strong in him, making it hard for him to repent and start a new life, the Holy One, seeing the wasted life of him who walks in the evil way, says: "I must give him strength. I see his ways of darkness, and I must open in his heart a way of repentance and bring healing to his soul." This is the meaning of "I will lead him"-like one who takes hold of somebody's hand and leads him out of darkness. As to the second part: "and impart consolations unto him and to his mourners", this language would naturally apply to the dead, and so indeed it does, for is not a sinner dead, even though he be alive? The meaning of the words, then, is as follows. Through the grace of God, when a person is thirteen years old, two angels are appointed over him, one at his right hand and one at his left. When he walks in the right way these angels rejoice over him and are glad, and joyfully cling to him, proclaiming before him: "Give honour to the King's image!" But when he turns from the path of rectitude and walks in crooked ways his angels mourn over him and turn away from him. Therefore, when the Holy One

grants the sinner grace to repent and strength to accomplish his return to righteousness, "He imparts repentance to him, and consolations to his mourners" (nihumim in the double sense of "repentance" and "consolation"), and the man himself is truly and perfectly alive, being joined to the Tree of Life. And, being united with the Tree of Life, he is called "a man of repentance", for he has become a member of the Community of Israel, which is designated by the word "teshubah" (repentance, return), and "repentant sinners can enter even where the perfectly righteous are not admitted." King David said: "Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight" (Ps. LI, 5). The significance of this is as follows. It is possible to commit sins which are offences both against God and man; also one can commit sins which are offences against man but not against the Holy One; but there are also sins which are committed against the Holy One only. David's sin was of this last kind. Perhaps, however, you will be inclined to question this, saying,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 107a

"But what of his sin with Bathsheba? Did he not sin against her husband-to whom she was now prohibited-as well as against the Holy One?" To this query there is an answer, and it is this. According to tradition Uriah, as was the custom with the warriors in Israel, gave his wife a bill of divorcement before he went out to battle, and so David did not sin against Uriah in the sense of perfidiously robbing him of his wife. And therefore we read: "And David comforted Bathsheba his wife" (2 Sam. XII, 24), which is a proof that she was considered as David's lawful wife, destined for him since the beginning of time, since the day whereon the world was created. Thus his sin was an offence against the Holy One alone. And in what did that offence consist? Not in that he commanded Joab to set Uriah in the forefront of the battle so that he might be killed-for David had a right to do that, as Uriah called Joab "my lord Joab" while in the king's presence, which was disrespectful (lese-majeste)-but because he did not kill him then, but let him be killed by the sword of the children of Ammon (Ibid. v. 24); for on every Ammonite sword was engraved a crooked serpent, the image of a dragon, which was their god. Said the Holy One to David: "Thou hast imparted strength to that abomination"; for when the sons of Ammon had killed Uriah and many other Israelites, and the sword of Ammon prevailed, it was as if the pagan god prevailed against the God of Israel. Nor does the title "Hittite" show that Uriah was not virtuous: he was merely called so after the place whence he came, as Jephthah was called "the Gileadite" (Judges XI, 1) because he was from Gilead. Thus the power of the abomination prevailed against the camp of God, and David's hosts being in the very image of the supernal hosts, when he brought a stain upon the hosts below he caused, as it were, a stigma also on the hosts above. That was his sin, and therefore he said: "Against thee only have I sinned, and done evil in thine eyes"-in thine eyes literally, as much as to say that David was conscious that he had sinned against the omnipresent and all-penetrating eyes of God. "That thou mightest be justified in thy words, and be clear in thy judgements" (Ibid.), and so I may not have any cause of saying that thou art wrong and I am right. The point of these words is as follows. We know

that every man naturally uses the language of his occupation. Now David had been a king's jester, and so, though in sore distress and tribulation, when he found himself before the King, he reverted straightway to his quips and witticisms in order to entertain the King. He said: "Lord of the world! I said, Prove me, O Lord, and try me" (Ps. XXVI, 2), and Thou declaredst that I would not be able to withstand temptation. Therefore I have now sinned in order that Thou mayest be justified in Thy words, for if I did not so, my assertion would be proved true and Thy assertion refuted!" We have also been taught that David was not led away by his passions when he committed that sin with Bathsheba; for he said of himself: "My heart is hollowed within me" (Ps. CIX, 22),

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 107b

and he meant by this: "There are two chambers in my heart, one containing blood, and the other spirit; the one which is filled with blood is the seat of the evil inclination, but my heart is void of that inclination, for I do not allow it to dwell there." Why, then, did David commit that sin? In order to give an opening to sinners so that they might be able to say: "King David sinned, but when he repented the Holy One forgave him; and if he was forgiven, there is still greater hope that common folk such as we shall receive forgiveness!" That is what David meant by saying: "I will teach transgressors thy ways, and sinners shall return unto thee" (Ps. LI, 14). It is also written of David that he "went up by the ascent of Mount Olivet, going up and weeping, and had his head covered, and he went barefoot" (2 Sam. xv, 30). He did this to show that he considered himself excommunicated, in order to receive his punishment, and his people kept away from him a distance of four cubits. Blessed is the servant who worshipped his Master thus, confessing his sin and turning back to Him with perfect repentance! See, now. The insulting behaviour of Shimei, the son of Gera (2 Sam. XVI, 5), towards David was worse than anything he had hitherto experienced, and yet David did not answer him a word, accepting the humiliation as deserved, and therefore his sins were forgiven him. It is here fitting to consider why Shimei, who was a scholar and a wise man, behaved to David as he did. The truth is that the words of insult and cursing which he uttered were not his own, but entered into his heart from another region (from heaven), for David's benefit, that he might repent with a perfect repentance, with a broken heart and with many tears before the Holy One. Therefore David said: "The Lord hath said unto him, Curse David" (Ibid. v. 10). He knew that the cursing and words of insult were inspired from above. Among the injunctions which David on his death-bed laid upon Solomon, two were of special importance: one concerning Joab and one concerning Shimei. Of Joab he said: "Moreover, thou knowest also what Joab the son of Zeruia did to me" (1 Kings II, 5). The words "thou knowest" indicate that even Solomon ought not really to have known this, but since others knew of it David told him also. Concerning Shimei he said: "And behold, thou hast with thee Shimei, the son of Gera" (Ibid. v. 8). "With thee" means: "he is always with thee"; for he was Solomon's teacher. We read, "And the king sent and called for Shimei and said unto him, Build thee an house in Jerusalem" (Ibid. v. 36). Where, we may ask,

was the great wisdom in this? It was, indeed, wiser than it seems. Solomon did all things in wisdom; he knew that Shimei was a wise man, and he said to himself: "I desire him to spread knowledge in the land, and he therefore must not go from Jerusalem, the centre." Another thing did Solomon see in his wisdom, for it says concerning Shimei that "he came forth (yoze yazo) and cursed" (2 Sam. XVI, 5), suggesting that there were two "comings forth": one from the house of study in order to meet David and abuse him, and the second from Jerusalem to Gath to meet his servants (I Kings II, 40); one to meet a king and the other to meet his own servants. And Solomon saw by means of the Holy Spirit the second "coming forth" of Shimei, and concerning this he said to him: "It shall be that on the day thou goest out, and passest over the brook Kidron, thou shalt know for certain that thou shalt surely die" (I Kings II, 37). Shimei "cast dust" at David (II Sam. XVI, 13), and Solomon referred to water when he prohibited him to cross the brook Kidron: dust and water were the means of testing the woman who was suspected of adultery (Num. v, 11-31), and these two symbols were in the mind of Solomon when he thought of Shimei, who maligned his father. In his charge to Solomon concerning this Shimei, David said: "And behold thou hast with thee Shimei.... which cursed me with a strong curse... and I swore to him by the Lord saying, I will not put thee to death with the sword." Was Shimei, then, a fool to accept an oath like this, which forbade David only to kill him with a sword, but not with a spear or arrow? But this sentence can be taken in two ways. One is based on the saying of the son of the great fish.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 108a

whose scales reached the highest clouds (i.e. whose wisdom was great), that when David swore he swore by his sword upon which was engraved the Ineffable Name (Tetragrammaton); and thus he swore to Shimei, as it is written: "I swore to him by the Lord (TETRAGRAMMATON)... I will not put thee to death (swearing) by the sword." But Solomon interpreted it differently. He said: "This man cursed my father with words; he shall die by means of a Word (Tetragrammaton)." And, in fact, he did not kill him with the actual sword, but with the Name. There is still, however, a difficulty, namely, that since David swore to him he ought not to have killed him, and that David said something with his lips which he did not mean in his heart. But the fact is that David did not kill him. [As to the question why he did not pardon him], it is well known that the members of the human body can receive foreign particles into themselves without real damage, except the heart, which cannot receive even a hair without being damaged; and in a sense David was, as it were, the heart of humanity and so very sensitive, yet he received such insults as surely ought not to have been left unpunished. Therefore he said: "For thou art a wise man and knowest what thou oughtest to do unto him" (I Kings II, 8). 'David in the same Psalm goes on to say: "For thou desirest not sacrifice, else would I give it; thou delightest not in burnt-offerings. The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit; a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise" (vv. I 7, I 8). "Thou desirest not sacrifice." But has not the Holy One ordered sacrifices for the forgiveness of sin? It is

to be noted, however, that David spake this in regard to the Divine Name Elohim, that is, the attribute of severe judgement: sacrifices must be brought to the Name TETRAGRAMMATON, the attribute of Mercy, as this is the Name always mentioned in connection with the different kinds of sacrifices (Lev. I, 2; II, 1; III, 6), but to the Name Elohim the only sacrifice that can be offered is a broken spirit and a sorrowful heart, as it is written, "The sacrifices of Elohim are a broken spirit." For this reason a person who has had a bad dream must wear a sad and sorrowful demeanour, for he stands under the attribute of Elohim, and the sacrifice of the attribute of Justice must express itself through sadness and self-abasement, and such sadness is in itself sufficient fulfilment of the dream, and judgement will not exercise its sway over such a one, since he has brought the fitting sacrifice to the attribute of Judgement. When David says "A broken and contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise", he indicates that the Holy One, blessed be He, does despise a proud and arrogant heart. "Do good in thy good pleasure unto Zion; build thou the walls of Jerusalem." There is a double goodness mentioned here. For from the day whereon the Holy One occupied Himself with the building of the supernal Temple, even until this present time, that "goodness of His good pleasure" has not rested upon the edifice, and therefore it has not attained to complete perfection; but when this "good pleasure" shall be aroused the Lord will fill the edifice with such an array of lights that even the heavenly angels will not be able to look steadfastly upon it, and then the building, and indeed the whole work of the Holy One, blessed be He, shall be completed. 'The text continues: "Build thou the walls of Jerusalem." But has He then not built them already? Indeed, did He not begin to raise them at the time when He first began to be occupied with the building of the Temple? And if He has not built the walls, what need to say that He has not built the Temple? However, the Holy One, blessed be He, acts not as men. When human beings built the sanctuary here below, they first built the city walls for protection and then the sanctuary; but the Holy One will first build the Sanctuary and then, when He brings it down from heaven, and sets it in its rightful place, then "He will build the walls of Jerusalem"- the battlements of the Blessed City. Therefore David says first: "Do good in thy good pleasure unto Zion", and then: "Build.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 108b

thou the walls of Jerusalem." A great and deep mystery is contained in these words. In all His other acts and deeds it may be noted that God made first that which is external and then that which is within; but with regard to the sanctuary the very reverse is the case. Although, for instance, He designed the brain first in thought, yet in fact the cranium comes first. For the shell in all cases emanates from the "other side", and what is of the "other side" always appears first; the husk is there to guard the fruit and then it is thrown away, as it says, "The wicked prepareth and the righteous shall put it on" (Job XXVII, 17): the husk is thrown away and a blessing is uttered on the Righteous One. But in regard to the future building of the Sanctuary, when the evil side shall become extinct and disappear from the face of the earth, this will not be necessary, as both the

"brain" and the "husk" will be utterly His. First the "brain", signified by the words: "Do good in Thy good pleasure unto Zion"; and then the "husk": "Build thou the walls of Jerusalem"; signifying that in the time of the Kingdom of the Messiah the outer protective covering will no more be the powers of the "evil side", but, instead, the Holy One Himself; as it is written: "I will be unto her a wall of fire round about" (Zech. II, 5). Now, Israel is the supreme "brain" of the world. They were first in the mind of the Creator, and therefore it is that the heathen nations, who are but the "husk", gained the start of them, as it is written: "And these are the kings that reigned in the land of Edom, before there reigned any king over the children of Israel" (Gen. XXVII, 29). But in the future the Holy One will form the brain first without waiting for the husk, as it says: "Israel is holiness unto the Lord, the firstfruit of His increase"; and because of this, "all that devour him shall be considered guilty, evil shall come upon them" (Jer. II, 3). "Then shalt thou be pleased with the sacrifices of righteousness" (Ps. LI, 20); for in that time all things will be perfectly united and the Holy Name shall also be united in its harmonious wholeness, and sacrifices will be offered to the united Names TETRAGRAMMATON Elohim, and shall not be as in former days when Elohim had no part in the sacrifice since, if it had had, all the powers of the "other side" would have been on the alert to participate. At that time, "Thou art great and doest wondrous things: thou art God alone" (Ps. LXXXVI, 10), and there will be no other God. It is concerning this time that it is written: "See now that I, even I, am He, and there is no god with me; I kill, and I make alive" (Deut. XXXII, 39). The double "I, I" indicates the absoluteness of the Divine Presence in the Messianic time, when the "other side" shall be vanquished and be no more seen; and even death, which until that time was connected with the "other side", will thenceforth be from Him directly, for those who have not yet experienced physical death, and He will raise them immediately; for nothing of that filth of sin which is the cause of death will remain in the world, and there will be a new world, fashioned and perfected by the hands of the Holy One, blessed be He. To return to the word begapo: the Targum (Aramaic) translation of this is "by himself", which is indeed correct. But gapo can also (in Aramaic) mean "wing", and we may therefore connect it with the dictum that the whole world is sustained upon one single "wing" of the Leviathan. The inner meaning is as follows. In the beginning the Holy One, blessed be He, created the Leviathan according to the two kinds, male and female; but whenever they moved the earth shook, and had the Holy One not castrated the male and cooled the sexual instincts of the female, they would eventually have brought the whole world into chaos and destruction. So, because of this, these monsters did not engender; therefore a man who does likewise—that is, who does not engender—if "he comes be-gapo, with one wing", is brought under the domination of that wing of the castrated Leviathan, and he "shall go out be-gapo": that is to say, he will be thrust out from the other world and never enter within the curtain. Mark this. It is written: "They will die as solitaires. (aririm) without offspring" (Lev. xx, 21). The word aririm is both masculine and feminine, indicating that a man who refuses to generate leaves the world in the sphere of femininity, although he first entered it in the sphere of

masculinity. The Holy One, blessed be He, suffers not any man who has emasculated himself in this world to appear before Him, just as in a similar fashion no castrated animal was a permitted sacrifice (Lev. XXII, 24).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 109a

It is prohibited throughout all generations to castrate any creature which the Holy One has created, for castration appertains eternally and in all cases to the "other side". And when a person marries a woman and he or she refuses to generate, and so enter into the other world without having begotten any children, then "his wife shall go out with him": which signifies that he undergoes transmigration by himself as a male, and she by herself as a female. The text continues: "If his master have given him a wife, and she have borne him sons or daughters, the wife and her children shall be her master's, and he shall go out by himself." "His master" is "the Lord of the whole earth"; "have given him a wife": from this we learn that it is not in the discretion of man himself to take a wife, but that all things have to be "laid in the balance" (Ps. LXII, 10). And who is the woman whom the Master gives him in this case? One who was not actually intended to be his wife, but the wife of another whom he managed to anticipate in God's good graces, and his Master permitted him to have her because He foresaw that she would bear him children. Now when this man, having, as it were, produced fruit in a garden not rightfully his, shall come to the end of his earthly life, "the wife and her children shall be her Master's, and he shall go out by himself." Poor unfortunate! All his labour was thus in vain. He strove to bring forth fruit in an alien garden, in order to obey the dictates of his Master, and must perforce come out empty! Old man, old man! Confronted with such a problem as this, thou art indeed like unto a man lying helpless and powerless on the ground, who can only kick at the gate with his feet. But take courage, old man, and be not afeared. Now, why is it that this poor soul has perforce to go out from this world empty and alone? Is it because he had sown in a garden which was not his own? Surely not so, for was it not the Holy One Himself who gave him this garden? However, no deed is done by the Lord but has its reason and its justice; and as in all other cases, so also in this. He to whom the Holy One has given a wife, and who has generated with her, is not like others who undergo transmigration. One who in this world truly and humbly endeavoured to make the tree fruitful, but who did not succeed in his attempt, is not to be placed in the same category with one who consciously and wilfully refused the duty of engendering children, so uprooting the tree, scattering its leaves, and wasting its fruit. He to whom the Master gave a wife in order that he might generate children did after all endeavour to enrich the tree, though he did not succeed. The Holy One, therefore, knowing his good intention, has pity on him and, after first collecting His own due, and taking what the fount formerly failed to produce, permits him to start anew, and labour for himself in order to make good his deficiency. In addition it must be remembered that the man has to undergo transmigration because he is not, in any case, of great merit: since if he were so he would not have had to pass into another form and live

again upon the earth, but would at once have "a place better than sons and daughters". 'So much, then, for the mysteries contained in this verse. But, old man, old man, thou hast spoken of one whose work was in vain, and dost not observe that thou thyself hast uttered nought but vanity in all this discourse! For close on thy heels is a verse which overthrows all thy edifice, and thou imaginest that thou couldst swim the sea according to thy pleasure! What is this verse? "If the servant shall plainly say, I love my master, etc." Old man, old man, thou hast no strength, thy power is fled! What wilt thou do? Thou didst think that there would be none to pursue thee, and now, alas, this verse springs out from its ambush, leaping after thee like a gazelle in the field with thirteen bounds [Tr. Note: i.e. the thirteen words in the verse.] till it overtake thee. What wilt thou do, old man? Nay, be not downcast. Now must thou gather up thy strength, for until this day thou wert in very deed a mighty warrior. Old man, old man, remember that day of snow, when the beans of wisdom were sown, and mighty men.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 109b

fought against thee, and thou didst prevail single-handed over thirteen men of might, each one of whom could slay a lion before breakfast. If thou couldst prevail against those giants, surely thou canst now conquer these thirteen, which are mere weaklings, being but words! On, then, and be bold. The expression "amor yomar" (if the servant saying shall say) has been interpreted by certain of the scholars according to its literal sense, i.e. that it indicates two sayings, one at the beginning and one at the end of the six years, before the seventh year has entered; for if he said it even a day after the commencement of the seventh year his words have no validity, as it says "the servant", that is, as long as he is still a servant, namely in the sixth year. And if he spake his words at the beginning of the six years but not at the end, then also his words have no validity. Our interpretation is that, if while he is still with this wife he prays daily to the Holy King, then he both begins and ends with supplication; and if he commences with prayer he shall be received with mercy. What does he say? "I love my Master, etc." Then the Holy One, blessed be He, receives him because of his repentance and his prayers. What, then, does He do for such a one? Instead of sending him back to this world to undergo punishment for the sins of his former life, the Holy One gives him instead into the hands of the celestial Tribunal, who judge him and deliver him unto the house of punishment. And the Holy One records how he was delivered to the Tribunal, and places on him a stigma by putting him under the domination of the Orlah (unclean spirits) [Tr. Note: Al. "and puts him under the domination of the Jubilee year".] for a certain period of time, after which his Master redeems him. But if the Jubilee should appear during the period of his stigmatization, then he is instantly set free- and this even though he should have been in captivity only one day when the Jubilee appeared and is permitted to enter within the curtain. Then the old man closed his eyes for a moment.....[Note: The last 26 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 110a

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page is omitted in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 110b

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page is omitted in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 111a

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page is omitted in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 111b

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page is omitted in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 112a

[Note: The Hebrew text of this page is omitted in the translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 112b

[Note: The first 17 lines of the Hebrew text are omitted in the translation.] He continued: 'Solomon said: "So I returned and considered all the oppressions ("oppressed") that are done under the sun, and behold the tears of such that were oppressed and they had no comforter" (Eccl. IV, 1)..This verse has already been interpreted. But we have still to explain the words, "So I returned and saw." From whence did he return? Now, we have a tradition that Solomon was wont to rise each day at daybreak and turn his face towards the east, where he saw certain things and then toward the south, where also he saw certain things, and finally, to the side of the north. He would stand thus with his head raised and his eyes half-closed until there would come towards him two pillars, one of fire and one of cloud, and borne upon this last an eagle, mighty in stature and strength, his right wing resting upon the fire, and his body and left wing upon the cloud. This eagle bore in his mouth two leaves. The pillar of cloud with the two leaves and the pillar of fire and the eagle upon them, would come and bow before Solomon. Then the eagle would bend down its head a little, and give him the leaves. Solomon would take and smell them, and by their odour could discern from whence they came, and recognize one leaf as belonging to him "who has his eyes shut", and the other to him "who has his eyes open" (cf. Num. xxv, 4). Now there were a number of things which King Solomon desired that these two beings should make known to him. What did he do? He sealed up his throne with a ring on which was engraved the Holy Name, drew forth from a hidden place another ring on which the Holy Name was also engraved, ascended unto the roof of his palace, seated himself upon the eagle's back, and so departed, attended both by fire and cloud. The eagle ascended into the heavens, and wherever he passed the earth below was darkened. The wiser sort in that part of the earth from whence the light was thus suddenly removed would know the cause and would say, "Assuredly that was King Solomon passing by!" but they knew not whither he went. The vulgar sort,

however, would say, "Up there the clouds are moving, and that is why it grew dark so suddenly." The eagle would mount up even to the height of four hundred parasangs, until it reached at length the dark mountain, where is Tarmud in the wilderness; and there at last it would descend. Solomon would then lift up his head and see the dark mountain, and would learn therefrom all that it could teach him and also perceive that it was necessary to penetrate further; after which he would mount once more the back of the eagle and fly on as before until they entered into the depths of the mountains, in the midst of which grew an olive tree. When he was arrived at this spot Solomon would cry out with all his might: "Lord, thy hand is lifted up, they see not" (Isa. XXVI, 11). Then he would enter into that place until he reached those who abode there, and he would show them his ring, and there he gained all his knowledge of strange sciences (i.e. witchcraft). When they had told him all that he required he would.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 113a

fly back to his palace in the same way that he came. Then, as he sat once more on his throne, he would reflect upon all that he had gone through, and would conceive ideas of profound wisdom; and it is in reference to such an occasion that he says: "So I returned and considered all the oppressions that are done under the sun..." 'Could he then have viewed upon his journey all such as were oppressed? Hardly so; but he was referring to the little ones, to the sucklings snatched away from their mothers' breasts. Such as these are indeed "oppressed" from all sides: oppressed above in the celestial regions, and oppressed on earth below. There is none oppressed like those whose oppression is transmitted by heredity, concerning whom it is written: "He visits the sins of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generations" (Ex. xx, 5). How is this? King Solomon loudly gives the answer when he says, "A man that is oppressed through the blood of his soul shall flee to the pit; no one will stay him" (Prov. XXVIII, 17). Since he is "oppressed with the blood of a soul" (i.e. has committed some grievous sin), either he or his son or his son's son will be "oppressed" (i.e. wronged) in the "balance"; he shall flee to the pit away from the place of righteousness and none shall stay him; because he has oppressed the blood of the soul he shall himself be oppressed by the other side, or his seed shall bear this oppression of retribution for him and on his account. Hence it says, "all the oppressed", as much as to say, "I have considered all those that are oppressed and all the manners of their oppression, and the reason of their being oppressed." Now, this class of oppressed ones are said to be "made under the sun", because their bodies were actually made before they were violently carried away, there being others who are never so much as fashioned on this earth, though spirits are waiting for them. Others, again, are "made", as it were, in defiance of the Almighty. Thus, when a man steals his neighbour's wife, either openly or secretly, and a child is born of such adulterous union, and the Holy One has perforce to fashion its body and give it form, then that child is indeed "an oppressed one who is made such", literally, in despite of the Almighty. Solomon reflected on this and said: "I consider the sad fate of these hapless oppressed ones

who have been 'made', how they shed tears before the Holy One. They complain before Him and make moan, saying, When a person commits a sin he must assuredly die. But, Sovereign of the Universe, when a child is but one day old, shall he be judged?"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 113b

These are "the tears of the oppressed ones, who have no comforter". There are many different kinds among them, but they all shed tears. Here is, for instance, a child born in incest. As soon as he emerges into the world he is separated from the community of the holy people, and the unfortunate bastard laments and sheds tears before the Holy One, and complains: "Lord of the world! If my parents have sinned, wherein is my guilt? I have ever striven to do only good works before Thee." But the greatest grief of all emanates from those "oppressed ones" that are but little sucklings which have been removed from their mothers' breasts. These can indeed cause the whole world to weep, and there are no tears like unto theirs, for these are tears which spring from the inmost and deepest recesses of the heart, causing the whole world to wonder and say: "The Holy One's judgements are forever righteous and all His paths are ways of truth. But why is it necessary that these poor little ones, who are blameless and without sin, should die? Where is now the true and righteous judgement of the Lord of the world? If they must die because of their parents' sins, then they certainly "have no comforter." However, the actual fact is that the tears of these "oppressed ones" intercede for and protect the living, and because of their innocence and the power of their intercession a place is eventually prepared for them such as even the perfect righteous cannot attain to or occupy; for the Holy One does in truth love them with a special and particular love, He unites Himself with them and prepares for them a supernal place, very near to Himself. It is concerning such that it is written: "Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou founded strength." What is it that they accomplish there and why went they thither? "Because of thine enemies, that thou mightest still the enemy and the avenger" (Ps. VIII, 3). And there is also another place prepared for sinners who repent. 'We have been taught (cf. Pirke Aboth, ch. v) that ten things were created upon the eve of the Sabbath in the twilight, at the time when the work of Creation was ended and the Sabbath not yet begun; among which are the shape of the written characters, the writing, and the tables of stone; for it is written: "And the tables were the work of God, and the writing was the writing of God, graven upon the tables" (Ex. XXXII, 16). Now it may be asked, what proof is there in this verse that these things were indeed created on the eve of the Sabbath, and not perhaps a thousand years later, or, maybe, when the Israelites stood at Mount Sinai? However, there can be no doubt that they were created on the eve of this Sabbath, for the following reason. In the whole account of the Creation (Gen. I) it is always the name Elohim which is used to denote God; but after the completion of the whole work God is called with the full name, TETRAGRAMMATON Elohim (Gen. II, 4). For, although all things were created [Tr. Note: ie. in posse.] in the power of the Name Elohim, that which was created was not actually made [Tr. Note: i.e. in esse.]

until Sabbath eve, when "God ended the work which he had made" (Gen. 11, 2); that is to say, Creation only received its permanency with its completion through making. In the same sense it says concerning the tables of stone that they were "the work (ma'ase, lit. making) of God", which indicates that they were produced at the time when the consummation of the whole Creation took place through the act of God's "making"-and not in the later period concerning which the Name in its fulness is mentioned-"TETRAGRAMMATON Elohim" (Gen. 11, 4), and only herewith was the world placed upon a firm basis and permanently established. "When Moses broke the tablets "under the mountain" (Ex. XXXII, 19), the Ocean overflowed its borders and was on the point of inundating the whole world. When Moses saw how the waves were rising and threatening to overwhelm the universe, straightway he "took the calf which they had made and burnt it in the fire, and ground it to powder, and strawed it upon the water". (Ex. XXXII, 20). Then he stationed himself before the waters of the Ocean and said: "Waters, waters, what would ye?" And they answered: "Was not the world established by and on the merit of the Holy Words engraved upon the tablets? And now, because the Israelites have denied the Torah by making the golden calf, we desire to overwhelm the world." Then Moses answered them and said: "Behold, all that they have done in connection with the sin of the golden calf is delivered unto you; is it not enough that so many thousands of them have perished for their sin?" Straightway he "strawed it (the dust of the calf) upon the water". But even then the floods were not appeased. So he took from those angry seas a portion of water, and poured it upon the place where he had burned the calf, and then at last the Ocean was soothed and returned to its own bed. For in that wilderness there was no water, as it is written: "It is no place of seed....neither is there any water to drink" (Num. xx, 5). Nor can the place whereon Moses strawed the powder have been Miriam's well, for assuredly Moses would never have permitted evil memories to pollute the place whose waters the Israelites would afterwards have had to drink. Besides, the Israelites only received their cistern when they came to the place Mattanah, as it is written: "Spring up, well.... The princes digged the well.... And from there to Mattanah" (Ibid. XXI, 17). [Tr. Note: v. T. B. Nedarim, 55a; Erubin, 54a.] As to the words "graven upon the tables" (harut'al ha-luhoth), it has already been pointed out that this phrase contains an allusion to heruth-that is, freedom. Freedom from what? From the angel of death, from subjection to the kingdoms of this world,.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 114a

from all things earthly and from all things evil. And what is freedom? It is the seal of the world to come, in which is every kind of freedom. Had not the tablets been broken, the world would not have suffered as it subsequently did, and the Israelites would have been in the likeness of the supernal angels above. Therefore the Scripture proclaims: "the tablets were the work of God" (Elohim), from the time when the world was still under the aegis of the name Elohim, before the Sabbath had entered. The writing, too, was the "writing of God", black fire on white fire, and it was

haruth (engraved) because the Jubilee proclaims freedom (heruth) to all worlds.' Having spoken these things, the old man paused a moment and then said: 'So far, my friends, and now no further! From now on ye shall know that the evil side has no power over you; and that I, Jebba the Ancient, have stood before you to utter these words.' The two Rabbis stood before him dumbfounded, like men waking out of their sleep. Then they prostrated themselves before him, and so remained, speechless and awestruck. After a while they wept. Finally R. Hiya found his voice again, and spake, saying: "Set me as a seal upon thy heart, as a seal upon thine arm; for love is strong as death, zeal is hard as the sheol; the coals thereof are coals of fire, a blaze of Kah" (S.S. VIII, 6). When the Community of Israel cleaves to her Spouse she says: "Set me as a seal upon thy heart." The property of a seal is to leave its impress on the surface wherewith it has come into contact, and this impress naturally remains even after the seal has been removed. So the Community of Israel cries aloud unto her Spouse, saying: "Since I have cleaved to Thee, may my image remain engraven upon Thine heart, so that even when I myself must perforce be driven hither and thither in exile Thou mayst find my likeness there and remember me. May I thus cleave to Thee for ever and not be forgotten of Thee." "For love is strong as death"-as the strength of the region where death dwells is the place called "eternal love". "Her coals are coals of fire." What are these coals? The diamonds and precious gems which are born of that fire. "A blaze of Kah"-the flame which issues out of the Supernal World to unite itself with the Community of Israel and so bridge the gulf between Heaven and earth and unite both. Of this same quality of love do we also partake in regard to thee, and the coals of that very fire are set within our hearts, warming them towards thee. So may it be the will of the Holy One, blessed be He, that our image may be engraved upon thine heart for ever, as thine is impressed upon ours! Then the old man kissed and blessed them, and they departed. When they reached the dwelling of R. Simeon they recounted everything that had befallen them..R. Simeon was both delighted and amazed. He said: 'Blessed indeed are you in that ye were found worthy of all this! To think that you were in the presence of this supreme lion of wisdom with whom not even the greatest sages can be compared, and did not recognize him at once! I am astonished that you have escaped punishment for your disrespect towards him; it is evident that the Holy One desired to spare and save you.' Then he applied to them the verses: "And the path of the righteous is as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day"; "When thou goest, thy steps shall not be straitened, and when thou runnest thou shalt not stumble" (Prov. IV, 12, 18); "and thy people shall be all righteous; they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of thy planting, the work of thy hands, that I may be glorified" (Isa. LX, 2 I). Thus ends the incident concerning R. Jebba the Ancient.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 121a

[Tr. Note: The pages omitted belong to the Ray'a Mehemna.]

[Note: Apparently the pages mentioned in the

previous note were not translated. For the Hebrew version, see the "Raya Mehemna" choice in the Hebrew Zohar submenu, pages 114a-121a.] AND YE SHALL BE MEN OF HOLINESS UNTO ME; AND FLESH THAT IS TORN BY BEASTS IN THE FIELD YE SHALL NOT EAT; YE SHALL CAST IT TO THE DOG (XXII, 30). R. Judah quoted here the verse: "And wisdom, where shall it be found? And where is the place of understanding?" (Job XXVIII, 12). Said he: "Blessed are the Israelites for that the Holy One desires to honour them more than all the rest of mankind. At first He said unto them: "And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests" (Ex. XIX, 6). His great love to them was, however, not satisfied until he had added: "and a holy nation" (Ibid.), which signifies a higher grade; His love was still not satisfied until He called them "a holy people" (Deut. XIV, 2), which is a still higher grade; and now He shows His endless love to them by calling upon them to be "men of holiness", which is the highest grade and destiny of all. For the Torah itself emanates from Wisdom, from the realm called "holiness", and Wisdom itself emanates from the region called "holy (lit. holiness) of holies". Said R. Isaac: 'The Jubilee is also designated "holiness", as it is written: "For it is the jubilee; it shall be holiness (kodesh) unto you" (Lev. XIV, 12). The Israelites who are destined to be "men of holiness" have a share in both (the Torah and the Jubilee). What is the difference in degree between "holy" and "holiness"? Said R. Jose: 'The latter is the extremest, the utmost degree, but not so the former, for it is written: "And it shall come to pass that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy" (Isa. IV, 3), which signifies that the grade of "holy" is connected with that place (i.e. with the earthly Zion and Jerusalem),.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 121b

whereas "holiness" is connected with a higher place.' R. Abba was once walking in company with R. Jose and R. Hiya. Said R. Hiya: 'How do we know that the expression, "and ye shall be unto Me men of holiness", signifies the highest grade?' Said R. Jose: 'All the companions have interpreted it well; it is truly so, for it is written: "Israel is holiness (kodesh) to the Lord, the beginning (reshith) of his increase; all that devour him shall be guilty" (Jer. II, 3). Israel is here designated "reshith", and Wisdom is also called "reshith", as it says, "The beginning (reshith) of wisdom is the fear of the Lord" (Ps. CXI, 10). And because Israel is called "holiness", the completion and harmony of all grades, they must not "eat flesh that is torn by beasts in the field"; they must not derive their nourishment from the side of severe judgement, but "cast it to the dogs", namely to the impudent and impure power on which judgement rests; so the people destined to be "men of holiness" should not be stained by the impurity of the principle of evil left in the flesh of the torn animal.' Once when R. Isaac was studying with R. Simeon, he asked him: 'What is the meaning of the last part of the verse quoted above (Jer. II, 3): "Israel is holiness to the Lord, all that devour him shall be guilty" (ye'shamu, will bear their guilt, i.e. will be punished)?' R. Simeon referred to the passages (Lev. XXII, 10, 14-16) where strangers eating of the holy things "lade themselves with guilt. (ashmah) of eating". 'Because Israel is called "holy",

"holiness", all that "eat" him, that is to say, all the strange nations who try to devour and make an end of him are guilty of consuming something sacred.' Then R. Isaac came to him, kissed his hands, and said: 'It was worth coming here only to hear this! But, Master, if, as we have been taught, "holiness" is a higher degree than "being holy", how is one to explain "holy, holy, holy (kadosh) is the Lord Zebaoth"? R. Simeon replied: 'When the triad (the holy, holy, holy) is united in one unity, it forms one "house", and that house is called "holiness"; it is the essence and core of the "holy"; and when Israel attain to the completeness and perfection of faith, they are called "holiness". "Holiness is Israel to the Lord"; "ye should be unto Me men of holiness". A certain legiary once asked R. Abba: 'Is it not written in your Law: "Flesh that is terepha (torn by beasts) ye should not eat: ye shall cast it to the dog"? Why, then, does it say: "He hath given tereph (food) to those that fear him" (Ps. CXI, 5)? Assuredly it ought rather to have said: "He gives tereph to the dog"! R. Abba replied: 'Fool (Reka)! Thinkest thou that tereph is the same as terepha? And even if we admit that it is the same, I say that God gave this prohibition only to those that fear His name, and therefore He gave it not to you, since He knows that you do not fear Him and will not keep His commandments; and so with all the restrictions of the Torah.' R. Eleazar taught that the peculiar expression, "men of holiness", contains a reference to the Jubilee, for there is a tradition that the Israelites came out from Egypt into freedom by means of the Jubilee, which is the source of all freedom, both early and everlasting. When they came out into freedom the Jubilee set them upon his wings, and they were called his men, his children. And of the Jubilee it says: "It is jubilee; holiness is it to you." Yea, verily, "to you". Therefore it says here: "Ye shall be unto Me men of holiness", that is, His men, these words having been spoken by the Holy One, blessed be He..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 122a

And therefore they become worthy to be known as "brethren of the Holy One", as it is written: "For my brethren and companions' sake, I will now say, Peace be within thee" (Ps. CXXII, 9). Later they were called "holiness" (Jer. Ibid.), and not merely "men of holiness". We have been taught that because Israel is designated "holiness" no one is allowed to apply to his neighbour an insulting epithet or to bestow upon him a degrading nickname. The punishment for such an offence is indeed great. It is written: "Keep thy tongue from evil" (Ps. XXXI, 15). "From evil": for slander and malicious speech cause disease to enter into the world. Said R. Jose: 'He who offends his neighbour by giving him an insulting nickname or by addressing him in abusive terms will himself eventually suffer for offences which he has not committed.' In this connection R. Hiya also said in the name of R. Hezekiah: 'He who calls his neighbour "wicked" will be thrown into the very jaws of Gehenna. The only people whom one may legitimately call "wicked" are those who speak impudently and blasphemously against the Torah.' Once, when on a journey, R. Jesse passed close by a man who was cursing and reviling his neighbour; and the Rabbi said to him: "Thou behavest like a wicked one (rasha)."'

Those who were with R. Jesse, hearing his words, were shocked, thinking that he had assuredly committed a great offence; so they brought him before R. Judah to be judged. In defence he pleaded that he had not called the man "wicked", but only told him that he had behaved "like a wicked one." R. Judah was puzzled, and put the case before R. Eleazar, who said: 'The Rabbi has Scripture on his side, for do we not read: "The Lord was as an enemy" (Lam. II, 5)? which obviously does not mean that. He actually became an enemy, for had that been the case Israel would certainly have been utterly annihilated. Similarly, we read: "How is she (Jerusalem) become as a widow" (Ibid. 1, 1), which signifies that she is indeed like unto a woman whose husband has gone away to a far country, but for whom she still waits.' Said R. Hiya: 'Is there not a better proof than all these, in fact, the standard example, namely: "And upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man" (Ezek. 1, 26)?' Said R. Isaac: 'Also it is written: "As the apple tree among the trees of the wood, so is my beloved among the sons" (S.S. II, 3)-as an apple tree which has varied colours, red, white, and green combined in a unity.' Said R. Judah: 'Ah, had I come here only in order to hear these mystic revelations, it would have sufficed! It is also written: "And he that stumbled among them on that day shall be as David" (Zech. XII, 8). "As David", who said: "In my poverty I have prepared for the Lord an hundred thousand talents of gold..."; "as David", who said of himself: "For I am poor and needy" (Ps. LXXXVI, 1); yea, he called himself thus, who was king above all other earthly kings!' Said R. Abba: "And how blessed are the Israelites for that the Holy One does not call them "as holiness", but actually "holiness" itself, as it is written: "Holiness is Israel to the Lord"; and therefore: "all who devour him will be made to bear grievous punishment for their guilt." 'Said R. Jose: 'For what reason did God give Israel rules of judgement after He had given them the Ten Words (the Decalogue)? Because, as we have been taught, the Torah was given from the side of Power (Geburah), and therefore He desired to give them peace among themselves in order that the Torah should be observed under both of its aspects. For, as R. Abba has said in the name of R. Isaac, the world is sustained by Justice, as it was created by, and for, the principle of Justice. R. Abba also said that the words: "Execute judgement in the morning" (Jer. XXI, 12) mean that judges should sit in judgement "in the morning", that is, before they have had anything to eat or drink, since he who executes judgement after eating and drinking is not a true judge, as it is written: "Ye shall not eat with the blood" (Lev. XIX, 26), which means that a judge who eats before sitting in judgement is, as it were, guilty of shedding his neighbour's blood, for, indeed, he gives the "blood" of his neighbour to someone else. Now this is merely in reference to money matters; how much more, then, in criminal cases, when it is a question of life and death, should judges beware of eating and drinking before executing judgement!' Said R. Judah: 'He who betrays judgement betrays the supports of the King. And what are these? Those mentioned in the verse, "For I the Lord exercise lovingkindness, judgement, and righteousness" (Jer. IX, 25). All things depend upon these three.' R. Jose said: "These are the stays of the Throne, for it is written: "Righteousness and

judgement are the establishment of thy throne" (Ps. LXXXIX, 15); and also "And in lovingkindness will the throne be established" (Isa. XVI, 5)..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 122b

[The Hebrew text of this page (taken from the Idra D'mishkana) is not translated.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 123a

[The Hebrew text of this page is not translated.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 123b

[Note: The first 36 lines of the Hebrew text are not translated.] AND IN ALL THINGS THAT I HAVE SAID UNTO YOU TAKE YE HEED, ETC. Note the passive form tishameru (take heed, lit. ye shall be guarded). We may translate: "From the penalties which I have threatened for a breach of My service ye shall be guarded, so that no harm shall come to you", and therefore, MAKE NO MENTION OF THE NAME OF OTHER GODS. These words may also be expounded thus: 'Ye shall not bring it about that ye shall fall among the nations in a strange land so that there be fulfilled concerning you the words of Scripture: "and there shalt thou serve other gods, etc." (Deut. XXVIII, 36).' R. Judah connected this text with the verses: "Hear, O my people, and I will admonish thee.... There shall no strange god be in thee... I am the Lord thy God, who brought thee up out of the Land of Egypt, etc." (Ps. LXXXI, 9-11). 'These verses', he said, 'David uttered under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, and they should be well pondered. "Hear, O My people", is a reminder of the repeated admonitions of the Torah and of the Holy One, blessed be He, to man, and all for the benefit of man, that he observe the commands of the Torah, for when one

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 124a

observes the ordinances of the Torah and diligently studies it, it is as though he diligently studied the Divine Name. For the whole Torah is an enfolding of the one Divine Name, the most exalted Name, the Name that comprehends all other names; and hence if one diminishes it, even by a single letter, it is as though he made a gap in the Divine Name. Hence, according to our teaching, the words, "and make no mention of the name of other gods", signify "thou shalt not add to the Torah nor diminish from it." R. Hiya said: 'The name of other gods' signifies profane books which do not issue from the side of the Torah, and hence we are forbidden to study them: NEITHER LET IT BE HEARD OUT OF THY MOUTH, that is, we may not even mention them nor receive teaching from them, especially concerning the Torah.' R. Judah expounded the passage as follows. 'For what reason is the precept concerning other gods closely followed by the precept, THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD SHALT THOU KEEP? Because the nonobservance of this festival betokens lack of faith in the Holy One, blessed be He, since that festival is closely associated with Him.' R. Isaac said: 'It is the same with the other feasts and festivals, as they all are closely bound up with the most exalted Divine Name. Hence

the dictum, that religious faith is closely bound up with the three festivals.' ALL THY MALES. Says R. Eleazar: Emphatically all thy males", as they then receive blessings from the eternal spring. Hence the dictum that every circumcised Israelite is bound to appear before the Holy King so as to receive a blessing from the eternal spring. So Scripture says: "according to the blessing of the Lord thy God which he hath given thee" (Deut. XVI, 17), and here it is written: "before the Lord God", that is, from whence blessings pour and blessings are received. Happy is the portion of Israel above that of all other nations. On one occasion, when the Israelites were going up to celebrate the festival, a number of idolaters mingled with them. That year there was no blessing in the world. So they came to Rab. Ham'nuna the Elder to consult him about the matter. He asked them: 'Did you see any portent of this beforehand?' They replied: 'We noticed on our return journey that everywhere the waters were dried up, and there was continuous cloud and darkness, so that the pilgrims could not proceed on their way. Furthermore, when we went in to show ourselves, the face of heaven was darkened.' R. Ham'nuna trembled and said: 'There is no doubt but either there are among you some who are uncircumcised or that idolaters mingled themselves in your company. For at that time blessings come into the world only through circumcised Israelites. The Holy One, blessed be He, looks at the sacred symbol and sends down the blessing.' The following year again a number of idolaters intruded themselves among the pilgrims who went up to Jerusalem. Then when the festive offerings were being joyfully eaten, the Israelites noticed those people covering their faces with their cloaks, and on further watching them they discovered that they did not pronounce a blessing over the meal, like all the others. This was communicated to the Court of Judges, who examined the strangers and asked them what kind of offering was that of which they had eaten a portion? As they could not give a satisfactory answer, further inquiries were made, and it was discovered that they were idolaters, and so they were put to death. The people said: "Blessed is the Merciful One who delivered His people, for assuredly blessing only rests on Israel, the holy seed, the children of Faith, the children of Truth." That year was one of rich blessing in the world, and the people exclaimed: "Surely the righteous shall give thanks unto thy name, etc." (Ps. CXL, 14). R. Hiya said: 'Through the merit of Israel circumcised their enemies have been subdued before them and their possessions inherited by them. Hence the verse: "Three times in the year shall all thy males appear, etc." (Ex. XXXIV, 23) is immediately followed by the verse: "For I will cast out nations before thee and enlarge thy borders" (Ibid. 24); for the Holy One, blessed be He, uproots one group of inhabitants and restores another, and therefore "shall all thy males appear before the Lord God".'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 124b

THE LORD (Adon) GOD. R. Judah said: 'Sometimes the superior aspect of the Deity is called by the lower Name, at other times it is the lower aspect that is given the superior Name. Here, in the phrase "before the Lord God" (ha-ADON TETRAGRAMMATON), the lower term Adon (Lord) is expressive of the superior aspect.

This matter has already been expounded, and expounded in various ways, which, however, all converge into one. Blessed be the Merciful One, blessed be His name for evermore! BEHOLD, I SEND AN ANGEL BEFORE THEE. R. Isaac quoted in this connection the words: "Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth" (S.S. 1, 2), and said: 'It is the Community of Israel who says this (to God). Why does she say "Let Him kiss me" instead of "Let Him love me"? Because, as we have been taught, kissing expresses the cleaving of spirit to spirit; therefore the mouth is the medium of kissing, for it is the organ of the spirit (breath). Hence he who dies by the kiss of God [Tr. Note: According to the Haggadah, Moses and certain other saints died "by the kiss of God".] is so united with another Spirit, with a Spirit which never separates from him. Therefore the Community of Israel prays: "Let Him kiss me with the kisses of His mouth", that His Spirit may be united with mine and never separate from it. The verse continues: "For thy love is better than wine" (Ibid.). Why is the love of the Holy One compared with wine, which was the cause of Ephraim's degradation (Isa. XVIII, 27), and was prohibited to the priests at the time of service (Lev. x, 9)? Said R. Hiya: 'It is better even than the "wine of the Torah".' R. Hezekiah said: 'It is better than the wine of which the Psalmist said that it "maketh glad the heart of man" (Ps. CIV, 15).' R. Judah referred to the verse: "And Jacob kissed Rachel and lifted up his voice and wept" (Gen. XXIX, 11). Why did he weep? Because the intensity of his attachment to her overpowered him, and he found relief in tears. It is true, it also says of Esau that "he kissed him (Jacob) and they wept" (Gen. XXXIV, 4); but as has been said, the word wa-yishakehu (and he kissed him) has (masoretic) dots on it, to indicate the insincerity of Esau's kisses, [Tr. Note: Cf. Aboth de R. Nathan, XXXIII.] for there was no union of spirit with spirit there; and concerning him it is written: "The kisses of an enemy are abundant" (Prov. XXVII, 6; i.e. superfluous, burdensome); they are windy and betoken no attachment of spirit. As long as the Holy One was dwelling and moving in the midst of Israel there was a perfect union between Spirit and spirit; concerning which it is written: "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive to-day" (Deut. IV, 4); they cleaved to one another in every possible manner, and were not separated. But when Moses heard the words, "Behold, I send an angel before thee", he knew that it meant separation, therefore he said: "If thy presence go not, carry us not up hence" (Ex. XXXIII, 15). Said R. Abba: 'Note the verse that immediately precedes, viz., "The first of the firstfruits of thy land thou shalt bring into the house of the Lord Thy God. Thou shalt not see the a kid in his mother's milk." The connection is as follows. This verse indicates that one may not mingle lower grades (the k'lifoith) with higher ones (sefiroth), lest the outer side should imbibe nourishment from the inner one, the one being from the side of impurity and the other from that of holiness. The "mother" here mentioned is the Community of Israel (the Shekinah), who is called Mother, and the "kid" symbolizes the principle of impurity. Therefore God said, "[Since you may indeed cause such separation] behold, I send My angel before thee". But Moses said: "I take this command [not to see the a kid in its mother's milk] as a promise that Thou wilt not

separate from us; therefore, 'if thy presence go not, carry us not up hence'." ' Said R. Eleazar: 'This the Holy One said in order to soothe the fears of Israel, because He loved them. He was like unto a king who always desired to walk with his son and never entrusted him to anybody else. The son once came to his father,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 125a

but felt chary of asking him to go out with him. The latter noticing it, said: "Captain So-and-so will accompany thee upon this way and will take care of thee"; then adding: "Beware of him" (v. 21), for he is somewhat quick-tempered. Then said the son: "If so, either I shall remain here or else thou must come with me; for I shall not separate myself from thee." In a similar fashion the Holy One first said: "Behold, I send an angel before thee, to keep thee in the way. Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not." Then Moses said: "If Thy presence go not, carry us not up hence." ' When R. Simeon came, he found the Companions discussing this subject. Said he: 'Eleazar my son, thou hast spoken well, yet mark this. On this occasion (when God said that He would send an angel) Moses said nothing and did not object, because no separation was implied in the promise. [Tr. Note: i.e. because the Angel here denominates Malkuth.] I have already explained this to the companions. It is true, some understand it just in the opposite way, [Tr. Note: That the Angel here denominates Metatron.] but that is not according to the interpretation of the ancients (although at bottom there is no contradiction between the two). Here, as I have said, Moses did not object, but he did later, when the Holy One again said: "I will send an angel before thee" (Ex. XXXIII, 2), without saying anything more about him. But here we have the additional explanation concerning the character of the angel, for it says: "But if thou shalt indeed obey his (the angel's) voice and do all that I speak", indicating that God would speak through the angel; and similarly it continues, "Then will I be an enemy to thine enemies, and will afflict them that afflict thee", showing that everything depends upon him.' Said R. Judah: 'Should one say that on both occasions it is merely an angel that is referred to, then we have to say that Moses made no objection on the first occasion because he did not see an opportunity, but on the second occasion he did object, saying, "If Thy presence go not, carry us not up hence." ' To which R. Simeon remarked: 'The long and the short of it is that Moses did not desire that an angel should accompany them, therefore he said: "If now I have found grace in thy sight, O Lord, let my Lord, I pray thee, go among us" (Ex. XXIV, 9).' Said R. Judah: 'In regard to R. Abba's interpretation of the words: "Thou shalt not see the a kid in his mother's milk" (v. supra), ought not this passage according to him to have read, "in the mother's" rather than "in his mother's"? For if the "kid" represents the spirit of impurity and the "mother" the Shekinah, dare one thus assert that the Community of Israel (the Shekinah) is the "mother" of the spirit of impurity-the Community of Israel, concerning whom R. Simeon has said that the Holy Mother is the very essence of Israel, part and parcel of her being, as it is written: "For the Lord's portion is his people" (Deut. XXXII, 9)?' R. Simeon replied: 'Your question is

good, and yet R. Abba's remark is correct. See now. Two powers hold fast to the Shekinah, imbibing strength from Her strength, and clinging one to Her right hand and one to Her left. Therefore some incline towards the right and some towards the left, and all depend upon this holy "Mother". But the things of the Left are attached to this Mother only when she herself imbibes from the "other side", and the sanctuary is defiled and the mighty serpent begins to manifest himself. Then "the kid sucks of his mother's milk", and judgement is aroused. For this reason the Israelites hastened to bring the firstfruits, and when the priest had taken the basket of fruit from the hands of an Israelite and set it down before the altar, the latter would begin to recite the story of how Laban ("the Syrian", cf. Deut. XXVI, 5) came with his witchcraft to subject Jacob and his holy descendants, but did not succeed, and Israel was not delivered to the "other side" It is concerning this that it is written: "The first of the firstfruits of thy land thou shalt bring into the house of the Lord Thy God. Thou shalt not see the kid in his mother's milk", so that the "kid", namely the "other side", should not suck the milk of his "mother", and the sanctuary be not defiled, and the severe judgements be not roused. Therefore the holy seed is prohibited to eat flesh together with milk, [Tr. Note: v. Onkelos to Ex. XXIII, 19.] in order that a place in holiness should not be allotted to him who does not belong to it; for on this action the thing depends: the act below affects the activity above. Blessed are the Israelites above all the heathen nations for that their Lord says concerning them: "Ye are the children of the Lord your God"; "Thou art an holy people to the Lord thy God, and the Lord hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto himself above all the nations that are upon the earth" (Deut. XIV, 1, 2). 'It is set forth in the mysteries of King Solomon's book that he who eats a composite of flesh and milk, or drinks milk shortly after eating meat, will appear for a space of forty days to the vision of the accusing angels in the aspect of a slaughtered goat, with myriads of impure powers.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 125b

surrounding him, and he causes unholy judgements to be awakened in the world. And should he beget a son during those forty days, the latter will imbibe his soul and the breath of his spirit from the "other side"..It says: "Ye shall sanctify yourself and ye shall be holy" (Lev. XI, 44), which signifies that he who endeavours to be holy is assisted from above, and, contrariwise, he who defiles himself is drawn on to defilement by the unholy powers, as it is written in the preceding verse (43): "Ye shall not make yourselves unclean... that ye shall be defiled." This is an impurity which is exceedingly gross, and which cannot be done away with by means of purification as can other defilements. Besides, such a person, having come to look, even in outer seeming, like a goat-as we have said-goes in constant fear of wild animals, for the human image has disappeared from both his inner and his outer aspects. R. Jesse used at one time to allow the eating of chicken with cheese or with milk. But R. Simeon said unto him: 'Thou must not permit this, lest thou thereby open the door to evil powers. Does one not say to a Nazirite: "Go away, go away, depart and come not near the

vineyard!”? I say to thee, thou must not do this thing! If thou allowest such prohibited minglings of foods it is as though thou gavest wine unto a Nazarite. It is written: “Thou shalt not eat any abomination” (Deut. XIV, 3), where the word “any” includes every kind and sort of food which is forbidden.’ There is a tradition that Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah were delivered from their trials only because they had not defiled themselves with forbidden food. Said R. Judah: ‘It is written: “And Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king’s meat” (Dan. I, 8), and there is a tradition that the wicked Nebuchadnezzar used, apart from the other strange dishes for which he had a partiality, to eat flesh with milk and cheese with meat. Because Daniel refrained from partaking of such food, when he was thrown into the lions’ den, he attained fully to the image of the Lord, his perfected human form not changing to any other, so that the lions were struck with awe before him and did him no harm. On the other hand, when the wicked Nebuchadnezzar was deprived of his kingdom and he dwelt with the beasts of the field, his human countenance was taken away from him and from that day he did not bear the impress of a man, so that all the beasts of the field considered him as one of themselves, and would readily have devoured him, had it not been that it was decreed from heaven that he should become an object of derision to all men, just as he in his time had “scoffed at kings” (Hab. I, 10). It is written concerning Daniel and his companions that “at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter than the children which did eat the portion of the king’s meat” (Dan. I, 5). This was because the image of their Lord was not removed from them, whereas from those others it was. What was the cause of this? The fact that they did not pollute themselves with the abomination of the prohibited food. Blessed are the Israelites who are called to be a “holy people!” AND TO MOSES HE SAID, COME UP UNTO THE LORD. Who said this? The Shekinah. “Come up unto the Lord”: as it is written, “And Moses went up to God” (Ex. XIX, 3). And for what other purpose was Moses called up? To establish the covenant, for until that time it had not yet been completed because of the incomplete circumcision of the Israelites, as it is written: “There (at Marah) he made for them a statute and an ordinance” (Ex. xv, 25), these referring to the two acts connected with circumcision; “and there he proved them” (Ibid.), that is, when the holy sign of the covenant was manifested in them. Then the covenant was established through Moses, as it is written: “And Moses took the blood and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant...” (Ibid. XXIV, 8). R. Isaac drew attention to the verse: “And Moses took half of the blood and put it in basins; and half of the blood he sprinkled upon the altar” (Ibid. v, 6). The “upon”, said he, ‘is of special significance, indicating that the covenant was made with the highest grade.’ AND WORSHIP YE AFAR OFF. The words afar off contain the same indication as in the verses, “The Lord appeared to me from afar” (Jer. XXXI, 2), and “and his sister stood afar off” (Ex. II, 4): namely, as R. Abba pointed out, that until that time the Moon (that is, the Shekinah) was on the wane, for Her light was obscured from before the eyes of the Israelites; but when that hour was arrived they were made more worthy of their holy portion, and established a holy

covenant with Her and with the Holy One in all His aspects. Why did the Shekinah say to Moses, “Go up to the Lord”? In order that “Israel and I may now, through thy mediation, participate as one being in the Divine perfection, which has not been the case hitherto”. So what did Moses do? He divided the blood into two parts: “half of the blood he sprinkled upon.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 126a

the altar”—according to the significance which we have already revealed—and the other half he sprinkled upon the people and said: “behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you” (v. 8). HE PUT THE BLOOD IN BASINS. This is an allusion to the words: “Thy navel is a round basin” (S.S. VII, 7), which is applied to the Shekinah. AND MOSES ALONE SHALL COME NEAR TO THE LORD. Happy was the lot of Moses in obtaining a privilege vouchsafed to no other mortal! The Israelites, too, attained to more exalted heights than ever before. In that hour they were established in the holy covenant, and given the glad tidings that a sanctuary should be erected in their midst, as it is written: “And let them make me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them” (xxv, 8). AND THEY SAW THE GOD OF ISRAEL, AND THERE WAS UNDER HIS FEET AS IT WERE A PAVED WORK OF A SAPPHIRE STONE. Said R. Judah: ‘It is written: “This thy stature is like to a palm tree” (S.S. VII, 8). What love, indeed, has the Holy One bestowed upon the Community of Israel in that He never separates Himself from her, but is perpetually and perfectly united with her, even as a palm tree in which male and female are one in complete and continual union! See now. When Nadab and Abihu and the seventy elders “saw”, what did they actually see? “They saw the God of Israel”, that is to say, the Shekinah manifested Herself unto them.’ But R. Jose interpreted the demonstrative pronoun *eth* in this verse (“and they saw *eth* the God of Israel”) as denoting something more, over and above R. Judah’s exposition, a kind of extra quality of enlightenment, as it were—although what they saw they saw from a distance. R. Isaac asked: [It says here, “Under his feet was as it were a work of sapphire stone, but Ezekiel said] “This is the living creature (Hayah) which I saw under the God of Israel by the river of Chebar” (Ezek. x, 20). Now, which Hayah is here indicated? R. Jose replied in the name of R. Hiya that the reference is to the little Hayah. [Tr. Note: Metatron.] ‘But is there then such a little Hayah?’ ‘Yes, assuredly there is. There is a little one and a superior one, [Tr. Note: Malkuth.] and there is also a very little one. [Tr. Note: Sandalphon.] As for the last part of the verse which is being treated, namely: “And under His feet as it were a paved work of a sapphire stone”—what was this which they saw? They beheld the precious stone with which the Holy One will build the future Sanctuary, as it is written: “I will lay thy stones with fair colours and lay thy foundations with sapphires” (Isa. LIV, 11).’ HE LAID NOT HIS HAND UPON THE NOBLES OF ISRAEL; AND THEY SAW GOD AND DID EAT AND DRINK. The nobles of Israel refers to Nadab and Abihu: their punishment was postponed. R. Jose declared that these words were said in praise of them, for “they did eat and drink”: that is to say, they feasted their eyes on this splendour. Said R. Judah: ‘It was indeed a true partaking and a

true nourishing, and a most veritable and perfect uniting with the supernal world. Oh, if they only had not later sinned! R. Eleazar said: 'Israel also at that time [Tr. Note: The Zohar evidently adopts the view that the events recorded in this chapter (Ex. XXIV) took place before the giving of the Law. v. Rashi, ad loc.] became qualified for a revelation, and the Shekinah was united with them, and the making of the Covenant and the giving of the Torah all took place at one and the same time; and never again was such a sight vouchsafed to Israel. In the time which is to come the Holy One, blessed be He, will reveal Himself unto His children, so that they shall perceive His full glory eye to eye and face to face, as it is written: "For they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion" (Isa. LII, 8); and it is also written: "And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together" (Ibid. XL, 5).'

TERUMAH

AND THE LORD SPAKE UNTO MOSES SAYING, SPEAK UNTO THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL THAT THEY TAKE ME A HEAVE OFFERING. R. Hiya, on coming to this portion, quoted the verse, "For Jacob hath chosen Kah unto himself, Israel is his costly possession" (Ps. cxxxv, 4). Said he: 'How beloved must Israel be to the Holy One, blessed be He, seeing that He has chosen them and desired to unite Himself with them and be bound up with them, making them a nation unique throughout all the world, as it is written: "Who is like unto thy people Israel, a unique people on earth?" (2 Sam. VII, 23). And they, too, have chosen Him and bound themselves up with Him, as it is written, "Jacob hath chosen Kah unto himself".'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 126b

Yea, for over the other nations He appointed celestial principalities and powers, but reserved Israel for His own special portion.' R. Simeon discoursed on the text: "Who is this (zoth) that looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun and terrible as furnished with banners?" (S.S. VI, 10). He said: 'The words "Who" and "This" denote the two worlds: the "Who" symbolizing the most supernal sphere, the unknowable beginning of all things, and "This" a lower sphere, the so-called "lower world"; and these two are indissolubly linked together. When they first unite, this lower world "looks forth as the dawn" when it is striving to become bright; when they draw closer, it is as "fair as the moon" when the sun's rays beat upon her; and finally it is "like the sun", when its moonlight becomes full. It is then "terrible as furnished with banners"; yea, mighty to protect all, furnished with power from the supernal world, through "Jacob", the "complete one", who united the two worlds as one. He united them above, and he united them below, and from him issued the twelve holy tribes after the supernal pattern. [Tr. Note: i.e. symbolizing the twelve permutations of the Tetragrammaton.] Jacob, who was "a man of completeness" (Gen. xxv, 27), brought harmony to the two worlds, as has been elsewhere explained. [Tr. Note: By marrying Leah and Rachel. v. Zohar, Genesis, 153b.] Other and lesser men, however, who follow Jacob's example (in marrying two sisters) merely "uncover nakedness" (i.e.

dishonour the spirit of righteousness) both above and below, causing antagonism in both worlds, and engendering separation, as it is written: "Neither shalt thou take a wife to her sister in her life time to vex her" (Lev. XVIII, 18). And should it be pointed out that even Jacob was not spared this enmity in wives, as we read that "Rachel was jealous of Leah" (Gen. xxx, I), then would I answer: Surely so! and how could it be otherwise? For the whole longing and the most ardent desire of the lower world (symbolized by Rachel) is to be in all outer seeming like unto the upper world (symbolized by Leah), and to usurp its powers and reign in its stead. So not even Jacob could succeed in bringing perfect harmony into being between them. Other men, therefore (by marrying two sisters), will cause only enmity, separation and chaos, "removing the veil" from the hidden places in regard both to the world above and to the world below. "Who" and "This" are termed "sisters", because they are united in love and sisterly affection. They are also called "mother and daughter". And he who "uncovers their nakedness" shall find no portion in the world to come, nor any part in the Faith.' R. Simeon continued: 'We have a tradition that when the Holy One, blessed be He, created the world, He engraved in the midst of the mysterious, ineffable and most glorious lights, the letters Yod, He, Vau, He, which are in themselves the synthesis of all worlds both above and below. The upper was brought to completion by the influence symbolized by the letter Yod, representing the primordial supernal point which issued from the absolutely hidden and unknowable, the mysterious Limitless (En-Sof). Out of this unknowable issued a slender thread of light which was itself concealed and invisible, but which yet contained all other lights, and which received vibrations from That which does not vibrate and reflected light from That which diffused it not. This slender light in turn gave birth to another light wherein to disport and to conceal itself; and in this light were woven and fashioned six impressions which are not known save to that slender light when it goes in to hide itself and shine through the other light. The light which issues from the slender light is mighty and terrible, and it expands and becomes a world which illumines all succeeding worlds—a hidden and unknown world in which dwell six myriads of thousands of supernal powers and hosts. When the worlds were all completed.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 127a

they were joined into a single organism, and are symbolized by the letter Vau (=six) when it is united with the veiled world. [Tr. Note: Yod, He.] And this is the esoteric meaning of the words, "For Jacob has chosen Kah unto himself." But when the Vau emerges self-contained from the Yod He, then "Israel attains to his costly possession": that is to say, to other men permission has not been granted to penetrate to the higher point (Binah), but only as far as the "costly possession" (Malkuth), which is a lower grade; and from this they can ascend higher in intention but not in actual attainment, as Jacob did.' R. Judah connected this text with the verse: "O, how (mah) great is thy goodness which thou hast hidden for them that fear thee; which thou hast wrought for them that trust in thee before the sons of men!" (Ps. XXXI, 20). 'This

verse', said he, 'has been well enough expounded by the Companions; but the "holy lamp". (R. Simeon) found in it one of the deepest of the esoteric lessons. The supreme grade, esoterically known as "the supernal world", is designated "Mi" ("Who") and the lower grade known as "the lower world" is designated "Mah" ("What?", "How?"), and we have been taught that "Mah" contains an allusion to "meah"- "hundred"- because all the higher grades, when fully realized, are subsumed in it. Why is the world below called "Mah"? Because, although the emergence of the Supernal becomes manifest in that last of all the grades to a greater degree than at any previous stage, it is still mysterious: "What seest thou? What knowest thou?" As to the words "great is Thy goodness", these connote the Foundation of the world, as in the verse, "great goodness towards the house of Israel" (Isa. LXIII, 7). This is here said to be "hidden", because it has been stored away like the primordial light (which is called "good"). The verse continues: "Which Thou has wrought for those who trust in Thee". Yea, for in this Foundation is the fabrication of the whole, of all the world, of souls and spirits; this is the hidden force behind the creation of the (lower) heaven and earth, and this is also the hidden force behind the building of the Tabernacle, which was erected in the likeness both of the world above and of the world below. This is the significance of the words: "that they take me a heave offering": two grades [Tr. Note: Yesod and Malkuth.] become united as one in the Tabernacle which is the emblem of that union.' R. Simeon, R. Eleazar, R. Abba, and R. Jose sat one day under a tree in a valley by the Lake of Genessareth. Said R. Simeon: 'How pleasant is the shade of these trees! Surely the beauty and peace of this place is worthy of being crowned with some exposition of the Torah?' He then began to discourse, saying: 'It is written: "King Solomon made him a palanquin (apiryon) of the trees of Lebanon. He made the pillars thereof of silver, the bottom thereof of gold, the covering of it of purple, the midst thereof being paved with love by the daughters of Jerusalem" (S.S. III, 9, 10). This verse we interpret as follows. Apiryon symbolizes the Palace below which is formed in the likeness of the Palace above. This the Holy One, blessed be He, calls "The Garden of Eden", for He created it in order to satisfy His own ardent desire for joyous and continual communion with the souls of the righteous who have their abode there-these being those souls which have no bodies in this world. These all ascend and are crowned in that place of perfect delight, and have each their appointed places from whence they can perceive the "loveliness of the Lord", and partake of all the delicious streams of pure balsam (aparsamon). This aparsamon symbolizes the hidden Supernal Palace, whereas apiryon is the Palace below, which has no "stay" [Tr. Note: A play on the word semekh, which means both "support," and "the letter S., (Aparsamon = apiryon + the letter samekh).] until it obtains it from the upper Palace..

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 127b

Now the streams of this aparsamon issue forth from the celestial sphere and the souls which have no earthly bodies ascend to imbibe from the light which emerges from them, and to revel therein. As for the souls who are clothed in bodily raiment and garmented with flesh,

they ascend likewise and imbibe nourishment, but from the light of the sphere apiryon, for that is the region which appertains to them: which having done, they descend again. They both give and take. They emit sweet savours from the good works which they have wrought in this world, and they imbibe the aroma which was left in the Garden, and of which it is written: "as the savour of the field which the Lord had blessed" (Gen. XXVII, 27), the "field" being the Garden of Eden. And in this Garden all the souls appear, both those who dwell in earthly bodies and those whose sole being and joy is in the world above. The verse proceeds: "King Solomon made him": that is, He made it for His own glory. Should ye ask, But do not the souls of the righteous share the joy with Him? I would say, Most assuredly! For His joy would be as naught without them, since to have pleasure in their companionship is the very essence of His desire and delight. The term "King Solomon" refers to the King "to whom peace belongs"-namely, the Supernal King: and the term "king" by itself refers to the King Messiah. [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen. 29a.] "The trees of Lebanon" denotes those trees which the Holy One uprooted and planted in another place, as it is written: "the cedars of Lebanon which he hath planted" (Ps. CIV, 16). Of these trees the apiryon was built. And what are these trees, the "trees of Lebanon"? They are the six primordial Days of Creation. Now each of these Days performs in this apiryon [Tr. note: The world of Beriah or "creation".] the part which was assigned to it.

'By the first ordering, the primeval light which was afterwards stored away was taken from the Right Side and brought into the apiryon by means of a certain "Foundation", and performed its function therein. Afterwards the apiryon produced an image in the likeness of that original light, as is indicated by the words, "Let there be light, and there was light" (Gen. I, 3), the repetition of the word "light" denoting that the first light brought forth another light. This was the first day of the "trees of Lebanon".

'By the second ordering, there was drawn from the Left Side the division of waters through the stroke of a mighty fire, which entered into this apiryon and performed its function therein, dividing between the waters of the Right Side and those of the Left; and afterwards the apiryon brought forth an image in the likeness thereof. This was the second day of the "trees of Lebanon".

'By the third ordering, there was drawn from the sphere of the centre and the Right Side a certain third day which made peace in the world and from which were derived the seeds of all things. This performed its function in the apiryon, and brought forth various species, herbs and grasses and trees. Its likeness was left there, and the apiryon brought forth similar species, and this was the third day of the "trees of Lebanon".

'By the fourth ordering, the light of the sun was kindled to illumine the darkness of the apiryon, and it entered therein to give light, but did not perform its function till the fifth day. The apiryon produced in the likeness thereof, and this was the fourth day of those "trees of Lebanon".

'By the fifth ordering, there was produced a certain movement

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 128a

in the waters, which laboured to bring forth the light of the ordering of the fourth day, and it performed its function in the apiryon and brought forth various species; and all remained in suspense until the sixth day, when the apiryon brought forth all that was stored in it, as it is written, "Let the earth bring forth living creature after its kind, etc." (Gen. 1, 24). This was the fifth day of the "trees of Lebanon".

'The sixth ordering was the day on which the apiryon came into completion, and apart from that sixth day of Creation it can have neither completion nor life-energy. But when that day was at length arrived the apiryon was completed, with many spirits, many souls, many beautiful virgins, [Tr.note: The Hekaloth.] privileged to abide in the Palace of the King. In the completion of this day the previous five days are completed also, and the upper and lower spheres are perfectly united in friendship, in joy, and in one ardent desire for the companionship of their King. Thus was the apiryon sanctified with supernal sanctifications and crowned with its crowns, until finally it was exalted with the Crown of Rest and was designated with a noble name, a name of holiness, to wit, Sabbath, which presages rest and peace, the perfect harmonization of all things both above and below. That is the significance of the words, "The King Solomon made him an apiryon out of the trees of Lebanon." He who is worthy of this Apiryon is worthy of all things, is worthy to repose in the peace of the Holy One's shadow, as it is written: "I sat down under his shadow with great delight" (S.S. II, 3). And now, as we ourselves here sit under the shadow of this peace, it behoves us to observe that we really abide in the shadow of the Holy One, within that Apiryon, and remain for ever there: and we must crown this place with supernal crowns, so that the trees of that Apiryon may be induced to cover us with a shade yet more comforting.'

So they began to discourse upon holy and supernal matters. R. Simeon first spoke, saying: 'It is written: "They shall take me a heave offering: on the part of everyone whose heart is willing ye shall take my offering." "They shall take Me." This signifies that he who aspires towards piety and fellowship with the Holy One, blessed be He, must not be lax or remiss in his devotion, but must be ready and willing to bring sacrifices according to his strength: "according as the Lord God hath blessed thee" (Deut. XVI, 10). True, it is written, "Come ye, buy wine and milk without money and without price" (Isa. LV, 1), and this in reference to work on behalf of the Holy One. But this only indicates that, whereas knowledge of the Holy One and of His Torah can be acquired without price or fee, the doing of good works for the sake of Heaven requires sacrifice and must be "paid for" with full price; otherwise the doer is not worthy to draw down unto himself the spirit of holiness from above. In the book of sorcery from which Ashmedai taught King Solomon, it is written that he who desires to remove from himself the spirit of impurity and to subdue that spirit, must be prepared to pay in return for the fulfilment of his wishes whatever is

demand. For the spirit of impurity tempts the heart of man with many allurements, in order to take up its abode with him. But the spirit of holiness is not so: it demands a full price and strenuous effort, purification of one's self and one's dwelling, devotion of heart and soul; and even so one will be lucky to win it to take up its abode with him. Therefore one must beware and walk straitly according to the paths and ways of righteousness, turning neither to the right hand nor to the left; for otherwise, even if it had entered into a man, it will straightway depart from him, and thereafter it will indeed be passing hard to recall it again. Hence the expression, "Let them buy ("lakah" also means "to buy") unto Me". OF EVERY MAN: from everyone deserving the name of "man", that is, from everyone who prevails over his evil inclination. "That giveth it willingly, with his heart"-namely,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 128b

he with whom the Holy One is well pleased, for He-the Lord-is Himself the "Heart", as it is written: "My heart said to thee" (Ps. XXVII, 9); "the rock of my heart" (Ibid. LXXIII, 21) so also here, "Ye should take me a heave offering from him with whom I am well pleased", for there alone can the acceptable sacrifice be found, and in no other place soever. And how may one recognize a person with whom the Holy One is pleased and in whom He has His abode? When we observe that a man endeavours to serve the Holy One in joy, with his heart, soul and will, then we can be quite sure that the Shekinah has Her abode in him. Such a man is worthy to be well paid for his teaching and companionship. Therefore the ancients said: "Buy thee a companion" (i.e. teacher). [Tr.note: Pirke Aboth, I, 6.] Buy him for a good price, in order to merit the Shekinah's presence. Therefore also one must pursue and run after the sinner and "buy" him for a good price, in order that the filth of sin may be purged away from him and the spirit of impurity, the emanation of the "other side", be subdued. He who succeeds in redeeming such a sinner can justly consider himself the "creator" of the renewed and quickened soul, and such an act is the greatest praise (of God) imaginable, and it exalts the glory of the Holy One, blessed be He, more than any other circumstance or deed imaginable. Why so? Because by his action in turning the sinner from wickedness he helps to bring into subjection the "other side". Therefore it says of Aaron: "And he turned many from sin" (Mal. II, 6), and hence, "My covenant was with him, life and peace" (Ibid. 5). See now. He who seeks a sinner takes him by the hand, and induces him to give up his evil way, such a one is elevated as none other can be, yea, even with three particular deserts, namely by his causing the "other side" to be subdued, by magnifying the glory of the Holy One, and by sustaining, through the merit of his good works, the very equilibrium of the worlds, both the upper and the lower spheres. Concerning such a man it is written: "My covenant was with him: life and peace." He will be worthy to see his children's children; he is worthy to enjoy this world and the world to come, and none of the lords of judgement shall retain any power whatsoever over him to chastise him, either in this world or in the world to come. He will pass through twelve gates (of the firmament), and none will hinder him. Concerning such a one it is written: "His seed shall be mighty upon

earth, the generation of the upright shall be blessed... His righteousness endureth for ever. Unto the righteous there ariseth light in the darkness" (Ps. CXII, 2-4).

'In a certain Upper Chamber there are three colours which burn in one flame. The flame emanates from the South, which is the Right Side. The three mysterious colours which compose this flame proceed in three separate directions: one goes upward, one down, and one flickers, appearing and disappearing when the sun shines. The colour which ascends is the first to appear. It is of a whiteness more dazzling than any known. It enters into the flame and is a little absorbed into it, though without losing its identity. It rests upon the top of that Chamber, and when the Israelites enter the synagogues and pray, as soon as they are arrived at the end of the Geulah (Redemption) prayer- namely, at the words, "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who redeemest Israel" and go straight on to the Amidah prayer- the white and lucent colour descends upon the top of the Chamber and weaves a crown of the prayers of the people; and a herald rises in the Heavenly courts and proclaims: "Blessed are ye, holy people, for that ye perform (make) good (tob)" [Tr.note: Here a synonym for the Sefirah, Yesod or Zaddik.] before the face of the Holy One, blessed be He!" This is the inner significance of the words, "I have done what is good in thine eyes" (Isa. XXXVIII, 3): namely, that King Hezekiah connected by his devotions "Redemption" with "Prayer". For when the praying people have reached the words "praises to the supreme God" (in the last hymn before the "Eighteen Benedictions") and the white brightness rests, as we have said, upon the top of that Chamber, the Zaddik is aroused to join the appropriate Place in love and joy, and all the "limbs" are united as one in one desire, the higher with the lower, and all the celestial lights sparkle and glow with divine supernal fire, and all are united in this Righteous who is designated "Good", as it is written, "Say ye to the righteous that he is good" (Isa. III, 10). And He unites them all in the silence of perfect joy, and kisses of friendship; and everything is united in the Chamber. And when the worshippers arrive at the prayer "Grant abundant peace" (at the end of the "Eighteen Benedictions"), the "River that goes out of Eden" does his service in this Assembly and all must take leave from the King, and no human being nor any other created thing may thereafter be found in that Presence, nor may any petitionary prayers be prayed then,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 129a

but one must "fall upon the countenance" (say propitiatory prayers). Why? Because that time is the time of service, and every being that dwells upon the earth must stand abashed before his Lord, covering his face in great awe, and let his soul join the service of the souls which are contained in that Chamber. Then the colour which descends hovers over the lower part of the Assembly, and another herald appears, like unto the first, and he cries with a loud voice: "Ye upper and lower beings! Bring witness of him who, by reclaiming sinners becomes a 'maker of souls', that he deserves to be crowned and is worthy to enter now into the presence of the King and the Matrona, because the King and the Matrona enquire after him!" Then two witnesses who are among the number of the "eyes of

the Lord which run to and fro through the whole earth" (Zech. IV, 10), and who stand behind the curtain, emerge therefrom and testify, saying: "We testify indeed for that man." Blessed is his lot, for on his account his father shall be blessed and remembered into good, because he has re-made souls in the earthly sphere-souls even of sinners who had been captured by the "other side". Thus is the glory of the Holy One exalted in perfect joy. Then an angel appears who is the storekeeper of the celestial figures of the righteous, and this angel's name is Jehudiam because of his office ("over the people of the Jews") and he is crowned with a crown on which is engraven the Holy Name. The Holy One makes him a sign and he comes forward, bearing the image of the man who has reclaimed souls of sinners, and places it before the King and the Matrona. And I bring heaven and earth to witness that at that moment they deliver to him that figure; for there is no righteous person in the world whose image is not engraved in heaven under the authority of that angel. Seventy keys also are delivered into his hand-keys of all the treasures of the Lord. Then the King blesses that image with all the blessings wherewith He blessed Abraham when he reclaimed the souls of sinners. Then the Holy One, blessed be He, gives a sign to four groups of supernal beings, who take that image and show it seventy hidden worlds of which none are worthy except those who have reclaimed the souls of sinners. If only the sons of men knew and perceived what rewards follow the endeavours of the righteous to save sinners, they would assuredly run after them with the same ardour with which they run after life itself. A poor man's benefactor gains many good things, many supernal treasures, because he helps him to exist; but even he cannot be compared to him who endeavours to save the soul of a sinner. For the latter causes the breaking of the power of the "other side", of the "other gods"; he is the cause of the Holy One's exaltation on His Throne of Glory. He gives the sinner a new soul. Happy indeed is his lot!

'The second colour, which is both hidden and revealed, appears in its full glory at the moment when the Israelites are arrived at the Kedushah (Sanctus) of the Order of Prayer, [Tr.note: The Kedushah which occurs in the prayer, "And a redeemer shall come unto Zion."] for this is the sanctification which the children of Israel pronounce over and above those uttered by the supernal angels whose associates they are. This colour shows itself all the time that Israel are pronouncing that sanctification in order to defend the Israelites from the angels, who otherwise would take note of them and call down punishment upon them from above. Then a herald appears and proclaims with a loud voice: "Ye who are above and ye who are below, remove all such as are haughty because of their learning!" For we are taught that man must be humble in this world in regard to his knowledge of the Torah; only in the future world is the pride of learning permitted. In this Kedushah we must be on guard and hide our knowledge in quietness among ourselves, [Tr.note: By saying it in Aramaic.] more than in those which we say in company with the angels. [Tr.note: The Kedushah in the benediction, "Fashioner of light,,, and the Kedushah in the Amidah.] in one of these we praise those self-same angels, and for this they permit us to pass through the upper gates.

Also we recite it

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 129b

in the holy language (Hebrew); for this reason, too, they permit us to pass through the heavenly gates; and by means of the next sanctification we enter into still higher gates. It might be said that we deceive the angels by thus praising them. But this deception is permissible, for the heavenly angels are holier than we, and are able to derive and imbibe greater stores of holiness, and were we not to have an extra sanctification we would be unable to associate with them in any fellowship or communion of praise, and the glory of the Holy One, blessed be He, would so be prevented from coming into completion throughout both the upper and lower spheres at one and the same time. Therefore we endeavour to make ourselves their associates, in order that the glory of the Holy One, blessed be He, may be exalted in all the spheres. The Kedushah which comes at the end [Tr.note: 'In the prayer, "And a redeemer shall come unto Zion."'] is in Aramaic, and this may be recited even by an individual—that is privately—but the Hebrew words of the Kedushah proper, which is in Hebrew, must only be recited in a congregation of ten persons or more, because the Shekinah unites Herself with the holy tongue, and all sanctifications with which the Shekinah is connected can be uttered only in the presence of at least ten persons, for it is written: "And I shall be sanctified in the midst of the children of Israel" (Lev. XXII, 32). The term "children of Israel" further implies that such a sanctification must be in the holy tongue, which is Israel's, the other nations speaking other languages. It may be objected: "Why, then, must the Kaddish, which is in Aramaic, be recited only in the presence of ten persons?" The answer is, that the sanctification expressed in the Kaddish is unlike the sanctification of the thrice-repeated "Holy, Holy, Holy", for this prayer, the Kaddish, ascends into all sides and all spheres both above and below, and to every side of Faith, [Tr.note: i.e. the Sefiroth.] and breaks down iron walls and weighty seals and all the shells [Tr.note: 'The k'lifoth.] and defences of evil, so that by its merits the glory of the Holy One, blessed be He, is more greatly exalted than through any other prayer, because it causes the power of the "other side" to wane and its empire to decline; and therefore it must be said in Aramaic, which is the language of the "other side", and one should respond in a loud voice and with a firm spirit: "Amen, May His great Name be blessed", in order that the power of the "other side" may be quelled and the Holy One be exalted in His glory above all things. And when the power of the "other side" is thus vanquished and broken by the power of holiness expressed in the Kaddish, then the Holy One is exalted in glory and remembers His children, and remembers His Name. So because of His exaltation this prayer must be recited in the presence of ten. Blessed for ever is the holy people to whom the Holy One gave the holy Torah in order that they might be made worthy, by her aid, of the world to come.'

Then R. Simeon turned to the companions and said: 'Ye are worthy of the world to come; therefore, because we have begun to discourse upon matters concerned with the Crown of the supernal Kingdom, I shall

continue to speak on your behalf in regard to the same subject, and the Holy One will assuredly reward you in the sphere of that Kingdom. And the breath of your mouths will ascend into heaven, as if ye yourselves had stirred up these words.' Then he continued, saying:

AND THIS IS THE OFFERING WHICH YE SHALL TAKE OF THEM: GOLD AND SILVER AND BRASS. This verse applies both to the higher side, the side of holiness, and to the lower, the "other" side. Observe that when the Holy One created the world, He began to create from the side of silver, that is, Mercy, which is the right side, because that silver was above; but in the work of the Tabernacle, which was built according to its prototype (the universe), He began His creation from the left side and then proceeded to the right side, because the Tabernacle was from the left side.

'It is written: "Morning and evening and at noon will I pray and cry aloud" (Ps. LV, 17). We have referred on another occasion to this verse. It speaks of three seasons for prayer, and the companions have interpreted the significance of the three times in the following way: "Evening" is the mirror which has no radiance, "morning" the radiant mirror, while "noon" is symbolic of a place which should properly be called "darkness", because it adjoins the evening, only it is designated by the very opposite by a certain elegance of language, just as, on occasion, black

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 130a

is called white, while sometimes white is called black; we read, for instance, of Moses' wife that she was black (Num. XII, 1), and Israel are compared to the Aethiopians (Amos IX, 7). The evening prayer is not obligatory, and there is no fixed time for it, because the evening is influenced by the "other side", which is dark and rules by night. The limbs and fatty portions of sacrifices used to be burnt on the altar in the evening, and from that moment numbers of groups of demons which issue and have sway by night receive their nourishment. It may be said, have we not been taught that the messengers of the "other side", of the spirit of impurity, had by rights no power in the Holy Land, and so if by this means the Israelites were to rouse them, would they not be doing something forbidden? The answer would be that the smoke of those parts was wont to ascend, not as the smoke of other sacrifices, which did ascend in a straight line heavenward: for these fumes rose and dispersed into a cavern in the North, where dwell all the hosts of evil spirits, and when the smoke arose, as we have said, as it floated upward in a crooked line towards that place, all those malevolent beings would feed on it, and so would remain where they were, dispersing not throughout the earth. One particular evil spirit was appointed over the others in that northerly cavern: his name was Synegoria, [Tr. note: 'Lit. "advocacy, justification,.. Perhaps a corruption for Sangorin (from sanguis), "bloodthirsty".] and when the smoke began to ascend crookedly and to draw near, he and sixty thousand myriads of other spirits would rise up to meet it in order to imbibe nourishment therefrom. They would stand within their cavern and then pass through the door called "keri" (lit. defilement). It is to this door that there is an allusion in the words, "If ye walk contumaciously

(in keri) unto me, then will I also walk contumaciously unto you" (Lev. XXVII, 24, 25); that is, the wrath and anger which come out from that door called Keri will be wreaked on those who walk contumaciously. These are the spirits who roam about by night. When the souls of the righteous emerge from the earth into the upper spaces in order to ascend heavenward, these same spirits also appear and contend with them, in order to prevent them from reaching and entering their heavenly habitation and rest. And, indeed, they bar the way to all save only the souls of the most supreme saints, which break through all firmaments and aethers until they reach the highest sphere. The demoniac hosts speak lying words to the children of men, disguising themselves in other forms, and seducing them till they defile themselves. But at the time when the limbs and the fat of the offerings were burnt, the smoke provided them a full repast of the kind suited to their station, and being busy with this they forgot to come forth and roam about the Holy Land. Now the evening prayer, as I have said, is not obligatory, because these bands of demons participate in the dominion of the night, and only Jacob was able to fix it. However, although the evening prayer is not legally obligatory, yet it has a protective influence against the terrors of the night, against the fear of Gehenna, for at night the wicked receive a punishment double that which is executed upon them by day. Therefore the Israelites introduce the evening prayer for weekdays with the verses: "And he is merciful, he forgiveth iniquity, and destroyeth not: yea, many a time he turneth his anger away, and doth not stir up all his wrath" (Ps. LXXVIII, 28). This is recited because of the fear of Gehenna. But on Sabbath, when there is no fear of the punishment of Gehenna nor of any judgement, one may not recite these verses lest he thus awaken the evil spirits, causing them to appear and become active. To counteract the fear of the accuser and slanderer of souls we conclude the Hashkibenu prayer ("Cause us, O Lord, to lie down in peace") with the words: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who guardest Thy people Israel for ever. Amen". To counteract the fear of the many devils and accusers which are present in the night and have power to injure anyone who leaves his house at that time, we say: "Guard our going out and our coming in unto life and unto peace." From the fear of all these things we deliver in trust our bodies, souls and spirits to Heaven above, to the Supernal Kingdom which has dominion over all of them. Therefore we recite every night the evening prayers, performing all this to counteract the mysterious influences of the evil spirits now that there are no sacrifices to keep them at bay. At midnight, when the north wind awakens, it beats against all the abodes of those malevolent spirits, cracking in twain a gigantic mighty rock, the stronghold of the "other side", and rushes about everywhere, both above and below; and all

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 130b

the evil demons return to their places, for their power is then broken and they have no influence. Then the Holy One, blessed be He, enters the Garden of Eden to have joyous fellowship with the righteous, as has been related before. When morning comes, the light of the lamp which rules the midnight hours hides before the light of the day. The morning has now full sway and

dominion and the reign of the night is past. This is the morning of primaeval light, the morning which sheds beneficence throughout all the worlds. From it all celestial and terrestrial beings imbibe nourishment. It waters the Garden with supernal dew. It guards the whole Universe. Here is a mystery which is entrusted to "those who know the measures" of things spiritual. He who has to set out on a journey in the morning should rise at break of day and at a certain specially ordained moment turn and look towards the east. He will then behold a kind of letters which break through the surface of the sky, some ascending and some descending. These are flashed forth from those letters with which the heavens and the earth were created. If the watcher is cognizant of the mystery of the letters which form the mystic Holy Name of forty-two letters, and if he should in this hour be mindful of them with devout intent, with a loving heart, then will he behold in the luminous heaven six Yods, three upon the right side and three upon the left; also three Vaus, which ascend and descend and sparkle in the firmament. These are the number of the initial letters of the words of the priestly blessing. He should then say his morning prayers and set forth upon his journey, because, verily, the Shekinah Herself goes before him; happy is his lot! When morning arrives, a mysterious pillar appears in the South, in that portion of the firmament beneath which the Garden of Eden is stretched: this is a different pillar from the one which is in the midst of the Garden. The pillar set in the South flashes with the brightness of three colours, purple-woven. On that pillar there is a branch, on which three birds sit, chirping hymns of praise. One begins: "Hallelukah! Praise, O ye servants of the Lord, praise the Name of the Lord!" The second then takes up the chant thus: "Blessed be the Name of the Lord from this time forth and for evermore." Then the third sings: "From the rising of the sun until the going down of the same the Lord's Name is to be praised" (Ps. CXIII, 1-3). Then a herald proclaims: "Prepare yourselves, O ye supernal saints, who sing praises to your Lord! Prepare yourselves for the praisegiving of the day, when day separates itself from night! Happy is the lot of him who rises in the morning from the praise of the Torah which has engrossed him in the night watches." Then it is time for morning prayer.

'It is written: "The burden of Dumah. He calleth to me out of Seir, Watchman, what of the night? Watchman, what of the night? The watchman said, The morning cometh, and also the night: If ye will inquire, inquire ye: return, come" (Is. XXI, 11). This verse has been explained in references to Israel's exile in Seir (i.e. Edom=Rome). Israel says to the Holy One: "Watchman, what of the night?" meaning, "What will become of us in this exile, which is like the darkness of night?" Says the watchman, namely, the Holy One: "The morning hath come once (in the Egyptian exile) when I made My light to shine unto you, when I liberated you, when I ordained you for My service, when I gave you the Torah in order that you might achieve eternal life, but ye have forsaken My Torah", and therefore came also the "night" of this present exile. If ye will inquire from "the book of the Lord" (Ibid. XXXIV, 16) and read therein, ye will find there the reason and cause of your exile and the means of redemption. If you so inquire there, the Book will call

upon you, "Return with a perfect repentance and come near to Me". A more esoteric explanation is as follows. First, in regard to the word "burden", it should be noted that there were six grades in the divine revelation to the prophets: "appearance" (mahzeh), "vision" (hazon), "revelation" (hezyon), "aspect" (hazuth), "word", and "burden". The first five aspects are all like unto the vision of one who beholds a reflection of light from behind a wall, and some of them are as the vision of one who sees the light of the sun through a lantern. But "burden" signifies that the light came with great difficulty, and was barely revealed. Here it was even a "burden of silence" (dumah), for which no words could be found. "He calleth to me from Seir." It does not say who calleth whom-whether the Holy One calls to the prophet, or the prophet to the Holy One. But there can be no doubt that the prophecy hints at the secret of faith, and that the faithful prophet is recording how the voice of the mystic object of faith called to him, to wit: "He calleth to me out of Seir".

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 131a

Similarly it says elsewhere: "And he rose up out of Seir to them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2), not to Seir, the reason being that the mystic object of Faith is contained in grades within grades, each more recondite than the other; shell within shell, brain within brain. We have referred to this fact in regard to the vision of Ezekiel: "A whirlwind came out of the North, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, and a brightness was about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire. Also out of the midst thereof the likeness of four living creatures" (Ezek. I, 3-5). Grades within grades, as we have said. In the same manner the Holy One, blessed be He, revealed Himself to Israel: "He came from Sinai"-this was the most hidden grade of revelation; "He rose up from Seir unto them"-this was a second, a more open revelation, the shell nearest to the brain; "He shined forth from Mount Paran"-this was still another aspect of revelation. Then it says, "He came with ten thousands of holy beings" (cf. Deut. *ibid.*). This is the highest praise, that, although He revealed Himself in all these grades, yet the commencement of the revelation was from the place which is the root of all, to wit, "the thousands of holy beings"-the last supernal grade. So here, "Seir" is the grade cleaving to the highest. The "watchman" mentioned here is Metatron, the ruler of the night. It is written: "Watchman, what of the night (laylah)? Watchman, what of the night (lail)?" What is the difference between laylah and lail? They are one and the same, only in one part of the night the "other side" reigns and in the other it has no such sway; "lail" requires guarding, therefore it lacks the letter he at the end, it is the early part of the night before midnight, "the night (lail) of watchings" (EX. XII); from midnight on it is laylah (cf. Ps. CXXXIX, I3). "The watchman" here is Metatron, who said: "The morning cometh"-the morning prayer which rules the night. One must not suppose that it comes by itself, the male being so separated from the female, for it says, "And also the night": not so, for they are perpetually together and are never separated. And the voice proclaimed this: "The morning cometh and also the night." "Both are prepared for you. From now on if ye would pray your prayers, in supplication before the Holy King-do so. Return to your

Lord, and come!" Even as a father is prepared to receive his prodigal children and to have mercy on them, the Holy One, morning and night, calls unto His children, saying: "Come!" Happy is the holy people whose Lord seeks them and beckons them to come unto Him. Because of that honouring and favour the holy people must unite and come to the Synagogue; and he who comes first unites himself with the Shekinah in one bond. Indeed, blessed is he who is found first in the Synagogue, for he stands in the grade of "Righteous" along with the very Shekinah Herself. This is the inner meaning of the words, "Those who seek me early will find me" (Prov. VIII, 17). He indeed reaches a high degree. But, it may be objected, we have been taught that when the Holy One, blessed be He, enters a Synagogue and finds there less than the ten requisite male persons, He is angry; how, then, canst thou say that the one who comes first is united with the Shekinah and is in the grade of "Righteous"? The following parable will explain. A King issued an order to the citizens of his capital, to meet him one and all at a certain place and at a certain time. While the rest were still making ready, one hastened to present himself at the appointed place. Then the King came and found him waiting. He asked him where the rest of the citizens were. The man answered: "My Lord King, I, as thou seest, have arrived first, but my fellow-townsmen are upon the road and will soon be here as well, according to Your Majesty's command". This pleased the King, and he entered into conversation with the man and became quite friendly with him. In the meantime

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 131b

the others arrived and the King received them graciously and sent them away in peace. Now had no man been swift and prompt to obey the command of his lord, and to inform him of the near approach of his neighbours, would not the King have been much wroth? Similarly, when the Shekinah comes and finds in the Synagogue one person who has arrived there before anyone else, it is to Her even as though all were indeed present, for the Holy Shekinah joins company with him and together they wait for the others to come, that the prayers may be started. She becomes closely acquainted with him, and promotes him to the grade of "Righteous". But if no one had come in time, she would have said, "Why, when I came, was there no man?" (Isa. L, 2); and note that it does not say "there were no ten men," but "no man", meaning, "There was no one man waiting to unite himself with Me and become My companion and friend, to be a 'man of God' in the grade of Righteous." Moreover, if one day the favoured man is missing, She is greatly concerned, and makes inquiries about him, as it is written: "Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant...?" (Isa. L, 10). As we have pointed out, "His servant" is Metatron, who calls from "Seir" to men to repent and pray. Therefore, as we have said, he who comes early to the Synagogue merits the grade "Righteous".

'When morning comes and the congregation is assembled in the Synagogue, service must begin with hymns and psalms of David. We have already made clear that the purpose of the liturgy is to stir up Mercy

and Lovingkindness both in the higher and lower range, to bring into being redemptive acts, and to awaken joy; and this was the essential significance of the Levitic service, namely to awaken love and joy above by means of song and praise. Woe unto him who engages in conversation of a secular nature in the Synagogue, for he causes separation, he weakens the Faith. Woe unto him, for he has no part in the God of Israel, since by his lack of awe before the Divine Presence he as much as denies the reality thereof, contemning the influence of the power which comes from above. For when Israel is occupied with the singing of psalms and hymns of praise and with prayer, three groups of supernal angels also assemble. One consists of holy beings who praise Him in the day-time- for there are also those who praise Him at night-in company with the Israelites; the second group consists of those holy angels who are always present in the midst of Israel at every Sanctus, and who have sway over all those celestial beings who are roused by Israel's sanctifications here below; the third celestial host is composed of those "virgins" whose office is to be maids of honour to the Shekinah, and to prepare Her to meet the King. These are the most supreme groups of angels, who join the worshippers in their singing of the Psalms of King David. When the Israelites have ended their singing of the Psalms of David, they sing the song of Moses ("The Song of the Sea"). Why do the Psalms of David come before the Song of the Sea? Does not the "written Torah" (the Pentateuch) take precedence of the Oral Law, and even of the Prophets and the Writings, of which latter the Psalms form a part? The reason is that just because of its importance above all other hymns and because the Community of Israel cannot be perfected except by means of the written Torah,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 132a

it must be recited in close proximity to the prayer said when seated. At the hour when the Song of the Sea is recited the Community of Israel is crowned with the crown wherewith the Holy One, in the time that is to be, will crown the King Messiah. That crown is engraved with Holy Names, those same Names which glittered as crowns of fire upon the head of the Holy One Himself on the day when Israel crossed the Sea and Pharaoh and his hosts were drowned therein. Therefore that song must be recited with special devoutness, and he who is able to recite this hymn in the present world will be found worthy to behold King Messiah in the hour of His crowning and to sing then this song of redemption. All this is beyond dispute.

"When the Yishtabah hymn is reached, the Holy One takes this crown and sets it before Him, and the Community of Israel prepares herself to meet her King. She must be attended by the thirteen attributes of the Divine Mercy wherewith she is blessed. These are the thirteen aspects of praise, enumerated during the course of that hymn: song, praise; hymn and psalm; strength and dominion; victory, power and greatness; adoration and glory; holiness-these together make twelve, and unto these is added Malkuth- sovereignty-which is the thirteenth, and whose office is to unite all the rest in one bond, for it (Sovereignty) receives blessings from the others. Because of these things the

worshipper must concentrate his whole mind upon these thirteen attributes, and be careful not to disturb their sacred unity by conversing between the lines of the hymn. Anyone who should so disturb that unity by secular talk causes a flame to emerge from under the wings of the Cherubim, which cries out with a mighty voice: "Here is a man who has cut short the praise of the Holy One's majesty! Let him be himself cut short, so that he should not behold the glorious majesty of the Holy King!" as it is written: "And seeth not the majesty of the Lord" (Isa. XXVI, 10). For those thirteen attributes are the majesty of the Lord. From then on He is "the God to whom thanksgivings are due" (a part of the above hymn). He is the supernal King to whom perfect peace belongs; for all these praises come from the Community of Israel here below, a "song of songs" directed towards "Solomon" (Shelomoh), namely to the King to whom peace (shalom) belongs.

"Then follows the Yozer benediction: "Blessed art Thou... who formest light, and createst all things", the initial letters of the words of one verse of which contain the twenty-two letters of the Alphabet, the small letters, that is-for there are large letters and small, of which-the small ones represent the Divine activity in the lower world, and the large ones the world to come.... [Note: The last 20 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in our translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 132b

Note: The Hebrew text on this page is not translated.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 133a

Note: The first 17 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in our translation.]

"It is written: "And she (the Shunammite) said unto her husband, Behold now, I know that this is an holy man of God which passeth by us continually. Let us make a little chamber on the wall, and let us set before him a bed, and a table, and a stool, and a candlestick" (2 Kings IV, 9, 10). Here we have an allusion to the order of prayer. "Behold now, I know" refers to the concentration of mind during prayer; "that he is an holy man of God" refers to the supernal world which sitteth upon its Throne of Glory and from whence emanate all sanctifications and which sanctifies all worlds; "passeth by us continually" with the sanctification wherewith the worlds above are nourished, he also sanctifies us here below, for there can be no completion of the sanctification above without sanctification below, as it is written: "I shall be sanctified in the midst of the children of Israel" (Lev. XXII, 32). Therefore, "let us make a little chamber": let us have an ordered service as a stay for the Shekinah, who is called "wall", as in the verse, "And Hezekiah turned his face to the wall" (Isa. XXXVIII, 2). This stay created by our prayers and praises consists of a bed, a table, a stool, and a candlestick. By our evening prayers we provide Her with a bed; by our hymns of praise and by reciting the section of the sacrifice in the morning we provide Her with a table. By the morning prayers, which are said sitting, and with the proclamation of the Divine Unity (the Shema), we provide Her with a stool; and by means of those prayers which must be said standing ('Amidah) and of

the Kaddish and Kedushah prayers and benedictions we provide Her with a candlestick. Blessed is the man who thus endeavours daily to give hospitality to the Holy One. Blessed is he in this world and blessed shall he be in the world to come. For these four groups of prayers equip the Shekinah with beauty, joy and lustre, to greet Her Spouse with delight and ecstasy day by day, through the worship of the holy people. The “bed” was given to Jacob to prepare, therefore he ordered the evening prayer; the “table” was prepared by King David in the Psalms which he wrote (“Thou preparest a table before me” (Ps. XXIII, 5)); the “stool” was prepared by Abraham, through his close union with the Lord, wherewith he benefited the souls of all the sons of men. The candlestick

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 133b

was prepared by Isaac, who sanctified the Name of the Holy One before the eyes of the whole world, and lighted the supernal light in that sanctification. Therefore the Holy People must direct its mind towards the supernal world, and prepare for the Lord of the House a bed, a table, a stool, and a candlestick, in order that perfection and harmony may reign undisturbed every day, both above and below.

‘At the time when Israel is proclaiming the unity-the mystery contained in the Shema-with a perfect intention, a light comes forth from the hidden supernal world, which divides into seventy lights, and those seventy lights into the seventy luminous branches of the Tree of Life. Then the Tree and all the other trees of the Garden of Eden emit sweet odours and praise their Lord, for at that time the Matrona prepares Herself to enter under the shade of the canopy, there to unite herself with her Spouse; and all the supernal potencies unite in one longing and one will to be united in perfect union, without any separation soever. Then the Spouse makes ready likewise to enter the Canopy in order to unite Himself with the Matrona. Therefore we proclaim loudly: “Hear, O Israel; prepare thyself, for thy Husband has come to receive thee.” And also we say: “The Lord our God, the Lord is one”, which signifies that the two are united as one, in a perfect and glorious union, without any flaw of separation to mar it. As soon as the Israelites say, “The Lord is One”, to arouse the six aspects, these six unite each with each and ascend in one ardour of love and desire. The symbol of this is the letter Vau (because its numerical value is six) when it stands alone without being joined to any other letter. Then the Matrona makes herself ready with joy, and adorns herself with delight, and Her attendants accompany Her, and in hushed silence She encounters her Spouse; and Her handmaids proclaim, “Blessed be the Name of the Glory of His Kingdom for ever and ever.” These words are said in a whisper, for so she must be introduced to her Spouse. Blessed is the people which perceives these things, ordering its prayers in accordance with this mystery of the Faith! At the time when the Spouse is united with the Matrona a herald comes forth from the south, crying: “Awaken, O ye supernal hosts, and unfurl the banners of love in honour of your Lord!” Then one of the leaders of the celestial array-he whose name is Boel (God is in him)-stands forth, and in his hands are four keys which he obtained one from each of the four corners of the earth.

One key has upon it the sign of the letter Yod engraved; the second the letter He’; and the third the letter Vau; and these three keys he lays beneath the boughs of the Tree of Life. Then these three become one. Then the fourth and last key, which bears upon it the second letter He’, joins the three which have become one. And all the angelic hosts enter by means of those keys into the Garden of Eden, where with one voice they proclaim the Divine unity at the selfsame moment as it is proclaimed here below. Then the Shekinah, the Bride, is conducted to the Palace of the King, Her Bridegroom, for now He stands complete in all His supernal goodness and can supply Her with all that She needs. Thus her attendants bring Her in unto Him in silence. Why in silence? In order that no “stranger” (evil potencies) should participate in her joy. As He united Himself above according to six aspects, so also She unites Herself below according to six other aspects, so that the oneness may be completed,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 134a

both above and below, as it is written: “The Lord will be One, and his Name One” (Zech. XIV, 9): Six words above-Shema Israel TETRAGRAMMATON Elohehu TETRAGRAMMATON ehad, corresponding to the six aspects, and six words below-baruk shem kevod malkuto le’olam waed (Blessed be the Name, etc.)-corresponding to the six other aspects. The Lord is one above; and His Name is One below. We say this reponse silently, although it is a triumphant expression of the Oneness, because of the “evil eye”, which still has power under the present dispensation; but in the future (Messianic Age) when the “evil eye” will have ceased to exist and will have no dominion whatsoever over this world, then we shall proclaim the Divine Unity and its full accomplishment openly and in a loud voice. At present, as the “other side” still cleaves to the Shekinah, She is not entirely One, and therefore, although even in this present time we proclaim the unity, we do so silently, symbolizing it by the letters of the word wa’ed (ever), which are equivalent by certain permutations to those of the word ehad (one). But in the time that is to be, when that other side shall be removed from the Shekinah and pass away from the world, then shall that unity be proclaimed openly. When She enters the canopy and is united with the Supernal King, then we awaken the joy of the Right and of the Left, as it is written: “Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart”, etc. -that is, without any fear or foreboding, because the “other side” comes not near and has no power here. But whilst Her servants are bringing Her to the King they must keep a great and solemn silence. Of this Jacob is symbolic. Before his death, when he was about to speak of the “end of days” (and the Shekinah left him) he said to his sons: “Perchance some stain is attached to me or to my seed?” But they replied: “Nay, there is no such stain, nor is any fault found. Thine own heart is possessed only by the One, and as for us-we have no contact with the ‘other side’ or any of its evil minions; on the contrary we, like thyself, are united with the King alone, since all our will and intent has been to separate from the ‘other side’.” Then Jacob said: “Blessed be the Name of the glory of His Kingdom for ever and ever.” In that hour Jacob and his sons became for a space, as it were, living portraits here on earth of the Shekinah

Herself. Jacob symbolized the six sides of the supernal world as a single whole, and his sons were shaped to the likeness of the six aspects as manifested in the lower world. Now he desired to reveal to them a certain "end", for, as we have pointed out elsewhere, [Tr. note: Zohar, Genesis, 62b] there is one "end of days" (kez ha-yamin), which refers to the Holy Kingdom, the mystery of Faith, the mystery of the King of Heaven; and another "end of days" (kez ha-yamim),

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 134b

which is the mystery of the Guilty King, the "other King", ruler of the powers of darkness, and that end is called "the end of all flesh". Now when Jacob perceived that the Shekinah was withdrawing from him, he questioned his sons, as we have pointed out. And as Jacob and his sons proclaimed the union of the world above and the world below, so also must we. Blessed is he who concentrates his mind and will, with true humility and longing, upon this mystery. Blessed is he in this world and blessed shall he be in the world to come! Said R. Hamnuna the Ancient: 'This stirring up of the unity has indeed been rightly and justly expounded, and that which we have just now heard is indeed very true; and in the future time these words which we have now uttered will stand before the Ancient of Days and in no wise be abashed.'

He then began to expound this passage as follows. 'They shall take Me a heave offering.' Here we have displayed an inclusive union of the above with the below, for it does not say "They shall take a heave offering", but "They shall take Me a heave offering", which denotes a fusion of the upper with the lower spheres. [Tr. note: i.e. Tifereth with Malkuth.] "On the part of everyone whose heart is willing ye should take my heave offering." The words "on the part of" seem at first sight to be superfluous, but in reality they contain a deep lesson for the masters of the esoteric lore. Blessed are the righteous who have learnt how to centre all their thoughts and desires on the Heavenly King, and whose aspirations are directed, not towards the vain and foolish toys of this world and its lusts, but to attaching themselves wholeheartedly to the world above in order to draw down the favour of the Lord Himself from heaven to earth. What is the place whence they receive this favour? It is a holy supernal region, whence emanate all holy wills and desires. This is known as "every man", who is identical with the "Righteous", the Lord of the House, whose love is always directed towards the Matrona, like a husband who loves his wife always. "Whose heart is willing": that is, His heart goes out to Her, and Her heart to Him. And although their mutual love is so great that they never separate, yet "ye shall take from Him My heave offering", meaning, "ye should take the Shekinah to dwell with you". The Holy One, blessed be He, unlike a human husband,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 135a

who would protest violently should anyone take from him the wife whom he so dearly loves, is greatly pleased when the Shekinah, whom He so loves, is "taken" from the supernal sphere, the abode of Love, to dwell below in the midst of Israel. Happy is the lot of

Israel and happy that of all those who are worthy of this. In that case, it might be asked, why does it say, "which ye should take from them" instead of "from Me"? Because the "from them" refers to these two Divine names or grades. Rabbi Yeba the Ancient suggested that meitam (from them) signifies meet M, from the sphere designated by the letter M; the mysterious sphere, the abode of the Righteous One, from whence He draws life to distribute to all the worlds. It is all one mystery, which has been entrusted to the wise. Happy is their lot! However, although they "take" Her (the Shekinah), they may do so only when her Spouse specially grants permission, and only in accordance with His will, in order that He may be worshipped in love. This is realized daily in the corporate liturgical services of Israel. Or "from them", again, can refer to the six supernal grades; or to the Seasons and Sabbaths. It amounts all to the same thing. GOLD AND SILVER, AND BRASS, AND BLUE AND PURPLE, AND SCARLET, AND FINE LINEN, AND GOATS' HAIR, AND RAMS' SKINS DYED RED, AND SEALSKINS, AND ACACIA WOOD. Gold symbolizes New Year's Day, the day of "gold", because it is a day of judgement, and the side of judgement, symbolized by gold, dominates it; as it is written, "gold cometh from the north" (Job XXXVII, 22), and "evil will be opened from the north" (Jer. VI, 2). Silver symbolizes the Day of Atonement, when the sins of Israel are made "white as snow" (Isa. I, 18), for "on that day shall he make an atonement for you, to cleanse you, that ye may be clean from all your sins before the Lord" (Lev. XVI, 30). Brass is symbolic of the days of the Sacrifices of the Feast of Tabernacles, which alluded to the powers and principalities of the heathen nations, who are designated "mountains of brass". "Blue" (techeleth) corresponds to Passover, which established the dominance of the true object of Faith, symbolized by the colour blue, which could predominate only after the punishment of the firstborn of Egypt was accomplished. So all colours seen in dreams are of good omen, except blue. "Red-purple" (argaman) is connected with Pentecost, symbolizing the giving of the written Law, consisting of two sides, of the Right and of the Left, as it is written: "From his right hand went a fiery law unto them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2). "Scarlet" (tola'ath shani) is connected with the fifteenth day of Ab, a day on which the daughters of Israel used to walk forth in silken dresses. So far six symbolic elements have been enumerated; the rest symbolize the Ten Days of Repentance: [Tr. note: From New Year to the Day of Atonement.] fine linen, goats' hair, rams, skins dyed red, seal (tahash) skins, acacia wood, oil for the light, spices for the anointing oil and for the incense, beryls and set jewels. These are nine, corresponding to nine days of Repentance, and the Day of Atonement completes it and makes ten days.

'From all of these we take "the heave offering of the Lord"[Tr. note: Malkuth.] on each of these special seasons, in order that it may rest upon us: on Passover by means of the paschal lamb, on Tabernacles by means of the tabernacle, and so forth. The six Days are but a preparation for her. As they are united above in "One", so she is unified below in the mystery of "one", to correspond to them above. The Holy One, blessed be He, who is One above, does not take His seat upon the Throne of Glory, until She has entered

within the mystery of the One in accordance with His very essence of Oneness, to be the One in One. This, as we have said, is the significance of the words: "The Lord is One, and His Name is One." It is the mystery of the Sabbath, which is united with the mystery

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 135b

of the One so that it may be the organ of this Oneness.

'In the prayer before the entrance of the Sabbath the Throne of Glory is prepared for the Holy Heavenly King. And when the Sabbath arrives the Shekinah is in perfect union with Him and is separated from the "other side", and all the potencies of severe judgement are severed from Her, She being in closest union with the Holy Light and crowned with many crowns by the Holy King, and all the principalities of severity and all the lords of judgement flee from Her, and no other domination reigns in any of the worlds, and her countenance is illumined by the supernal light, and she is crowned here below by the Holy People, all of whom are invested with new souls. Then is the time for the commencement of prayer, when the worshippers bless Her with joy and gladness, saying, "Bless ye the Lord, the Blessed One!" (the beginning proper of the Sabbath Eve prayer). For the holy people cannot be allowed at this moment to begin with a verse that suggests judgement, as on weekdays, when "Bless ye" is preceded by "And He being merciful, forgiveth iniquity and destroyeth not", because the Shekinah is then entirely severed from the mystery of the "other side" and all the lords of judgement have separated themselves and passed away from Her, and he who rouses judgement in the lower spheres causes vibrations of doom and severity also in the celestial regions, and while this disturbing element is in evidence the Holy Throne cannot crown itself with the crown of holiness. Then the lords of judgement who have severed themselves for the time being from the rest of creation, hiding themselves away from all eyes in a deep and secret recess at the bottom of the sea, are roused to return to the celestial habitations, and they come back with violence and fury, so that the Holy Sphere, which requires above all rest and peace for the entrance of the Sabbath, is hard pressed by these potencies of judgement. So it is evident that we should not imagine that She (the Shekinah) is independent of our "rousings", for there is no vibration above of any sort but is caused by those which take place in the midst of Israel below, as we have already pointed out in connection with the expression "in the time appointed, on our solemn feast day"; it is not merely a feast day, but our feast day; that is to say, we effect a movement in the higher spheres by our prayers. Therefore the holy people, who are crowned with holy crowns of souls in order to awaken rest and peace above, may not order judgement there, but, on the contrary, must all consciously and with exceeding great love awaken blessings both above and below.

'The congregation respond: "Blessed is the Lord who is blessed for ever and ever." The expression "who is blessed" indicates the streaming of blessings from the source of life to the place whence issue nourishment and bounty for all creatures. And why do we call this source "blessed"? Because it sustains and

waters 'olam va'ed (lit. for ever and ever), which is the Sabbath eve. In this way blessings are transmitted to this 'olam va'ed from the highest world, so that it attains its full perfection. Thus in this benediction, "blessed" represents the ultimate source whence all blessings emanate ; [Tr. note: Hohmah.] "the Lord" is the centre [Tr. note: Tifereth.] of all the supernal sides; "who is blessed" represents the peace of the house, the fountain of the cistern, [Tr. note: Yesod]. providing completion and nourishment for all, while "for ever and ever" refers to the world below, [Tr. note: Malkuth.] which needs these blessings: the "good oil" of "blessed", "the Lord", and "the Blessed One" is all for this 'olam va'ed. Therefore the whole congregation has to recite this every day; but on Sabbath eve it must be recited with special devotion and gladness, in order that the Sabbath may be fitly blessed by the holy people. When they begin to recite this benediction a voice is heard in all the heavens that are sanctified by the entrance of the Sabbath: "Blessed are ye, holy people, for that ye bless and sanctify on earth below, that thereby many supernal holy hosts

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 136a

may be blessed and sanctified above." Blessed are they in this world and blessed are they in the world to come. The Israelites do not recite this benediction until they are crowned with the crowns of holy souls, as we have said before. Blessed is the people who is worthy of them in this world, so that it may merit them in the world to come. This, to the pious, is the night of conjugal unions, when they are thus crowned with new souls and new additional holy spirits, for, being in a state of supernal holy tranquillity, they may then beget holy children.

'Here now is a mystery entrusted to the wise. At midnight on this night the Holy One is pleased to enter the Garden which is above. On weekdays at this time He enters the Garden of Eden which is below, in order to have joyous communion with the righteous who have their abode there; but on Sabbath He enters the Garden above. For on weekdays all the souls of the righteous abide in the Garden which is on the earth; but on Sabbath eve, all those hosts of holy angels who are appointed over the Lower Paradise bring up from that region the souls which dwell there into the firmament which is close to this Garden, where many holy chariots of fire await their coming, that they may escort these souls to the Paradise above, and bring them before the Throne of Glory. Whilst these souls are thus ascending, other souls are descending in a similar manner to become crowns to the holy people below. So their activity proceeds, some ascending and some descending. Do not, however, imagine that on this account the Paradise on earth remains empty and untenanted upon the Sabbath. Far from it! For, as we have said, while some souls go, others come, to wit, those souls who are being cleansed and purified during the six days of the week, but who are not yet sufficiently perfected to be able to abide in Paradise permanently, but on the Sabbath are permitted to enjoy its delights for a space, so that the place is never empty. This is symbolized by the removal and replacing of the "shew bread" (v. Leviticus XXIV, 5-9). Again, do not imagine that when the souls return to their earthly

Paradise at the end of the Sabbath they find it so overflowing with other souls that no place remains for them; for their abode becomes by some mysterious process much larger, being extended both in length, width and height, so that their presence makes no difference. There are also some souls which, having ascended to the highest sphere, never come down again. And in addition there are also those who ascend and descend continually to crown the holy people. In fact, on the Sabbath eve there is a veritable commotion of souls coming and going, ascending and descending. As for the innumerable holy Chariots which perpetually speed hither and thither, eye can scarce behold them for their radiant and glittering aspect! All the souls are full of joy and eagerness to become crowns for the holy people on earth, for the righteous in the lower Paradise. At last comes the moment when a voice proclaims throughout all the spheres: "Sanctified! Sanctified!" Then there is peace everywhere, perfect peace, even to the wicked in Gehenna, and all the souls crown themselves, some above, and some below. On Sabbath, at midnight, when the wise consummate their conjugal unions, at the time when they are sleeping peacefully in their beds, and their souls are eager to ascend and behold the glory of the King, the supernal spirits with which they crowned themselves at the sanctification of the Sabbath take those souls and bring them up unto the heights. These souls are there bathed in the spices of Paradise, and behold all that is within their capacity to behold. Then, when it is time to descend again, the supernal spirits accompany them until they reach safely their human habitations.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 136b

It is incumbent upon the wise to recite certain verses calculated to arouse that supernal holy spirit of the Sabbath coronation, as, for instance: "The spirit of the Lord God is upon me; for the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings to the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, etc." (Isa. LXI, 1); or, "Whithersoever the spirit was to go, they went, thither was their spirit to go; and the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels" (Ezek. I, 20), in order that the act of procreation may be effected in a spirit of Sabbath holiness, through the influence of the supernal Sabbatic spirit.'

When R. Hamnuna the Ancient used to come out from the river on a Friday afternoon, he was wont to rest a little on the bank, and raising his eyes in gladness, he would say that he sat there in order to behold the joyous sight of the heavenly angels ascending and descending. At each arrival of the Sabbath, he said, man is caught up into the world of souls. Happy is he who is aware of the mysteries of his Lord! And when the Sabbath day itself lightens, a spirit of tranquil joy ascends through all worlds. This is the significance of the Psalm (recited on Sabbath morning): "The heavens tell the glory of God; and the firmament proclaims his handiwork." "What is meant by "Heaven"? That heaven in which the Supernal Name is made visible (shamayim- heaven; shem-Name). What is the meaning of the word "tell" (mesaprim) P Assuredly not the mere telling of a tale. Far otherwise! It signifies that they are

illuminated from the flashing of the supernal Point and ascend in the Name which is contained in the light-stream of the supernal perfectness. They flash and lighten of themselves through the lightening and flashing of the Supernal Book; [Tr. note: Malkuth.] they lighten and flash towards all the sides which are attached to them, and each sphere retains unto itself a little of this light, for from that sapphire-like radiance every ring in the chain derives its light and radiance. For upon this day (Sabbath) the heavens are crowned and ascend in the power of the Holy Name more than on any other day. "His handiwork" is the supernal Dew which streams forth from all the hidden regions; it is "the work of His hands", and His self-fulfilment wherein He completes and perfects Himself on this day more than upon any other. This dew "streams down" (maggid in the Aramaic sense) from the Head of the King, with an abundance of blessing, the "firmament" here signifying the stream issuing from the Cistern, the "River which went out of Eden", which flows earthwards, as the stream of the Supernal Dew which gleams and flashes from all sides. This "firmament" draws it downward upon a current of love and desire, in order that it may water the field of bliss and joy at the entrance of the Sabbath. When that fair pearly Dew streameth down, the whole becomes full and complete in its holy letters acting through all their holy channels; since all is united to it, a path is opened to it to water and bless all below. "Day unto day"-one day to another, one ring or sphere unto its fellow. Here Scripture speaks in detail concerning the manner in which the heavens radiate sapphire brightness to that Glory, and how that "Firmament" of the supernal Dew causes the downward flow of the current. "Day unto day utters speech." Day unto day, grade unto grade, in order that the one should complete itself in the other, and one be illumined by the other from the luminous and sparkling radiance of the Sapphire which is reflected by the heavens back to the central glory. The word yabia' (uttereth) can be translated "hasteneth": they hasten to catch the light and the flashing one from another. The word OMeR (speech) indicates the letters and paths which proceed from the Father [Tr. note: Hokmah.] the Mother, [Tr. note: Binah.] and the head which issues from them, who is the firstborn Son. [Tr. note: 'Tifereth.] Aleph symbolizes the Father, and when it ascends and descends, the Mem unites itself with it, producing em, which signifies Mother; the resh is the Head (rosh =head), signifying Son. When these three unite the result is that they form "Word", "Speech". Thus the Father, the Mother, and the first born Son radiate one within the other in one union, which has its reign and duration upon the Sabbath. Thus all are united so as to become one, and therefore they hasten one to another that Omer, as a supernal reign, in order that all should be one. But when all has been conveyed down to that "firmament", then it diffuses light upon the "Glory of God" below that it may produce beings in the likeness of

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 137a

the heavens which give light to that Glory. "And night unto night declareth knowledge." These are those "chariots" which form the body of the Throne; they are called "nights", as it is written: "My reins also instruct me in the nights" (Ps. XVI, 7). The upper chariot is

called "Days" or "day unto day", the lower "Nights", or "night unto night". Ye-hawe (declares) may also mean "makes alive", to wit, produces the progeny of the heavens, "brings unto life" generations. "Knowledge" designates the mystery of the heavens: as the heavens have six sides, so also the generations which they bring into life in their likeness. Thus "day unto day" is included in a supernal sphere called "Word" (omer), and "night unto night" in the mystery of the Male, who gives light to her and whose name is "Knowledge". And because this "Word" is not like other words, but is a supernal mystery, Scripture comes back to it and says: "There is no word (omer) nor speeches, their voices are not heard" (v. 3). This "word" is a supreme mystery of supernal grades, where there are no voices nor speech, and which cannot be understood like the other grades which constitute the mystery of the Faith, and which are voices that can be heard. And yet "Their line is gone out through all the earth" (v. 4), although they are supernal mysteries which can never be perfectly comprehended, yet the current of their flow is downward. Because of this current, we have a true Faith in this world, and all mankind can discourse of the mystery of the Faith of the Holy One in connection with these grades, as if they were revealed to and not hidden from them. Therefore it says: "And their words to the end of the world" (Ibid.), which means that from the beginning to the end of the world the "wise of heart" discourse of those hidden grades although they cannot be comprehended. And how far are they comprehended? "In them hath he set a tent for the sun" (Ibid.), because the holy sun[Tr. note: 'Tifereth.] is as a tabernacle of all those supreme grades, and is as a light which has taken into itself all the hidden lights and the whole current of their extension, whereby Faith is manifested in the whole world. To grasp the Sun is equivalent to grasping all grades, because the sun is a "tent" including all and absorbing all; and he in turn lights up all the shining colours below. Hence "He is a bridegroom coming forth from his canopy (covering)" (v. 6), in the gleam and flash of those hidden lights which in strong yearning and desire give him tokens of their love, as to a bridegroom to whom all his friends give presents and gifts. And what is "his covering"? Eden, the "covering" which covers up all things. "He rejoiceth" from the side of the primeval light in which judgement has no place at all. "As a strong man" (gibbor)-from the side of "strength" (geburah); and note that it does not say here "a strong man", but "as a strong man", which means that Judgement is tempered by Mercy. Thus the sun gathers all together in one, in perfect devotion and love. "To run on the way", in order to nourish and complement the Moon on every side and make it possible for her to shed her light downwards. "His going forth is from the end of the heaven" (v. 7). He goes forth from the end of that supernal heaven, from the termination[Tr. note: Yesod.] of the Body, as it is written, "From one end of heaven to the other end of the heaven" (Deut. IV, 32); where the "one end" designates the upper world, and the "other end" its termination. "And his circuit unto the ends of it" (Ibid.): he (the sun) runs through all those holy regions that are capable

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page I37b

of being vivified and nourished by his rays. "And there

is nothing hid from the heat thereof" (Ibid.): nothing is hidden from that radiance, for it is directed towards all together, to each according to its capacity of reception. When all are thus completed and vivified by the Sun, then the Moon is crowned in the likeness of the supernal perfect Mother in fifty gates. This is expressed in the following verse: "The Torah of the Lord is perfect, quickening the soul"; as she is perfect from all sides in the mystery of five grades, in the likeness of the supernal Mother, to whom belongs the mystery of the fifty. Therefore the Torah is introduced here in six parallel sentences of five words (in Hebrew) each, in order to complete the mystery of fifty. "The Torah of the Lord is perfect, quickening the soul" is five. "The testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple" is five. "The statutes of the Lord are right, rejoicing the heart" is five. "The commandment of the Lord is clear, enlightening the eyes" is five. "The fear of the Lord is pure, enduring for ever" is five. "The judgements of the Lord are true, righteous altogether" is five. All these sentences present themselves in five words each, after the semblance of the supernal Mother; six times, as the Tetragrammaton is mentioned in these verses six times, corresponding with the six supernal grades which form the mystery of the supernal heaven. So the Moon is completed in the realm of transcendence into that which it should be, and all this on the Sabbath day, upon which all is perfected in the mystery of the Sabbath above and below. On this day, therefore, radiance is increased everywhere. The heavens receive it from the source of life; and they then impart light and completeness to the supernal Glory from the mystery of the supernal Numberer (Sopher), the Father of all; then from the mystery of the Numbered (Sippur)-the Supernal Mother; finally from the mystery of the Number (sepher).[Tr. note: v. Sefer Yezirah.] Therefore it says: "The heavens declare" (mesaprim), namely, as we have pointed out, in the mystery of these three Names which, on the Sabbath, reign supreme more than on other days. Therefore David uttered this Psalm of praise, through the Holy Spirit, in regard to the light and the effulgence of the Sabbath and its pre-eminence over the other days of the week because of the mystery of the Supernal Name which in it lightens up and radiates and sparkles in the spheres of holiness, and is completed above and below.

"Therefore the "Men of the Great Synagogue" have ordered that this Psalm of David should be the first one to be sung on the Sabbath day, since it refers to those particular "Heavens" which lighten all the others. Then follows (in the liturgy) that "river which goes out of Eden", alluded to in the Psalm which follows this one in the Sabbath service: "Rejoice in the Lord, O ye righteous" (Ps. XXXIII); for this "River" gathers into itself the whole mystery of the "heavens" and the source of life on this day, and the sun is perfected for its appointed task of the distribution of light. Then the Moon, when she separates herself from the "other side"-as on this day she does-in order to receive light from the sun, is alluded to in the Psalm following this one, namely (Ps. XXXIV): "Of David, when he changed his behaviour towards Abimelech." When the "other side" has separated itself from the "Moon", then the latter is united with the "Sun", and therefore this Psalm begins (acrostically) with the twenty-two letters of the Hebrew alphabet, signifying the merging of the Sun

with the Moon. Then follows the union of the Matrona with Her Spouse: "A prayer of Moses, the man of God" (Ps. xc): He spreads out both His right and His left hands to receive Her and to unite Himself with Her in perfect union. Then follow other psalms of joy and ardent longing. "A psalm. Sing unto the Lord a new song, for he hath done marvellous things: his right hand and his holy arm hath wrought salvation for him" (Ps. XCVIII). This Psalm has been expounded elsewhere, and the Companions were perfectly correct in their assertion that it was chanted by the kine

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 138a

who bore the sacred ark. [Tr. note: v Zohar, Genesis, 123a.] This corresponded to the mystery above: when the "living beings," (Hayoth) lay hold of the Throne in order to raise it to the highest heights, then we sing this Psalm. As to the question, why, then, is it called "new" when it is perpetually being repeated, the fact is that it is indeed a "new song" because it refers to the "new" moon at the time when she receives light from the sun. "His right hand and his holy arm hath wrought salvation for him": this denotes the rousing of the right and the left hand to receive Her (the Moon, signifying the Shekinah) when She arrives at "Beth Shemesh", the "House of the Sun", which hands receive and bear Her even as the kine bare the ark. This psalm of praise was therefore ordered to be chanted on the Sabbath by the "one people", namely the children of Israel. (Ps. XCII): "A song. A psalm for (to) the sabbath day. It is good to praise the Lord, to sing unto thy name, O most high. To proclaim thy lovingkindness in the morning and thy faithfulness in the nights." It has been established by the Companions that this hymn of praise was sung by the first man (Adam) after he had been driven out of the Garden of Eden, when the Sabbath drew nigh unto the Holy One and interceded for the created being. Then he sang this hymn in honour of the Sabbath which had delivered him. It is a hymn of praise sung by the world below to the world above, to a world which is altogether "Sabbath", the sphere of the "King whose is the peace". It is a hymn of the sabbath below unto the Sabbath above: the sabbath below, which is like night, sings to the Sabbath above, which is like day. In fact, whenever "Sabbath" is mentioned it refers to the "eve of the Sabbath" (i.e. the Shekinah), but when it says "the Sabbath day", it denotes the Supernal Sabbath (i.e. Tifereth). The former is symbolized by the Female, the latter by the Male. Thus "And the children of Israel should keep the Sabbath" (Ex. XXXI, 16) alludes to the Female, which is the night (layla), and "remember the Sabbath day" (Ibtd. xx, 8) alludes to the Male. Thus the sabbath here below sings a hymn to the Sabbath above. Therefore this psalm is anonymous, as we find everywhere where there is a reference to the world below (the Shekinah) that the Name is not actually mentioned, as, for example, "And he called unto Moses" (Lev. 1, 1), "And to Moses he said, go up to the Lord" (Ex. XXIX, 1). Since in this psalm reference is made to a higher sphere, therefore the divine name is not applied to the lower grade, just as a candle cannot shine in the sunlight. All the hymns sung in praise of and on the Sabbath are the aids to its ascension to supernal regions where it is crowned with supernal holy crowns above all other days.

'The Sabbath service continues with the prayer: "The soul of all living shall bless thy name, O Lord our God." The Companions have made some true observations on this prayer. [Tr. note: Zohar, Exodus, p.205b.] But the real truth is that on Sabbath it is incumbent on us to mention that soul [Tr. note: The "additional soul" given to the Israelite on Sabbath.] which emanates from "the Life of Worlds" (Yesod). And since this soul belongs to Him from whom all blessings proceed and in whom they are present, who wills to water and to bless that which is below, she is given permission to bless this Place. Thus the souls which fly forth from this "Living One" on the entrance of Sabbath do actually bless that Place in order to communicate blessings to the world below which is called the "Lower Name" (Malkuth). At the same time, the region whence those souls emanate blesses the Name from above, and so it receives blessings from below and from above, and is completed in all aspects. During other days she receives blessings from those souls which bless her from below; but on the Sabbath she receives blessings from those supernal souls which bless her with forty-five words according to the numerical value of the word Mah (What?) From the words "the soul of all living" to "the God of the first and last ages" there are forty-five words; from the words "were our mouths filled with song as the sea" to the words "and with us" are very nearly fifty words, corresponding to the Mi [Tr. note: ' For the symbolic meaning of Mah and Mi, v. Zohar, Genesis, 1b.] (numerical value=fifty). From here on follow other praises which resolve themselves in the number one hundred, the completion of all (to "the great God") and form one chariot.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 138b

Thus this hymn of praise and all the words contained in it are numerical symbols of the perfection of the Sabbath, and the perfection attained through it, according to the Divine purpose. Blessed is that people that has learnt how to conduct a service of praise in well-pleasing fashion! From here on follow prayers proper (connected with the Shema and the Amidah).

' It is written: "But be not thou, O Lord, far from me; my Hind (eyaluti), haste thee to help me" (Ps. VLXIII 20). These words did King David speak in that hour when he ordered that hymns of praise should be sung to the King, so that the unity of the Sun and the Moon should be accomplished. While he composed these praises, he said: "But be not thou far from me". The combination of "Thou" and "Lord" signifies the mystery of the one inseparable union. "Be not far": this refers to Her (the Shekinah) when she ascends to be crowned by her Spouse in the world above, and from thence to ascend still higher into the Infinite, to be united there, high, high, above. Therefore it says: "be not far", that is to say, do not ascend to such heights that will leave us without Thee. Therefore through this service of praise Israel seek to attach themselves closely to the Shekinah and her Glory, so that if this Glory should seek to rise aloft they may still cling to it and not allow it to abandon them. Therefore, also, the prayer proper (Amidah) is recited quietly, as one would speak confidentially with a King; for as long as Israel holds Him in confidential converse He cannot depart from her, leaving her alone. "My hind": even as the hind and

the gazelle, though they flee to a far distance, yet soon return again to the place from which they went, so also the Holy One, blessed be He, even when He ascends into the unscalable heights of infinity, soon returns. Why so? Because Israel here below cling to Him, and being so attached to Him do not allow Him to forget them and abandon them. This is the significance of the prayer, "My hind, haste Thee to help me." Therefore it behoves us to cling to the Holy One, blessed be He, in order so to speak to draw Him down from the heights, so that we should not be deserted by Him for an instant. Therefore, when we pass quickly from the Geulah (Redemption) benediction to the Prayer (Amidah or eighteen benedictions) we must, as it were, lay hold on Him, and lead Him apart, and converse with Him privately and in a still voice, in confidence, so that He should not depart far from us and leave us alone. Concerning this it is written: "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive to-day" (Deut. IV, 4); "Blessed is the people who is in such a case; blessed is the people who has the Lord for its God" (Ps. CXLIV, 15).'

Having reached this point, R. Simeon rose and the Companions likewise, and they walked away from the tree in the valley. Said R. Eleazar unto R. Simeon his father as they journeyed on: 'Father, up to this point we have been sitting in the shadow of the Tree of Life in the Garden of Eden. Hereafter we must assuredly walk in the ways which guard this Tree.' R. Simeon replied: 'Begin thou first, while we are yet upon the way!'

R. Eleazar then explained to them the symbolic significance of colours and metals in connection with the Tabernacle. 'Gold is mentioned first because it is the emblem of the lower Power, or the Left Hand. Silver, which, on account of its whiteness, signifies Mercy, or the Right Hand, although it comes second here, is nevertheless the essential hue as regards the mystery of the Divine attributes in their manifestation to Israel, as it is written, "Mine is the silver and mine is the gold" (Haggai II, 8). It is also represented by the "cup of benediction" (the cup drunk after a meal) which, although it is taken up with both hands, is actually held only with the right hand. This is the esoteric meaning of the words "His left hand is under my head, and his right hand embraces me" (S.S. II, 6). Shining polished brass is a colour resembling gold, combining the colours of both gold and silver. Hence the "brazen altar was too small" (I Kings VIII, 64), because it symbolized the "smaller light which rules by night", while the golden altar symbolized "the greater light to rule the day" (Gen. I, 16). Hyacinth (purple-blue),

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 139a

which was used for the fringes, also denotes "judgement", or the Throne from which the judgement concerning capital offences is proclaimed. Therefore all colours seen in dreams are of good omen, with the exception of purple-blue, which denotes that the soul of the dreamer is being judged and the body is in danger of extermination. Much ardent prayer for mercy is needful to avert this portent. This colour symbolizes the Throne, concerning which it is written: "And above the firmament... was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone... and it had brightness

round about" (Ezek. I, 26-27). Because the fringes are made of a material of this colour, when the morning light begins to shine on them, they become greenish-blue like a leek, and from that moment the time of the recitation of the Shema begins. [Tr. note: v. T. B. Berachoth] For this reason capital cases may not be tried at night because that colour, blue, reigns, which has the power to snatch away souls without Judgement, since Judgement does not rule at that time. When morning comes and the Right Hand is roused, the brightness appears and reaches the dark blue, and then it becomes connected with another Throne. From this moment on it is time to recite the Shema. Argaman (reddish-purple) is a mixture of colours uniting as one. Tolaat shani (prop. worm of deep scarlet) symbolizes Israel: for as the worm's power to destroy exists only in its mouth, so does Israel's power lie in her mouth (i.e. prayer); and shani, being used in the plural (Prov. XXXI, 21), signifies that two (shne) colours are united to form one. It issues from the supernal Throne which rules over the dark blue from the right side, it is white and red, right and left. It represents Michael, the guardian of Israel (Dan. x, 21). "Fine linen", of six threads, symbolizes "Tarshish" (Gabriel). With these, two other are united: "goats' hair and rams' skins reddened": "goats' hair" denotes the lower outside power which protects (covers up) the inner power. All this is necessary and a place must be allowed for all, because they come from the sphere of gold (judgement); "rams' skins reddened", drawn from the two sides, left and right, to protect in another place. "And tahash (seal) skins": there is a species of this animal which flourishes on the "other side", in the wilderness and not in cultivated places, and this species is ritually "clean" and is the one here called tahash. The "acacia wood" symbolizes the Seraphim, for the word "standing" is applied to both of them (Ex. XXVI, 15; Isa. VI, 2). Then comes "oil for the candlestick", symbolizing the Holy Spirit. "Precious stones and stones to be set for the ephod and for the breastplate." These are holy stones, the foundation of the Sanctuary in holy chariots. They were set apart in the resplendent garments, for the High Priest to look upon and to remind him of the twelve Tribes. For that reason there were twelve stones, as has been pointed out.

'There are thirteen things enumerated apart from the stones, which, taken altogether, make twenty-five

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 139b

in the supernal mystery of the union. Corresponding to these twenty-five, Moses chiselled twenty-five letters in writing the mystery of the Shema (the twenty-five Hebrew letters contained in the verse, "hear, O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one"). Jacob wished to express the unity below and did so in the twenty-four letters of the response to the Shema: "Blessed be the Name of His glorious Kingdom for ever and ever." He did not bring it up to twenty-five because the Tabernacle was not yet. But as soon as the Tabernacle was completed and the first Divine utterance was pronounced there, it contained twenty-five letters, to show that the Tabernacle was after the supernal pattern, as it is written, "And the Lord spake to him out of the tabernacle of the congregation" (Lev. I, 1-twenty-

five letters in Hebrew). Thus the twenty-five things for the Tabernacle show forth the Sanctuary as a perfect and harmonious whole in accordance with the mystery of the twenty-five letters, as thou, our Master, hast taught us. This is the mystery of the whole Tabernacle and of everything appertaining to its construction. The number twenty-five corresponds with the twenty-two letters of the Alphabet, along with the Law, the Prophets and the Writings, which all form one whole sum and one mystery. When the Israelites proclaim the Unity, expressed in the mystery of the twenty-five letters of the Shema and in the twenty-four letters of the response, and each person in the congregations is doing this with devoutness, then all those letters unite as one and ascend as one unity. Then the forty-nine gates are opened which signify the mystery of the Jubilee. And when the gates are opened, the Holy One, blessed be He, regards each of such persons as though he had fulfilled the whole Torah-the Torah which can be viewed from forty-nine aspects. So it is necessary to concentrate heart and mind on both the twenty-five and the twenty-four letters and to raise them with the whole force of intention to the forty-nine gates, as we have said. Through concentration on this, one will concentrate on the Unity, for our Master has taught us that the "Hear, O Israel" and the "Blessed be the Name" are the summary of the whole Torah. Happy the lot of him who thus concentrates, for verily these contain the Torah in its entirety, above and below. It is the mystery of the complete Man, Male and Female, and is the secret of the whole Faith. In the debates in the schools of Shammai and of Hillel concerning the recitation of the Shema, the former held that the evening "Shema" should be recited in a reclining or resting position, and the morning "Shema" should be recited standing, their reason being that in the evening the Feminine aspect is included in the active energy and reign, while in the morning the Masculine aspect reigns exclusively in the supernal world, and it is therefore necessary to recite the Shema standing, as is done during the Prayer (Amidah) and at all times when the Masculine predominates. The school of Hillel, on the other hand, made no such distinction. If the said aspects (Male and Female) were each entirely by itself, it might be necessary to do so, but as we, by our concentration and intention, unite them in our consciousness during the recitation and response, in the forty-nine aspects, and raise them towards the forty-nine gates, we need not emphasize their separateness, but should rather concentrate on the fact that they are both one without any separation whatever: the Masculine in six words-"Hear, O Israel, etc.", and the Feminine in six-"Blessed be the Name", etc. And the rule is always according to the school of Hillel.'

R. Simeon lifted up his hand and blessed his son R. Eleazar. He then began to speak on the verse: "Who stirred up from the east him whom righteousness called to his foot?" (Isa. XLI, 2). 'This verse', he said, 'has been variously interpreted, but, esoterically considered, "Who" refers to the mystery of the supernal world, [Tr. note: Binah.] from whence the first revelation of the mystery of Faith is manifested, as we have already pointed out. Or again, the "Who" denotes that which is concealed, the absolutely impenetrable and undisclosed, and which begins to make its glory known

from the region that is called "East", from which region the whole mystery of the Faith and light commences to be revealed. "Righteousness" reveals the Supernal Power and the reign of the Holy One, blessed be He, who delegates to that Righteousness authority to rule over all the worlds, to guide them and lead them towards perfection. For this reason does it go on to say: "Gave nations before him and made him rule over kings",

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 140a

since all the kings of the world are under the authority of that "Righteousness", as it is written: "And he will judge the world in righteousness" (Ps. xcv, 13). Moreover, when it says "Righteousness calleth to his foot", the question is: Who calleth whom? The answer is that "Righteousness" calls to the resplendent mirror, which is ever bright and refulgent, as it is written: "Keep not thou silence, O God; hold not thy peace, and be not still, O God" (Psa. LXXXIII, 1). Now the Holy One has let His light shine upon us on our way for the sake of my son Eleazar, who called down the supernal light upon us, and it has not waned. Happy is the lot of the righteous in this world and in the world to come.'

Then R. Abba discoursed on the text, "A psalm of David when he was in the wilderness of Judah" (Ps. LXIII, 1). 'Why', he said, 'is this psalm different from all others in that it alone mentions the place in which it was composed? However, this is not the only psalm where a particular motive for its composition is given. The superscription of one psalm runs: "Where he changed his behaviour before Abimelech" (Ps. XXXIV); and another (LIV) has: "When the Ziphim came and said to Saul, Doth not David hide himself with us?" The purpose of these headings is to proclaim the merit of David, showing that even when he was in distress and fleeing from his enemies he sang praises to the Holy One, blessed be He. True, it was the Holy Spirit that spoke through him, but had not David yearned continually for the Holy Spirit, it would not have rested upon him. It is always thus: the Holy Spirit will not descend upon a man unless he, from below, moves it to come. And David, as we have seen, in the greatest tribulation did not cease to sing hymns and to praise his Lord for all things. If I should be reminded of the difference between "A psalm of David" and "Of David a psalm", the former, as in the passage just discussed, signifying that the Holy Spirit gave the initiative, then I would say, be that as it may, if David had not prepared himself for the reception of the Holy Spirit, it would not have come upon him. "A psalm": this means the Holy Spirit. Why is it called so? Because it continually praises the Supernal King without ceasing. When David came, the Holy Spirit found a "body" properly prepared, and so was able to sing through him in this world praises to the King, so that this world might be perfected to harmonize with the world above. "Of David"- David, a complete, perfected, worthy man who never changed. "When he was in the wilderness of Judah": as we have said, although he was in great trouble, he sang praises. And what was the burden of his song? "O God, thou art my God: I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is, to see thy power and thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary."

"God" in a general sense; "My God" expresses David's individual grade of experience. In fact, there are three grades here: "God", "My God", "Thou". Yet, even though there are three designations, there is really only one grade, as all allude to the mystery of the Living God: "God" is the supernal One, the Living One; "My God" denotes His omnipotence "from one end of the heaven to the other end"; and "Thou" expresses the personal grade of David's awareness of this Presence. But, although all are one and are designated by one name, yet *ashahreka* (lit. I will seek Thee), may also be rendered (with allusion to *shahar*, black), "I will strengthen the light which shines darkly (the Shekinah)," for this does not shine until it is strengthened from below. And he who thus strengthens it becomes worthy of the white light, the light of the "refulgent mirror", and of the world to come. This mystery is expressed in the words: "And those that seek me (*meshahrai*) shall find me" (Prov. VIII, 17), namely those who, out of the blackness of the dawn, prepare a light. The double n in *yimzaunni* ("they shall find me") signifies that they will merit the two lights: the dim, blackish light of dawn and the white light of day: or, the mirror that is not refulgent and the mirror that is. Hence David said in effect: "I will prepare a light from the blackish dawn in order that the white light of day may shine on it" "My soul thirsteth for Thee, my flesh longeth for Thee": as a starving man longs for food and drink. "In a dry and thirsty land, where no water is": in the desert, a place where holiness cannot dwell.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 140b

And we, Master, hunger and thirst for thee in this place; and as David longed to "behold God in holiness", so we long to drink in the words of the Master in his sanctuary (house of study).' Said R. Simeon to R. Abba: 'Let him who began continue.'

Then R. Abba spoke on the verse: "And they shall take me a heave offering." Said he: 'When the Holy One showed Moses the work of the Tabernacle, he was perplexed over its construction, as has been pointed out. Now comes the question, if it was to Moses alone that the Holy One gave the *Terumah* (heave-offering, i.e. the Shekinah), how could he have given her to others (i.e. communicated the Presence of God to the people), for it says that "the children of Israel should take a heave-offering"? We may answer by a parable. A King stood in the midst of his people, but his Queen was not with him. As long as she was absent the people did not feel secure and were somewhat uneasy. But as soon as the Queen arrived the whole people rejoiced, feeling that they were now safe. In like manner, although the Holy One, blessed be He, showed Israel many signs and wonders through Moses, they did not yet feel sure of themselves, but as soon as the Holy One said, "They shall take me a heave-offering that I may dwell in the midst of them" (v. 8), their confidence was at once firmly established and they rejoiced in the worship of the Holy One, blessed be He. Therefore it is written: "And it came to pass on the day that Moses had fully set up (*kalloth*) the tabernacle... that the princes of Israel brought their offerings...." (Num. VII, 1-3), namely on the day when the Bride (*kallah*) of Moses (Shekinah) came down to earth.

'Now the question might be asked: Wherever the expression "and it came to pass" occurs in Scripture, is it not always connected with something sad? And the answer would be that something sad occurred also on the day when the Tabernacle was completed and the Shekinah came down to earth. For a celestial Accuser stood at Her side who covered Her Face with a veil of thick darkness to prevent Her from finding Her way down to earth. And we have been taught that a thousand and five hundred myriads of accusing angels were round about Her for the same purpose. At the same time, also, a multitude of supernal angels rose up before the Throne of the Holy One, and said: "Lord of the world! All our splendour and all our refulgence emanates from the Shekinah of Thy Glory, and should She now descend to those below?" But in that hour, the Shekinah gathered up all her strength and, breaking through that darkness, like one breaking through strong barriers, came down to earth. As soon as they saw this they all cried together with a loud voice: "O Lord our God, how mighty is thy name in all the earth" (Ps. VIII, 1): "mighty", because She had thus broken through so many barriers and restraining hosts and had come down to earth to reign over all. All of which explains the use of the ominous expression, "and it came to pass", in connection with the completion of the Tabernacle, indicating the pain that was suffered by many celestial armies on the day when Moses' Bride (the Shekinah) came down to earth. Therefore it is said: "That they take Me a heave offering." Observe it does not say "Me and a heave offering", but "Me as a heave offering", to show that all is One, there is no separation, and the Tabernacle in its completion was in the likeness of that above: the one corresponded with the other in every detail, that the Shekinah might be located in it in all its aspects. Here in this world the Tabernacle was fashioned like unto the body which contains the spirit, and the Shekinah, which combines the upper with the lower, and which is the Holy Spirit, entered into this kind of body, so that the brain should dwell in a shell, all according to purpose. So the Holy Spirit becomes, as it were, a body to contain another spirit, subtle and luminous, and in this way all is contained one within the other, until it enters this world, which is the last external shell (*klifah*). The toughest husk is the one within the shell of this world, just as in a nut the outside shell is not the toughest, but the inner husk. So also above, the hard, withstanding shell is the other spirit which rules in the body; within it is a softer shell, within which again lies the brain.

'In the Holy Land, in connection with the Temple, things happened differently. The hard shell was broken in that spot and did not rule at all; it was broken there, and yawned asunder. And the opening thus made existed there as long as Israel worshipped

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 141a

in manner due. Their sins, however, caused the two sides of the opening to draw together, until the shell became whole again. As soon as the shell closed up over the brain it ruled over Israel and drove them out from that place. Yet, in spite of this, the hard shell cannot rule in that holy spot, since it has no right there. If that is so, it may be asked, why is the Temple still in

ruins, for all destruction comes only from the influence of that hard shell? The answer is that the destruction was indeed caused by that "side" when it closed over the brain, but the Holy One prevented it from ruling in that place, and when Israel had been driven out from there, the shell broke open as before. But because the holy people was no longer there, the opening was covered with a holy covering, a kind of thin curtain, to protect that spot and prevent the hard shell from closing over it again. This covering spreads over it from all sides. It is not possible for the holy ointment to descend upon the Land as formerly, as that thin covering prevents it, the Holy People being no longer there. Therefore it is that the ruined Temple has not been rebuilt. On the other hand, it is also impossible for the hard shell to rule there, because the thin covering prevents it from entirely closing over the brain. For this reason all the souls of members of other nations who live in the Holy Land, when they leave this world, are not accepted there, but are thrust out and are forced to roam about and go through many wanderings until they leave the Holy Land behind them and reach instead those impure regions where they belong. But all the Israelitish souls that leave this world from the Holy Land ascend from there, and that covering receives them into itself and through it they enter the Upper Holiness, because like always tends to like. And the souls of those Israelites who have departed from this world while still outside the confines of the Holy Land, and while in the power and dominion of that hard shell, wander hither and thither and roam about until they reach their appointed places. Happy is the lot of that man whose soul leaves this world in the domain of holiness, in the cavity provided by the Holy Land.

'He whose soul leaves him in the Holy Land, if his body is buried upon the day of his death, is in no way dominated by the spirit of impurity. Therefore it says of one who has been put to death by hanging that "his body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him that day.. that thy land be not defiled" (Deut. XXI, 23), for at night the impure spirit is given permission to rule. However, although these last are given temporary power, they cannot exercise their sway within the boundaries of the Holy Land, because it is impossible for them to enter it unless they can come upon an organ or means of approach in the parts and fat of those sacrifices that are consumed at night for the purpose of feeding other (foreign) kinds. [Tr. note: v. supra. p. 129b-130a.] But even these portions were not left with the purpose of attracting evil potencies to the Holy Land, but rather, on the contra y, to entice them away from it, for, as has been said on another occasion, the smoke of these parts of the sacrifices was wont to ascend crookedly and drift away until it reached that hidden cavern in the North in which all the powers of the "other side" have their abode; into which cave the smoke would enter and all the demons and impure spirits be nourished thereby. But the smoke of those sacrifices which were burnt during the day ascended in a straight line unto its rightful place and all the proper spirits received nourishment from it. Over the bodies of the righteous, who were not seduced in this world by the lusts of the hard shell, the impure spirit has no power at all, because they did not associate themselves therewith. But just as the wicked in this life were seduced by that powerful shell of evil

and its pleasures and practices, so are their bodies unclean after the soul has left them. The bodies of the righteous, because in this life

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 141b

they took their delight in religious rejoicings and the meals and ceremonies of Sabbaths and festivals, are, as we have said, not in the power of the impure spirit at all, since they had no joy nor part in anything appertaining to it. Blessed is he who derived no pleasure therefrom at any time of his allotted mortal span! As for him whose soul left him outside the precincts of the Holy Land, his body is defiled by that impure spirit, which remains in it until it returns to the dust. And if such a body is brought into the Holy Land to be buried, to it applies the text, "And ye entered and defiled my land and made my heritage an abomination" (Jer. II, 7)-that is: "Into My Land over which the spirit of impurity has no power or dominion, ye have brought this your body wherein that very impure spirit has entrenched itself, to be buried in the hallowed soil! Ye defile My Land!" However, the Holy One, blessed be He, provides the land with a means of purging from this defilement: when such a body decomposes, the Holy One causes a wind to blow from above which thrusts the impure spirit outside, for He has compassion on His land. Joseph's body was never under the power of the impure spirit, although his soul left him when he was yet outside the Holy Land. Why had the "other side" no dominion over him? Because when he was alive he was never seduced by it. Yet he did not wish that his body should be taken for burial into the Holy Land, but only requested that his bones should be taken and deposited there. Jacob, again, did not die at all: his body remained intact and his spirit had no fear of the impure potencies, for his bed was filled with the perfection of the celestial light, in the brightness of the twelve tribes and of the seventy souls (which came into Egypt with him). Therefore he was not afraid of the "other side", and it had no power over him. Further, his body was in the likeness of the Supernal Form, for his beauty united all sides, and all the limbs of the first man- Adam-were united in him. Therefore Jacob said, "I will lie with my fathers, and thou shalt carry me out of Egypt" (Gen. XLVII, 30)- the whole body. Therefore also "the physicians embalmed Israel" in order that his body might remain intact, as was fitting. As to other men whose souls pass away in the Holy Land, their souls and bodies alike come to no harm.

'Three names has the soul of man: nephesh, ruah, neshamah. They are all comprised one within the other, yet they have three distinct abodes. Nephesh remains in the grave until the body is decomposed and turned into dust, during which time it flits about in this world, seeking to mingle with the living and to learn of their troubles; and in the hour of need it intercedes for them. Ruah enters the earthly Garden (of Eden) and there dons a likeness which is in the semblance of the body it tenanted in this world: that likeness being, as it were, a garment with which the spirit robes itself, so that it may enjoy the delights of the radiant Garden. On Sabbaths, New Moons and festivals it ascends unto higher regions, imbibes the joys thereof, and then returns to its place. Concerning this it is written: "And the spirit (ruah) returns to God who hath given it" (Eccl. XII, 7)-

namely, at the special seasons and on the special occasions which we have enumerated. Neshamah ascends at once to her place, the region from whence she emanated, and for her sake the light is kindled to shine above. She never again descends to earth. In her is consummated the One who combines all sides, the upper and the lower. And as long as she has not ascended to be united with the Throne, the ruah cannot crown itself in the lower Garden, nor can the nephesh be at ease in its place; but when she ascends all the others find rest. Now when the children of men are in sorrow or trouble, and repair to the graves of the departed, then the nephesh is awakened and it wanders forth and rouses the ruah, which in turn rouses the Patriarchs, and then the neshamah. Then the Holy One, blessed be He, takes pity on the world. This matter has already been explained, although the doctrine of the neshamah has been put in a somewhat different form; but it all amounts to the same, and what we have said is entirely correct. Now if the neshamah is for one reason or another hindered from ascending to her rightful place, then the ruah, when it reaches the door of the Garden of Eden, finds it barred, and it cannot enter,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 142a

and so roams about unnoticed and forlorn; and as for the nephesh, it wanders about the world and beholds the body which was once its home devoured by worms and suffering the judgement of the grave, and it mourns therefor, as the Scripture tells us: "But the flesh upon him shall have pain, and his soul within him shall mourn" (Job XIV, 22). Thus all suffer punishment, and so they remain until the neshamah is able to attain to her rightful sphere above. Once this is accomplished, however, both the others are united each with its sphere; for all three are one, forming one whole, united in a mystical bond, according to the prototype above, in which nephesh, ruah and neshamah constitute together one totality.

'The (supernal) Nephesh possesses in itself no light and cannot out of its own being engender it, and for this reason it is in close connection and deeply enmeshed with a certain Body, [Tr. note: Metatron.] which it fondles and sustains. It is concerning this Nephesh that it is written: "She giveth meat to her household and an appointed portion of labour to her maidens," (Prov. XXXI, 15), the "house" denoting the Body, which she feeds, and the "maidens" the limbs of that Body. The (supernal) Ruah rides upon the Nephesh, dominates it, and enlightens it with supernal glory, as much as it can bear; this Nephesh is the throne or pedestal of this Ruah. The (supernal) Neshamah produces the Ruah, rules over it, and sheds upon it the light of life. The Ruah depends entirely upon the Neshamah and is lit up by its light and nourished by its celestial food, while the Nephesh is similarly dependent on the Ruah. But as long as that supernal Neshamah does not ascend unto the spring of the "Ancient of Ancients", the most Hidden of all hidden regions, there to be filled with the presence of Him whose glory is eternal as the waters of an unceasing and refreshing spring, so long must the Ruah be debarred from entering into that which is its own especial Paradise, namely, the Nephesh; and in all

cases the abode of the Ruah is the Garden of Eden, while the Neshamah ascends aloft to the fountain-head, and the Nephesh takes up its abode in the body.

'Similarly in man below, the three are one yet separate. The neshamah ascends aloft to the fountain-head; the ruah enters the Garden of Eden- and the nephesh finds rest in the grave. It may be asked, what in our analogy corresponds above to the grave? The answer is that "the grave" in this case is the mighty klifah. In this respect the soul of man corresponds, and here, as elsewhere, the lower is after the pattern of the upper. Thus there are three grades of the soul distinct one from another, although they form one bond and one mystery. As long as the bones of their human habitation remain intact in the grave, the nephesh remains there also, though unwillingly.

'There is here a mystery which is entrusted only to such as perceive and know the way of truth and are afraid of sin. In the hour when the neshamah crowns herself above with the holy crown, and the ruah stands within the radiance of the supernal light to which it is admitted on Sabbaths, New Moons, and festivals, and when that same Ruah descends well satisfied from those feasts to enter into the Garden of Eden resplendent and radiant: in that hour the nephesh also rises up within the grave and assumes shape in the likeness of the form which it previously possessed when in the living body, and in virtue of this image all the bones arise and sing praises to the Holy One, blessed be He; as it is written: "All my bones shall say (tomarah), O Lord, who is like unto thee?" (Ps. XXXV, 10). And had the eye but the power and permission to perceive such matters, it would behold on the nights of Sabbaths, New Moons, and festivals, a kind of figures singing and praising the Holy One above their graves. But the folly of the children of men prevents them from having any cognizance of these matters, since they neither know nor perceive what the foundation of their lives in the world is, and have no mind to be aware of the glory of the Supernal King in this world which they can see, not to speak of the world to come, which they see not; thus they have no perception of the basis of either, or of the inner meaning of these things.

'On New Year's Day, when the world is judged, and the Throne of Judgement stands by the Supernal King, every soul (nephesh) hovers about and intercedes for the living. On the night following the giving of judgement they roam about, endeavouring to discover what decisions have been made concerning the fate of men in the coming year; and sometimes they communicate their knowledge to the living in the form of a vision or dream, as it is written: "In a dream, in a vision of the night, when deep sleep falleth upon men... then he openeth the ears of men and sealeth their instructions" (Job XXXIII, 16): i.e. the soul puts its seal to words which it communicates to the sons of man that they may receive instruction or reproof. On the last night of the Feast of Tabernacles, when the final edicts are issued from the King, and the shadow is removed from those persons who are shortly to die,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 142b

a certain celestial officer named Yehudiam descends

with myriads of followers and bears that shadow aloft; and the soul which we have mentioned roams about and sees the shadow and returns to its place, and announces to the rest of the dead: "Such and such an one is coming to be with us"-meaning the soul of whichever shadow has been most lately borne away by the angelic minions. If that deceased one be righteous and has lived a good life while in this world, all the dead rejoice; but if not, they all say: "Alas, alas! Woe, woe!" When the angels bring up the shadow, they deliver it to that faithful servant whose name is Metatron, and he takes it and brings it unto its due and rightful place, as it is written: "As a servant earnestly desireth the shadow" (Job VII, 2). From that hour on, a place is prepared for the neshamah of that man, and a place for his ruah in the Garden of Eden, and a place for his nephesh to rest in during its wanderings-for there is a certain nephesh which has no rest, concerning which it is written that "it shall be slung out, as out of the middle of a sling" (I Sam. xxv, 29), which nephesh wanders about in the world, having no rest either by day or by night, this being the greatest and direst punishment possible; and there is likewise a "nephesh" which is "cut off" together with the body, concerning which it is written: "and I will cut it off from its people" (Lev. XVII, 10); and there is also a nephesh which is not "cut off" together with the body, but is "cut off" from the place which, had it belonged to a worthy person, would have been its appointed place above, concerning which it is written: "that nephesh shall be cut off from my presence; I am the Lord" (Ibid. XXII, 3); "from My presence" means that the ruah does not rest on it any longer; and when that is so the nephesh can have no part in the heavenly bliss, nor have any cognizance of any of the matters which take place in the other world. Such a nephesh is like that appertaining to an animal.

'A nephesh which is destined eventually to find rest, when in the course of its wanderings it meets with Yehudiam, the chief angelic messenger, with all his princes, is taken by him through all the doors of the Garden of Eden and shown all the glories of the righteous and the splendours of its own ruah, and then it invests itself in all serenity with its ruah, and it perceives all that is going on in the supernal world. And when that ruah ascends to be crowned within its neshamah which is above, the nephesh joins the ruah and clings thereto with all its strength, and receives illumination from it, which causes it itself to shine, even as the moon borrows light from the sun. And that ruah then joins itself in the same wise to the neshamah, and the neshamah unites herself with the end of Thought, this being the mystery of the Nephesh which is above, and the Nephesh which is above unites itself with the Ruah which is above, and that Ruah again with its Neshamah, and that Neshamah with the Infinite (En-sof). Thus is achieved harmony, peace and union both above and below. This constitutes the attainment of the rest and quietude of the nephesh that is below, concerning which it is written: "But the soul (nephesh) of my lord shall be bound in the bundle of life with (et) the Lord thy God" (I Sam. xxv, 29); that is to say, in the union symbolized by et (the first and the last letters of the alphabet, signifying the union of all things), one being like unto another. For when the Moon-which is the symbol of the supernal Nephesh- descends,

illuminated with glory from all sides, then she in her turn illumines with her radiance all the chariots and all the camps, and unites them, so that they are formed into one complete body which shines forth resplendent with the steadfast brilliance of the supernal light. In the same way the lower nephesh, when it descends, similarly illumined from all sides-from the light of the neshamah and of the ruah-also illumines all the chariots and camps, namely the limbs and bones of its body, and forms them into one complete body which emits light. This is the significance of the words: "And he will satisfy with splendour (.zahzahot) thy soul (Isa. LVIII, 11); and then He will make vigorous thy bones" (Ibid.): that is, they will be fashioned into one complete body which will emit light, and arise to give praises to the Holy One, as has been pointed out in connection with the words, "All my bones shall say, O Lord, who is like unto Thee?" This praising does indeed constitute the rest and delight of the nephesh, and is verily the completion of its joy. Blessed are the righteous who fear their Lord in this world, for they merit the threefold rest of saints in the world to come.'

Then came R. Simeon and blessed R. Abba, and said: 'Happy are ye, my sons, and happy am I who have been permitted to behold how many

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page I43a

supernal places are prepared which will shine for us in the world to come.' Then R. Simeon began to speak on the verse: "A song of degrees. They that trust in the Lord shall be as Mount Zion, which cannot be removed, but abideth for ever" (Ps. cxxv, 1). 'This verse', he said, 'has been variously interpreted, but its special significance is this: "A song of degrees" refers to the song which is sung by the supernal holy grades from the side of the celestial Might in harmony with the song of the Levites here below. There are "degrees" upon "degrees", and they worship in the mystery of the fifty years (Jubilee). "They that trust in the Lord" are the righteous which trust in their good works, as it is written: "The righteous trust (are bold) like the young lion" (Prov. XXVIII, 1). It might be objected that the righteous do not, in fact, trust in their own works, being, on the contrary, perpetually in a state of fear and trembling, like Abraham, of whom it says that he was afraid concerning Sarah (Gen. XII, 10-13); or Isaac, who was afraid (Ibid. XXVI, 7); or, again, like Jacob, who was likewise in fear (Ibid. XXXII, 8); and if these did not trust in their own good works, how much less cause for assurance have other righteous men! How, then, can it be said with any justice that "the righteous trust like the young lion"? We must observe, however, that they are compared to the young lion (Kephir), and not to the other kinds of lion, which are stronger. The young lion, although strong enough to hold his own, is, in comparison with the other kinds of lions, weak, and so does not trust his own strength. In the same manner the righteous, although confident of the power of their good works, yet do not trust in them more than the young lion in his strength. Therefore it says here: "They that trust in the Lord shall be as mount Zion", namely, they will be in the future dispensation, not merely like the young, or even the old, lion, but like mount Zion, immovable and without fear. And ye, my sons, sons of the saints above, your trust, your confidence, is indeed

like unto mount Zion. Verily, blessed are ye in this world and in the world to come 1'

The companions now proceeded on their way, and by the time they reached the town it had grown dark. Said R. Simeon: 'As this day has shed light upon us while we were on our way, enabling us to make ourselves worthy of the world to come, so also will this night shed light upon us that we may through it become worthy of the world to come and crown the words of the day with those of the night in the presence of the Ancient of Days, for so perfect a day as this shall not occur again in all future generations. Happy indeed is our lot in this world, and happy in the world to come.' R. Simeon then repaired to his house, accompanied by R. Eleazar, R. Abba, and R. Jose. There they remained until midnight. Then R. Simeon said to the Companions: 'It is now time to crown the Holy Chariot which is above by our studies here below.' Then, turning to R. Jose, he said: 'Since no discourse from thee has been heard among us during the day, thou must now begin to illumine the night, for the time is now arrived in which it is auspicious and desirable that both higher and lower spheres should be illumined.'

R. Jose thereupon began to speak on the words: The song of songs, which is Solomon's (S.S.I, 1). Said he: 'This song King Solomon poured forth when the Temple was erected and all the worlds, above and below, had reached their perfect consummation. And although concerning the exact time of its singing there is some difference of opinion among the members of the Fellowship, we may be certain that it was not sung until that time of absolute completion, when the Moon-the Shekinah-came to her fulness and was revealed in the full perfection of her radiance, and when the Temple had been erected in the likeness of the Temple that is above. The Holy One, blessed be He, then experienced such joy as He had not known since the creation of the world. When Moses set up the Tabernacle in the wilderness, another such was raised in the heavenly spheres, as we learn from the words: "And it came to pass... that the Tabernacle was reared up", the reference being to the other Tabernacle, to that which was above, namely the Tabernacle of the "Young Man", Metatron, and nothing greater. But when the first Temple was completed another Temple was erected at the same time, which was the centre for all the worlds, shedding radiance upon all things and giving light to all the spheres. Then the world was firmly established, and all the supernal casements were opened to pour forth light, and all the worlds experienced such joy as had never been known to them before, and celestial and terrestrial beings alike broke forth in song. And the song which they sang is the "Song of Songs", or, as we might render, "Song of the Singers", of those musicians who chant to the Holy One, blessed be He.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 143b

King David sang "A song of degrees": King Solomon sang "the Song of Songs". Now what is the difference between the two? Do we not interpret both titles to signify one and the same thing? Verily, this is so, for both things are certainly one, but in the days of David all the singers of the spheres were not yet set in their rightful places to chant the praises of their King,

because the Temple was not as yet in existence. For, as on earth, the levitic singers are divided into groups, so is it likewise above, and the upper correspond to the lower. But not before the Temple was erected did they assume these their due places, and the lamp [Tr. note: Malkuth.] which before gave no light began then to shed radiance abroad, and then this song was sung to the glory of the Supernal King, [Tr. note: Tifereth.] the "King to whom peace belongs". This song is superior to all the hymns of praise which had ever been sung before. The day on which this hymn was revealed on earth was perfect in all things, and therefore the song is holy of holies. [Tr. note: "R. Akiba says: 'All the Writings are holy, but the Song of Songs is holy of holies'". T. B. Yadaim, III, 5.] It is written in the Book of Adam that on the day when the Temple would be erected the Patriarchs would awaken song both above and below. Not that they would sing themselves, but they would rouse to song those mighty singers who preside over all worlds. On that day, it is said, Jacob the "perfect" one arose and entered the Garden of Eden and caused it also to sing, and all the spices of the Garden likewise. He, therefore, it is who gave utterance to the song, since but for him the Garden would not have sung. This song comprises the whole Torah: it is a song in which those that are above and those that are below participate; a song formed in the likeness of the world above, which is the supernal Sabbath, a song through which the supernal Holy Name is crowned. Therefore it is holy of holies. Why so? Because all its words are instinct with love and joy. This is because the "cup of blessing" was then given with the Right Hand; and when this is so all is joy and love; therefore all the words of the Song of Songs are perfected with love and with joy. When the Right Hand was drawn back (at the destruction of the Temple (Lam. II, 3)), the "cup of blessing" was placed in the Left Hand, and therefore those that were above and those that were below broke out in lamentation, saying: "Where is the 'cup of blessing' of the supernal place which was wont to abide therein? It has been withdrawn and withheld from thee". Hence the Song of Songs, which emanated from the Right Side, is full of love and joy in all its words, but the Book of Lamentation, which marks the withdrawal of the Right Hand and the emergence of the Left, is full of complaint and lamentation. It may be asked, does not all joy and singing emanate from the Left Side, since the Levites who were the singers were from that side? The answer is that all joy which issues from the Left Side is due to the union of the Left with the Right. When the Right Hand combines with the Left, then the joy which belongs to the Right mitigates the turbulence of the Left, and is infused into the Left. But when the Right Hand is not active, the wrathfulness of the Left increases, and there is no joy. Then the cry rises "Ey kah": "what will become of the 'Cup of Blessing'?" It is retained in the Left Hand and the anger is hot and does not cool. No wonder, then, that there is lamentation and mourning. But the Song of Songs represents the "Cup of Blessing" when tendered by the Right Hand, and therefore all love and joy is found therein, as in no other song in the world. Therefore was this song aroused from the side of the Patriarchs.

'On the day when this song was revealed the Shekinah descended to earth, as it is written, "And the priests could not stand to minister because of the

cloud.” Why? Because “the glory of the Lord had filled the house of the Lord” (I Kings VIII, 11), On that day this hymn was revealed,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 144a

and Solomon sang in the power of the Holy Spirit this song wherein is to be found the summary of the whole Torah, of the whole work of Creation, of the mystery of the Patriarchs, of the story of the Egyptian exile, and the Exodus therefrom, and of the Song of the Sea. It is the quintessence of the Decalogue, of the Sinaitic covenant, of the significance of Israel's wanderings through the desert, until their arrival in the Promised Land and the building of the Temple. It contains the crowning of the Holy Name with love and joy, the prophecy of Israel's exile among the nations, of their redemption, of the resurrection of the dead, and of all else until that Day which is “Sabbath to the Lord”. All that was, is, and shall be, is contained in it; and, indeed, even that which will take place on the “Seventh Day”, which will be the “Lord's Sabbath”, is indicated in this song. Therefore we are taught that he who recites a verse from the Song of Songs as a mere drinking song causes the Torah to dress in sackcloth and to complain before the Holy One, blessed be He: “Thy children have turned me into an amusement for a drinking bout.” Yea, assuredly the Torah says this. Therefore it behoves the faithful to be wary, and to guard every word of the Song of Songs like a crown upon their heads. It may be asked, why, then, is the Song of Songs placed among the Hagiographa (which are not so sacred as the other two parts of Scripture)? The answer is, because it is the Hymn of Praise sung by the Community of Israel at the time when she is crowned above. Therefore no other hymn is so pleasing to the Holy One as this.

‘We have been taught that the three words, Shir hashirim asher (Song of Songs which) connote the placing of the “cup of blessing” between the Right Hand and the Left, and its raising towards “the King to whom peace belongs”, grace being thus carried higher and higher to the mystery of the En-Sof (Infinite). Again, the four words of the title correspond to the mystery of the perfect Holy Chariot (formed by the three patriarchs and David). Again, “song” stands for King David, the mover of song; “songs” for the Fathers, the high chiefs; “Solomon”, for Him Who rides in this perfect Chariot[Tr. note:Binah.] This verse thus contains the inner meaning of the phrase, “from eternity to eternity”, the mystery of the whole Faith. The whole is a perfect Chariot for That which is cognizable and That which is unknowable and which no one can apprehend. Therefore this verse was given in four words, containing the mystery of the complete Chariot as from four sides.

‘Again, within this mystery there is another. We have been taught that if one sees grapes in a dream, if they be white, it is a good omen, but if they are black in colour, then, if the dream occur at a time when grapes are in season, they are of good significance, but if not, prayer is needed to avert the omen. Why this difference between white and black, between in season and out of season? Again, it has been said, that one who dreams that he has eaten black grapes can be certain

that he will enter the world to come. Why? The clue is to be found in the tradition that the forbidden fruit which was eaten by Adam and Eve was the grape, the fruit of the vine, [Tr. note:Cf. Bereshith Rabbah, XV, 8.] for it is written: “their grapes are grapes of gall” (Deut. XXXII, 32)--namely, the black grapes. Thus of the two kinds of grapes, black and white, when seen in a dream, the white signify something good because they emanate from, and are the product of, the side of life, but the black emanate from the side of death, and therefore one who in a dream sees or eats of such grapes requires special intercession. Again, why do black grapes portend good if dreamt of when in season? As we have already pointed out, when the dream is dreamed at the time when white grapes are in season naught but good is portended. Why so? Because at that time the whole world is made fair and joyous when they predominate, and both white and black fit into the scheme of things; but when the white grapes are not in season, and so have no special power, then the dream-appearance of the black grapes is a sign that the judgement of death hangs over the dreamer, and he needs to plead for mercy because he has beheld the fruit (lit. the tree) which caused Adam's sin, and in consequence of that sin death to himself and to the whole world. Here a problem arises which I would not mention were not the Master here. We have been taught that this world is formed on the pattern of the world above, and that whatever takes place in this earthly realm occurs also in the realm above. But when the serpent caused death to Adam in this world, what could have corresponded to that in the upper spheres?

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 144b

One might say that the serpent causes the light of the Moon-the female aspect of the Deity-to be diminished for a time, and this is a kind of death. But why did the male also die? Besides, even as to the “Moon” or feminine aspect, we have been taught that the diminishing of her light was not due to the Serpent but to another cause, because she complained against the sun. [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen., p. 20a; Midrash Rabbah, ad loc]. Shall we say that her spouse shares the same fate? Can we imagine a defect in the highest? This is one of the mysteries of the Torah; but the Serpent did indeed cause a defect in all the worlds. Mark this. We have been taught that everything that the Holy One created, both above and below, He created in the mystery of male and female, and there is an infinity of grades in the supernal spheres, each differing from the other; and those grades which are of the same kind God framed and united in one “Body”, in the mystery of the primordial Man. We have also been taught that on the second day of Creation, when the Gehenna was created, one body was formed in the mystery of Man, and those limbs that came near to the fire of Gehenna and were consumed returned to their original state, and this was because those limbs came near to that Serpent. This is the primordial Man who was enticed to the tent of the Serpent, and in this sense died, the Serpent causing him death because he came too near to him. Everywhere man is male and female, but the Holy Supernal Man rules over all and gives food and life to all. And withal this mighty Serpent withheld light from all. When it defiles the tabernacle the Female of that Man dies, and the Male dies and they return to

their elemental state, and in this way lower and upper correspond. "If he ate of the black grapes he can feel confident that he will enter the world to come", because he has (symbolically) prevailed over and destroyed that place, and since he has removed the stubborn "shell", he has drawn near to the world to come, and none will gainsay him. In the same way there could be no song in the house of David until the "black grapes" had been subdued and removed, and then Solomon sang the "Song of Songs", as already mentioned.

'This canticle is superior to all that preceded it; for those which were sung by Solomon's predecessors ascended only to join with the company of the songs chanted by the angels, as, for instance, the "Song of degrees to David", which means "the song which the celestial grades sing to David", to solicit nourishment from him; or again, as we might translate, "a song of degrees for the sake of David", the great king who always praises the Great King. But when Solomon came, he sang a song which is high above even that of David, a song which is the very same as that sung by the great ones of the realms above, the pillars of the universe, in honour of the Supernal King who is the lord of all peace and harmony. Other men send up praises by means of lower Chariots, but King Solomon by means of higher Chariots. It may be asked, What of Moses, who ascended further than all other men in the grade of prophecy and love of the Holy One, blessed be He? Did his song also reach no further than the lower Chariots? The song which Moses uttered did indeed ascend on high, but the truth is, that although it was not on a level with the Canticle of King Solomon, whom no man equalled in poetry, Moses' song was praise and thanksgiving to the Supernal King who redeemed Israel and wrought many signs and wonders for them, both in Egypt and at the Red Sea; but King David and Solomon his son sang

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 145a

with quite different purposes. David endeavoured to prepare the virgins (the celestial grades) and to adorn them for the Matrona's presence so that She and her maidens might be manifested in beauty and grace. When Solomon came he found that Matrona and the virgins thus adorned, so he in his turn aspired to lead the Bride to the Bridegroom. He brought the Bridegroom to the place where beneath the marriage canopy the Bride awaited Him, and drew them together with words of love, that they might be united as One, in one perfection, in perfect love. Therefore Solomon produced a more sublime song than all other men. Moses, by building the Tabernacle, brought about the union of the Matrona with the world here below, Solomon brought about the perfect union of the Matrona with the Bridegroom above: he first led Him to the Canopy, and then brought them both down to this world and prepared a habitation for them in the Sanctuary which he built. It might be asked, How could Moses bring down the Shekinah alone? Would not this cause separation above? The answer is that the Holy One first caused the Shekinah to be united with Moses, and She became, as it were, Moses' bride, as has already been pointed out. As soon as She was united with Moses, She descended to this world and united Herself with it, and She became firmly established in

this world, as never before. But no man since Adam was first created has ever brought about love and union above except King Solomon, who, as we have said, first prepared that union and then invited the Bridegroom and the Bride to the House which he prepared for them. Blessed are David and Solomon his son who have furthered the Supernal Union. Since the day when the Holy One said to the Moon, Go and make Thyself small, She was never again joined! in perfect union with the Sun until Solomon came.

'Shir hashirim asher lishlomoh. Here are five grades which shall unite in the world to come: shir (song) is one; hashirim (songs) are two, which together make three; asher (which) is four; lishlomoh (Solomon's) is five. "Solomon" is in the fifth; for the fiftieth day is the mystery of the Jubilee. Mark now. Solomon would not have been able to bring about the union above had not union of the Shekinah with the world below been already completed in Her union with Moses; one could not have been without the other. All this is a supreme mystery, which yet is revealed to those of a wise heart. It is written concerning Solomon, that he "spake three thousand proverbs and his song was a thousand and five" (I Kings v, 12). This has been interpreted by the Companions to mean that every word that he uttered has three thousand allegorical meanings, as, for instance, his book Ecclesiastes (Koheleth), which has a profound esoteric meaning and is written in the fashion of an allegory. Verily, there is no word in this book which does not contain profound wisdom and allegorical significance, even unto the very least and smallest verse. R. Hamnuna the Ancient, for instance, when he came to the verse, "Rejoice, O young man, in thy youth, and let thy heart cheer thee in the days of thy youth, and walk in the ways of thine heart... but know thou that for all these things God will bring thee into judgement" (Eccl. XI, 9), used to weep, saying: "Verily, this verse is fittingly taken as an allegory, and who can enlarge on it? If it is to be taken literally, it expresses no more than a fact which we see with our eyes; but if, on the other hand, the passage contains esoteric wisdom, who can apprehend it?" ' Then he corrected himself and said: 'It is written, "These are the generations of Jacob: Joseph being seventeen years old, was feeding the flock with his brethren; and the young man was with the sons of Bilhah, and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives; and Joseph brought unto his father their evil report" (Gen. XXXVII, 2). The verse which we have just quoted from Ecclesiastes is an allegory on the esoteric meaning of this verse from the Pentateuch. "Rejoice, O young man," corresponds to "and the young man"; "and let thy heart cheer thee" to "was feeding the flock"; "in the days of thy youth" to "with the sons of Bilhah", etc.; "but know thou that for all these things" to "and Joseph brought unto his father their evil report"; "God will bring thee into judgement" corresponds to "These are the generations of Jacob: Joseph...." Joseph was here included in Jacob. Who can fully grasp the secrets of the Torah? This allegory branches off into three thousand other allegories which are yet all comprised

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 145b

in this one, in which, as we see, Joseph was included in Jacob. The three thousand other veiled implications

concern Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, who are, however, all indicated in this allegory of the mystery of wisdom which is revealed only to the faithful. Here, too, how many pretended merchants are there, or serving men, who are really great men of learning? So, too, there is no end to the hidden meanings of wisdom. Hence it says: "And his song was a thousand and five": that is, as we have interpreted, "the song of every proverb". However, whether the "his" refers to Solomon or to the proverb, it is all the same, since the one was the author of the other. The "song" refers to the "Song of Songs". But does this song actually consist of a thousand and five? Assuredly! The "five" refers to the five gates and doors which open toward the "King whose is the peace". They are the five hundred years of the Tree of Life, the fifty years of the Jubilee. The "thousand" refers to the Tree of Life as such, to the Bridegroom who goes out from its side and takes possession of the five gates, in order to draw nigh unto the Bride and claim Her. The Day of the Holy One, blessed be He, is a thousand years, and this number symbolizes also the River which goes out of Eden. Joseph was called "Righteous" after the Moon, the Shekinah, according to a special agreement between her and the Holy One. Therefore, the Song of Songs is holy of holies, and there is no verse in this Canticle which does not contain the mystery of the "thousand and five". There are five grades contained in the title, as we have said. But why is the "thousand" not indicated? The truth is that this is hidden and will remain hidden until the Wife (the Shekinah) unites Herself with her Husband. Therefore Solomon endeavoured to bring that "Thousand" to the Bride in secret, by the aid of the mysterious ring whereon is engraved the seal of the supernal wisdom (cf. Targum on Eccl. I, 7). As soon as he had completed the making of the Holy of Holies below, the mystery of the Holy of Holies above ascended and was hidden, so that the concealment of the Union might be complete above and below, according to the Divine purpose. "The Holy of Holies" above is the mystery of the Supernal Wisdom and Jubilee. Corresponding to this, the Bridegroom and the Bride inherit the inheritance of Father and Mother, but in a reversed manner. The inheritance of the Father passes to the Daughter in the ascension of the Holy Name, wherefore She is also called "Holy" and "Wisdom". The possession of the Mother is inherited by the Son, and is called "the Holies", because He takes all those supernal holy attributes and gathers them up unto Himself, and then takes them to the Bride. Therefore it says: "Song of Songs": "Song" corresponding to the "Holy" and "Songs" to the "Holies", in order that both these aspects may be fused into one whole in manner due. "Which is Solomon's": as has been already pointed out, this refers to the King "whose is the peace". Yet think not that this praise is His, for it ascends to a still more supernal realm. The mystery is as follows. When the Masculine and the Feminine are united as one under the Highest King, then that Supernal King ascends and is filled with all the sanctifications and benedictions, and pours them down below, this being His great pleasure, to be filled with such sanctifications and benedictions and to pour them down below. Therefore the significance of all our prayers and praises is that by means of them the upper Fountain may be filled; for when it is so filled and attains completeness, then the

universe below, and all that appertains thereto, is filled also and receives completeness from the completion which has been consummated in the upper sphere. The world below cannot, indeed, be in a state of harmony except it receive that peace and perfection from above, even as the moon has no light in herself, but shines with the reflected radiance of the sun. All our prayers and intercessions have this purpose, namely, that the region from whence light issues may be invigorated; for then from its reflection all below is supplied. This is the whole significance of Solomon's Canticle, that "the King to whom peace belongs" may be invigorated, for when that is so, all is invigorated from His reflected glory, but otherwise there is no remedy for the moon.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 146a

AND THIS IS THE HEAVE-OFFERING. We have been told that at the revelation on Mount Sinai, when the Torah was given to Israel in Ten Words, each Word became a voice, and every voice was divided into seventy voices, all of which shone and sparkled before the eyes of all Israel, so that they saw eye to eye the splendour of His Glory, as it is written: "And all the people saw the voices" (Ex. xx, 18). Yea verily, they saw. The voice so formed warned each individual Israelite, saying: "Wilt thou accept me with all the commandments implicit in me?" To which the reply came: "Yes". Then the voice circled round his head once more, asking: "Wilt thou accept me with all the penalties attached to me in the Law?" And again he answered "Yes". Then the voice turned and kissed him on the mouth, as it is written: "Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth" (S.S. I, 2). And all that the Israelites saw then they beheld in one Light (the Shekinah) in which were focused all the other lights, and they yearned to possess it. Said the Holy One, blessed be He, unto them: "This light which ye have seen on Mount Sinai, in which all the colours of the other lights are combined, and which ye so desire, shall be yours: have it, take it unto yourselves!" And these colours which she combines are the gold, silver, brass, etc., mentioned here. [Tr. note: Gold symbolizing Severity, silver Grace, and brass Beauty.]

'Another interpretation of "Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth" is as follows' What prompted King Solomon, when recording words of love between the Upper and the Lower world, to begin with the words, "Let him kiss me"? The reason is, as has been laid down, that no other love

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 146b

is like unto the ecstasy of the moment when spirit (ruah=breath) cleaves to spirit in a kiss, more especially a kiss on the mouth, which is the well of spirit (breath) and its medium. When mouth meets mouth, spirits unite the one with the other, and become one-one love. In the Book of the first R. Humnuna the Ancient it is said of this sentence, "the kiss of love expands in four directions (ruhoth), and these are unified in one, and this is part of the secret of Faith". The Four spirits ascend in four letters, these being the letters from which depends the Holy Name, and with it all things that are, both above and below. Also the

hymning of the Song of Songs derives its meaning therefrom. And what are these four letters? A H B H (Love), which form a supernal chariot. They constitute the linking of all things into a perfect whole. These four letters are the four directions of the love and joy of all the limbs of the Body without any sadness at all. Four directions are there in the kiss, [Tr. note: ie. Four ways of combining the letters of the Holy Name.] each one fulfilling itself in union with the other. And when two spirits thus become mutually interlocked they form two which are as one, and thus the four form one perfect whole. When they separate, there is formed from these four a certain offspring, a spirit formed of four spirits which ascends and splits the firmaments until it reaches a palace which is called the "Palace of Love", because all love is centred there; and therefore this spirit is also called "Love". When that spirit ascends to this Palace, it incites the Palace to attach itself to that which is above. As we have said, there are four letters which proceed in four directions, and they are the letters which spell the word Love. Their fruit is Love. When they unite, one is active towards one direction, another towards the opposite direction. First comes the letter Aleph (in A H B H). Then comes the letter He', which unites itself with the Aleph in love. From these two other letters issue Beth and He, and spirits are interlocked with spirits in love. Then the letters arise and float away in the breath of that spirit which ascended, and adorn themselves within it in the proper fashion. When love, thus consummated according to those four directions, ascends aloft, it meets with a celestial Chief who is appointed over one thousand nine hundred and ninety firmaments and over the outward flowing of the thirteen streams of pure balsam which descend from the mysterious supernal Dew. That outflow is called "Mighty Waters". This Chief tries to prevent the spirit from proceeding, but does not prevail, and it makes its way to the Palace of Love. Concerning this matter, Solomon speaks at the end of his Canticle, saying: "Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it" (S.S. VIII, 7). This refers to the supernal waters which we have just mentioned-those that descend from the Supernal Dew-and to the thirteen streams of pure balsam. The Chief of whom we have spoken is an angel sent forth by the Holy One, blessed be He. He is lord over many celestial hosts. He wreathes crowns for his Lord, and this is the significance of his name, Akathriel (God-crowning); for he prepares crowns from the graven and inscribed Name Y H V H.J H Zebaoth. When that love spirit enters the Palace of Love the love-yearning for the supernal kisses is aroused, those concerning which it is written: "And Jacob kissed Rachel" (Gen. XXIX, 11), so that the kisses of the supernal love are duly brought forth, and they are the beginning of the awakening of all supernal love, attachment and union. For this reason the Hymn begins with the words: "Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth." Now who is "he"? He who is hidden within the supernal concealment. Can, then, the Most Recondite be the fount of kisses, and kiss that which is below? See now. The Most Recondite is beyond cognition, but reveals of Himself a tenuous and veiled brightness shining only along a narrow path which extends from Him, and this is the brightness that irradiates all. This is the starting-point of all esoteric mysteries, itself being unknowable. Or rather, it is sometimes indiscoverable, sometimes discoverable,

but even were it wholly indiscoverable the impulse to the ascending of kisses still depends on it. And because He is veiled, the Canticle also begins with a veiled expression, "let him kiss me", to wit, Him who is veiled above. And with what

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 147a

shall he kiss? With that supernal Chariot from which all colours depend, and in which all are united. Therefore it says, "With the kisses of his mouth". "For thy love is better than wine" (lit. good from wine): this denotes the Sun which gives light to the Moon from the radiance of those supernal kisses, which He gathers up and passes on to the Moon. And from whence is that light derived? From the "preserved wine", from the "wine" which is the joy of all joys. And who is this Wine which gives life and joy to all? Elohim Hayyim (Living God). Also the "Wine of the Name TETRAGRAMMATON", the joy of love and mercy, the source of all life and joy.'

The Companions then came and kissed R. Jose on his head. R. Simeon wept, and said: 'I know for a certainty that the Holy Spirit from above has made itself manifest here.' They all wept with joy, and he continued: 'Blessed is this generation! There will be none other like unto it until King Messiah shall appear, when the Torah shall be restored to her ancient pride of place. Blessed are the righteous in this world and in the world to come! AND THIS IS THE HEAVE-OFFERING WHICH YE SHALL TAKE FROM THEM. Said R. Eleazar: This verse has been interpreted and the inner mystery thereof explained. But there is evidently a contradiction between the above verse (where it says "That they take Me a heave-offering") and this. First it says, "take Me"; then "take My heaveoffering"; then "take from them". However, the whole meaning amounts to this: "Take Me (as) a heave-offering"- but who should take? The children of Israel. And from whom should they take? "From every man whose heart impells him", namely from the supernal angels above, upon whom this "Heave" (the Shekinah) is raised, those who do perpetually raise Her up to the Supernal King; and when Israel is worthy, they take Her from them and bring Her down. Who are those angels? The four who raise Her, and in whom the Heart (God) takes delight. Yet, though this "heave- offering" is borne aloft by them, "ye shall take" from them, in order to bring Her down to earth. How are they to do so, even in this dispensation? By the power of good works, prayer, and the keeping of the Law. But at the time when the Temple yet stood, it was by means of the colours that were manifested below, after the pattern of the colours above, through the sacrificial worship. Those colours drew down the Terumah (the Shekinah) to the lower spheres; that is to say, the colours which were below prevailed over those that were above, the former bringing down the latter, one entering into the other, the former becoming "bodies" for the latter. Therefore it says, "which ye shall take from them". GOLD, AND SILVER, ETC. Gold is included in Gabriel. The supernal gold is carried below by Gabriel, and seven kinds of gold separate themselves from it. "Silver" above is united with Michael below, and one rests on the other. "Brass" is also above; it originates from gold, because gold and five have the same symbolism. It is fire which brings forth brass, and from this power

emanate supernal mysterious serpents (nehashim = nehosheth = brass) and Seraphim brought forth by fire (from saraph, to burn). Therefore brass is golden, lit with orange and red, like fire. It is contained in Noriel (Fire of God) and forms his body. Techeleth (purple blue) is contained in both brass and gold, and derives energy from both sides. It possesses great strength and nothing can obtain dominion over it. It forms the throne of the power of judgement, and is therefore called "Boel" ("In him is El", i.e. God as Power), as it is written: "And El (God) is angry every day" (Ps. VII, 12). But when men turn back to God with perfect repentance, his name is changed into Raphael (God heals): for he brings healing to assuage the pains of that bitter judgement.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 147b

In "purple-red" (Argaman) gold and silver are fused: Michael and Gabriel are intertwined with each other, and of this it is written: "He maketh peace among the dwellers on high" (Job xxv, 2). The two, being joined one with the other, become one body. There is "crimson" also above, contained in Urie¹, like the former, to combine purple-blue and purple-red. Byssus also is above, contained, like the former, in the mystery of Raphael, in order that silver and gold may be united. So much for the mystery of the seven pillars[Tr. note: i.e. the seven angels symbolized by the seven colours.] above which are contained in the seven that are below.

'Assuredly, there is shell within shell for protection, or rather, as we have said, brain within brain. Thus there is goats' hair, as the shell which guards the brain. "Rams' skins reddened" symbolizes the mail-clad lords with the flaming eyes[Tr. note: Angels of chastisement. -] "And his eyes as lamps of fire" (Dan. x, 6). They are called outer "firmaments" within the "shell". "Tahash skins": these are powers which stand on the holy side but are not in union with it. As has been said above, Abraham begat a son by the "other" wife, whose name was Tahash (Gen. XXII, 24), a brother of Ishmael by his mother; so, just as there is a celestial representative of Esau, so likewise is there one of Ishmael. Ishmael's mother begat Tahash from Abraham. For, in spreading radiance on all things, the primordial light, as it shone forth on all sides, also shot forth sparks. When it was established, God stored it away. For whom? For the righteous. And why for them? In order that it might bring forth fruit through and in them. And so it indeed was, for they did bring forth fruit in the world, for Abraham and Sarah "made souls" (Gen. XII, 5) [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Genesis, 79a.], and as they made souls under the sign of holiness, so they also did under the sign of the "other side"; for, were it not for this impulse which Abraham implanted in the "other side", there would be no proselytes in the world. "Acacia wood" has already been explained as symbolizing the Seraphim, who "stand above it" (Isa. VI, 2); that is to say, above the Shell (v. supra). "Oil for the candle-stick." This symbolizes the supernal oil which emanates from above. It has two names: "The oil of the light" (Ex. XXXIX, 37), and the "oil for the light". The former is the one above; the latter the one below. The former never ceases to flow: it is always full of holiness and of blessing, and all lights and lamps are blessed and lit up

from thence. The latter is sometimes full and sometimes otherwise. It is written: "And God made the two great lights: the great light to rule the day, and the small light to rule the night" (Gen. I, 16). This has been correctly interpreted by the Companions, but we may add the following. The "two great lights" refer to the "Oil of the light" and the "Oil for the light": the higher world and the lower world; the Masculine (Sun) and the Feminine (Moon), which, when they are manifested together, are both called by the masculine gender. Because the upper world is called "great", the lower world, which is united with it, is also called "great", but as soon as the above and the below part, and are separate, the one is called "great" and the other "small". Therefore the ancients said that "man should rather be a tail to lions than a head to foxes" (Pirke Aboth IV, 20). For the part bears the designation of the whole; since the tail of a lion is certainly lion, without any separation. Similarly, the head of a fox is still

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 148a

fox. Thus, as we see, it first calls both the Sun and the Moon "great lights", but when the Moon has separated Herself from the Sun she is called "small", even as to be head to a fox is less than to be tail to a lion. Symbolically, therefore, the "oil of the Light" never ceases: it stands in the path of perpetual ascent, in order to rule by day, but the "oil for the light" is intermittent, and is called "small" on this account, and rules at night. The five materials of which the spices were composed (Ex. xxx, 34) were "for the anointing oil and for the incense". These two are really one with the "onyx stones", etc. Thus there are thirteen things connected with the construction of the Tabernacle. We may now revert to the former interpretation of their symbolism.

'It has been remarked that there are seven kinds of gold. Now, it might be thought that there is a mistake here, since gold denotes judgement and silver mercy, and yet gold appears to be reckoned as being above silver. There is, however, no mistake. Gold really does surpass all, but only that gold which is the seventh and the best of all the species of gold, and which is meant by the term "gold" here. It is the kind which shines and sparkles, dazzling the eyes, and he who gets hold of it hides it carefully. From it all other kinds emanate. And when is it called "gold"? When its radiance rises in the awe-inspiring glory of supernal joy to waft back to those below a measure of this holy joy. When it stands for the sign of judgement it changes colour to blue, dark blue, and red-indicating severe judgement. But its essential character is joy, and it ever ascends with joy and trembling to the supernal regions and awakens joyousness. The silver below is connected with the mystery of the Right Arm, while the Supernal Head is symbolized by gold, as it is written: "Thou art the head of gold" (Dan. II, 38). And when does silver find its consummation? When it is contained in gold, a mystery alluded to in the words, "Like apples of gold in pictures of silver" (Prov. xxv, 11). Thus silver comes back to gold, completing the circle. So there are indeed seven kinds of gold. Brass originates from gold, of which it is a degenerate form, and forms the Left Arm; purple-blue forms the Left Thigh; dark purple, included in the left, forms the Right Thigh. Byssus is the "River which

issues forth" and which unifies all the six sides (shesh=byssus= shesh=six), and, as we have already pointed out, the same thing obtains below. Thus with this river there are seven corresponding to the seven cycles of the "Jubilee", and the "seven" of the years of release (Deut. xv, 9). Although there are six they are thirteen through the seventh. Thus the thirteenth is the head, which stands on the whole body below, which is above all the limbs and is of gold. What, now, is the difference between the two kinds of gold? The higher gold is in the symbol of the closed mystery, and its name is Zahab sagur, "shut-in-gold", that is, pure precious gold (I Kings VI, 20, 21), shut off and hidden from all, concealed from the eye, which has no power over it, but the gold below is more revealed." [Tr. note: This symbolism of metals evidently refers to the Sephirotic Tree, and it would require much space for the proper elucidation. What follows to the end of Page 148b is merely a disconnected fragment of a longer section, dealing with priestly and prophetic offices of Moses, Aaron, Samuel, and Jeremiah, and the differences between them, touching on the symbolism of gold, silver, brass, and the brazen serpent] [Note: The last 19 lines of the Hebrew text are not translated as explained by the Translator's note]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 148b

[Note: The first 37 lines of the Hebrew text are not translated as explained by the Translator's note on Page 148b]

It is written: "And God said, Let there be light, and there was light" (Gen. 1, 3). Said R. Jose: 'That light was hidden and kept in store for the righteous in the world to come, as already stated; for it is written, "A light is sown for the righteous" (Ps. XCVII, 11). Thus that light functioned in the world only on the first day of Creation; after that it was hidden away and no longer seen.' Said R. Judah: 'Had it been hidden away altogether,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 149a

the world would not have been able to exist for one moment. But it was only hidden like a seed which generates others, seeds and fruits, and the world is sustained by it. There is not a day that something does not emanate from that light to sustain all things, for it is with this that the Holy One nourishes the world. Moreover, whenever the Torah is studied by night, a little thread of this hidden light steals down and plays upon them that are absorbed in their study, wherefore it is written: "The Lord commandeth His lovingkindness in the daytime, and in the night his song is with me" (Ps. XLII, 9); this has already been expounded. On the day when the Tabernacle was set up on earth, what do we read concerning it? "And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon" (Ex. XL, 35). What was that cloud? It was a thread from the side of the primordial light, which, issuing forth joyously, entered the Shekinah and descended into the Tabernacle below. After the first day of Creation it was never again made fully manifest, but it performs a function, renewing daily the work of Creation.'

R. Jose was once deep in study, R. Isaac and R. Hezekiah being with him. Said R. Isaac: 'We are aware that the structure of the Tabernacle corresponds to the structure of heaven and earth. The Companions have given us just a taste of this mystery, but not enough for a real mouthful.' Said R. Jose: 'Let us take our difficulties to the holy lamp (R. Simeon), for he is able to prepare savoury dishes such as the Holy Ancient One, the most hidden of all secret beings, has prepared for him, and which require no added flavour from anyone else. From his dishes one can eat and drink, and sate oneself as with all the delicacies of the world, and leave over. Of him can it be said, "So he set it before them, and they did eat, and left thereof according to the word of the Lord" (2 Kings IV, 44).' R. Jose continued: 'It is written: "And God gave Solomon wisdom as he promised him, and there was peace between Hiram and Solomon, and they two made a league together" (I Kings v, 26). This verse has been expounded in more than one place. The expression, "And God" (Va- TETRAGRAMMATON) signifies agreement between the higher and lower spheres, namely, that He and His council are at one. "Gave wisdom", as one presents a gift to a beloved friend. "As He promised him"; that is to say, the gifts of wisdom, riches, peace and dominion. "And there was peace between Hiram and Solomon"; this indicates that they had a private code between them which other men did not understand. King Solomon realized that even in that most perfect of all generations it was not the will of the Supernal King that so much wisdom should be revealed by him, that the Torah which had hitherto been hidden should now be disclosed, because he opened a door to it. Hence, even though he did thus open the door, the full meaning of his words was yet undisclosed except to the wise, such as are worthy, and they, too, could only fumble with them and not express them clearly. But, in this generation of R. Simeon, the Holy One, blessed be He, is willing that for his sake these hidden mysteries shall be revealed through him. Therefore I am amazed at the scholars of this generation, that they neglect even for a moment to seek the presence of R. Simeon in order to study with him, as long as he is permitted to stay with us in this world. Nevertheless, wisdom shall not vanish from the world in this generation. Alas, for that generation from which he shall be taken away! The wise will then diminish and wisdom shall be forgotten.' Said R. Isaac: 'That is assuredly true. Once, when I was walking with him and he opened his mouth to expound the Torah, a pillar of cloud reaching from heaven to earth appeared and stood before us, and in it a great light shone, and I trembled exceedingly. Blessed is the man, I said, to whom in this world so much is vouchsafed. What is it that is written concerning Moses? "And all the people saw the pillar of cloud stand at the Tabernacle door; and all the people rose up and worshipped, every man at his tent door" (Ex. XXXIII, 10). Such a vision was fitting for a teacher like Moses, the faithful prophet, the greatest of all the prophets, and for that generation which received the Torah on Mount Sinai, and which had seen signs and wonders in Egypt and at the Red Sea. But in this generation it is the merit of R. Simeon alone that makes it possible for us to behold these wonders through him.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 149b

AND PURPLE BLUE. Said R. Isaac: This colour is obtained from a fish of the Lake of Genessareth, which is in the territory of Zebulun. This colour had to appear in the Tabernacle for the following reason. It is written: "And God said, Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters" (Gen. 1, 6). That firmament was created on the second day, because this creative act comes from the Left Side (separation), and on this day, too, was Gehenna created from the dross of the fire of the Left side. Now the sea was dyed with that purple blue colour which symbolizes the Throne of Judgement. That day also received water from the Right Side, which nevertheless did not emerge till the second day, in order that one (attribute) might be combined with and reinforced by the other. The light of the first day of Creation was the first of all the six lights. It came from the side of fire, as it is written: "And the light of Israel shall be for a fire" (Isa. X, 17). That "light of Israel" emanated from the Right Side, and was (yet) contained in the fire. Now, the first of those six days is (symbolically) water, but it performed the function not of water but of light, which is from the side of fire, which is of the second day, to make manifest that the Holy One created the world on the foundation of peace, and that everything has grown out of peace. Thus the first day performed all its operations from the Side of the second, and the second operated from the Side of the first day. Each functioned with the work of the other, to show that one was merged in the other. The third day was a synthesis of both the first and the second; therefore it says concerning the third day of Creation "And God saw that it was good" twice (Gen. 1, 10, 12). On this day the purple-blue was formed out of two other colours, red and black, the colours of the second day. The fiery red, which is the proper colour of the second day, is an attribute of Elohim, and it was assigned (in the Tabernacle) the colour of gold, which resembles it. When the red came down it plunged into the Sea, where it became dark blue, which is also an attribute of Elohim, but of an aspect less rigorous than the former. As for the black, it was formed as the residue of the original red when it came down below, for being as it were smelted, it formed round it a slimy element which was first an intense red, and finally was transformed into black. All these are transformations out of the primeval red; and all this was created on the second day and is designated "other gods". That black is so dark as to be almost indiscernible. The Holy Lamp put it this way. When the red was transformed into purple-blue, and the colours mixed, a scum was thrown off which sank to the depths and turned into mire and dirt, as it is written, "The wicked are like the troubled sea, when it cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and dirt" (Isa. LVII, 20). And from that dirt of the Sea came that black which is dark, and not only dark but superlatively black—"Darkness upon the face of the deep" (Gen. 1, 2). And why is it called "darkness"? Both because of its colour and because it darkens the face of Creation. It is both red and black, therefore it does not say of the second day of Creation, "And God saw that it was good". But have we not been taught that the words "And behold it was very good" (Gen. 1, 31) include the Angel of Death? How, then, is it possible to say that it is because of him that it is not said of the second day that it was very good? Verily, herein is a

mystery of mysteries. The Angel of Death is indeed good. Why so? Because, since all men know that one day they must die, many turn to repentance from fear of him before the Lord. Many fear the King because the lash looms before their eyes. Then is the lash indeed beneficial, making men good and virtuous and upright. Hence the Angel of Death is referred to as "very good".

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 150a

'Concerning this mystery, the Holy Lamp (R. Simeon) gave us the following explanation: "And behold it was good" refers to the Angel of Life; "very" to the Angel of Death, for he is of greater importance. And why? When the Holy One, blessed be He, created the world, all was prepared for the coming of Man, who is the king of this world. Man was fashioned to walk in the straight way, as it is written: "God hath made man upright, but they have sought out many inventions" (Eccl. VII, 29). He made him upright, but he gave himself over to corruption and was therefore driven out of the Garden of Eden. This Garden was planted by the Holy One, blessed be He, on the earth with the full Name (TETRAGRAMMATON Elohim), and made an exact likeness of its prototype, the Paradise above, and all supernal forms were fashioned and shaped in it, and the cherubs were there-not those carved in gold or any material that could be fashioned by human hands, but of supernal light, fashioned and brodered through the agency of the perfect Name of the Holy One. All the images and forms of all things in this world were there fashioned, all having the similitude of the things in this world. And this place is the abode of holy spirits, both of those that have come into this world, and also of those that have not yet come into this world. Those that are about to come are invested with garments and with faces and bodies like those in this world, and they gaze upon the glory of their Lord until the time comes for them to appear in the world. When they leave the Garden for that purpose, these spirits put off their celestial bodies and garments and take on the bodies and garments of this world; they henceforth make their abode in this world in the garments and bodies fashioned from the seed of procreation. So when the time comes for the spirit to leave this world again, it cannot do so until the Angel of Death has taken off the garment of this body. When that has been done, he again puts on that other garment in the Garden of Eden of which he had had to divest himself when he entered this world. And the whole joy of the spirit is in that celestial body. In it he rests and moves, and contemplates continually the supernal mysteries which, when he was in the earthly body, he could neither grasp nor understand. When the soul clothes herself with the garments of that world, what delights, what joys, she experiences! And who caused the body to be inhabited by the spirit? Why, he who took off the garment of flesh, the Angel of Death!

'God shows kindness to His creatures in not divesting them of their earthly garment until other garments, more precious and finer than these, are prepared for them. But the wicked, they who have never turned to their Lord with a perfect repentance-naked they came into this world, and naked they must return from it, and their souls go in shame to join the other souls in like plight, and they are judged in the

earthly Gehenna by the fire from above. Some of them flutter upward after a time; these are the souls of the sinners who had intended to repent, but died before they had carried out their intentions. These are judged first in Gehenna and then flutter upward. See how great is the mercy of the Holy One towards His creatures! The most wicked sinner, if he have intended repentance, but dies without carrying out his resolve, is, it is true, punished for having gone out of this world without having repented, but his good intention is not lost, but it ascends to the Supernal King and there remains until the Holy One, seeing it, prepares for that soul a place of refuge in "Sheol", where it twitters repentance. For the good intention issues from before the Holy One, and, breaking all the strong gates of the habitations of Gehenna, reaches at last the place where that sinner lies. It smites him and awakens in him again that intention which he had had on earth,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 150b

causing the soul to struggle and ascend from the abode of Sheol. Truly, no good thought is ever lost from the remembrance of the Holy King. Therefore, blessed is he who nourishes good thoughts towards his Lord, for, even if he cannot put them into practice, the Holy One takes the will for the deed. This is the case with good thoughts. With evil thoughts, however, the will is not taken for the deed, save in the case of idolatry, as has been explained by the Companions. The wicked who had never given a thought to repentance go down to Sheol and never come out from thence, as it is written of them, "As the cloud is consumed and vanisheth away, so he that goeth down to sheol shall come up no more" (Job VII, 9). But, concerning those others who had intended to repent, it says, "The Lord killeth and maketh alive; He bringeth down to sheol and bringeth up" (I Sam. II, 6). ‘

Said R. Judah: 'Why are the sinners punished by the fire of Gehenna? Because the fire of Gehenna, which burns day and night, corresponds to the hot passion of sinfulness in man. There was once a period when for some time sin ceased to rule because it had been thrown into the iron ring in the abyss of the Ocean. During that period the fire of Gehenna went out and did not burn at all. When sinfulness returned, and again began to burn in the hearts of sinners, the fire of Gehenna was started again, for it is the heat of sinful passion in the hearts of sinners that kindles and keeps alight the fires of Gehenna, causing them to burn day and night without ceasing. Gehenna has seven doors which open into seven habitations; and there are also seven types of sinners: evildoers, worthless ones, sinners, the wicked, corrupters, mockers, and arrogant ones; and corresponding with them are the habitations in Gehenna, for each kind a particular place, all according to grade. And over each habitation a special angel is appointed, all being under the direction of Duma, who has thousands and myriads of angels under him, to punish sinners according to their deserts. The fire of the Gehenna which is below comes from the Gehenna which is above, and is kindled by the heat of the sinners in whom the evil inclination burns, and there all the piles burn. In Gehenna there are certain places and grades called "Boiling filth", where the filth of the souls that have been polluted by the filth of this

world accumulates. There these souls are purified by fire and made white, and then they ascend towards the heavenly regions. Their filth remains behind and the evil grades, called "Boiling filth", are appointed over that filth and the fire of Gehenna rules over it. There are certain sinners who pollute themselves over and over again by their own sins and are never purified. They die without repentance, having sinned themselves and caused others to sin, being stiff-necked and never showing contrition before the Lord while in this world; these are they who are condemned to remain for ever in this place of "boiling filth" and never leave it. Those who have corrupted their ways upon earth and recked not of the honour of their Lord in this world are condemned to remain there for all generations. On Sabbaths, New Moons, special seasons and festivals, the fire is extinguished there, and they have a respite from punishment, but, unlike sinners of a lesser degree who are accorded relief, they are not allowed to leave that place even on such days. As for those who, when on earth, profaned the Sabbath and the festivals, and recked not of the honour of their Lord, but openly profaned the holy days, these days, since they were not regarded in this world by these sinners, do not keep or guard them now in the other world; and so they have no rest.' Said R. Jose: 'Do not say this, for the truth is that there they are forced to keep the Sabbaths and festivals even against their will.' 'It is the heathen', rejoined R. Judah, 'who, not having been commanded to keep the Sabbath in this world, are there forced to keep it. Every Sabbath Eve, at the time of the sanctification of the day, heralds

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 151a

are sent to proclaim throughout the length of Gehenna: "Cease from punishing the wicked! The Holy King is come; the Sabbath is about to be sanctified. He takes them all under His protection", and all chastisements cease and the wicked find rest for a space. But the fire of Gehenna never ceases to burn those souls who have never kept the Sabbath, and sinners there ask concerning them: "Wherein lies the difference between these and those? Why find these no rest?" And the lords of judgement make answer: "These are sinners who have denied the Holy One, blessed be He, and have broken the whole Law, because they kept not the Sabbath; therefore now have they no rest." Then all other kinds of sinners are allowed to come and see these, the tormented, for whom there is no rest. And a certain angel, named Santriel, goes away to fetch the body of such a sinner from the grave and brings it to Gehenna, holding it up before the eyes of all the sinners, that they may see how it has bred worms; and that soul has no rest in the fire of Gehenna. Then all the sinners of Gehenna swarm round it and call out: "This is such a one, a sinner, who regarded not the honour of his Lord! He denied the Holy One! He denied the whole Torah! Woe unto him! Better it were had he never been born that such punishment and disgrace should not have come upon him!" Concerning such it is written: "And they shall go forth and look upon the carcases of the men, that have transgressed against Me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh," (Isa. LXVI, 24). "Their worm shall not die" refers to the body; "their fire shall not be quenched", to the

soul; “an abhorring (deraaon) unto all flesh”; that is to say, all the other sinners will say, “de-raon”, we have seen enough of this horrible thing!” Said R. Jose: ‘Quite true! For Sabbath is of equal importance with the whole Torah. The Torah is fire, therefore those who have broken it are doomed to be eternally burnt by the fire of Gehenna!’ Said R. Judah; ‘At the conclusion of the Sabbath that angel comes and takes back to the grave the worm-eaten body, and both the body and the soul are punished, each in its way. But this happens only when the body is still intact; if, on the other hand, it is decayed, it is not any longer punished, for the Holy One “doth not stir up all his wrath” (Ps. LXXXIII, 38).

‘All sinners, as long as their bodies in the graves are intact, with all their limbs, are judged body and soul together, each in its own way; but as soon as the body is decayed, the punishing of the soul ceases. Those souls that are destined to leave Gehenna now leave it; those that are to have rest now find it, and those who are destined to become dust under the feet of the righteous become dust, each according to its deserts. How excellent a thing it is, therefore, both for the righteous as well as for sinners, when their bodies are in close contact with the earth so that decay can set in quickly and their punishment may not be prolonged through the continued existence of the body; for there is not one of the righteous who can escape the judgement of the grave, for the angel appointed over the graves stands over the body and punishes it daily. And if the righteous have to undergo this judgement of the grave, how much more so the wicked! But when the body decays, the judgement ceases in both cases. The only exceptions are those saints who are the pillars of the world, who merit that their souls immediately after death should ascend forthwith to the regions appointed for them. They, however, are few. It is the Destroying Angel who brings death to all people, except those who die in the Holy Land, to whom death comes by the Angel of Mercy who holds sway there.’ Said R. Isaac: ‘This being the case, wherein lay the superiority of Moses, Aaron and Miriam, concerning whom it is written that they died “by the mouth of the Lord”, meaning that their death was not brought about by the Destroying Angel?’ R. Judah replied:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 151b

‘Truly, the greatness of these three and their superiority over all others is demonstrated by this, that, although they met their death outside the Holy Land, they, unlike their contemporaries, were not brought to it by the Destroying Angel, but by the Holy One Himself. But in the Holy Land itself, all who die do not die by the hand of the Destroying Angel, because that is the domain of the Holy One; concerning this it is written: “Thy dead shall revive, my dead bodies (nebelati) shall rise; awake and sing, ye that dwell in the dust” (Isa. xxvi, 19). “Thy dead” refers to those who die in the Holy Land, who belong to Him alone and to no other power, for the “other side” has no power at all there; they are “Thy dead”, namely, those of the Holy One. “My dead bodies” refers to those who die outside the Holy Land by the power of the “destroyer”, so they are called nebelah, “dead body”, defiling those who touch it. For every animal not slaughtered according to the rule is called nebelah, because slaughter is from the “other

side”, and as soon as it is improperly carried out the “other side” rests on it, and it is therefore dubbed nebelah, i.e. shamefulness, wickedness, folly; its name describing its character. Therefore, wherever the “other side” has power, it is called nebelah, and those who die outside the Holy Land, being under its power, are therefore called “dead bodies”. “Awake and sing ye that dwell in dust”; “dwell” means that they are there but for a short period, and are not really dead but asleep, and have only to be awakened. This refers to those who are “asleep” in Hebron (the Patriarchs); therefore the expression used of them is “expire” (gawa), as of one gone into a trance from which he can be recalled. Thus the four pairs? the Patriarchs and their wives, who lie in Hebron, are asleep and not dead: their bodies are all intact, just as when they lived on earth, and they know the hidden mysteries more than any living being. They were hidden there at the gates of Paradise, and they are referred to in the words “dwell in dust”. Truly, those whose souls went out of them as they dwelt in the Holy Land did not die by the power of the “other side”, which has no power there, but by the Angel of Mercy, under whose care the Holy Land is.

‘There is a place [Tr. note: Luz, cf. Bereshith Rabbah, 69.] in the world where that “Destroyer” has no power at all, where he is not permitted to enter, and those who live there do not die until they have left the town. And why has the Angel of Destruction no power there? It cannot be because it is not his domain, since even in the Holy Land, which is subject to no alien sway, people die. Nor can it be because it is a holy place, because there is no place so holy as the Holy Land. Nor can it be that it is on account of the merits of its builder, for there have been many men of greater merit.’ Said R. Isaac: ‘I have not heard any explanation of this, so I shall say nothing.’ So they repaired to R. Simeon and asked him concerning this matter. Said he: ‘It is indeed true that the Angel of Death has no power over that place, and the Holy One does not wish that anyone should ever die there. Nor should you think that before the town was built people in that place died. Not so. For, from the very beginning of the world God appointed this place to be thus, and to those who would penetrate into the mystery of wisdom there is in this a mystery of mysteries. When the Holy One, blessed be He, created the world, He did so by means of the secret power of letters. The letters were shaken about before Him and He created the world by the tracing of the Holy Name. The letters presented themselves for participation in the world’s creation in a variety of permutations. [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen., 204a.] The Holy One said it must end with Yod, and the letter Teth remained hanging alone in the air above that place (Luz).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 152a

The light of the letter Teth is Life; therefore, anyone seeing this letter in a dream knows it is a good omen for him. Hence it is that death has no dominion over that place over which this letter hangs. When the Holy One desired the world to be firmly established, then took He a stone on which was engraved the mystery of the twenty-two letters of the Alphabet, and threw it into the waters. It drifted from place to place, but found nowhere to settle until it came to the Holy Land, and

the waters followed it until it reached that spot where the Altar was to be established. There the stone sank, and the whole world was firmly established on it. It might be asked, if that place (Luz) is the place where life reigns, why was the Temple not built there, that it might give life also to those who dwell in Jerusalem? The answer is, that in that place abides one letter only, but in the Temple are all the letters by which it was miraculously built, after the manner and in the likeness of the whole Universe. Besides, the Holy Land gives life and expiation to those who are in the other world, but Luz gives life only to those who are in this world. Hence the purpose of the Temple was to obtain forgiveness of the sins of Israel, to make it possible for them to inherit the world to come. Mark this. The letter Teth signifies in all places the light of life; therefore the word "good" (tob) begins with this letter. The Angel of Destruction, when he comes to this letter, must flee, or, rather, he has not the power to approach it at all. This letter is the reverse of the letter Koph, [Tr. note: The first letter of Kelalah, curse.] which finds no resting place in the whole world. Now, as Teth dominates this place, so does koph dominate Gehenna. In the book of R. Hamnuna the Ancient it is written concerning the two letters Heth and Teth that they were not engraved upon the precious stones, those stones of perfection (on the High Priest's ephod), and the names of the Twelve Tribes inscribed on those stones do not contain these two letters, because together they would form the word Het' (sin). All the letters of the Alphabet hang in engraved mysteries of the Holy Names in the Temple place; also Heaven and Earth, and all that is above and below; yea, the Holy Name itself is engraved there. So it was in the Tabernacle also, because "Bezalel possessed such great wisdom that he knew how to combine those letters of the Alphabet by which heaven and earth were created", [Tr. note: T. B. Berakhoth, 55a.] and so, on account of his great wisdom, the building of the Tabernacle was entrusted to him, and he was set apart from among all the children of Israel. And as one was set apart above, so the Holy One wished that he should be set apart also below. As the Lord said unto Moses: "Behold I have called by name Bezalel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah" (Ex. XXI, 2), so did Moses say unto the children of Israel: "Behold the Lord hath called by name Bezalel", etc. (Ibid. xxv, 30). Therefore his name was Bezalel, i.e. bezel El, "in the very shadow of God". And who is that one? The Righteous, who sits in the shadow of Him whose name is "The Highest God" (El elyon). So this one holds a position below corresponding to that of El above: as El "took six sides", so did the Righteous take six sides; as the El sends out light above, so does this Righteous shed light below; as that El is the synthesis of all the six dimensions, so is that Righteous. "The son of Uri"-the son of primeval light (or), which the Holy One created in the time of Creation. "The son of Hur"-the son of absolute freedom (herut); or "the son of the whitest (havra) of all colours"- And he is appropriately "of the tribe of Judah".

'As we have already pointed out, all colours seen in dreams signify good things, with the exception of purple-blue (techeleth), and that is because it symbolizes the Throne from which souls are judged. But has it not some white in it? Truly; but when the judgement takes place it appears to be only purple-

blue, as we have

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 152b

said. The sight of that colour reminds a man that he must keep the commandments of his Lord. So it was with the Brazen Serpent in the wilderness: they who looked upon it were filled with awe and fear of the Holy One and kept themselves clear from sin, and therefore they were healed in that moment. And who was it that instilled in them fear of the Holy One? The instrument of punishment-that Serpent at which they so fixedly gazed. The same is true of "the thread of blue", that they were bidden to put upon the fringe of their garments (Zizith), concerning which it is written, "that ye may look upon it and remember all the commandments of the Lord" (Num. xv, 39). Therefore it was ordained that this colour should be in the Tabernacle.' Said R. Isaac: 'The Master has told us that this colour symbolizes the Throne when it becomes the seat of judgement. When, then, is it the seat of mercy?' R. Simeon replied: 'When the Cherubim turn their faces the one towards the other, and gaze each into the face of the other, then all colours are merged- purple-blue becomes something else, and green or blue is turned into white. With the changing of colours judgement was changed into mercy, or vice versa. And so with all other colours. All depends on the way in which Israel orders her prayers; hence it is written: "Israel in whom I will be glorified" (lit. beautified) (Isa. XLIX, 3), to wit, in those colours which merge into one another and contain all beauty.' AND THOU SHALT MAKE A TABLE OF ACACIA WOOD. R. Isaac began: 'It is written: "When thou hast eaten and art full, then thou shalt bless the Lord thy God" (Deut. VIII, 10). How blessed are the Israelites, whom the Holy One has befriended above all nations and drawn near to Himself! It is for their sake that He nourished all nations; for, had it not been for them He would not have supplied the world with food. And now, when Israel is in exile, the Gentiles receive a double portion. When Israel dwelt in the Holy Land, the Holy One sent down food to them from a supernal region, the surplus of which was given to the heathen nations, but now it is just the reverse. He deals with them like a king with his servants. So long as the servants are obedient and loyal they are permitted to sit and eat with the king, and the remnants are thrown to the dogs; but when they are disobedient, and forget their loyal service, the king gives the food to the dogs and leaves them only the bones. The same is true of Israel: while they did the will of their Lord they ate from the King's table which He Himself had prepared for them, and they, out of the fullness of their joy, gave to the nations their surplus; but when Israel ceased to live according to the commands of their Lord they went into captivity and had to be content with that which the Gentiles left over. So it says: "Even thus shall the children of Israel eat their defiled bread among the Gentiles, whither I will drive them" (Ezek. IV, 13). Woe to the king's son, who is forced to wait at the servants' table to be fed upon the remnants! King David said: "Thou preparest a table before me in the presence of mine enemies; thou anointest my head with oil; my cup runneth over" (Ps. XXIII, 6). "Thou preparest a table": this is the meal of the king; "in the presence of mine enemies": this refers to the "dogs" who lie under the table waiting for the scraps while he sits with the king

enjoying the meal: "Thou anointest my head with oil": this refers to the main part (the "head") of the meal, for all the rich oil and fat, and all the best portions of the food, are reserved for the king's friend, while that which is left is given to the scullions and the dogs. "My cup runneth over": the cup of the king's friend is ever filled up, even before he asks. The position of the children of Israel in regard to that of the Gentiles has ever been thus.'

R. Hiya once went to Tiberias to see R. Simeon, and R. Jacob, the son of Idi, and R. Jesse the younger accompanied him. On the way R. Jesse said to R. Hiya: 'I find very surprising the words of the Scripture, "But show kindness to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be of those that eat of thy table" (I Kings II, 7). Was this all the kindness that Solomon was to show him? Also it hardly accords with the dignity of a king that another person should eat with him

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 153a

at the same table. The king should sit alone at his table, and his ministers by themselves at another table, somewhat lower.' R. Hiya replied: 'I have not heard any explanation of the matter, and therefore shall not say anything.' Then R. Abba asked R. Jacob: 'Hast thou heard aught concerning it?' He answered: 'If you who sip daily the richness of the most excellent oil (R. Simeon) have not heard anything, how can you expect me to know?' Then he asked R. Jesse: 'And hast thou heard anything?' He replied: 'Although I am but young, and have but lately been admitted to your company, and had no great teachers before, yet I have heard an explanation.' He then began by quoting the verse: "Who giveth good to all flesh: for his mercy endureth for ever" (Ps. CXXXVI, 25). 'Why', said he, 'did David choose to end this great hymn of praise with this verse? Now there are three great channels above by which the Holy One, blessed be He, manifests Himself, which are His precious mystery: the brain, [Tr. note: Hokmah.] the heart, [Tr. note: Tifereth.] and the liver. [Tr. note: Malkuth.] These organs act above in the opposite manner from those below. Above it is the head which first receives nourishment, which it sends on to the heart, which eventually passes it on to the liver, which again gives sustenance to the lower members in due proportion. Here below it is the liver which comes first, which transfers the nourishment to the heart, in such a manner that it is that organ which receives the finest portions; then, when the heart is strengthened, it passes the nourishment on to the brain; while to the other parts of the body the liver apportions the amounts necessary. On a fastday, man sacrifices his food and drink to the supernal "Liver", and what is it that he thus sacrifices? His fatness, nourishing food, his blood, heart and soul; that "Liver" accepts it gladly, and in turn offers it to the "Heart" that reigns over it; in turn the "Heart" offers it to the "Brain", which rules over the whole body; then the "Liver" apportions to all the lower parts their share. At another time it is the Brain which receives first and gives to the Heart, which, again, gives to the Liver and the Liver to all the lower members; and when it distributes nourishment to this world it gives first to the heart, which on earth is the king; for the king must naturally be fed first. Blessed is he who is found worthy to eat at

the King's table, for thus does he come first in the enjoyment of the bounty from above! This, then, was the significance of that kindness which David showed to the sons of Barzillai. Not that anyone sits actually at the table of the king. But those who eat along with the king, and at the same time, are in his favour and are reckoned as sitting at the same table with him.' Then R. Hiya came forward, kissed him on the brow, and said: 'Young thou art, but profound wisdom dwells already in thine heart.' In the meantime they discovered that R. Hezekiah had arrived. R. Hiya turned to him and said: 'Of a surety, the Holy One, blessed be He, will join this our company, for new thoughts upon the Torah will find utterance among us.' They then sat down to eat, and agreed that each should give some exposition of the Torah during the meal. Said R. Jesse: 'This which we eat is but a light repast, and yet it is called a "meal", a meal in which the Holy One participates, and concerning which it is written: "This is the table that is before the Lord" (Ezek. XLI, 22); for the words of the Torah will gather about this place.'

R. Hiya then began to discourse on the text: When thou hast eaten and art satisfied, then thou shalt bless the Lord thy God (Deut. VIII, 10). Said he: 'Should a man then bless the Lord only after he has filled his belly?

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 153b

Nay, even if one eats but a morsel and counts it as a meal, that is called eating to satisfaction; for it is written, "Thou openest Thine hand and satisfiest the wish (will) of every living thing" (Ps. CXLV, 16). It is not written: "Thou satisfiest with a substantial meal", but "the wish" or "the intention"; so it is not the quantity of food but the intention of the eater that "satisfies"; therefore it is necessary that at all times when we eat we should offer up our thanks in order that there may be joy above.'

R. Hezekiah spoke on the same words, saying: 'From these words also it is possible to deduce the rules that an intoxicated person is allowed to say the grace after meals. With prayers it is otherwise, for prayers ascend very high to the realm where there is neither eating nor drinking, and therefore prayers are best said on an empty stomach. But in that realm to which the benediction after meals enters, there is, as it were, both "eating and drinking", and from it emanates nourishment for us below. Therefore it is necessary to exhibit before it satiety and joy in the expression of grace after meals.'

R. Jesse then spoke on the words: AND THOU SHALT MAKE A TABLE OF ACACIA WOOD. Said he: This table stood in the Tabernacle, and there rested upon it the blessing from above, and from it issued nourishment to the whole world. Not for a moment was that Table to remain empty, since blessing does not rest upon an empty place. Therefore it was that the shew-bread had always to be renewed upon it each Sabbath (Lev. XXIV, 8), in order that the blessing from above might always rest upon it, and that food and blessing, because of it, might emanate from that table to all the tables of the world. So, too, should every man's table be when he says grace after meals; in

order that the blessing from above should rest upon it, it should not be empty, as the Companions have indicated in connection with the words of Elisha to the widow: "Tell me, what hast thou in the house?" (2 Kings IV, 2). A table at which there is no converse pertaining to the words of the Torah is one concerning which it is written, "For all (their) tables are full of vomit and filthiness, without a place" (Isa. XXVIII, 8), and at such a table it is forbidden to say the benediction. There are two kinds of tables: there is the kind that is prepared for the Holy One above, and at which it is ever fitting that the Torah should be discoursed upon and the letters of the words of the Torah should be gathered in-the table concerning which it is written: "This is the table that is before the Lord" (Ezek. XLI, 22). And there is the table which has no part in the Torah, or in the holiness thereof, and which is called "full of filthiness"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 154a

-the table of "another god", which has no part in the mystery of the supernal God. That table, on the other hand, at which words of the Torah are spoken, is taken up by the Holy One, blessed be He, and becomes His own possession. Nay more, Suriya, the high angelic being, takes up all the holy words uttered at this table, and sets the form of it before the Holy One, and all the words, and the table also, are crowned before the Holy King, as is implied in the words "before the Lord". A man's table can purify him of all his sins. Blessed is the man whose table exhibits these two qualities-that from it words of the Torah ascend to the Holy One, and food goes forth to the poor. At the moment when such a table as this is being removed after the meal two angels appear, one at the right and one at the left. The one says: "This is a table belonging to the Holy King upon which such an one ordered his meal in His presence. May this table be continually full of supernal blessings, and may the Holy One pour upon it the richness of His bounty." And the other says: "This is a table of the Holy King which such an one had ordered before Him. It is blessed by those above and by those below. May it be set before the Ancient of Days both in this world and in the world to come." R. Abba, before the table was removed after a meal, was used to cover it up, saying: "Remove this table respectfully that it may not be put to shame before the King's messengers." A man's table, used rightly, secures for him participation in the bliss of the world to come, a sufficiency of nourishment in this world, and also additional power and excellency in the right place, and, withal, it causes him to be remembered favourably before the Ancient of Days. Happy the lot of such a man in this world and in the world to come.'

R. Jacob said: 'It is written, "And it came to pass, when all that knew him beforetime saw that, behold, he prophesied among the prophets, then the people said one to another, What is this that is come unto the son of Kish? Is Saul also among the prophets?"' (1 Sam. x, 11). Said he: 'Was not Saul already the chosen of the Lord, as it says, "See whom the Lord hath chosen" (Ibid. v. 24), i.e. already. Why, then, were they astonished that he prophesied? The reason was because the Holy One chose Saul to be a king, not a prophet; for no man ever, except Moses, was found worthy of combining the two functions of king and

prophet. As to Samuel, he was certainly a prophet, as it says, "And all Israel knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet to the Lord", but besides being a prophet he was only a judge, not a king; otherwise the people would not have asked for a king. Therefore the people were astonished when Saul prophesied, because he had been chosen as king and not as prophet. If it should be asked, why, then, did the spirit of prophecy rest on him, the answer would be, that because the kingship is based on the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, he possessed the inspiration of prophecy before he became king; but as soon as he was made king, it was not the spirit of prophecy but the power to judge according to the truth that was bestowed upon him, and for which he had been chosen to be king. As long as he was among the prophets the spirit of prophecy rested on him, but when he left them, the spirit of prophecy departed from him. As for me, O that the inspiration of the Holy Spirit should come upon me, that I might be among the faithful prophets, the disciples of R. Simeon ben Yohai, before whom both supernals and terrestrials tremble in awe-and I that am now in your company stand in fear and trembling before you!'

Then he went on: ' "Thou shalt make a table." This table was here below for setting the shew-bread upon. Now, which was of greater import, the table or the bread?

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 154b

It might be thought that the bread was more important, since the table was needed to put the bread on, and besides, it was, in the very nature of things, beneath the bread. This, however, is not so: the table was the essential article, being, through its arrangement, the receptacle of blessing from above and of food for the whole universe. Indeed, from the secret influence of that Table emanated nourishment to the whole world, in proportion to the abundance poured out upon it from above. As for the bread, it was the fruit, the actual nourishment emanating from that Table, to show that the universal nourishment emanated from it-for where there is no vineyard there are no grapes, and where there is no tree there can be no fruit. So the Table was the essential and the shewbread was but the nourishment emanating from it. And the priests, from Sabbath to Sabbath, collected the fruit of the Table, to show that supernal nutriment emanated from the Table through the agency of that bread. And because the priests were permitted to eat the shew-bread, all the rest of their food and all that they drank was blessed, so that the "evil inclination" had no power to attack them-for, as a rule, the "evil inclination" is only present where there is much eating and drinking, as it is written: "Lest I be full and deny Thee, and say, Who is the Lord?" (Prov. xxx, 9); since it is from eating and drinking that the evil inclination gathers strength in a man's body. The bread which was taken from the table in the Tabernacle caused blessing to descend upon all the other food consumed by the priests, so that the evil impulse might have no power to attack them, and they could carry out their ministrations to the Holy One with perfect devotion. For the priests this was most necessary. The table had to be set up at the northern end, as it is written, "And thou shalt put up the table at

the north

side" (Ex. XXVI, 35), because the awakening of joy proceeds from thence. The Left Side (North) always receives from the Right Side, and rouses the Female, and the Right Side then draws Her to Himself, and She unites with Him. Water, which symbolizes joy, proceeds from the Right, then it bestows itself upon the Left, and so it is that water unites with the Left, communicating to it joy. All this is symbolized by the ritual washing of the hands before meals: the vessel containing the water is taken in the right hand and poured on to the left, not from left to right. Therefore the Table, as we have said, was set on the north side, for there was more fruit there, since joy was awakened there first. This is expressed in the words: "His left hand under my head, and his right hand embraces me" (S.S. II, 6). A man should sit down to table with a clean body, in order that God may be pleased with his meal and it may not be accounted "filth and refuse" for the impure side to reap any benefit therefrom. When one has eaten and is satisfied, it is necessary to give the scraps and the dregs to the "other side", and any particles left upon the hands after a meal must be washed away so that the "other side" may receive its due. Therefore the washing of the hands after a meal is an imperative duty and the water must be poured away into the place of guilt (hoba="duty" and "guilt"). Hence, no blessing is to be made over the washing of hands (after meals), since there can be no benediction in connection with that "side". So it is important that one should not give any of the food on the table to that "filth and vomit". The table in the Tabernacle was, as we have said, placed there in order that food should lie upon it and that nourishment should therefrom emanate to the whole world, and that is why

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 155a

it was not permitted to remain empty, even for one moment. The other, the impure table, the table of emptiness, could have no place in the sanctuary. In the same manner, the table over which a man pronounces blessings for food must not be empty, for blessing cannot rest on emptiness. The bread which was set upon the Table of the Holy One took the form of twelve loaves, and the symbolism of them has already been explained in connection with the mystery of the Countenance-for it was called "the bread of the Countenance" because all the nourishment and sustenance of the world emanated from this supernal Countenance. The "Bread of the Countenance" is the food of that "Countenance", and all the nourishment and plenty that the world contains emanates from that Countenance, and rests on that Table. And because the nourishment which it receives comes from that august Countenance, and from that self-same Countenance supplies all the others with sustenance, all of which was centred in that "bread", therefore was it put hot upon the table, and so, miraculously, was it also, [Tr. note: t Cf. T. B. Hagigah, 26b.] as has been inferred from the words "to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away" (I Sam. XXI, 6). And man must cherish the mysteries connected with his table, in all these aspects of which we have spoken on account of that Table.'

R. Eleazar then discoursed on the verse, LET THY GARMENTS BE ALWAYS WHITE, AND LET THY HEAD LACK NO OINTMENT (Eccl. IX, 8). This verse, said he, has been variously interpreted, but it may also be expounded thus. God created man in the mystery of Wisdom, and fashioned him with great art, and breathed into him the breath of life, so that he might know and comprehend the mysteries of wisdom, to apprehend the glory of his Lord; as it is written: "Everyone that is called by my name: for I have created (beratiw) him for my glory, I have formed (yezartiw) him, yea, I have made (asitiw) him" (Isa. XLIII, 7). "I have created him for my glory", literally, the inner meaning being that, as we have learnt, the glory of the holy Throne is fixed firmly and compactly in its place through the co-operation of the children of this world; that is, through the co-operation of righteous and saintly men, and those who know how to effect adjustments. So the words really mean: "I have created the world in order that, by means of their work, the righteous on earth may cause my glory to be established on mighty pillars to provide it with adornments and completion from below, that it may be exalted, through their merit." Beriah (creation, i.e. creative ideas) appertains to the left side; Yezirah (creative formation) appertains to the right side, as it is written, "Who formeth (yozer) light and createth (bore) darkness" (Isa. XLV, 7); while 'Asiyah (making, finishing) lies between them, as it is written, "I make ('ose) peace and create evil: I the Lord do ('ose) all these things" (Ibid.), and again, "He maketh ('ose) peace in his high places" (Job xxv, 2). Hence, because man is on the earth, and it is incumbent on him to establish firmly My glory, I have provided him with the same supports as the supernal Glory: as in it there are "creation", "formation", and "making", so of man it is written, "I have created him, I have formed him, yea, I have made him." Thus man is after the pattern of that supernal Glory that he may confirm it and make it complete on all sides. Blessed is the man whose works entitle him to be regarded thus. Concerning this it is written: "Let thy garments be always white", etc. And, as the Supernal Glory has no lack of "holy ointment", from the mystery of the world to come, the man whose works are "white" will not lack

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 155b

this "holy ointment". Through what does a man merit participation in that supernal joy? Through his table: yea, when at his table he has satisfied the wants of the poor; as it is written: "If thou draw out thy soul to the hungry and satisfy the afflicted soul.... then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord...." (Isa. LVIII, 10-14). Such a man will the Holy One satisfy; he will anoint him with holy supernal "ointment", which ever streams upon that Supernal Glory.'

R. Jose and R. Hiya were walking together, and a certain merchant was walking behind them. Said R. Jose to R. Hiya: 'We must concentrate our thoughts upon the words of the Torah, for the Holy One goes before us, therefore it is time for us to do some service to Him on the way.' R. Hiya then began to speak on the words: It is time to act for the Lord, for they have made void thy Torah (Ps. CXIX, 126). He said: 'This verse has already been interpreted by the Companions, but

the words may also be taken thus. "It is time to act for the Lord": whenever the Torah is observed and studied in the world, the Holy One, as it were, rejoices in His handiwork, and all the worlds which He has created, and the foundations of heaven and earth are consolidated; and what is more, He calleth into His presence the whole celestial family, saying unto them: "Behold my holy children on earth! Through their loving diligence is the Torah crowned in their midst. Behold those works of my hand of whom ye did say: "What is man that thou shouldst be mindful of him!" (Ps. VIII, 5[Tr. note: v. Bereshith Rabba, ch. 8]) And the celestial family, seeing the joy of the Lord in His people, begin to sing together: "And who is like thy people Israel, one nation on earth?" (2 Sam. VII, 23). When, however, the Israelites neglect the Torah, the very power of the Holy One is, as it were, weakened, as it is written: "The Rock that made him he (Israel) weakened" (Deut. XXXII, 15, according to an Haggadic interpretation), and then "all the hosts of heaven stand" (2 Chron. XVIII, 18) and accuse them. So "it is time to act for the Lord"; that is to say, the remnant of the righteous must gird up their loins and perform works of righteousness, so that in His armies and in His hosts the Lord may gain strength, because the greater number of the people "have made void thy Torah", and mankind will not occupy themselves seriously with it.' Said the merchant who followed them: 'May I be allowed to put to you a question?' Said R. Jose: 'Verily, our path is made straight before us. Ask thy question.' Then said the man: 'Had it said "One must act", or "let us act", your explanation would have been fitting. But it says, "It is time to act". Besides, should it not have been "to act before the Lord"? Why does it say "for the Lord"? ' Said R. Jose: 'In many ways is this journey of ours auspicious: one, that we were first two and now we are three, and the Shekinah is present with us; secondly, I thought that thou wert a withered trunk, but I see thou art a green olive tree; and lastly, because thou hast asked a good question. And since thou hast begun, continue!' The man accordingly then went on as follows: ' "It is time to act for the Lord for they have made void thy Torah." There are times and times—"a time to love and a time to hate" (Eccl. III, 8). There is a time which is above, the "time" which is a mystery of Faith, and this is called a "time of good will and grace". This always is the time for men to love the Lord, as it says: "Love the Lord thy God". But there is "another" time, the mystery of "other gods", a "time" which must be hated of man and its attraction guarded against. This is "the time to hate"; concerning which "time" it is written, "Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times unto the holy place (Lev. XVI, 2). The time when Israel diligently studies the Torah and keeps its commandments is the time that is within the mystery of the Holy Faith; it is fitly decked out and adorned with all its proper graces according to the eternal purpose. But the time when Israel neglects the Torah, making it void, is, as it were, a time of incompleteness, and has neither wholeness nor light. The verse is therefore to be interpreted: "There is a time which is still to be made or finished (la'asot), because at present it is incomplete, because Israel has made the Torah void"; for "time" is thus elevated or depressed

according to the works of Israel.'

Then R. Jose and R. Hiya

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 156a

kissed him on the brow, and R. Hiya said: 'Surely, we are not worthy that thou shouldst go behind us. Blessed is the road on which we were privileged to hear such words! Blessed is the generation which is contemporary with R. Simeon; for in it wisdom is found, even among the mountains!' The three then walked on, and the merchant said: 'It is written, But as for me, my prayer is unto thee, O Lord, in an acceptable time (time of good will): O God, in the abundance of thy mercy hear me, in the truth of thy salvation (Ps. LXIX, 14), and we are taught that the time when the congregation is occupied with prayer is called the time of good will. This is certainly the case, for the congregation in this way prepare the supports for this time, so that it becomes a time of "good will", propitious for the offering of petitions. "As for me, my prayer is unto thee, O Lord." These words contain the mystery of Unity: "as for me" indicates King David, the realm called "Redemption" (the name of the Benediction which follows the Shem'a), and "my prayer" refers to the "Prayer" (the 'Amidah), thus "joining the Redemption to the Prayer" without interruption,¹ because they are both unified in the "time of good will". This prayer is recited during the Sabbath afternoon prayer, and not on weekdays, because the afternoon prayer on weekdays is the time when severe judgement is in the ascendant, and is not a time of "good will"; but on Sabbath "anger" is absent, and all the attributes are harmoniously united, and judgement, though it is roused, is mitigated by mercy. Hence it is necessary to recite this verse of unification in order to harmonize all the grades. It was at the time of Sabbath afternoon prayer that Moses passed away from this world. That was a time of good will above and of sorrow below, and for this reason the gates were closed from the time of the Sabbath afternoon prayer until the end of the Sabbath. Which gates? The gates of the houses of study, and they were closed in order to show that with the passing away of Moses, the Faithful Shepherd, the study of the Torah, for the time being, ceased. At that time the house of study of Moses was closed, needless, then, to say all others. If they were closed, would one expect that others should be open? If Moses' own Torah lamented over his death, who would not lament? For this reason are the gates of all the Houses of Study closed at this hour in perpetual memory of that sad occasion[Tr. note: v. Tosefoth to Menahoth, 30a.] and it is necessary for worshippers to repeat the "justification of the (Divine) judgement" contained in the verse, "Thy righteousness is like the mighty mountains: thy judgements are a great deep" (Ps. XXXVI, 7). There were three who passed away from this world at the time of Sabbath afternoon prayer: Moses, the supreme, faithful prophet; Joseph the righteous; and King David. Therefore three "justifications of the judgement" are recited at this time : [Tr. note: i.e. the Sabbath afternoon service, v. Prayer Book.] the first refers to Joseph the righteous, and is contained in the words, "Thy righteousness is like a mighty mountain, thy judgements are a great deep" for Joseph singly was comparable to the high mountains and to the mighty deep (cf. Gen. XLIX, 25, 26). Then comes Moses, the faithful prophet, to whom refer the

word: "Thy righteousness, O God, reaches the heights, who hast done great things" (Ps. LXXI, 19), because he grasped both sides, the right and the left. Then comes King David, to whom refer the words, "Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness and thy law is the truth" (Ibid. CXIX, 142), for "everlasting" refers to David (cf. 2 Sam. VII, 16). Thus all was gathered in at that time, both the Written and the Oral Torahs, and therefore, at that time, the gates of the Torah were closed, and the gates of the whole world were also closed. When Joseph the righteous died, all the wells and springs were dried up, and the captivity (of Egypt) commenced for all the tribes. Then the celestial beings recited the verse: "Thy righteousness is like the mighty mountains", etc. On the death of Moses, the sun in his splendour was darkened and the Written Torah was locked up, that light of the luminous mirror. The Moon withdrew her light when King David died,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 156b

and the Oral Torah ceased to shine. Since that time the lights of the Torah have remained hidden, and controversy has increased over the Mishnah (i.e. the traditional Law), and the wise men dispute, and all the great thinkers are in confusion, so that to succeeding generations the joy of the Torah has been lost. When a great man dies the scholars proclaim a fast. Seeing, then, that the joy of the Written and Oral Torahs was gathered in at this hour, is it not fitting that the gates of the Torah should close then? This, then, is the reason why we repeat the three "justifications of judgement", as explained.'

R. Jose and R. Hiya rejoiced at his words and kissed him again, saying: 'Happy indeed is our lot on this path!' The stranger again spoke, taking as his text the verse: Wisdom strengtheneth the wise more than ten potentates which are in the city (Eccl. XII, 19). 'This', he said, 'refers to Moses. When he went up into Mount Sinai to receive the Torah, all those firmaments, and all those supernal hosts, began to tremble and spake unto the Lord of the Universe, saying: "Is not all our bliss and all our joy based on the Torah, and art Thou minded to send her down to earth?" And they gathered round Moses in order to consume him with fire, but Moses prevailed over them all, as the scholars have already set forth; [Tr. note: v.T.B.Shabb. 88b.] but there is more yet to be said. The man who gives himself up with ardour and diligence to the study of the Torah for her own sake will find in her a strong protection in time of need. From what region is it that he gains this strength? From the "ten rulers", the Ten Words of Creation which are written in the Torah, for these are supernal "potentates" by means of which man is strengthened both in this world and in the world to come. All mysteries, all commandments, and all wisdom, concerning both the higher and the lower, are dependent on them; all are included in them, and all is in the Torah. Blessed is the man who is occupied continually with the Torah, that through her he may gain power for the world to come. The "ten potentates" are also the ten aspects of Wisdom which are found in the Torah, contained in ten (Divine) Names, all included in one Name of twenty-two letters (of the Hebrew alphabet). Those mysteries of the world to come are imprinted in light such as no eye can look upon, nor

can our imagination comprehend the measure of joy and delight which the Holy One, blessed be He, has in store for the righteous in the world to come, as it is written, "No eye hath seen it, O God, apart from thee, who has made it for those who wait for him" (Isa. LXIV, 4). Man's table enables him to attain to the delight of that other table: "he eats always at the king's table" (2 Sam. IX, 13), and as King David said, "Thou preparest a table before me" (Ps. XXIII, 4), which refers to the preparation of the Table in the other world for those from below; for this is the joy and delight of the soul in the world to come. But is there a table set for the souls in the world to come? Verily there is! In that world they eat of such food and with such satisfaction as the angels enjoy. And do the angels eat? Verily they do! Such as theirs was the food upon which the Israelites were fed in the wilderness. This food is symbolical of the Dew which emanates from above, from the mystery of the world to come. It is the food of the light of the oil of holy anointing; from it the righteous in the Garden of Eden derive their sustenance and are replete with joy. For in the Garden of Eden which is below the souls of the righteous put on a form which is like unto that which they had worn in this world; but on Sabbaths and holy days they put off this form like a garment and ascend to those heavenly regions where they may behold the Lord in His Glory, and where they may fully enjoy the supernal delights. Concerning this it is written: "And it shall come to pass that from one new moon to another, and from one Sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord" (Isa. LXVI, 23). Is it "flesh", then, that will come? Ought it not to be written, "all spirits", or "all souls"? But the fact is that the Holy One created man in this world after the pattern of the supernal Glory above. This supernal Glory expands itself into spirit after spirit, and soul after soul,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 157a

until it reaches a region which it called "Body" [Tr. note: I Malkuth.] and into this "Body" the spirit from the Fountain of Life enters that is called "All"; for all the good and all the satisfaction and nourishment of the "Body" is in it. There is an allusion to this in the words: "Moreover, the advantage of the earth is in all" (Eccl. v, 9)-which "all" refers to the spirit of that "Body". Similarly, man in this world consists of a body, and the spirit which dominates it is in the likeness of that supernal Spirit which is called "All" and which rules over the "Body" above, and this is designated "all flesh"; therefore does it say: "all flesh shall come", and concerning that joy it is written, "No eye hath seen", etc.'

The Companions went on the way rejoicing, and when they had come to a certain mountain R. Hiya turned to the traveller and asked: 'What, then, is thy name?' He replied: 'Hanan' (Merciful). Said R. Hiya: 'May the Holy One be merciful to thee indeed, and hearken to thy voice when thou art in distress.' Said R. Jose: 'The sun is setting; behind this mountain there lies the village of Kephrah Hanan. Let us thither and spend the night there to honour thy name.' On their arrival they entered an inn where a table was prepared for them with many viands. Said R. Hiya: 'Verily, this table has such a likeness to that of the world above, that it is meet for us to dignify and crown it with the

words of the Torah.'

R. Jose began: 'It is written, "When thou hast eaten and art full, then thou shalt bless the Lord thy God for the good land which he hath given thee" (Deut. VIII, 10). It is evident from this verse that grace after meals is a duty in the Land of Israel; but whence do we know that it is a duty in other lands also? Now, when the Holy One created the world, He divided it into two parts: one part that should be habitable and the other a desert, the former on one side and the latter at the other. Then He redivided the habitable part in such a manner that it formed a circle, the centre of which is the Holy Land. The centre of the Holy Land is Jerusalem, and, again, the centre of Jerusalem is the Holy of Holies, to which all the abundance of nourishment and all good things for the whole inhabited world flow in from above, and there is no place in this inhabited world that is not nourished and sustained from that source. The desert land He also divided, and there is no desert in the world so terrible and sinister as that where for forty long years Israel wandered, before its power was destroyed, of which it is written: "Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness" (Deut. XIII, 15). There the "other side" reigned, and the children of Israel in despite of it traversed the desert forty years long, to break its power. Had they throughout that long period been worthy in heart and served the Holy One with faithfulness, the "other side" would have been wiped off the face of the earth; but they, time after time, provoked the Holy One to anger, and in like measure did the "other side" prevail, so that they became subject to its power. It might be remarked, "How came it, then, that Moses, who was the most worthy and faithful of all men, died there?" The answer would be: "Not so; the faithful Moses was not in the power of the "other side", for he died in Abarim (lit. quarrels. Deut. XXXII, 49). It was so called because the celestial principalities competed in wrath for it, but it was not given over to any of them, but was left as it was till Moses came and took possession of it, and there he was buried, and the Holy One alone attended to his burial and no one else, since it is written: "And (he) buried him in a valley" (Ibid. XXXIV, 6), without mention of a subject. Therefore Moses ruled alone over that place, and there was he buried, and in order to let all future generations know that those who died in the wilderness will rise again, He let their faithful shepherd abide among them, so that at the awakening of the resurrection in the world to come they may find themselves all together. It may be asked, If that wilderness consisted of what was left over from the power of the "other side", why did the Holy One command that the goat of the Day of Atonement should be sent to a mountain called Azazel (Lev. XVI, 8, 10, 26), and not to

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 157b

a mountain in that wilderness in which Israel had sojourned? The answer is that the sojourn of the Israelites in that wilderness for forty years had broken its power, while, again, its power increased in a region where human feet had not ever trodden. And the mountain to which the goat was sent is a great and mighty rock, and below it are depths unplumbable, where man has never trodden. There the "other side" has power enough to consume his prey undisturbed,

so that he leaves Israel alone and there is no one to bring accusations against them. The domain of the mystery of the Faith is in that very central point of the Holy Land which is in the Holy of Holies, the place where the Shekinah dwelt, and even though She dwells there no longer, and the Holy of Holies exists no more, yet for Her sake the whole world is still supplied with food, and nourishment and satisfaction ever stream forth, emanating from thence to all the inhabited regions of the world. Therefore, although Israel lives at present outside the Holy Land, yet it is owing to the power and worth of that Land that the world is supplied with food and subsistence. It is concerning this that it is written: "Thou shalt bless the Lord thy God for the good land which he hath given thee" (Deut. VIII, 10). Truly "the good land", since for its sake there is a sufficiency of nourishment for the whole world. When a man sits at his table and partakes of its plenty with joyous thanksgiving, he should at the same time let his mind dwell with sadness upon the holiness of that Land and of the Temple of the King which has been destroyed, and because of his sadness there, at the table, in the midst of his feasting, God regards him as a restorer of the House of the Holy One, and all the ruins of the Holy Temple. Happy is his lot!

'The Cup of Benediction (the cup of wine taken immediately after Grace has been recited at the conclusion of a meal) is only partaken of when there are (at least) three persons present at the table, because it is blessed through the mystery of the three Patriarchs. The cup must first be lifted by both hands, in order that it should be placed between the right and left grades, but afterwards it is left in the right alone, because it is blessed from that side. There have been ten things enumerated in connection with the Cup of Benediction, which is quite appropriate, since there are ten aspects of it, as the Companions have pointed out. It is necessary to look at the cup while reciting the benediction, because it is written, "The eyes of the Lord thy God are always upon it" (i.e. the Holy Land, Deut. XI, 12); therefore the thoughts must not be allowed to stray from the cup, but the eyes must be firmly fixed upon it. The Cup of Benediction is blessed by the very benediction which man pronounces over it to the Holy One, blessed be He, because it is the mystery of Faith, and therefore man must guard it with the utmost care, as the very essence of the King's Majesty, since for its sake is the table blessed. Also, when grace is recited, the table must not be empty, since "no blessing can rest on an empty table", as has been pointed out with reference to the words, "Tell me, what hast thou in the house?" (2 Kings IV, 2); in a word, the heavenly blessings come to rest only on a place that is complete. Esoterically this is expressed in the words: "In the hearts of all that are wise-hearted I have put wisdom" (Ex. XXI, 6, i.e. "he who hath, to him it shall be given"), and also in the words, "He giveth wisdom to the wise" (Dan. II, 21). The symbol for all this is the table of the "Bread of the Countenance", for it is written: "And thou shalt set upon the table bread of the Countenance before me always" (Ex. xxv, 30). [Tr. note: From here to 159a belongs to Ra'ya Mehemna.] [Note: Apparently Soncino did not translate the Raya Mehemna passage mentioned in the previous note. For the Hebrew version, look under the "Raya Mehemna" choice of the Hebrew Zohar submenu, pages 157b-159a.]

AND LOOK THAT THOU MAKE THEM AFTER THEIR PATTERN WHICH WAS SHEWED THEE IN THE MOUNT. And again it is written: "And thou shalt rear up the Tabernacle according to the fashion thereof which was shewed thee in the mount" (Ex. XXVI, 30). R. Jose said: 'From this we see that the Holy One, blessed be He, actually gave Moses all the arrangements and all the shapes of the Tabernacle, each in its appropriate manner, and that he saw Metatron ministering to the High Priest within it. It may be said that, as the Tabernacle above was not erected until the Tabernacle below had been completed, that "youth" (Metatron) could not have served above before Divine worship had taken place in the earthly Tabernacle. It is true that the Tabernacle above was not actually erected before the one below; yet Moses saw a mirroring of the whole beforehand, and also Metatron, as he would be later when all was complete. The Holy One said to him: "Behold now, the Tabernacle and the 'Youth'; all is held in suspense until the Tabernacle below shall have been built." It should not be thought, however, that Metatron himself ministers; the fact is, that the Tabernacle belongs to him, and Michael, the High Priest, it is that serves there, within the Metatron's Tabernacle, mirroring the function of the Supernal High Priest above, serving within that other Tabernacle, that hidden one which never is revealed, which is connected with the mystery of the world to come. There are two celestial Tabernacles: the one, the supernal concealed Tabernacle, and the other, the Tabernacle of the Metatron. And there are also two priests: the one is the primeval Light, and the other Michael, the High Priest below. [Tr. note: The passage which follows, to the beginning of 160b, deals with the symbolism of some letters and their significance as creative potencies, and does not lend itself to translation.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 159b

Note: This Page is not translated as per note on Page 159a

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 160a

Note: This Page is not translated as per note on Page 159a

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 160b

R. Hiya and R. Jose were walking together. Said R. Jose: 'Let us now think on spiritual matters and talk on the words of the Torah.' He thereupon began by pointing out that three passages are introduced by the words, Hear, O Israel. "Hear O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is One" (Deut. VI, 4); "Hear, O Israel, this day thou hast become a people to the Lord thy God" (Ibid. XXVII, 9); and "Hear, O Israel, thou art to pass the Jordan this day" (Ibid. LX, 1). 'Why', he said, 'did Moses commence in each of these cases with the word "hear"? In the first, indeed, the word seems appropriate, but what is its point in the other two cases? The truth is that in all three passages it is meant to teach a special lesson. This is obvious in the case of the first, where the word "hear" indicates the unity in the supernal Wisdom of what is above and

what is below. The word Shema' consists of shem (name) and 'ain (seventy), indicating the combination of this Name and the other seventy from whence it derives blessing. At the recitation of the Shema', therefore, one must concentrate attention on this union of all the Divine names. For these seventy Names constitute the mystery of the supernal Chariot from whence that Name receives blessing and in which it is contained. Then comes the word Israel, referring, as we have learnt, to "Ancient Israel" (Tifereth), so that this emanation may also be included. So "Hear, O Israel," signifies the union of the Spouse with her Husband (i.e. Malkuth with Tifereth), so that all is in all, and all is one. As to the "hear" in the other two passages, it also has a special significance, though not so profound as in the first. "Hear, O Israel, this day thou hast become (nihyeta) a people". Why is not the usual form of the verb, hayita, used? To indicate that the Israelites are called "people" when their hearts are broken in order that they may worship the Lord, the word nihyeta having the same significance as in the verse, "And I Daniel was ended (nikyeti, i.e. fainted) and was sick... afterwards I rose up and did the King's business" (Dan. VIII, 27). Similarly, David said: "Hear me, my brethren and my people" (I Chron. XXVIII, 2), meaning, "If ye serve me of your own free will, ye are my brethren; but if not, ye are my people (i.e. subjects), to have your own will broken in order to serve me." The third passage is also on a lower plane. Neither of these two has the same significance as that which expresses the Unity and the acceptance by Israel of the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven throughout all spheres, since, at the time of the recitation of the Shema, a man has to be prepared to proclaim the unity of the Divine Name and to accept the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven. On the head of him who thus recites the Shema, to accept the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven, the Shekinah rests-a witness to testify of him before the Holy King that twice daily does he declare the Unity of the Name, and thus, consciously, unite the Above and the Below. Therefore is the letter 'ain of the Shema written large, and also the dalet, of the ehad (one), which, when put together, make the word 'ed (witness): a witness before the Holy King. The mystery contained in the words, "The Lord our God, the Lord", the mystery of the Unity in three aspects (lit. "in three sides"), has often been referred to by the Holy Lamp (R. Simeon), and we are not permitted to enlarge upon what he has said. However, certain it is, that upon the head of the man who unifies

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 161a

the Name of the Holy One above and below, the Shekinah descends to rest, and to bless him with seven blessings, and to proclaim concerning him: "Thou art my servant, Israel, in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3).'

R. Hiya then followed with an exposition of the verse: Thou hast been shown (har'eta) to know that the Lord he is God; there is none else beside him (Deut. IV, 35). 'What does this peculiar expression, "thou hast been shown to know", denote? When the Israelites came out of Egypt, at first they knew nothing of the true meaning of faith in the Holy One, blessed be He, because, while they were in captivity in Egypt, they had

worshipped foreign gods and had forgotten the essentials of the Faith, that legacy which the Twelve Tribes had received from Father Jacob. So, when Moses came, he had to teach them that in the universe there is a supreme God. Then they were witnesses of all the signs and wonders connected with the crossing of the Red Sea, and more than that, of all the wonders that took place in Egypt itself before it; then, later, they experienced the mighty acts of God in connection with the manna and the water in the wilderness. And by and by the Torah was given to them, and, gradually, they learned the ways of the Holy One, blessed be He, until eventually they reached that point when the words quoted were said unto them. Moses said, in effect: "Till now I had to teach you as little children are taught"; thou "hast been shown to know", and thou hast learnt by now to know and penetrate into the mystery of the Faith, namely, this, that "the Lord (TETRAGRAMMATON) He is God (Elohim)", which is no small matter, since concerning this it says: "know therefore this day and consider it in thine heart that the Lord he is God in heaven above and upon the earth beneath, there is none else" (Ibid. v. 39). The whole mystery of the Faith depends upon this; from this comes the knowledge of the mystery of mysteries, the secret of secrets. TETRAGRAMMATON ELOHIM is a full Name, and the whole is one. Herein is a mystery of mysteries to the masters of the esoteric knowledge. And, indeed, blessed are they who endeavour to comprehend the Torah. When the Holy One resolved to create the world, He guided Himself by the Torah as by a plan, as has been pointed out [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen., 134a in connection with the words "Then I was by him as amon" (Prov. VIII, 30), where the word amon (nursling) may also be read uman (architect). Was the Torah, then, an architect? Yes; for if a King resolves to build him a palace, without an architect and a plan how can he proceed? Nevertheless, when the palace has been built, it is attributed to the King: "here is the palace which the King has built", because his was the thought that thus has been realized. Similarly, when the Holy One, blessed be He, resolved to create the world, He looked into His plan, and, although, in a sense, it was the plan which brought the palace into being, it is not called by its name, but by that of the King. The Torah proclaims: "I was by Him an architect, through me He created the world!"-for the Torah preceded the creation of the world by two thousand years; and so, when He resolved to create the world He looked into the Torah, into its every creative word, and fashioned the world correspondingly; for all the words and all the actions of all the worlds are contained in the Torah. Therefore did the Holy One, blessed be He, look into it and create the world. That is why it says not merely "I was an architect", but "I was, alongside of Him, an architect". It may be asked, How can one be an architect with Him? God looked at His plan in this way. It is written in the Torah: "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth"; He looked at this expression and created heaven and earth. In the Torah it is written: "Let there be light"; He looked at these words and created light; and in this manner was the whole world created. When the world was all thus created, nothing was yet established properly, until He had resolved to create man, in order that he might study the Torah, and, for his sake, the world should be firmly and properly established. Thus

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 161b

it is that he who concentrates his mind on, and deeply penetrates into, the Torah, sustains the world; for, as the Holy One looked into the Torah and created the world, so man looks into the Torah and keeps the world alive. Hence the Torah is the cause of the world's creation, and also the power that maintains its existence. Therefore blessed is he who is devoted to the Torah, for he is the preserver of the world.

'When the Holy One resolved to create man, there appeared before His Mind potential man, in form and condition as he was to be in this world; and not he alone, but all human beings, before they enter this world, stand before Him in the same way, in that treasure-house of souls where, dressed in a semblance of their earthly forms, they await their entry into this world. When their time has arrived to descend to this world, the Holy One calls upon a certain emissary appointed over all the souls to go down, and says to him: "Go, bring hither to Me such and such a spirit", and on the instant that soul appears, clad in the form of this world, and is led forward by the angel that the Holy King may look upon it. Then does the Holy One warn that soul, when it shall have reached the earthly regions, to remember the Torah, and devote itself thereto, so that it may know Him and the mystery of Faith; for better were it for a man that he should never be born than not to know Him. Therefore is it presented before the Holy King, that afterwards it may know Him in this world, and be devoted to the Holy One in the mystery of the Faith. Concerning this it is written: "Thou hast been shown to know", that is, shown by the angel to the Holy One, in order to know, to understand, to penetrate in this world to the mystery of the Faith, the mystery of the Torah. And he who, having come into this world, does not study the Torah to know Him-better were it for him that he had never been born; since the only aim and object of the Holy One in sending man into this world is that he may know and understand that TETRAGRAMMATON is Elohim. This is the sum of the whole mystery of the Faith, of the whole Torah, of all that is above and below, of the Written and Oral Torah, all together forming one unity. The essence of the mystery of Faith is to know that this is a complete Name. This knowledge that TETRAGRAMMATON is One with Elohim is indeed the synthesis of the whole Torah, both of the Written and of the Oral, for "Torah" stands for both, the former being symbolic of TETRAGRAMMATON and the latter of Elohim. The Torah being the mystery of the Holy Name, it is therefore called by two names, one of which is general, and the other particular. The general is complemented by the particular, also the particular by the general, both combining to form one synthesis. In the Torah we find, therefore, the synthesis of the Above and the Below, for the one Name, TETRAGRAMMATON, is above, while the other, Elohim, is below, one indicating the higher world and the other the lower. And therefore is it written: "Thou hast been shown to know that TETRAGRAMMATON is Elohim."

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 162a

This is the essence of all things, and it is necessary that man should perceive it in this world.'

R. Jose then discoursed as follows. 'According to one authority, the evening prayer is obligatory, [Tr. note: v. T. B. Berachoth, 27b] (and it certainly is so, for the recital of the Shema is obligatory in the evening, and the unity of the Holy One is proclaimed at night as it is in the day, and the attribute of night is included in that of the day, and that of the day in the night, and one union is thus attained.

'It is written, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul", etc. (Deut. VI, 5). This has been interpreted by the Companions, but there is still a question to ask. If, in the recital of "Hear, O Israel," all is included, the Right and the Left, why is it necessary to recite afterwards the passages, "And thou shalt love" and "And it will come to pass if ye shall hearken diligently unto My commandments..."? Are they not already included in the proclamation of the Unity? The fact, however, is that in the Shema they are referred to generally, and then they are particularized, which also is necessary. [Tr. note Here follows in the original a passage on the symbolism of the phylacteries with reference to the Unity, which is practically a repetition in substance of Zohar, Exodus, 43a, b, and Genesis, 13b]. When this unity has been proclaimed in general terms, as from the head of the supernal Point, it was needful further to proclaim it from the mystery of the primeval light which is the beginning of all. Hence, "Thou shalt love" is the first outstretching of the right hand to love the Holy One, blessed be He, with that close attachment which the right hand symbolizes. If a man loves God, then God stretches out His right hand to him to receive

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 162b

and welcome him with love. Everything in the world depends on the will; spirit rouses spirit, and the spirit in man turned yearningly in love to Him brings down the Divine Spirit. When a man's love to the Holy One is roused, the "right hand" is moved only by a threefold impulse, by "heart", "soul", and "might", for it does not say, "with all thy heart or with all thy soul", etc., but "and with all thy soul", etc.: all three are essential and necessary. Then does the Holy One respond and stir up His Right Hand towards that man, and He stretches it out to receive him, and He does indeed receive him; concerning which it is written: "The utterance of the Lord to my lord: Sit thou at my right hand" (Ps. CX, 1); which verse has already been expounded as indicating the grade of nearness to the Holy One in which King David stood when he was united with Him by the Right Hand. There are in the section, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God", etc. (Deut. VI, 4-9), thirteen commandments in regard to the Right Hand: "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God" is one; "with all thy heart" is two; "and with all thy soul" is three; "and with all thy possessions" is four; "And thou shalt inculcate them in thy children" is five; "and shalt talk of them" is six; "when thou sittest in thine house" is seven; "and when thou walkest by the way" is eight; "and when thou liest down" is nine; "and when thou risest up" is ten; "and thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand" is eleven; "and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes" is twelve; "and thou shalt write them upon the posts of thine house and on thy gates" is thirteen. All

thirteen are included in the right hand, and the left is included in the right. All this is as it should be. And whenever the Left Hand is stirred up, the Right Hand first predominates in it. Therefore, if Israel is worthy, the Left Hand is embraced in the Right, for even when sometimes Judgement (Geburah) is roused, it is tempered by Grace; but if it should not be so, then the Right Hand is embraced in the Left, which means that the Left predominates, the Left always first awaking in love in the mystery of the Right, and only afterwards is its power to hurt strengthened as much as necessary. So it is everywhere, as has been noted by the Companions.'

Then came R. Hiya to him and kissed him, after which he began to speak on the following: MOREOVER THOU SHALT MAKE THE TABERNACLE WITH TEN PIECES OF TAPESTRY (Ex. XXVI, 1). 'Here', said he, 'again we have a symbolism of the Unity, for the Tabernacle was made up of many parts, and yet it says (v. 6), "and the tabernacle shall be one". Now, as the human body possesses many organs, higher and lower, some internal and not visible, others through that great and terrible wilderness" (Deut. XIII, 15). There the "other side" reigned, and the children of Israel in despite of it traversed the desert forty years long, to break its power. Had they throughout that long period been worthy in heart and served the Holy One with faithfulness, the "other side" would have been wiped off the face of the earth; but they, time after time, provoked the Holy One to anger, and in like measure did the "other side" prevail, so that they became subject to its power. It might be remarked, "How came it, then, that Moses, who was the most worthy and faithful of all men, died there?" The answer would be: "Not so; the faithful Moses was not in the power of the "other side", for he died in Abarim (lit. quarrels. Deut. XXXII, 49). It was so called because the celestial principalities competed in wrath for it, but it was not given over to any of them, but was left as it was till Moses came and took possession of it, and there he was buried, and the Holy One alone attended to his burial and no one else, since it is written: "And (he) buried him in a valley" (Ibid. XXXIV, 6), without mention of a subject. Therefore Moses ruled alone over that place, and there was he buried, and in order to let all future generations know that those who died in the wilderness will rise again, He let their faithful shepherd abide among them, so that at the awakening of the resurrection in the world to come they may find themselves all together. It may be asked, If that wilderness consisted of what was left over from the power of the "other side", why did the Holy One command that the goat of the Day of Atonement should be sent to a mountain called Azazel (Lev. XVI, 8, 10, 26), and not to

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 163a

"With all thy soul"-the "all" includes all aspects of the soul, viz. nephesh, ruah, and neshamah. As to "with all thy possessions", these also have various aspects, each one different from the other. True love to the Holy One, blessed be He, consists in just this, that we give over to Him all our emotional, intellectual, and material faculties and possessions, and love Him. Should it be asked, How can a man love Him with the evil inclination? Is not the evil inclination the seducer,

preventing man from approaching the Holy One to serve him? How, then, can man use the evil inclination as an instrument of love to God? The answer lies in this, that there can be no greater service done to the Holy One than to bring into subjection the "evil inclination" by the power of love to the Holy One, blessed be He. For, when it is subdued and its power broken by man in this way, then he becomes a true lover of the Holy One, since he has learnt how to make the "evil inclination" itself serve the Holy One. Here is a mystery entrusted to the masters of esoteric lore. All that the Holy One has made, both above and below, is for the purpose of manifesting His Glory and to make all things serve Him. Now, would a master permit his servant to work against him, and to continually lay plans to counteract his will? It is the will of the Holy One that men should worship Him and walk in the way of truth that they may be rewarded with many benefits. How, then, can an evil servant come and counteract the will of his Master by tempting man to walk in an evil way, seducing him from the good way and causing him to disobey the will of his Lord? But, indeed, the "evil inclination" also does through this the will of its Lord. It is as if a king had an only son whom he dearly loved, and just for that cause he warned him not to be enticed by bad women, saying that anyone defiled might not enter his palace. The son promised his father to do his will in love. Outside the palace, however, there lived a beautiful harlot. After a while the King thought: "I will see how far my son is devoted to me." So he sent to the woman and commanded her, saying: "Entice my son, for I wish to test his obedience to my will." So she used every blandishment to lure him into her embraces. But the son, being good, obeyed the commandment of his father. He refused her allurements and thrust her from him. Then did the father rejoice exceedingly, and, bringing him in to the innermost chamber of the palace, bestowed upon him gifts from his best treasures, and showed him every honour. And who was the cause of all this joy? The harlot! Is she to be praised or blamed for it? To be praised, surely, on all accounts, for on the one hand she fulfilled the king's command and carried out his plans for him, and on the other hand she caused the son to receive all the good gifts and deepened the king's love to his son. Therefore it is written, "And the Lord saw all that he had made, and behold it was very good", where the word "very" refers to the angel of death (i.e. the evil inclination). [Tr. note: v., Exodus, 68b.] Similarly, if it were not for this Accuser, the righteous would not possess the supernal treasures in the world to come. Happy, therefore, are they who, coming into conflict with the Tempter, prevail against him, for through him will they attain bliss, and all the good and desirable possessions of the world to come; concerning which it is written: "What eye hath not seen... he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him" (Isa. LXIV, 3). Happy are those, too, who have not come across him, for those sinners who encounter him allow themselves to be enticed by him. What profit is it, then, to the Tempter when the sinner obeys him?

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 163b

Even if it profit him nothing, yet he is certainly doing the will of his Master, and, moreover, it gains him strength. He is not content until he has killed his victim, for then

he gains strength and is satisfied; just as the angel of life gains strength when a man walks in the right way. May the Lord preserve us from becoming victims of the Tempter. Blessed are they who prevail against him, and thus become inheritors of the world to come and continually gain strength from the Holy King. Concerning such it is written: "Blessed is the man whose strength is in thee, in whose heart are the ways (to Zion)" (Ps. LXXXIV, 6). They are blessed in this world, and shall be blessed in the world to come.'

R. Jose, R. Judah, and R. Hiya, were riding together, when R. Eleazar suddenly met them. On seeing him they all alighted from their asses. Said R. Eleazar: 'Verily I behold the face of the Shekinah! For, to see the righteous and saintly of one's generation is to see the very face of the Shekinah. And why are these called the face of the Shekinah? Because in them is the Shekinah hidden: She is hidden in them, and they reveal Her. For they who are the friends of the Shekinah and are near to Her, are regarded as Her "face". And who are they? They are those with and by whom She adorns Herself in order to appear before the Supernal King. Now, as you are three, the Shekinah is surely in your midst!' He then forthwith began to expound these words of Jacob to Esau: "Take, I pray thee, my blessing that is brought to thee" (Gen. XXXIII, 11). 'When Jacob', said he, 'saw on that night the Accuser, Samael, he saw him in the form of Esau, and it was not until dawn was breaking that he recognized him as Samael. When the dawn broke, he looked at him closely, but even then he appeared at times to be the one and then the other. He then looked more closely still and he knew him for the celestial representative of Esau, and he prevailed against him. He said to Jacob, "Let me go, for the dawn breaketh" (Ibid. XXXII, 26), and the companions have already explained that he said this, because the moment had arrived when he, the representative of Esau, had to raise his voice in hymns to the Holy One. On this we may remark that indeed the power of Samael is only in the ascendant in the dark, as indicated in the words, "of fear in the night" (Ps. XCI, 5), namely, the fear of Gehenna; so it is that he rules at night alone. Hence he said, "Let me go, for the dawn breaketh", for when morning comes and his power is on the wane, he must depart, and he and his hosts must enter the recess of the abyss in the North, and they must remain until night breaks in on them, and the dogs are loosened from their chains and allowed to roam about till morning. That is why he pressed Jacob to let him go. In the same way Israel's exile has taken place at night, it is in fact called "night". The evil kingdom (Rome), the pagan power, rules over Israel until the morning shall again appear, and the Holy One, blessed be He, will cause the light to dawn again and the heathen power shall wane and at last disappear. Therefore it was that Esau's representative said, "Let me go, for the dawn breaketh". But Jacob held him, and his power weakened, because night had passed, so Jacob's strength increased, and he saw, in that angel, the image of Esau, but not quite clearly. Then the angel confirmed the blessings he had received. And what was it that Jacob afterwards said to Esau? "For therefore I have seen thy face, as though I had seen the face of God, and thou wast pleased with me" (Gen. XXXIII, 10). For he saw in Esau's face now the very

image of Samael as he had appeared to him, for the realm to which a person belongs is revealed in his face. And ye, supernal saints, the Shekinah is in you, and your faces reflect the beauty of Her face. Blessed are ye! Then said he also: 'If we were going in the same direction, I would be in your midst; but now, as ye must go one way, and I another, I will part from you with words

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 164a

of the Torah.'

Then he began to expound to them this verse: A song of degrees for Solomon (li-shelomoh). Except the Lord build the house, they labour in vain that build it; except the Lord guard the city, the watchman waketh but in vain (Ps. CXXVII, 1-2). Said he: 'Was it Solomon who composed this Psalm when he built the Temple? (for li-shelomoh could be understood to mean "of Solomon"). Not so. It was King David who composed it, about his son Solomon, when Nathan came to him (David) and told him that Solomon would build the Temple. Then King David showed unto his son Solomon, as a model, the celestial prototype of the Temple, and David himself, when he saw it and all the activities connected with it, as set forth in the celestial idea of it, sang this psalm concerning his son Solomon. There is also yet another interpretation, namely, that "for Solomon" (li-shelomoh) refers to Him "whose is the peace" (shalom), and this psalm is a hymn above all hymns, which ascends higher than all. "Except the Lord build the house": King David saw all the seven pillars upon which that house, the Universe, stands-for they stand row upon row-and above them all is the Master of the House, who advances with them, giving them power and strength, to each in turn. It is concerning this that King David said: "Except the King, whose is the peace, and who is the Master of the House, build the house, they labour in vain that build it"-that is to say, the pillars. Except the Lord-the King, whose is the peace-guard the city, "the watchman waketh but in vain". This is the pillar upon which the Universe stands, namely the "Righteous" who keeps waking guard over the City. The Tabernacle which Moses constructed had Joshua for its wakeful and constant guard; for he alone guarded it who is called the "young man", namely Joshua, of whom it says: "Joshua, the son of Nun, a young man, departed not out of the Tent" (Ex. XXXIII, 11). Later in its history it was another "young man" who guarded it, namely Samuel (I Sam. 11, 18), for the Tabernacle could be guarded only by a youth. The Temple, however, was guarded by the Holy One Himself, as it is written, "Except the Lord guard the City, the watchman waketh but in vain". And who is the watchman? The "young man", Metatron. And you, holy saints, ye are not guarded as the Tabernacle was guarded, but as the Temple was guarded, namely, by the Holy One Himself; for, whenever the righteous are on a journey the Holy One guards them continually, as it is written: "The Lord shall keep thy going out and thy coming in from now and forever" (Ps. CXXI, 9).' Then they accompanied him on his journey for a distance of three miles, and, parting from him, returned to their own way, and they were moved to quote these words concerning him. "For he shall give his angels charge over thee to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear

thee up in their hands" (Ps. XCI, 11, 12); and "Thy father shall be glad and thy mother rejoice" (Prov. XXIII, 25).

AND THOU SHALT MAKE THE TABERNACLE WITH TEN PIECES OF TAPESTRY. R. Judah expounded in this connection the following verse: In the multitude of people is the king's honour, but in the want of people is the confusion of the prince (Prov. XIV, 28). Said he: 'It is the people of Israel that is referred to in the first clause, Israel who is called "a holy people to the Lord" (Deut. VII, 6). Their number swells to thousands and myriads, and when they attain such large numbers it is "to the King's honour", for those above and those below praise the name of the Supernal King, singing hymns to Him, for the sake of the Holy People, "the wise and understanding people, the great people" (cf. Deut. IV, 6). But is it not written, "for ye are the fewest of all peoples" (Ibid. VII, 7)? Truly, "of all peoples" taken together, but not fewer than any individual people, for there is no nation in the world as numerous and mighty as Israel. But see how numerous are the Ishmaelites and the Edomites! That is so; but it must not be forgotten that all other peoples are intermixed with one another, unlike Israel, which is a pure and unadulterated race, "a holy people unto the Lord", chosen by Him. And therefore "in the multitude of the people is the King's honour", that is to say, the honour of the Supernal King, the Holy One, blessed be He. When

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 164b

the Holy One enters the synagogue, and the people are united in prayer and sing together praises to the King, He is honoured and glorified, that is to say, the Holy King is strengthened to ascend in glory and beauty. On the other hand, "in the want of people is the confusion of the prince"; that is to say, when He enters a synagogue and finds no congregation come to pray and praise, all the celestial hosts and all the chieftains above are degraded from the high estate to which they were raised by the glorification of that King. For when the Israelites worship the Supernal King with prayer and praise, all the celestial hosts join them and sing in unison with them, and are strengthened by that holy exercise, that the Holy One may be exalted from above and from below in harmony; but when Israel does not assemble to worship the Lord, they lose this dignity, since they do not ascend and cannot praise their Master in fitting manner. Even if ten alone are present, the supernal hosts join them in their worship. The reason is that all the supports of that King are in the number ten, and therefore ten worshippers are sufficient if there are no more. Therefore, concerning the Tabernacle it says: "And thou shalt make the Tabernacle with ten ('eser) pieces of tapestry", ten being the number required for the full perfection of the Tabernacle. The shortened form of "ten" ('eser) is used here in order to show that the Shekinah herself is not included in the ten, since she broods above the congregation. So it is in all places where a shortened form is used for "ten", as, for instance, "It stood upon twelve (shne 'asar) oxen" (I Kings XII, 25), where the Shekinah was not included in the number, for it says: "and the sea (i.e. the Shekinah) was set above them" (Ibid.).'

R. Hiya discoursed on the words: Who coverest thyself with light as with a garment, who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain (yeri'ah) (Ps. CIV, 2). Said he: 'These words have been interpreted as follows: When the Holy One was about to create the world He robed Himself in the primordial light and created the heavens. At first the light was at the right and the darkness at the left. What, then, did the Holy One do? He merged the one into the other and from them formed the heavens: shamaim (heavens) is composed of esh and mayim (fire and water, i.e. right and left). He brought them together and harmonized them, and when they were united as one, He stretched them out like a curtain, and formed them into the letter vau. From this letter the light spread, so that "curtain" became "curtains", as it is written: "And thou shalt make the tabernacle with ten curtains." Seven firmaments are stretched out and stored in the supernal treasure-house, as has been explained, and over them is one firmament which has no colour and no place in the world of cognition, and is outside the range of contemplation; but, though hidden, it diffuses light to all and speeds them each on its fitting orbit. Beyond that firmament knowledge cannot penetrate, and man must close his mouth and not seek to reflect upon it. He who does so reflect is turned backwards, for it passes our knowledge- The ten curtains of the Tabernacle symbolized the ten firmaments, and their mystery can be comprehended only by the wise of heart' He who grasps this attains great wisdom and penetrates into the mysteries of the universe, for he contemplates

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 165a

in this that which is above in the region to which every one of them is attached, except those two that are at the right and at the left, and which are hidden with the Shekinah.'

Said R. Jose: 'There are nine firmaments, and the Shekinah completes the number, bringing them up to ten. For if there are ten apart from the Shekinah, then She would be the eleventh, in addition to the ten. Thus really there are nine, and the nine days which come between New Year's Day and the Day of Atonement are a symbol of them: nine days, which are completed by the tenth. The same is true of the ten curtains in the Tabernacle, corresponding to the ten firmaments. Here is a mystery of mysteries, which none but the adepts in esoteric wisdom can fathom-one of those mysteries of the Holy Lamp (R. Simeon) who could expound the mystery of every firmament and of every being who officiates in each of them. There are seven firmaments above, and corresponding to them another seven below. There are seven firmaments in which the stars and planets have been placed to direct the world in its path. And in both, those above and those below, the seventh[Tr. note: Hesed.] is the most exalted, with the exception of the eighth, [Tr. note: Binah.] which stands above and directs them all.

'It is written: "Extol him that rideth upon araboth" (Ps. LXVIII, 4). Who is it that rides upon 'araboth, and what is meant by 'araboth? It is the seventh firmament, and it is called 'araboth (lit. mixtures) because it is composed of fire and water, from the region of the

South and from the region of the North, being "mixed" from both these regions. And as 'Araboth is intrinsically the synthesis of all the other six firmaments, it forms intrinsically the Supernal Chariot. The Holy One, blessed be He, loves this firmament more than any of the other firmaments and delights in perfecting it with supernal beauty. Therefore does it say: "Extol Him that rideth upon 'Araboth... and rejoice before Him", Him that rideth upon that hidden, secret firmament, which is set upon the "Living beings" (Hayyoth). "And rejoice before Him." The expression "before" suggests, on the one hand, that no one can really have any conception of Him; and, on the other hand, that he who comes before that firmament must do so in joy, and not in sadness, for there all is pure joy with no trace of sadness or gloom. Therefore, when the High Priest was to stand before Him, in the Sanctuary, he had to enter that holy place with joy, and all things about him were to express joy. Therefore is it written: "Serve the Lord with joy, come before him with singing" (Ps. C, 2); for in His service there is no room for sadness. It may be asked, What if a man is deep in sorrow and tribulation, and has no heart to rejoice, and yet his trouble forces him to seek for compassion from the Heavenly King; is he to refrain from prayer because of his sorrow? What can he do? He cannot help being heavy-hearted? The answer is that "all gates have been closed since the destruction of the Temple, but the gates of tears have not been closed", and tears are the expression of sadness and sorrow. Those celestial beings who are appointed over those gates of tears break down all the iron locks and bars and let the tears pass through; so the prayers of those sorrowful ones penetrate through to the Holy King, and that Place is grieved by the man's sorrow, as it is written: "In all their afflictions he is afflicted"[Tr. note: Translation according to the Keri.] (Isa. LXIII, 9). Thus the prayer of the sorrowing does not return unto him void, but the Holy One takes pity

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 165b

on him. Blessed is the man who in his prayers sheds tears before the Holy One. This is true even on the Sabbath, which must be a day of joy: when a person fasts on Sabbath he manifests sadness on the day when the supernal firmament reigns, that firmament which manifests itself in joy, yes, which is the very essence of joy, communicating joy to all. Yet if he fasts because of a sorrow, it delivers him from that punishment which had been decreed for him, as explained elsewhere. Hence it is written, "Extol Him that rideth upon (lit. in) Araboth"; that is to say, "Honour and glorify Him who rideth upon the Araboth, for there it is that perfect joy and gladness abide". "His Name is KAH", for that Name is connected with that realm. "And rejoice before Him", since one must not appear before Him in sadness, as we have pointed out.'

Said R. Eleazar: 'It ought to have been "who rideth upon ('al) araboth", why does it say "in (be) araboth"? Again: it ought to be, "He is in KAH", why does it say "in KAH is His Name"? It is because this verse refers to the Hidden of hidden ones, the most Ancient of all the ancients, the completely unknown and undisclosed. It may be said that, since He rideth in it, then in this sphere at least He does disclose Himself. Not so. What

the verse tells us is that the Ancient of ancients "rideth in the araboth" in the sphere of KAH, which is the primordial mystery emanating from Him, namely the Ineffable Name KAH, which is not identical with Him, but is a kind of veil emanating from Him. This veil is His Name, it is His Chariot, and even that is not manifested.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 166a

to study the Torah. The innkeeper's daughter also rose and lit the lamp for them, and then, instead of leaving the room, stayed behind, but out of their sight, that she might listen to the words of the Torah. R. Jose began by speaking on the words: For the commandment is a lamp, and the Torah is a light, and reproofs of instruction are the way of life (Prov. VI, 23). 'This means', he said, 'that whoever endeavours to keep the commandments in this world will have a lamp lighted for him in the other world through each commandment which he fulfils, and he who studies the Torah will merit the supernal light from which that lamp is lit. For a lamp unlit has no value, and light without a lamp cannot shine, so the one has need of the other. The religious act is necessary to prepare the lamp, and study of the Torah is necessary to light the lamp. Blessed is he who takes it in hand both with light and lamp! "And reproofs of instruction are the way of life." The way of life by which man enters into the world to come consists in the reproofs and instructions which he receives in order that he may learn to keep away from the evil path and walk in the good way; or, again, we may translate, "reproofs of chastisement", which the Holy One brings upon man to purify him from his sins. Blessed is he who accepts them with gladness! Another interpretation of this verse is as follows: "The lamp of the commandment" is the lamp of David, that is, the Oral Torah. This is like a lamp which has continually to be trimmed and attended to in order to receive light from the Written Torah. For the Oral Torah (tradition) has no light in itself except that which it receives from the Written Torah, which is an actual source of illumination.'

When R. Jose had thus spoken, he turned round and caught sight of the innkeeper's daughter standing there behind them. He continued: ' "For the commandment is a lamp." What sort of a lamp? The lamp which is the women's mitzvah (precept), the Sabbath light. For, although women have not the privilege of studying the Torah, men who have this privilege give that light to the lamp which it is the women's duty to light. To women goes the merit of preparing the lamp; to men, by the study of the Torah, the merit of supplying the light for the lamp.' When the woman heard these words she broke into sobs. In the meantime her father had also risen and come to join the company. Seeing his daughter in tears he inquired the reason. She told him what she had heard, and he too began to weep. Then said R. Jose to them: 'Thy son-in-law, the husband of this thy daughter, is, perchance, an ignorant man?' And he replied: 'Indeed, that is so. Therefore it is that my daughter and I must constantly weep. Once I observed him leap down from a high roof only that he might be present to hear the Kaddish prayer together with the congregation. Then it was that the thought entered my mind to give him my daughter to wife. This I did immediately after the

congregation had left the synagogue that day. For, said I to myself, judging from the eager manner in which he leapt from the roof in order to hear the Kaddish, he will surely become one day a great scholar; although at that time he was but a youth and I had not known him before. But, in fact, he does not even know how to say Grace after meals. Even the recitation of the Shema I could not teach him.' R. Jose said to him: 'Make a change and take some other man as a husband for your daughter. Or perhaps he may yet have a son who will be a scholar.'

The young man had also by this time got up, and now leapt into the room and seated himself at the feet of the Rabbis. R. Jose looked on him long and earnestly, then said: 'I most certainly see that the light of the Torah will emanate into the world, either from this young man or from his descendants.' The young man smiled and said: 'My masters, may I be allowed to say a few words in your presence?'

Then he began: 'I am young, and ye are very old; wherefore I was afraid, and durst not shew you mine opinion (Job XXXII, 6). The pillars of the world have commented on these words. Elihu, who uttered them, was of the family of Ram (Ibid. 2), and it is said that he was a descendant of Abraham; and this is correct. He was also a priest and a descendant of the prophet Ezekiel, for of Elihu it says that he was the son of Barachel the Buzite (Ibid.), and of Ezekiel also it says he was "the son of Buzi the priest" (Ezek. I, I). Should one, then, suppose that he came of contemptible stock (buz=contempt)? Not so, for he came of the kindred of Ram, the very highest (ram=high). Then why was he called the Buzite? Because he thought himself of low account in the presence of those

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 166b

greater than himself. For that reason a most honourable name is given to him, expressing perfection, by which no other man has been called, namely "man" (Adam, cf. Ezek. II, 1). For this reason, too, it is emphasized that he was of the family of Ram. Now Elihu said: "Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom, but there is a spirit in man, and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding" (Job XXXII, 7, 8); in other words, at first he was too timid and shy to speak in the presence of older people. Of me the same is true. I had vowed not to speak on the Torah for two months. On this day that period ends; so now that you are here I will dare to open my mouth with the words of the Torah.'

Then began he to expound the words, "The commandment is a lamp." 'This', he said, 'refers to the Mishnah in the same way as the "Torah and the commandment" (Ex. XXIV, 12) mean the Written and the Oral Law respectively. And why is the Mishnah called a "lamp"? Because when she receives the two hundred and forty-eight organs from the Two Arms, she opens her two arms in order to gather them into her embrace, and so her two arms encompass them and the whole is called "lamp". "The Torah is a light" which kindles that lamp from the side of primordial light, which is of the Right Hand, because the Torah was given from the Right Hand (Deut. XXXIII, 2), although the Left was

included in it to attain perfect harmony. This light is included in the two hundred and seven worlds which are concealed in the region of that light, and is spread throughout all of them. These worlds are under the hidden supernal Throne. There are three hundred and ten of them: two hundred and seven belong to the Right Hand and one hundred and three to the Left Hand. These are the worlds which are always prepared by the Holy One for the righteous, and from them spread treasures of precious things, which are stored away for the delight of the righteous in the world to come. Concerning them it is written: "That I may cause those that love me to inherit substance, and I will fill their treasures" (Prov. VIII, 21). "Eye hath not seen... what he shall do to those that wait for him" (Isa. LXIV, 3). Yesh, substance, indicates the three hundred and ten worlds (numerical value of Yesh) which are stored away under the world to come. The two hundred and seven (numerical value of 'or, light), which are of the Right Hand, are called "the primordial light", as the Left is also called "light", but not "primordial". The primordial light is destined to produce issue for the world to come. And not only in the world to come, but even now every day; for this world would not be able to exist at all if it were not for this light, as it is written, "For I have said, Mercy shall be built up for ever" (Ps. LXXXIX, 3). It was this light that the Holy One sowed in the Garden of Eden, and through the agency of the Righteous, who is the Gardener of the Garden, He set it in rows; and He took it and sowed it as the seed of truth in rows in the Garden, where it grew, multiplied, and brought forth fruit which has nourished the world, as it is written: "A light sown to the righteous" (Ps. XCVII, 11). Thus all the worlds are nourished to repletion by that Gardener who is called "Righteous". Only when Israel is in exile does this light cease. In that time one might think "the waters fail from the sea, and the flood decayeth and drieth up" (Job. XIV, 11), so how can the world be sustained at all? Therefore it says that "a light is sown", that is to say, continually sown. Now from the time when the stream was cut off from the Garden, the Gardener has ceased to visit

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 167a

it; but the light sows itself, bringing forth fruit out of itself, like a garden which brings forth without being sown, though it must be admitted that the issues and the fruit have no longer that perfection which they attained when the Gardener was present. So the significance of the words "and the Torah is a light" is this, that the Torah, which emanates from the region of primordial light, is continually being sown in the world and sends forth fruit without ceasing, and the world is nourished by it. "And reproofs of instruction are the way of life." There are two ways: a way of life and a way of death. The way of life can be recognized by "reproofs of instruction"; for the Holy One, desiring to guard the way of life, sets on it one who chastises and gives "reproof of instruction" to the children of the world. Who is this? It is that "flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life" (Gen. III, 24). He who has experience of the "reproofs of instruction" will certainly endeavour to walk in that way of life where dwell those "reproofs". At first sight it would seem that the words "the reproofs of instruction are the way of life" contradict the beginning of the verse, but,

interpreted as above, they contain the whole mystery of Faith. "The commandment is a lamp" contains the mystery of "keep"; "the Torah is a light" contains the mystery of "remember"; while "the reproofs of instruction are the way of life" refers to the prohibitions and penalties contained in the Torah. And all forms one mystery of Faith, and each of them is necessary to the other to produce a proper synthesis. Concerning the mystery of the light which kindles and produces the light in the lamp, it was said unto Aaron: "When thou lightest the lamps" (Num. VIII, 2); for he emanated from the region of that light. Concerning this, too, it is written: "Let there be light, and there was light" (Gen. I, 3). Why, it may be asked, was it necessary to repeat the word "light" in this verse? The answer is that the first "light" refers to the primordial light which is of the Right Hand, and is destined for the "end of days"; while the second "light" refers to the Left Hand, which issues from the Right. The next words, "And God saw the light that it was good" (Gen. I, 4), refer to the pillar which, standing midway between them, unites both sides, and therefore when the unity of the three, right, left, and middle, was complete, "it was good", since there could be no completion until the third had appeared to remove the strife between Right and Left, as it is written, "And God separated between the light and between the darkness" (Ibid.). Since there were five grades which emanated from that primordial light, the word "light" is mentioned five times at the beginning of the account of Creation; all of these grades emanated from the Right Side and were included in it. When they were to be included in the Left Side they were symbolized by "water"; for which reason "water" also is mentioned five times (Gen. I, 6-8). And when they were completed by the mystery- of the middle, "firmament" is mentioned five times (Ibid.). And these three, light, water, firmament, are the three grades which include in themselves all five grades, and therefore are all mentioned five times.

‘ Here is a mystery of mysteries; namely, that in these three is the mystery of the human personality portrayed. Here there is first light, then water, then is a firmament formed in the midst of the waters. Similar is the formation of man at his birth. First he is the "seed" which is light, because it carries light to all the organs of the body. That "seed" which is light sheds itself abroad and becomes

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 167b

"water", which in its moisture penetrates to all parts of the body; in which body, when it has taken shape, the diffusion of the water is solidified and is called "firmament". This is indicated by the words: "Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters." As soon as the body has become clearly defined and purified, the moisture which is left becomes refuse, which leads astray mankind, both male and female. Having indicated the emergence of the Accuser, the text writes the word meoroth ("lights", Gen. I, 14) defectively, the consequence being the quinsy from which children suffer at the waning of the moon. After that (v. 15) meoroth is written in its full form, both lights being united as one. Where? In that "firmament of heaven"; for when the moon ascends and joins that firmament, then the lights are complete and perfect, without

blemish.'

The young man here paused to smile, and then continued: 'All this that I have said concerning the mystery of man's formation through the light of that seed, which, being turned into water, spreads out and is formed into a firmament, all of this can be properly understood when referred to what goes on in the body of a female, where the seed is thus developed into the form of man. But if those five grades above mentioned are the form of Man[Tr. note: i.e. the Deity.] in what place was this form fashioned and spread out? We cannot say it was within the Female, [Tr. note: Binah.] that is the World-to-come, because no form or likeness was fashioned until the letters had emerged and taken shape; besides which, the World-to-come was the artificer. Nor can it have been the lower Female[Tr. note: Malkuth], for this was not yet, and when the form of Man emerged, his Female emerged with him, so his form could not have been shaped in her. Where, then, was that seed portrayed and engraved in order to become the form of Man? Herein is a profound mystery, viz. that the Archetypal Adam took shape and form without the co-operation of the Female, but a second Man was engraved and formed from the seed and energy of the first within a female. Archetypal Adam took shape and bodily image out of the substance of the Future World without the conjunction of male and female. Certain letters materialized within a measured outline, and the mystery of Adam was formed and shaped in them, these letters having proceeded in a direct line in their proper order from the mystery of primeval light. Only when the Female came to him with her adornments, and they turned face to face, was a desire conceived whereby within the Female a likeness of Adam was conceived and shaped. This was within the Female, but not so the first Adam, who was formed within the measured outline, as already said. A corresponding process took place on earth. We read: "And Adam knew his wife Eve, and she conceived and bare Cain" (Gen. IV, 1). Together with Adam's energy it was that which had been left of the ape element in her that produced Cain. Therefore of Cain's birth it does not say, "And he begat" but "she bare a son". The reason for its saying of Abel also, "And she again bare his brother Abel", is that, although he was conceived of the Masculine side, yet the Accuser weakened Adam's power and energy. Now with the letter

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 168a

koph (of Cain: koph also means an ape), the letters began to beget. As soon as the impurity was eliminated, the letter shin (of Sheth) began to come into operation, the union of the Masculine with the Feminine. Therefore it says "And he begat a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Sheth" (Gen. v, 3): he, and not she. Then the letters reversed and combining the aleph of Adam with the letter following the last in his name-nun- took vau also (but not he', because that is already found in Abel), and also the first letter of Sheth, and then the name Enosh came into being (v. 6). What is the difference between enosh (man) and adam (which also signifies "man")? Enosh (anash=to be sick) indicates that he had not the same strength as Adam; concerning which it is written:

"What is man (enosh) that thou shouldst magnify him?" (Job VII, 17). A weakening of the body, but a strengthening of the soul was the heritage left by Sheth to his son Enosh, a good heritage for his acceptance. The latter passed on a like heritage to his son. The letters now began again to reverse their order and to make straight again that which had become crooked. The son of Enosh was Kenan (v. 9), which (in Hebrew) has the same letters as Cain, with an additional letter to signify that humanity was healed from the curse of Cain. The son of Kenan was Mahalalel: the mem (m) was the last letter of Adam; the he and the lamed (l) are from Hebel (Abel), and, as the latter was not wicked like Cain, the letters of his name were not changed, with the exception of one, that is the second (the b), and it was altered to aleph in Mahalalel, in order to correct any defect that might have been left in him. And so, thus far was the world healed, and that which had become crooked was made straight from Enosh; only the guilt of Adam was not healed yet; that healing came only when Israel stood at Mount Sinai. But the crookedness of Cain and Abel was made good and healed. Yet the world continued to be full of trouble and sorrow until Noah came, concerning whom his father Lamech said: "This same shall comfort us concerning our work and the toil of our hands because of the ground which the Lord hath cursed" (Ibid. v. 29). The sin of Adam was not healed until the time when Israel stood at Mount Sinai and received the Torah, when the lamp and light became united together. And now, Masters, I may tell you that I am from Babylon, the son of Rab Saphra. Unhappily, I have not been able to know my father, so I came here to the Holy Land, and fearing lest the inhabitants of this land should be lions of wisdom and knowledge, I resolved in humility not to say one word concerning the Torah in the presence of anyone for two months. On this very day those two months have come to an end, and happy am I that to-day, too, ye have arrived here!"

He ceased, and R. Jose lifted up his voice and wept. They all then rose and kissed the young man on the brow. Said R. Jose: 'Blessed is our lot that we were found worthy to come this way so that we might listen to words concerning the Ancient of Days from thy mouth, words which until to-day it had not been granted to us to hear.' Then they all seated themselves again, and the youth said: 'Masters, as I have seen the sorrow that I have brought to this my father-in-law and to his daughter, who are filled with grief because I seem not to know how to recite the Grace after meals, so I must tell you that until I grasp the full significance of this prayer I determine not to consummate my marriage. For, although I could have been united with her without sin of any kind, yet I did not wish to deceive either her or her father about myself, as it was impossible for me to explain myself until the two months were passed.' R. Jose and R. Hiya, as well as the innkeeper and his daughter, now all wept together for joy. And R. Jose said: 'We pray thee, as thou hast begun, shed on us further the light of day. Blessed indeed are we that we came this way!'

Thus urged, the youth began to expound to them the Grace to be recited after meals. Said he: 'One verse says, "And thou shalt eat there before the Lord thy God" (Deut. XIV, 26), and another verse says,

"Thou shalt rejoice before the Lord thy God" (Ibid. XXVI, 11). These verses could be fulfilled at the time when Israel dwelt in the Holy Land and appeared daily before the Holy One in the Temple, but in these days how can they be fulfilled? Who can now eat and rejoice before the Lord? However, it can be done. For when a meal is set before a man he should first recite the benediction, "He who bringeth forth bread... " (ha-mozi). Why ha-mozi and not simply mozi without the definite article (ha)? It is because from everything appertaining to the mystery of the hidden supernal world the letter he, is hidden away to show that it belongs to the unseen secret world,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 168b

whereas things more disclosed, and which belong to the world below, have this letter, as, for example, "Who bringeth out (ha-mozi) their hosts by number (i.e. the stars, Isa. XL, 26); "He that called (ha- koreh) for the waters of the sea" (Amos V. 8); these are things of the lower world. Now, as soon as a man recites the benediction over the bread, the Shekinah is there before he has well begun. The words, "Thou shalt eat there before the Lord", include the commandment to hold converse, while eating, on the words of the Torah, since the Holy One Himself is present, as it is written, "This is the table that is before the Lord" (Ezek. XLI, 22). And again it is written, "Thou shalt eat there before the Lord thy God". And when man is privileged to eat in the presence of his Lord, he must show his appreciation of this privilege by giving charity to the poor, feeding them, as his Lord in His bounty feeds him. And he who eats in the presence of the Holy King must take heed that no greedy person be present at the board, for greediness is of the "other side", as exemplified by Esau, who said to Jacob, "Let me devour (hal'itani)" (Gen. xxv, 30), that is, greedily. This is characteristic of the "other side", as it is written, "the belly of the wicked shall want" (Prov. XIII, 25). "Thou shalt eat before the Lord thy God", not before the "other side". Nor is it fitting to hold a vain conversation at the table, except on such matters as appertain to the meal; the converse must be on sacred matters, since thereby, as it were, strength is given to the Lord. "And thou shalt rejoice before the Lord thy God", namely, with the "Cup of Benediction". When a man recites the benediction over this cup he must do so with joy, and with no trace of sadness. When he takes into his hands this cup, the Holy One is there beside him, and he must cover his head for joy, holding the cup, and saying-if there be at least three persons partaking of the meal-"Let us bless Him of whose bounty we have partaken, and in whose goodness we live". This response calls for a specially earnest concentration on the part of all towards the Ancient of Ancients, for which reason His Name is not directly mentioned. "In whose goodness", and not merely "by" or "from" whose goodness, that is to say, the Supernal Right Hand itself, while "from whose goodness" would symbolize a lower grade, [Tr. note: Zaddik.] which emanates from that Right Hand. For by this "goodness" was the universe constructed, and by it is it sustained. Why is it called both "goodness" and "grace" (hesed)? It is "goodness" when it contains all within itself, and has not yet expanded to descend below; it is "grace" when it descends to benefit all creatures without distinction, the

good and the wicked. But that there is a subtle differentiation between them is clear from the expression, "truly goodness and grace shall follow me" (Ps. XXIII, 6). And in the grace after meals the phrase, "and in whose goodness we live" of the response is immediately followed by the words, "Who feedeth the whole world with thy goodness... with grace"; as it is written also, "Who giveth food to all flesh: for his grace endureth for ever" (Ps. CXXXVI, 25). He truly feeds all, the righteous and the unrighteous. This is called "the blessing of the Right Hand". In the Grace after meals the "Left" is not referred to; and that is why the left hand does not assist the right hand in holding the Cup of Benediction. As soon as the benediction of the Right Hand has been said, the "Land of Life" has to be brought into contact with that Right Hand of God through our thanksgiving, so that the bounty of the Right Hand may fall upon that Land and nourish her in order that from her again all the world may be sustained and fed. Which is the reason why the "blessing for the land" comes next in order in the Grace after meals. It is necessary also to mention in it the Abrahamic Covenant and the gift of the Torah- "for Thy covenant which Thou hast sealed in our flesh, and for Thy Torah which Thou hast taught us"-in order that it may be clearly shown that both the Covenant and the Torah are nourished by "Goodness", the covenant being the support of that "goodness". Hence for women it is not obligatory to say the Grace after meals. [Tr. note: v. T. B. Berakhoth, 20b, where the ruling seems to be different.] This section is concluded with the words: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, for the land and for the food", in order that both the "land" and the "food" may be attached to "grace". The "land" is the land of life; the "food" the manifestation of grace, the extension of which is expressed in "praise" in the words, "We praise Thee, O Lord", that is, for all the signs and wonders that emanate from the side of "goodness"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 169a

Why is it that the Left has no part in the Grace? It is because "the other side" cannot participate in Israel's food, and if the Left Hand, that is Severity, were also to be roused by referring to this attribute of the Holy One during the Grace, the "other side" would thereby be roused, and he has sold his birthright to our father Jacob. When we wash our hands after meals we so give him his portion; and if the hands are unsoiled he gets a portion of the food which the hands have touched. So he has no portion with us; therefore we must not arouse the Left Hand at all in the Grace, otherwise the Accuser might become the possessor of a double portion, one below and one above, like a first-born; for Esau has sold his birthright to father Jacob, and his portion is below only, and there is nothing for him above. Israel takes his portion from above, but Esau takes from below only. Now, when the "Land of Life" has been blessed from the Right Side and received its nourishment from thence, we have to pray for mercy for all-"Have mercy, O Lord our God, upon Israel Thy people, upon Jerusalem Thy city, upon Zion the abiding place of Thy Glory", etc.; for from that stream of nourishment of the Land of Life do both we and the Sanctuary benefit, since the Sanctuary below will be rebuilt through that Mercy. And on Sabbath, when Judgement is not active, and in order that Victory

and Beauty should both be included and united in Grace, we add to the Grace after meals the prayer that begins with the words: "Be pleased, O Lord our God, to fortify us with Thy commandments", so that both Victory and Beauty may be united in the "sure graces of David" (Isa. LV, 3), and "that there may be no trouble, grief or lamentation on the day of our rest". And corresponding to the petition "grant peace" which we offer in the Amidah, we say in Grace, "He who makes peace in his high heavens will bestow peace on us." We also say, "Who is good and doeth good"; for all proceeds from the "Right" side, and nothing from the "Left". He who recites the Grace after meals receives the blessings first of all, and a long life is his reward. It is written concerning him who takes the Cup and recites the Benediction: "I lift up the cup of salvations and call upon the name of the Lord" (Ps. CXVI, 13). What do "salvations" imply? "Salvations" emanating from the Right Hand which saves from all accusers, as it is written: "His right hand saved him" (Ps. CXVI, 13); "May thy right hand save" (Ibid. LX, 7).'

Now day broke, and they all stood up and kissed the youth. Said R. Jose: 'Verily, this day is a day of joy, and we shall not depart hence until it has become a day of rejoicing and festivity for all the village. It will be a festival in which the Holy One, blessed be He, will participate.' Then they took the young woman and blessed her with many blessings; after which they bade her father prepare the house for the festivities. And all the inhabitants of that village came to the house and shared in the rejoicings, and they called her "Bride", and made merry with them the whole day. The young man, too, rejoiced with them in the words of the Torah, and when they were seated at the table he spoke on the following verse: "And thou shalt make the boards for the tabernacle of shittim wood standing" (Ex. XXVI, 15). 'These boards', he said, 'stood round the canopy serving the Bride (the Shekinah), so that within that canopy the Supernal Spirit could dwell. Therefore must the bride below (human bride) have a canopy, all beautiful with decorations prepared for her in order to honour the Bride above, who comes to be present to participate in the joy of the bride below. For this reason it is necessary that the canopy should be as beautiful as possible, and that the Supernal Bride should be invited to come and share in the joy. Just as at every celebration of the covenant of circumcision a beautiful chair must be prepared for the "man of zeal" (Elijah the prophet), since he is present there, so also at every wedding the canopy must be beautifully decorated in honour of the celestial Bride; for as below, so above: as the bride here below is blessed with seven benedictions, so is her prototype. [Tr. note: The Shekinah-Malkuth-who receives the fulness of blessing from the preceding Sefirot] A woman who is being married is called "bride" only after the seven benedictions have been pronounced; and only then can there be conjugal union. All this is according to the pattern of what is above. These seven benedictions the Bride receives from the Spirit above,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 169b

from that realm whence all blessings come. But are there not, in fact, only six benedictions with which the (supernal) Bride is blessed? The last (the seventh),

however, is the one which confirms all the rest. Most benedictions are pronounced over wine; why is this? Because wine symbolizes joy: the wine which is ever guarded in the grapes. Therefore the first benediction of the seven-"Blessed art Thou who createst the fruit of the vine"-is connected with the mystery of wine[Tr. note: Binah] which produces joy both above and below. The vine[Tr. note: Malkuth] takes all and brings forth fruit in the world. The first awakening of joy proceeds from the left side, as it is written: "His left hand under my head", and then "his right hand embraces me". And that Tree of Life[Tr. note: Tifereth] produces fruit through this awakening. Therefore this benediction over the fruit of the vine is the first of all. The second is: "Blessed art thou... Who hast created all things to Thy glory". This contains the mystery of the holy covenant, the joy of union. It takes all the blessings from the mystery of the Right Hand in order to produce fruit in that vine; for first that influx proceeds from above by way of the organs, and is then drawn to the sign of the holy covenant, to proceed thence to the vine. And this is of the Right Hand, for the fulness is found only in the right side: the Left Hand rouses the Right and the Right then operates. The Left is afterwards embraced in the Right and the Right in the Left in order that all may form the mystery of Man; hence the benediction, "Blessed art Thou... Creator of man", follows as the third in order, and therefore Jacob, the "middle pillar", was in the likeness of Man. The fourth benediction, "Blessed art Thou... who hast made man in Thine image, after Thy likeness, and hast prepared unto him, out of his very self, a perpetual fabric..." refers to the one pillar of the right thigh[Tr. note: Nezah] The fifth benediction is: "May she (Zion) who was barren (akarah) be exceeding glad and exult, when her children are gathered within her in joy", which means to say: May she who is the centre (akereth, from ikkar, substance) of the house rejoice when her children are gathered from the four corners of the world. This is the mystery of the other pillar which is united with the left thigh[Tr. note: Hod] in order to draw the children in love from all directions together, and set them between the knees; and in those two, wherein is the abode of the Prophets (the realm of Prophecy), is the joy of Her who is the basis of the house. Why is this her joy? Because the gathering together of the children, which is the fruit of the two willows, [Tr. Note: Nezah and Hod.] is effected only by the power of the Prophets. The sixth benediction is: "O make these loved companions greatly to rejoice, even as of old Thou didst gladden Thy creature in the Garden of Eden..." This is the region wherein goodwill, joy, and fellowship are found. It is the pillar of the whole universe, namely the "Righteous" The Righteous and Righteousness are the inseparable "beloved companions". Thus far there are six benedictions by which the bride is blessed. Now the seventh benediction is the synthesis of them all, and from it all the universe is blessed, because it comprises what is above and what is below, it is the epitome of the Ten creative Words, and therefore ten aspects of joy are found in this benediction: "Blessed art Thou... Who hast created joy and gladness, bridegroom and bride, mirth and exultation, love and brotherhood, peace and fellowship" in order that the bride may be the perfection of all. Blessed are the Israelites who are worthy to represent below that which is above. Concerning them it is written: "And who is like unto thy people Israel, an

unique nation on the earth?" (2 Sam. VII, 23).'

Then they all rejoiced for that whole day in the words of the Torah, and the inhabitants of the town appointed the young man to be their head. On the next day R. Jose and R. Hiya rose and blessed them all, and departed on their way. As they came near to R. Simeon, he lifted up his eyes, and seeing them, said: 'To-day did I behold you with the eyes of the spirit, and I saw that ye dwelt for two days and a night in the Tabernacle of that Youth, Metatron, and the Youth taught you of the supernal mysteries in the joy of the Torah. Blessed are ye, my children!' When they had told him all that had happened to them, he said: 'Happy are ye, and happy is my lot, for well do I recollect the day when his father, Rab Saphra, accompanied me on my way, and when I parted from him I blessed him with this blessing-that he might have a son who should be a scholar, but not that he himself should live to see it. Happy, my children, is your lot! Concerning you it is written: "And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord" (Isa. LIV, 13). There is, however, another interpretation of this verse. Does God teach all the children of the Israelites the Torah? Yes, indeed, for when these little ones learn, the Shekinah comes and lends to each of them power and energy to study; for without the help of the Holy One the strain on these babes would be too great.'

R. Simeon was one day together with R. Hiya at the gate of Lud, when a young boy approached them. Said R. Simeon: 'Verily, the Holy One, blessed be He, will in a few days embroil the kings of the earth with one another,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 170a

in order that while they fight, Israel may have a period of repose.' And the young boy remarked: 'This conflict has already begun, and much blood is being shed in the world.' Said R. Hiya: 'How does this young boy know this?' R. Simeon replied: 'Prophecy at times is lodged in the mouths of children, so that they prophesy even more than the prophets of old.' And the boy said: 'Why do you marvel that children have the spirit of prophecy, seeing that this is clearly foreshadowed in the Scriptures? It is written: "And all thy children shall be taught by the Lord." And, truly, when they are taught by the Lord they prophesy. Of all peoples it is only Israel of whose children it says that they shall be taught by the Lord, therefore out of them prophecy comes forth.' Hearing this, R. Simeon came up to the boy and kissed him, saying: 'I have never heard this idea till now.' AND THOU SHALT MAKE THE BOARDS FOR THE TABERNACLE OF SHITTIM WOOD STANDING. Of the Seraphim also it says that they were "standing"; thus the boards of the Tabernacle corresponded to the Seraphim. It may be asked, Do not all the heavenly Hosts stand? Is it not written, "And I shall give thee walks among these (angels) that stand by" (Zech. III, 7)? "And all the hosts of heaven were standing" (I Kings XXII, 19)-because they have no joints? [Tr. note: Cf. Bereshith Rabbah, 65.] It is indeed so, but the angels are sometimes called "Seraphim", and sometimes by other names, this name being applied to them all. [Tr. Note: i.e. as explained by Mikdash Melech. when they perform the office of Seraphim (lit.

burning ones)] The verse has already been interpreted in its symbolic significance.

It is written: A psalm of David. The Lord is my shepherd, I shall not want (Ps. XXIII, 1). The difference between "a psalm of David" and "of David a psalm" has already been explained. In this psalm the Shekinah came first and rested upon the Psalmist, for, as has already been remarked, "a psalm of David" indicates that the first impulse proceeded from the Shekinah. But in this psalm David prays for nourishment, so that we should have thought the initiative would have come from him. The fact is that the Shekinah did indeed first urge David to sing this hymn to the King, to pray to Him for nourishment for Her, which She needs in order to supply food to the whole world; and it is her will that all mankind should pray for food, for when the Holy One wishes to send down to the world nourishment, She first receives it, She being the organ by which the whole world is sustained. Therefore, indeed, did She precede David in this psalm, and She rested upon him to inspire him in this prayer for food. "The Lord is my shepherd": as a shepherd leads his flock to those places where there is grass in abundance, in order to provide them with whatever they need, so does the Holy One also unto Me. Here is another interpretation. There is an ancient dictum that "to provide food for humanity costs the Holy One, blessed be He, as great a struggle as it did to divide the Red Sea". [Tr. note: T. B. Pes., 118b.] Here are two statements, both of deep significance. On the one hand, since everything done by the Holy One is done according to justice and truth, on which qualities the world is based, and as He always apportions a lot to all according to justice, both to the righteous and the wicked, and all that come into the world-as it is written, "for the Lord is righteous and loveth righteousness" (Ps. XI, 7)-He finds it difficult, when He sees so many wicked people and sinners, to supply them continually with nourishment. He deals with them not according to the rigour of the law, and nourishes and sustains them to the full extent of the supernal Grace which issues forth and descends upon all the beings of the world, and therewith He feeds them, one and all, righteous and saints, wicked and sinners, all creatures whatsoever, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, from the "horns of the buffaloes to the eggs of vermin". [Tr. note: v. T. B. Sabb., 107b.] There is nothing in the world to which His mercy does not extend, even though, on account of the evil works of men, this is all as difficult to Him as was the dividing of the Red Sea. But was that really difficult to Him? Is it not written: "He rebuketh the sea and maketh it dry" (Nahum I, 4)? "He that calleth for the waters of the sea and poureth them out upon the face of the earth" (Amos v, 8)? Is it not true of Him that as soon as

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 170b

He is resolved to do a thing all obstacles are as naught before Him? How was it that the dividing of the Red Sea was difficult to Him? This is the explanation. When the Israelites stood on the shore of the Red Sea and the Holy One was about to divide its waters for them, Rahab, the angel-prince of Egypt, appeared, and demanded justice from the Holy One. He stood before Him and said: "Lord of the world, why dost thou desire

to punish Egypt and to divide the Red Sea for Israel? Have not all sinned against Thee? Thy ways are according to justice and truth. Those are idolaters and so are these. Those are murderers, so are these." Then was it difficult for Him to waive justice, and had not the Holy One called to mind Abraham's obedience in rising early (Gen. XXII, 3) to sacrifice his only son, they would all have perished in the Red Sea, because all that night God was weighing Israel in the scales of Justice, as we have been taught that the expression, "so that the one came not near the other all the night" (Ex. XIV, 20) indicates that the supernal angels appeared on that night to sing hymns of praise to the Holy One, and the Holy One said unto them: "The works of My hands are about to sink into the depths of the sea, and ye desire to sing unto Me hymns of praise?" But "it came to pass that in the morning watch the Lord looked..." (Ibid. v. 24); that is to say, He "looked" for Abraham's sake, He "looked" upon Abraham's merit, who "rose up early in the morning" to accomplish the will of the Holy One. Then it was that the waters "went back", they fled before Israel. Similarly, it has been stated [Tr. note: Cf. Lev. R., ch. VIII.] that "marriage unions are as difficult for (lit. before) the Holy One as was the dividing of the Red Sea". As at the dividing of the Red Sea those who stood on the one side of the sea were drowned, and the others were saved, so in marriages also there is weeping for some and singing for others; He allows one man to die and gives his wife to another man, and at times a bad man gets a good wife. These happenings are great mysteries, but it all conforms to justice, and all that the Companions have said on this subject is quite true; as is also that which they have stated concerning the difference between "before" (liphne, lit. the face of) and "from before" (miliphne). These matrimonial decisions are arranged by him who stands before the Holy One and ministers before Him. Therefore the aforementioned dictum does not run, "hard are unions to the Holy One", but "before (to the face of) the Holy One"; i.e. to him who is appointed over the arrangement of marriages and over the supply of food, since the power is not his, he is merely the administrator and under authority. [Note : the last 14 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 171a

Note: the first 8 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation Now King David transmitted his prayer concerning nourishment to the realm above, since there the supply never ceases. Therefore he said: "The Lord is my shepherd, I shall not want", which was as much as to say, "my supply of nourishment cannot fail, since it issues from that stream which comes out of Eden and which never ceases to flow". Hence it is written, "a psalm of David", because the Shekinah gave him the impetus to pray and to praise. When that region receives nourishment from above, all those supernal beings who sanctify their Lord are thrilled and raise their wings when the Shekinah appears with that food, in order that they may not look upon Her. There are three battalions of them. The first proclaim "Holy!" and then call to the second while they raise their wings; and the second proclaim "Holy" and call to the third while raising their wings; and at last they all raise their wings and cry together: "Holy is the

Lord of hosts, the whole earth is full of his glory" (Isa. VI, 3). SO they are all joined to one another, and dovetail into one another, just as the boards of the Tabernacle were "bound to one another" (Ex. XXVI, 17). The boards stood ever upright and did not bend, just as the angels, the "standing ones", who, having no joints, never bend. As the boards had two holders which united one board with the next, so is one angel joined to the other: each one takes his own and his neighbour's wing, and so enfolded within each other they stand closely united. Of the Torah the same is true: the students both teach and learn from one another in perfect reciprocity. We read next: "He maketh me to lie down in pastures of tender green; he leadeth me beside the waters of rest; he quickeneth my soul". "Pastures of tender green" are those which lie round the supernal springs, from whence all nourishment emanates. These pastures are also called "the pastures of Jacob" (Lam. II, 2), and are called "green pastures" in contrast to those pastures which lie outside--"the pastures of the desert" (Joel II, 22). It might be said: Is it not written, "Let the earth bring forth tender (green) grass" (Gen. I, 11), showing that "green" is applied also to what is below? The fact is that this "green" of earth emanates from those "pastures" above, germinating and flourishing through the life-giving energy supplied them from above. "He leadeth me beside the waters of rest." These "waters of rest" are those which come forth from that region which proceeds from Eden. "He quickeneth my soul", namely David's soul, which he desired to bring into contact with the sphere of his own grade whence it emanated. In these "waters of rest" the righteous will find rest in the world to come, as it is written: "And the Lord shall give thee rest constantly... and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not" (Isa. LVIII, 11). AND THOU SHALT MAKE FIFTY CLASPS OF BRASS. R. Eleazar and R. Abba were sitting together one evening, and when it grew dusk they went into a garden by the Lake of Tiberias. As they were going they saw two stars rush towards one another from different points in the sky, meet, and then disappear. Said R. Abba: 'How mighty are the works of the Holy One, blessed be He, in heaven above and in the earth below! Who can understand it, these two stars emerging from different directions, meeting, and disappearing?' R. Eleazar replied: 'And even if we had not seen these two stars, we have yet reflected

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 171b

on them, as on many great works which the Holy One, blessed be He, is constantly performing.' He then went on to discourse on the verse, "Great is our Lord, and of great power; his understanding is without number" (infinite, Ps. CXLVII, 5). 'Great and strong, and sublime is, indeed, the Holy One', he said. 'But did we not always know that the Holy One is great and of infinite power? What honour does David pay to God here? Note, however, that in other psalms he says, "Great is TETRAGRAMMATON" (Ps. CXLV, 3), but here he says, "great is our Lord" (adonenu). Why is this? It is because when he says "Great is TETRAGRAMMATON, and greatly to be praised", he is referring to the highest grade, while here it is of a lower grade that he speaks: "great is our Lord", which is parallel to "the Lord (adon) of the whole earth" (Joshua

III, 13). What does it say in the preceding verse? "He counts the number of the stars, he calleth them all by their names" (Ps. CXLVII, 4). If all of mankind since the first man were to come together to count the stars, they would not succeed in numbering them, as it is written: "Look now toward heaven and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them" (Gen. xv, 5). But of the Holy One it says: "He counts the number of the stars; he calleth them by their names". Why is this? Because "Great is our Lord, and of great power; His understanding is without number." As the stars have no number except to Him, so is His understanding "without number" (absolutely). Mark this also. It is written: "Who bringeth out their host by numbers; he calleth them all by names" (Isa. XL, 26). The Holy One brings out all the hosts, camps, and stars, each one is called by its own name, and "not one faileth" (Ibid.). Over all these stars and constellations of the firmament there have been set chiefs, leaders, and ministers, whose duty is to serve the world each one according to his appointed station. And not the tiniest grass-blade on earth but has its own appointed star in heaven. Each star, too, has over it a being appointed who ministers before the Holy One as its representative, each according to his order. All the stars in the firmaments keep watch over this world: they are appointed to minister to every individual object in this world, to each object a star. Herbs and trees, grass and wild plants, cannot flourish and grow except from the influence of the stars who stand above them and gaze upon them face to face, each according to his fashion. Most of the planets and the starry hosts come out and shine at the commencement of the night, and they remain until three hours less a quarter after midnight. After that only a few appear. And all these stars do not shine and serve in vain. Some of them are busy the whole night long, enabling the plant over which they are appointed to grow and blossom forth. Some there are whose activities last only till midnight, operating on the object of their charge from the commencement of the night until that midnight hour. Others there are whose appointed task is quickly done each night, so soon as they have shown themselves in conjunction with the particular plant or grass which depends upon them. So the appearance of those stars which we observed was not without purpose. As soon as their purpose is fulfilled they are seen no more in this world, but they ascend to their appointed places above. In the Book of the higher Wisdom of the East, it says, speaking of certain stars which form a tail (sceptre) in the firmament, that on the earth there are herbs, of the kind that are called "elixirs of life", and precious stones, and fine gold, which forms within the breast of high mountains, under shallow water- which are all ruled by those comets by whose influence they grow and increase; it is the glance of that luminous tail which such stars trail after them across the sky that causes those things to flourish. Certain illnesses of men, as jaundice, can be cured through the patient's gazing upon shining steel, which is held before his eyes and rapidly moved from side to side, so that, like a comet's tail, it sends flashes of light into the face, thus healing the disease. Therefore all those objects over which such stars as these are appointed can have no proper development and growth unless the light of the comet actually passes over them, whereby they are enabled to renew their colour

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 172a

and their energy according to their need. This must be true, since it is similarly indicated in the Book of King Solomon, in regard to the science of precious stones, that when these stones are denied the light and sparkle of certain stars, their development is retarded and they never reach their full perfection. And the Holy One, blessed be He, has ordered all things so that the world may be perfected and beautified, and accordingly it is written that the stars are "to give light upon earth" (Gen. I, 17), in all the things which the world needs for its perfection.'

'It is written: "And thou shalt make fifty clasps of brass"; and again it says, "And thou shalt make fifty clasps of gold" (Ex. XVI, 6), and we have been taught that he who never saw those clasps in the Tabernacle has not seen the light of the stars in heaven, for in appearance and colour they reminded all who looked upon them of the stars. Now there are stars in the heavens which have emerged from that firmament to which all the stars are attached. In that firmament there are one hundred latticed windows, some on the east and some on the south side of the firmament. At each window there is one star. And when the sun passes by these windows and lattices in the firmament he sends out flashing rays, and the stars catch up these rays and are coloured by them. Some take on the red of brass, some the yellow of gold; and for this reason some stars shine with a red, and some with a yellow gleam. The windows are divided into fifties, and, as we have said, in each one is a star. The windows in the east catch the yellow rays, while those in the south catch the red. The stars which shine by night mingle with those that proceed from that firmament and they sparkle and shine, ruling over the elements of this world, some over brass, some over yellow gold, and these elements increase and develop through the power of the stars. These stars rule for the twenty-five and a half points of the night, which are in the division of an hour. Those stars which are appointed over brass are red, and they both shine and sparkle. When they shall have diffused their light three times towards the east, or five, or seven times, then the kings of the Gentiles will rise against the east, and from that region all gold and riches will disappear. When they sparkle, one, two, four, six, one after another, then fear and trembling will settle upon that region. When the rays will strike and subside, then strike and subside again, wars will arise in the world on that side, for there will be a vibration and stirring before the Holy One in connection with those angel-princes who have charge over the nations of the world. And so it will be on the other side also. Therefore I say, "Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his. And He changeth the times and the seasons" (Dan. II, 20, 21). All things are in His hands, and He has liberated His holy people from the power and dominion of the stars and planets; for they have become objects of worship for the nations, but Jacob has no portion in them, because he belongs to Him who is the Creator of all things.

'There is a firmament high above all these firmaments, hidden, concealed, and the seal of the Tabernacle reigns over that firmament, which is called "Hall of the Tabernacle". There all those windows are to

be found, on this side and on that, and it holds all the arrangements of the Tabernacle. Six of the windows are greater than all the others, and one, which is concealed, rules over them all. One of these seven is called "the window of light", and into it the star which the wise call Yad (hand) enters, which "hand" stretches out to the domain of the tribe of Judah. This does not mean that that tribe has any part in it, since the tribes of Israel are not under the dominion of the stars, and the tribe of Judah rules over that star, and not the star over it. But when members of this tribe became corrupted in their ways and turned away from the Holy One, then they began to divine their fate by contact with that window and the star that dwelt in it, saying: "It is the hand that conquers all the nations"; for concerning Judah it is written, "Thine hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies" (Gen. XLIX, 8), and they followed the star and worshipped it. Concerning which it is written: "And Judah did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord" (I Kings XIV, 22). When that star comes out it stretches out a hand with five rays, which are five fingers, which shine and sparkle in that window.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 172b

Sorcerers and astrologers are in fear and awe of this region, for when this star reigns they become confused and their predictions come to naught. It may be asked, If that firmament is hidden, how is it that they have knowledge concerning this star? The answer is that they have an outward sign from which they know when it is in the ascendant, and they fear it, and at such periods their incantations do not succeed. Thus it is that there have been times when people were lucky in connection with this star, and times again when they came to grief over it. For this reason the number of astrologers and sorcerers decreases in the world, because they become bewildered when their incantations and predictions fail. But the ancient astrologers knew of that star, and studied the outward sign which was disclosed to them.

'The second window is called "the window of the claw", because it has the form of a claw, and the star which enters into it is known to the wise as "Viper", since when this star reigns severe judgement prevails. It has a head like a viper lying in wait. From that window six hundred thousand myriads of spirits proceed, which spirits rule over the toe and finger nails of men when the nail-parings are thrown away instead of being burnt, for these nail-parings are used by the sorcerers for their divinations. All those who throw away their nail-parings, or use them for witchcraft while this star is in the ascendant, cause death, and increase the power of sorcery.

'The third window is called "Breastplate". A star enters into it, called "Bright Light". This is the one whose rays watch over every spirit, and rest, redemption, and goodness are in it, with no trace of the accusing element or severity. When it is in the ascendant all is repose and light, for peace, satisfaction and harmony prevail throughout the world.

'The fourth window is called "Chalice", and the star which enters into it is called by the wise "Cluster of

cypress flowers", because it comes out like a cluster (eshkol) and spreads its rays in the form of the grapes. It awakens mercy in the world; it removes evil far off and brings the good near. Much procreation takes place in the world at this time. Men do not object to helping one another when required.

'The fifth window is that which is called "Cistern", because the star which enters it always "draws" like a bucket and is never at rest: the wise of heart can never discover its real nature, since it never remains still. They, therefore, only with great difficulty examine it and come to some conclusion about it.

'The sixth window is called Nagha (lit. brightness), and a star enters into it called Gazron, because when it reigns over the world it is a sign of judgement, which reveals itself in many severe decrees (gezerot) and many punishments. Every day new decrees of evil are enacted against the world, and even before these have been completely carried out other fresh ones are enacted. In the present dispensation this star is not often in the ascendant, but when the days of the Messiah will draw nigh it will dominate the world, and as a consequence noxious beasts and diseases will rage in the world, evil haps will constantly be renewed, and Israel will be in great tribulation. But when they are thus oppressed in the darkness of exile the Holy One will cause the day to break for them "and the Kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the Kingdom... shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High" (Dan. XII, 27), and the reign of the heathen nations will be terminated and Israel shall rule over them, and there will be fulfilment of the words, "Moreover the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun" (Isa. xxx, 26), and then will this cause the seventh window to open to the whole world, whose star is the "Star of Jacob", concerning which Balaam said: "There shall come a star out of Jacob" (Num. XXIV, 17). This star will shine for forty days and forty nights, and when the Messiah shall be revealed and all the nations of the world shall gather around him, then will the verse of Scripture be fulfilled which says: "And in that day the root of Jesse which stands for an ensign of the peoples, to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious" (Isa. XI, 10).'

R. Simeon quoted here the verse: "But none saith, Where is God (Eloha) my maker who giveth songs in the night?" (Job xxxv, 10). Said he: 'The name "Eloha" here refers to Her who sings perpetual hymns of praise to the "King whose is the peace", who is like a lamp that never ceases to receive the light of supreme joy from the fulness

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 173a

of His joy. Hence, "Who giveth songs in the night." All those stars which shine in heaven do sing and praise the Holy One, blessed be He, all the time that they are visible in the sky. And the angels above sing the praises of their Lord in successive watches of the night. By night various sides are active in different ways. At the beginning of the night, when darkness falls, all the evil spirits and powers scatter abroad and roam about the world, and the "other side" sets forth and inquires the way to the King from all the holy sides. As soon as

the "other side" is roused to this activity here below, all human beings experience a foretaste of death in the midst of their sleep. As soon as the impure power separates itself from the realm above and descends to begin its rule here below, three groups of angels are formed who praise the Holy One in three night watches, one following another, as the Companions have pointed out. But whilst these sing hymns of praise to the Holy One, the "other side", as we have said, roams about here below, even into the uttermost parts of the earth. Until the "other side" has thus departed from the upper sphere, the angels of light cannot unite themselves with their Lord. This is a mystery comprehensible only to the wise. The angels above and the Israelites below both press upon the "other side" in order to oust it. The supernal angels, when they desire to be united with their Lord, cannot accomplish this until the "other side" has been expelled from the higher realms. What, then, do these celestial beings do? Sixty myriads of holy angels descend on to the earth and bring sleep to all the children thereof. Through this sleep they give this world to the "other side"- save only in the Land of Israel, where it has no sway. As soon, therefore, as it has left the angels they ascend before their Lord, and begin to sing praises. Similarly, Israel here below cannot unite themselves with their Lord until they have pushed the "other side" away from them, by giving it its due to keep it occupied. Then they, too, approach the Holy One, blessed be He, and thus the Accuser is finally found neither above nor below. It might be asked, That there is an accusation below is easy to understand, but what accusation can there be above? The truth is that the holy spirits cannot approach their Lord until the spirit of impurity has been banished from their midst, for holiness cannot be mixed with impurity, any more than the Israelites can be mingled with the heathen nations. Thus both regions, the celestial and the terrestrial, must expel the powers of unholiness before their inhabitants can approach and praise with joy and delight their Holy King. Therefore, when night falls and the holy supernal angels marshal themselves to approach Him, they first thrust out and banish the evil power. A king once had certain very precious stones which he kept locked away in a separate box in his palace. This king, in his wisdom, in order to keep prying eyes away from the casket, took a dangerous serpent and wound it round the box, thus effectually preventing anyone from stretching out his hand towards it. But the king had a great friend, and to him he said: "Whenever thou desirest to examine my gems, draw nigh without fear, and do such and such a thing to the serpent and he will be rendered harmless; then thou wilt be able to open the box and enjoy the sight of its contents." In like fashion the Holy One set about the inmost chamber of His Presence a serpent, the "other side". Now when the holy seraphic beings draw nigh with intent to enter the sphere of holiness, they come upon that serpent and are afraid lest they be defiled thereby. It may be asked: Since all angels are formed of fire, and fire cannot receive impurity, why are they afraid? The answer is indicated by the verse: "He maketh his angels spirits, his ministers a flaming fire" (Ps. CIV, 4). The first of these categories are those angels that stand outside while the second are those that stand within the innermost circle. Now those who encounter the serpent are "spirits", and that serpent is a spirit also. The spirit

of impurity does not mingle

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 173b

with the spirit of holiness, and therefore those angels that are called "spirits" cannot enter into the Holy Presence because of that spirit of impurity. Those angels, however, which are within are "fire", and that supernal holy fire ejects the impurity so that it cannot enter into the innermost place. Thus all combine to push out the impure power and prevent it from mingling with them; and, as we have said, the celestials can only begin to praise the Holy One after they have banished the "other side" from the heavenly courts.

Now, as we have said, the three watches of the night correspond to the hosts of angels when they divide themselves into three groups in order to sing praises to the Holy One. Therefore the conductor of them all is the "harp of David", for this never ceases to play, but constantly emits hymns of thanksgiving and praise before the Supernal King, and concerning this it is written: "Who giveth songs in the night". But how, it may be asked, can this be? You said that at the beginning of the night all the evil powers and spirits arise and wander over the face of the earth, and we have been taught that these all emerge from the side of the North; and you have said further that when the north wind awakens at midnight, those evil spirits and powers gather together from all the diverse parts of the earth in which they have been roaming and enter into a cavern in the Ocean. But, if that is the case, how can these evil spirits roam about in the side of the South at the beginning of the night, for then the South wind reigns? The answer, however, is that if it were not for the South, which keeps the evil power at bay and finally thrusts it away, that spirit of impurity would wipe out the whole world and none could withstand it. But when that "other side" is roused it is only in the West, which side rules at the beginning of the night, at which time the whole world is sunk in sleep. Therefore the Holy One prepared a healing medicine for the world in the way we have said. Blessed are the Israelites in this world and in the world to come, because the Holy One, blessed be He, has chosen them above all the other nations of the world.'

R. Eleazar and R. Abba entered the house and rested awhile. At midnight they got up to study the Torah. Said R. Abba: 'Verily, now is the time of the Holy One's favour, since we have often remarked that at the moment of midnight the Holy One, blessed be He, goes in unto the righteous in

the Garden of Eden to have joyous fellowship with them. Blessed is he who is occupied with the study of the Torah at this time.' R. Eleazar asked: 'What is the manner of this joyous fellowship?' and continued, answering himself: 'At midnight the Holy One is roused in the love of the Left Hand towards the Community of Israel; for the arousing of love proceeds only from the Left Hand. The Community of Israel, however, has no gift through which to approach the King, nor any excellent worth in herself; only when He beholds the spirits of the righteous, crowned with many good works and with many acts of righteousness accomplished during the preceding day, He is more pleased with

them than with all the savour of the sacrifices which the Israelites offer. Then a light breaks forth, and all the trees of the Garden of Eden begin to sing, and the righteous are crowned there with all the joys of the world to come. And when a man wakes at that time to study the Torah, he participates in the joy of the righteous in the Garden of Eden. A Divine Name engraved in thirty-two letters is then wrought into a garland for them, this being one of the mysteries of the righteous.'

R. Eleazar then began to discourse on the verse: Hallelukah. I will give thanks unto the Lord with my whole heart, in the council of the upright, and in the congregation (Ps. CXI, 1) Said he: 'Hallelukah' is, as has already been truly pointed out by the Companions, the most excellent of all the ten expressions of praise [Tr. note: Benediction, Hallel, prayer, song, psalm, melody, nezah, blessed, thanks, Hallelukah. Cf. Midrash Teh., 1.] used by David, since it embraces in one single word the Divine Name and the call to praise, and in addition that Name which it contains (KAH) is the epitome of the highest Holy Name. "I will give thanks unto the Lord with my whole heart (lebab)." Wherever King David composed an alphabetical

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 174a

Psalm, as in this case, he intended to indicate the mystery of the twenty-two engraved letters of the Hebrew alphabet, which issue forth in the tracing of thirty-two paths. [Tr. note: The thirty-two paths of the primordial Wisdom.] There are letters which emanate from the mystery of the supernal world, and there are others which are formed on a smaller pattern. In this psalm we have the mystery of the alphabet which the upper world gives to the lower. Thus, in "I will give thanks to the Lord with my whole heart", the word lebab (heart) alludes to two hearts, the good and the evil inclination, both of which dwell in man; for one must thank the Holy One for all things, not only with one's good, but also with one's evil inclination. For from the side of the good inclination good comes to man, so he has to give thanks to Him who is good and who does good. From the evil inclination, again, comes seduction, and one must needs thank and praise the Holy One for all that comes to him, whether it be from one side or from the other. "In the council (mystery) of the upright and in the congregation." "In the mystery (sod) of the upright" is an allusion to the supernal holy angels who know and comprehend the mystery of the Holy One and are a part thereof; "the congregation" refers to the children of Israel when they congregate in tens to give thanks to the Holy One, blessed be He. Thus one has always to praise the Lord, for evil as for good, and to proclaim His wondrous deeds unto all men, for when these wonders are thus proclaimed, and His goodness, wisdom and majesty are lauded among all His creatures, then He is truly glorified in the world. Concerning this it is written: "and I shall be magnified and sanctified" (Ezek. XXXVIII, 23).'

R. Judah, commenting on the words, "Let the whole soul (neshamah) praise the Lord" (Ps. CL, 6), said: 'We have been taught that all souls emanate from one holy Body, and animate human beings. From what place (in the Body) do they come? From the place which is

called "KAH"[Tr. note: Al. Yod="Hand"]. 'And what is the nature of that region?' Said R. Judah: 'It is written, "How manifold are thy works, O Lord! In wisdom hast thou made them all" (Ibid. CIV, 24); for, as we have learnt, in that wisdom, the spring of which divides into thirty-two rivers, all things that are, both above and below, were completed; it is called the "Holy Spirit", containing as it does all other spirits that are.' Said R. Isaac: 'When R. Simeon reflected on this subject, his eyes filled with tears, and he said: All the treasures of the Supernal King are disclosed by means of one key, which reveals in secret chambers supernal tracings. Who can comprehend what is hidden in the spring of wisdom? Moses revealed it not on the day whereon he made known other deep mysteries, although all things were revealed through him, save only in the hour when the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to receive him into the holy Council above, and to remove him and hide him away from men, as it is written: "I am a hundred and twenty years old to-day" (Deut. XXXI, 2). On that very day the span of his days was completed and the time of his entrance into that region was arrived, as it is written: "Behold, thy days have come near that thou must die" (Ibid. 14): "near" being meant literally. For Moses did not die. But is it not written, "And Moses died there"? The truth is, however, that although the departure of the righteous is always designated "death", this is only in reference to us. For over him who has attained completeness, and is a model of holy faith, death has no power, and so he does not, in fact, die. This was, for instance, the case with Jacob, in whom was the completeness of Faith, as may be confirmed from the words: "thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name" (Gen. xxxv, 10); "Israel" means the completion of all, as it is written, "And thou, O my servant Jacob, fear not, neither be dismayed, O Israel, for lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity..." (Jer. xxx, 10).' R. Judah derived the fact of Israel's completeness from the words "for I am with thee" (Ibid.). 'Happy', he said, 'was his lot in that his Lord spoke to him in this wise! It does not say, "for thou art with Me", but "for I am with thee"- that is to say, his Master came to unite His lot with His servant's, and to dwell with him.' R. Simeon said: 'It was well said by R. Abba that the verse, "and Jacob shall return and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid" (Ibid. II), signifies that Jacob shall return to be called by another name, as it is written: "Thy name shall no more be called Jacob, but Israel." There is, however, also another interpretation, as follows: "and Jacob shall return" -namely, to the place whence he was taken; "and be in rest"-while in this world; "and be quiet"-in the world to come; "and none shall make him afraid"-not even the Angel of Death. So we see that all perfection was in him.' Said R. Isaac: 'The Companions have proved the last point in another way, viz., from the words "and thy seed (shall return) from the land of their captivity"; just as his seed is alive, so also is he alive.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 174b

AND THE MIDDLE BAR IN THE MIDST OF THE BOARDS SHALL PASS THROUGH FROM END TO END. R. Judah here quoted the verse, "Blessed art thou, O land, when thy king is the son of nobles, and thy princes eat in due time" (Eccl. x, 17). 'What', he

said, 'precedes this? "Woe to thee, O land, when thy king is a child, and thy princes eat in the morning". Said he: 'Woe unto mankind that they neglect the worship of their Lord, though He perpetually lavishes upon them His providential care, setting before them the precious treasure of the Torah, which they neglect. There are, as we have learnt, three cardinal duties which a man must fulfil towards his son, namely, circumcision, redemption of the first-born, and the finding of a wife; and all three God performs for Israel; circumcision, as it is written, "And the Lord shall circumcise thy heart" (Deut. x, 10); redemption, as it is written, "And the Lord thy God hath redeemed thee" (Deut. x, 15); the finding of a wife, as it is written, "He created them male and female, and God blessed them and God said unto them, Be fruitful and multiply" (Gen. I, 27, 28). Moreover, he carried his children on his wings (Ex. XIX, 4). Said R. Jose: 'All these benefits which He gave unto Israel were great, but the Torah is the greatest of all. For there is nothing which so ennobles a man, either in this world or in the world to come, as the Torah, concerning which it is written, "By me kings reign, and princes decree justice" (Prov. VIII, 15).

'We are told that when Rab Huna went to Palestine he found the students there discoursing on the verse, "And I will punish Bel in Babylon, and I will bring forth out of his mouth that which he had swallowed up, and the nations shall not flow together any more unto him" (Jer. LI, 44). They paid no attention to Rab Huna, as he was not known to them, being still young. When he entered the house of study, he found the students somewhat puzzled by the fact that Bel is given as the name of Nebuchadnezzar's god, whereas elsewhere we read, "But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, as the name of my god" (Dan. IV, 5); and also, as to the exact meaning of the words, "I will bring out of his mouth that which he hath swallowed up". Rab Huna thereupon stood up between the pillars and said: "Were I in my own place I would interpret this verse." But they took no notice of him. He stood up a second time and made the same remark. Then R. Judai bar Rab came to him and gave him a seat before him, saying: 'Speak, my son, for of the words of the Torah it says, "She (wisdom) crieth in the chief place of concourse" (Prov. I, 21). Then Rab Huna began thus: 'We have been taught that in early times, before Jacob appeared, illness was unknown, and mankind were perfectly healthy until their time came, when they passed away without any previous sickness. When Jacob came he prayed to God, saying: "Lord of the world! May it please thee to grant that a man should first fall ill for two or three days, and then be gathered unto his people, in order that he may have time to put his house in order and repent of his sins." The Holy One replied: "It shall be so, and thou shalt be the pledge and the sign thereof." Therefore it is written concerning him, "And it came to pass after these things, that Joseph was told, Behold, thy father is sick" (Gen. XLVIII, 1)-this being something new in the world. From the death of Jacob until the time of King Hezekiah, no man ever recovered from an illness, but of Hezekiah it is written, "In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death" (Isa. XXXVIII, 1), and later, "Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall and prayed unto the Lord" (V. 2). He said unto Him: "May it be Thy

pleasure that men should be enabled to recover from their maladies, so that they may praise Thy Name and acknowledge Thee and turn unto Thee with perfect repentance, and thus be found worthy before Thee." And the Holy One replied: "So be it! And thou shalt be the first sign thereof." So Hezekiah experienced something which no human being had previously experienced, concerning which it is written: "The writing of Hezekiah King of Judah, and he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness" (Ibid. v. 9). We are also told that on that day the sun went backward ten degrees. Merodach Baladan used to dine at the fourth hour (of the afternoon), having got up at the ninth hour. When he awoke on that day, he saw the sun still standing at the fourth hour! In great wrath he cried out to his attendants, saying: "What is this conspiracy that ye have devised to kill me by starvation?" "How,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 175a

master?" they inquired. "Have ye not let me sleep for the space of a day and the third part of a day?" said he. "Not so!" they replied. "What has happened is that the God of Hezekiah has performed two miracles this day: He has healed Hezekiah and brought back the sun unto this hour." Then said the King: "Is there in the whole world a greater god than mine?" They replied: "Yea, the God of Hezekiah." The King rose from his throne, and wrote: "Peace be to Hezekiah the King of Judah, peace be to his God, and peace be to Jerusalem, the holy city." Presently he again rose up from his throne, and retiring three steps as though in a king's presence, wrote: "Peace be to the great God in Jerusalem, peace be to Hezekiah the King of Judah, and peace be to Jerusalem the holy city." Then the Holy One spake to him and said: "Thou hast stepped back in my honour three paces. By thy life! three august kings who shall rule over the whole world will descend from thee!" And so it was. The first was Nebuchadnezzar. Of him Daniel says: "Thou art this head of gold, and after thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to thee, and another third kingdom of brass which shall bear rule over all the earth" (Dan. II, 38, 39). And it says further: "Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was three score cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits" (Ibid. III, 1). Said Nebuchadnezzar: "The image which I saw in my dream had a head of gold on a body of silver, but I want to make an image all of gold and a golden crown on its head." And so we are told that on that day Nebuchadnezzar summoned all nations, peoples, and tongues, in order that they might worship that image, and he took one of the vessels of the Sanctuary on which the Holy Name was engraved and put it into the mouth of that image. Then he spoke boastful words until Daniel appeared, and came close to the image, and said: "I am an ambassador of the highest Lord: He has decreed through me that thou shouldst depart from here!" and uttered the Holy Name. Immediately the vessel departed and the image fell and broke in pieces. This, then, is the meaning of the words: "I will bring out of his mouth that which he hath swallowed up, and the nations shall not flow together any more unto him." Then R. Judah stood up and kissed young Rab Huna on his head, and said: 'Had I not drawn thee near to me, I should not have discovered thy wisdom.' From that time the students treated him with great respect.

"Blessed art thou, O land, when thy king is the son of nobles, and thy princes eat in due time." R. Jose applied this verse to Moses when he brought out Israel from Egypt and made them a free people, for then they, the "princes", ate the Passover in due season (Ex. XI, 11). Said R. Simeon ben Yohai: "Have I not said that all the words of King Solomon are found within the holy Temple (i.e., have an esoteric significance)? What you have said is quite true, as far as it goes, and the application to Moses is quite feasible, but this particular verse soars into higher reaches, and is in the holy Temple. "Blessed art thou, O land, when thy king is the son of nobles." "Land" (erez), without any specific designation, refers to the earth (erez), as it is written: "He cast down from heaven unto the earth the beauty of Israel" (Lam. II, 1). This "earth" is one of the mysteries which are found within the crowns of the Holy King, for it is written: "On the day when the Lord God made earth and heaven" (Gen. II, 4). And this "earth" derives all its nourishment from the holy perfection called "heaven". And when the Holy One resolved to destroy His house and the Holy Land below, He first removed the "Holy Land" which is above- the celestial prototype- and cast it down from that grade where it had formerly imbibed nourishment from the holy Heaven, and then He caused the land below to be devastated: first He "cast down from heaven the earth", and then "He remembered not His footstool" (Ibid.). For there is a dictum concerning the Holy One's ways: "When He resolves to judge the world, He first executes judgement above, and then there follows the judgement below." First "the Lord shall punish the host of heaven in heaven", and then "the kings of the earth upon the earth" (cf. Isa. XXIV, 21). Said R. Simeon: 'Blessed art thou, O Land (earth), that thy king is free (ben horin), and nourishes thee in plenty without fear of interference from the "other one" (Severity), all being nourished by that Supernal King. "And thy princes eat in due time", this "time" being that of which it is written: "In time it shall be said of Jacob and of Israel, What hath God wrought!" (Num. XXIII, 23). "Woe to thee, O land (earth), when thy king is a child", as the prophet threatened Israel with the words, "And I will give children to be their princes" (Isa. III, 4); for, indeed, woe unto the earth when it imbibes nourishment from the Left Side, the attribute of Severity, which is the symbolism of the words, "and thy princes eat in the morning", that is, have to imbibe the vapours of that early blackness

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 175b

which reigns before the Light breaks and banishes all other rulers by the resplendence of its own majestic glory.'

R. Simeon, we are told, explained thus the words, "And the middle bar in the midst of the boards shall pass from one end to the other." 'The middle bar', he said, 'signifies Jacob, the perfect saint, as we have pointed out on another occasion in connection with the characterization of Jacob as "a complete man, dwelling in tents" (Gen. xxv, 27). It does not say, "dwelling in a tent", but "dwelling in tents", which denotes that he unified the two "tents" (of Severity and Mercy). The same implication may be found here: "The middle bar

in the midst of the boards shall pass from one end to the other", uniting them. Jacob was perfect in regard to both sides, the Holy Ancient and the Microprosopus, and also to the supernal Grace and the supernal Power, harmonizing the two.' R. Simeon said further: 'I perceive that Wisdom ('Hokmah) is the totality of all the holy Sefiroth, and that supernal Grace (Hesed) emanates from Wisdom, and Power (Geburah), which is the prompter of severe judgement, from Understanding (Binah). Jacob harmonized both sides: the Fathers (Abraham and Isaac) signified the totality of all, and Jacob signified the union of the Fathers. We have learnt that Wisdom beat against the stones of the thirty-two Paths [Tr. note: i.e. the ten Sefiroth and the twenty-two letters of the Hebrew alphabet ; cf. Sefer Yezirah.] and caused the wind to gather many waters into one place. Then fifty gates of understanding were opened. From the Paths emanated ten luminous crowns, and there were left twenty-two Paths. The wind whirled down those Paths and fifty Gates of Understanding were opened, and the twenty-two letters were engraved upon fifty gates of the Jubilee and were crowned with the seventy-two letters of the Holy Name. These opened out sideways in their turn and were crowned with the twenty-two crowns of Compassion which are contained in the Ancient of Days, who bestows light upon them, to each according to its place. Fifty engraved letters also were crowned with forty-two supernal letters of the Holy Name, by which heaven and earth were created. And eight gates were opened, which are the eight significations of Mercy, as it is written: "The Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious", etc. (Ex. XXXIV, 6-7), which emanate from the Holy Ancient and proceed to the Microprosopus, and they unite with those holy crowns, Supernal Wisdom and Understanding, taking Supernal Grace from the one side and Judgement or Power from the other. Then came the merit of Jacob and synthesized both and made them one, for he signifies supernal harmony.' R. Simeon added, so we are told, that on that account Jacob was called Israel, because "Jacob" symbolizes that which is below, "Israel" that which is above; "Jacob" betokens incompleteness, "Israel" is the completion of all. Said R. Judah: 'When Wisdom began to cause the shaping of Crowns, [Tr. note: * i.e. Sefiroth.] with which Crown did it commence? With that which is called "Understanding" (Binah), for in Understanding all is contained; and therefore fifty gates are opened in its name, and thus it is found that all the letters and all the crowns are engraved in Wisdom. Therefore it is written: "Thou hast made them all in Wisdom" (Ps. CIV, 24). It is written: "Who hath measured the water in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance?" (Isa. XL, 12). "The water" here symbolizes "Understanding", R. Eleazar referred it to "Grace", whereupon R. Simeon said to him: 'The two views are equivalent. "Heaven" symbolizes "Beauty" (Tifereth), and "dust" refers to "Power" (Geburah). "Mountains" refers to the other crowns which are called "Mountains of pure balsam", and "hills" alludes to somewhat lower chariots.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 176a

Said R. Eleazar: 'It would seem that Jacob emanated

from the region of severe Judgement, for Isaac laid hold on this attribute as his portion.' Said R. Simeon to him: 'But was this the only grade? Isaac emanated from Grace, surely, and so did all the Fathers. In fact, Judgement proceeds from Mercy, and Mercy from Judgement. Abraham inherited Mercy, and Isaac proceeded therefrom, but with the aura of Judgement about him; and Jacob in turn issued in Mercy from the midst of Judgement. So one quality emanates from another, each imbibes from each, and finally it is made manifest that all are one, and all depend on One, and the One is all in all. Blessed be His Name for ever and ever.' Said R. Eleazar: 'It is evident that there can be no perfection except the one aspect be joined to the other and a third hold them together to harmonize and complete them, like Jacob in relation to Abraham and Isaac. That is why it is written: "And the middle bar in the midst of the boards shall be fastening from one end to the other." We have been taught that all this differentiation of the Divine Personality is from our side and relative to our knowledge, and that, above, all is one, all is set in one balance, unvarying and eternal, as it is written: "I the Lord change not" (Mal. III, 6).' Said R. Judah: 'All the heavenly lights are illumined from one and depend on one, and all the lights there form only one Light, and desire never to be separated, and he who does separate them in his mind is as though he separated himself from life eternal.' Said R. Isaac: 'It is written, "And I will give youths to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them" (Isa. III, 4). This is an allusion to the words, "And thou shalt make two cherubims of gold" (Ex. xxv, 18). It is also written: "The ark of the Lord which dwelleth between the cherubims" (I Sam. IV, 4); and again it is written, "And he rode upon a cherub" (2 Sam. XXII, 11). When He dwells in completeness, He "dwelleth between cherubims", but when the King is not established on His Throne, He "rides" on "one" cherub. Said R. Jose: 'Woe unto the world when one cherub turns away his face from the other, for it is written, "And their faces shall look one to another" (Ex. xxv, 20); only then is there harmony in the world.' Said R. Isaac: 'We have been taught that the words, "The nakedness of thy father, or the nakedness of thy mother, shalt thou not uncover" (Lev. XVIII, 7) have an esoteric reference to supermundane relationships in addition to their obvious significance. Woe to him who "uncovers their nakedness" (by probing too deeply into the hidden mysteries of the inner aspects of the Divine Essence and the relationship of one to another). Similarly, it is written in regard to Jacob: "fastening from one end to the other". Happy is the lot of Israel, by whose praises the Holy One, blessed be He, is glorified even as He is glorified above: "Israel in whom I am glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3).'

We have been taught that R. Isaac once said: 'In bygone times a person used to say to his neighbour, "Speak to me on a certain portion of the Torah and I will pay thee for it"; but in our days, even if one person says to another, "Study the Torah and I will reward thee with money for so doing", no one inclines his ears to listen, and none desires knowledge except those few saints of the Highest in whom the Holy One is glorified, and concerning whom it is written, "And thy people shall be all righteous, they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified" (Ibid. LX, 21).'

THE PILLARS AND THEIR FILLETS SHALL BE OF SILVER. Said R. Isaac: 'I presume that the "hooks of the pillars" symbolize all those who are attached to the supernal unifying pillars,[Tr. note: i.e. Nezah and Hod, who are attached to the three Sefiroth above them] and that all those who are below depend on them. What is the significance of the word vavim (hooks; also the letter vau, the numerical value of which is six)? Six within six (vv), all united and nourished by the Spine which is set over them. And we have learnt in the Book of the Hidden Mystery (Sifra di-zeniutha) this dictum: "Hooks above, hooks below (six above, six below), all comprehended in one meaning and one name, having one and the same significance." Now, what is this "Book of the Hidden Mystery"?' Said R. Simeon: 'It contains five sections which are to be found in the midst of a great Hall, and whose wisdom fills the whole earth.' Said R. Judah: 'If this book of wisdom is enclosed in that Hall, it is of more worth than any other tome.' 'Verily,' returned R. Simeon, 'it is so, for one who is used to passing in and out of the courts of wisdom, but not to one who rarely or never enters into that Hall. Once there was a man who dwelt among the mountains and was a complete stranger to the ways of townfolk. He sowed wheat, but knew no better than to consume it in its natural condition. One day he went down into a city, and there a loaf of good bread was placed before him. He asked what it was, and was informed that it was bread and was meant to eat. He ate it and liked it. "What is it made of?" he said. They told him "Wheat". Later, he was given fine cake kneaded in oil. He tasted it, and again asked: "And this, of what is it made?" The same reply was made as before: "Of wheat". Finally, he was treated to some royal confectionery, flavoured with oil and honey. Once more he asked his question, and obtained the same reply. Then he said: "In sooth, I have all these at my command, because I eat the essential constituent of all, namely wheat." Thus,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 176b

through his untutored taste he remained a stranger to all these delicious flavours, and their enjoyment was lost to him. Even so it is with those who stop short at the general principles of knowledge because they are ignorant of the delights which may be derived from the further investigation and application of those principles.' [Tr. note: Pp. 177b-179a belong to the Sifra di-Zeniutha.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 177a

[Note This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 177b

[Note This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 178a

[Note: This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 178b

[Note: This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 179a

[Note: This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 179b

TEZAWE

AND THOU SHALT COMMAND THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL... AND THOU BRING NEAR UNTO THEE AARON THY BROTHER. Said R. Hiya: What is the significance of the expression "and thou" in these and other passages, e.g., "And thou shalt speak unto all that are of a wise heart" (XXVIII, 3); "And thou take unto thee principal spices" (Ex. xxx, 23)? In all cases it contains a reference to the supernal world, indicating that the Shekinah is joined with Moses.' Said R. Isaac: 'The upper and the lower lights, when united, are designated "and thou", as, for instance, in the passage, "and thou givest life to them all". Therefore it does not say merely "Command", "Take unto thee", "speak", etc., but prefixes the words "And thou", because at the time of the building of the Tabernacle the Sun united with the Moon, and all the divine aspects were merged into one Whole which should rest upon the holy place and bless the work of its construction.' R. Eleazar derived the same inference from the words: "Then wrought Bezalel... and every wise-hearted man, in whom the Lord put wisdom and understanding" (Ex. XXXVII, 1). Said R. Simeon: 'It can also be proved from the verse, "And thou shalt speak unto all that are of a wise heart, to him whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom." Instead of "to him", we should have expected "to them", but the singular form refers to the "heart", which He has filled with the spirit of wisdom, as it is written: "And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding", etc. (Isa. XI, 2). Therefore it was necessary to say, "Him whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom", in order to show that the Sun united with the Moon in an all-embracing completeness. For the same reason "and thou" is used in all the cases which we have considered.' Said R. Eleazar: 'How, then, are all the passages beginning with "and thou" to be understood?' R. Simeon replied: 'In this way: "And thou bring near unto thee Aaron"-to join and unite with him in fitting manner the mystery of the Holy Name; "And thou shalt speak unto all that are of a wise heart": this indicates that none of them came to do the work of Aaron's vestments before the Holy Spirit spoke in them bidding them begin: "And thou shalt command the children of Israel that they bring pure oil... for the light"-this indicates that it was the Holy Spirit which urged them to do this and shed its light upon them that they might perform the work with all their heart; "And thou take unto thee principal spices"-this has the same significance as "And thou bring near unto thee Aaron". In fact, all the repetitions of the phrase "and thou" which occur in connection with the work of the Tabernacle contain this implication.'

R. Simeon spoke on the verse: "And thou, O Lord, be not far from me; O my strength, haste thou to help

me" (Ps. XXII, 20). Said he: 'The two invocations, "And thou, O Lord", are in effect one. "Be not far", that is, do not soar away from us aloft, to remove the upper Light from the lower, for when the one separates from the other all light is darkened and removed from the world. For this cause, indeed, was the Temple destroyed in the time of Jeremiah, and although it was afterwards restored, that Light did not even then return to its place with the same fulness and perfection as before. The very name of that prophet signifies the "going up on high" (Jeremiah; lit. God shall be exalted) of the supernal light, and its continued absence from its place in the earthly sanctuary. Jeremiah himself was removed and never returned to his place, and the Temple was destroyed and the light was darkened; but Isaiah's very name ("The Salvation of the Lord") is the cause of future redemption and the return of the supernal light to its place and the restoration of the Temple and all the splendour and glory thereof. Therefore the names of these two prophets are thus differentiated, because the name is of great significance and potency, and the combination of letters one with the other operates either for good or for evil. Connected with this mystery is the combination of the letters of the holy names, and even the letters in themselves can be made to reveal supreme mysteries.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2 Page 180a

[Note: This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated].

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2 Page 180b

[Note: This Page belongs to the Sifra di-Zeniutha and is not translated]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 181a

[Tr. note: The passage omitted (first 35 Hebrew lines) deals with the symbolism of the shapes of certain Hebrew letters, and is unsuitable for translation'.] THAT HE MAY MINISTER UNTO ME IN THE PRIEST'S OFFICE. Said R. Simeon: 'Moses did not make use of the Moon until he was completed on all sides in the mystery of the vau (six), [Tr. note:] i.e. until he obtained a perfect cognition of the Sefirah Tifereth.] as elsewhere explained. This is indicated by the superfluous vau at the end of le-khahano (to be a priest). The word li (to me) indicates that the vau (Tifereth) was to make use of the he (Malkuth), that all might be one. Blessed are the Israelites

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 181b

who "entered and came out" and comprehended the mystery of the ways of the Torah, to walk in the way of truth. "From among the children of Israel", because only from there is unity possible, for the children of Israel stand here below as emissaries of the Most High, to open the gates, to shed light upon the ways, to kindle the radiance of the heavenly fire, to draw all things that are below near to them that are above, in order that all may become a unity. Therefore it is written: "And ye who cleave to the Lord your God, ye are all alive to-day".' R. Simeon further said: 'In all things there is a "drawing near" for him who

understands how to accomplish the union and to worship the Lord, for when the sacrifice is offered in manner due, all grades are brought near as one unity, and the light of the Countenance is present in the world, in the Sanctuary, and the "other side" is subdued and covered in, and the side of holiness reigns in all as light and joy. But when the sacrifice is not offered in manner due, and the union is not effected, this Countenance is overcast and the light is not present, the Moon is in hiding, and the "other side" reigns, because there is no one who knows how to unify the Holy Name in the proper fashion." [Tr. note: Here follows in the original a passage about Job which is reproduced with only slight variations from Zohar, Exodus, 34a.]

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 182a

'It is written: [Tr. note: The section from here to p. 187b seems to be out of place, and to belong properly to the portion Ki Tisa.] "Thou shalt not make to thee molten gods", and immediately after, "the feast of unleavened bread shalt thou keep" (Ex. XXXIV, 17, 18). What connection is there between the two precepts? We have been taught concerning this matter as follows: If one eats leaven during the Passover, it is as though he worshipped idols. For when Israel went out from Egypt they emerged from the dominion of the Egyptians, from that dominion which is called "leaven"; for the "evil inclination" operates in man and grows in him like leaven in the dough: it enters into him, and, little by little, extends its influence until his whole self is permeated by it. This is idolatry, concerning which it is written, "Let there be no strange god in thee" (Ps. LXXXI, 10) '

R. Judah discoursed in connection with this theme on the words: "Cease ye from man, whose breath (neshamah) is in his nostrils, for wherein is he to be accounted of?" (Isa. II, 22). 'This verse,' said he, 'has already been explained; but what is the particular significance of the expression, "cease ye from man"? Must one, then, avoid any intercourse with men? If that were so, there would be no social life whatsoever, and assuredly it was not thus ordained! It has, however, been expounded as applying to the man who rises up early to pay court to his neighbour (instead of going to prayers), which thought I have connected with another verse, namely: "He that blesseth his friend with a loud voice, rising early in the morning, it shall be counted a curse to him" (Prov. XXVII, 14). But although this explanation is satisfactory as far as it goes, the question still remains, What is the meaning of the expression, "Whose breath (neshamah) is in his nostrils"? It is this: the Holy One commands man to guard himself against those men who have turned from the good to the evil way, and have polluted their souls by the impurity of the "other side". For, when the Holy One created man, He made him on the supernal pattern and breathed into him a holy breath consisting of a triad, as has already been established, whose several names are nephesh, ruah, and neshamah, the highest being the neshamah, for it is the superior energy by means of which man can apprehend and keep the commandments of the Holy One. But when he lets his soul participate in the "strange worship", he defiles that soul and departs from the worship and the

ways of his Lord. For these three aspects of the soul, nephesh, ruah, and neshamah, are all one, being merged one in the other on the pattern of the supernal mystery. And when we see a man who possesses all these three grades untarnished and firmly established therein, we may know that he is a complete man, a faithful servant of his Master; and with such a one we may safely associate in order to learn from him his way of life. And how is one to discern whether a person is one whose acquaintance is to be cultivated or shunned? By his temper; for by his demeanour when roused to anger can his character be discerned. If he guards the holy soul when he is wroth, in order that it may not be uprooted from its place, and supplanted by the "other side", then he is indeed a man, a servant of his Lord, complete and holy. But one who in his ire cares nothing for the welfare of his soul, uprooting it and letting it be replaced by the impure domination, such a man is a rebel against his Lord, one with whom we should shun contact of any kind, for he is one who, as it is written, "teareth his soul in his anger" (Job XVIII, 4)- he tears and uproots his soul in his heedless rage, and allows a "strange god" to usurp its place within him and to take possession of him in its stead. Thus the words, "Cease ye from a man whose soul is torn in his anger" (aph=anger as well as nostril), are obviously an injunction to refrain from intercourse with him who tears the holy soul and defiles it in his anger.

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 182b

"For wherein (ba-meh) is he to be accounted for?"-such a one is "accounted" an "idol" (bamah, lit. "high place"), and to associate oneself with such a person is like associating with idolatry. And not only that: such a person has also uprooted holiness from its place and raised in its stead a "strange god" there; and as in regard to a "strange god" it is written: "Do not turn to idols" (Lev. XIX, 4), so it is prohibited to look on the face of such a person in his anger. As to the question, What about the anger of students of the Torah? that anger is good in all its aspects, since, as we have been taught, the Torah is fire, and it is she who kindles that holy anger in her devotees, as it is written, "Is not my word like as a fire? saith the Lord" (Jer. XXIII, 29). The anger of scholars is for offences against the Torah, it is in her honour, it is for the sake of the Holy One's glory and majesty. Therefore it says: "For the Lord thy God is a consuming fire, he is a zealous God" (Deut. IV, 24). But if a person becomes angry over purely secular matters, this is no service of God, and no sin that man commits is so literally idolatry as this, since it actually sets up an idol in the very heart of him who is angered: unto such a man one is forbidden to speak or draw nigh. Should one say, But, after all, this anger is only a momentary impulse from which he may soon repent-why, then, such severity as this? the answer would be, that in reality it is not thus, because he has uprooted the holiness of his soul from its place and the "other god" has entrenched himself therein, and will never leave him until by a great effort the person so afflicted completely purifies himself and roots out from his inner self that evil, and thereafter endeavours to sanctify himself afresh, and to draw down holiness from above upon himself; then only can there be a possibility of renewal and sanctification for him.' Said R. Jose to him: 'Why only a possibility of renewal and sanctification?'

R. Judah replied: 'Consider this: when a man uproots the holiness of his soul and is given admission to that "strange god" in its place-the "strange god" which is called "impure"-that man has become polluted and he pollutes everyone with whom he comes into contact, and holiness flees from him; and, holiness having once fled, whatever the person may do afterwards, it will not return to its place again.' Said R. Jose: 'And yet, how many who had defiled themselves are purified!' R. Judah replied: 'But anger, in contradistinction to sins which pollute only the body, pollutes also the soul and, in fact, the whole being. Therefore one must beware of such a man and must "keep the feast of unleavened bread", that is, the side of holiness within, and not exchange it for the "other side" to pollute oneself and others.

' "The feast of unleavened bread shalt thou keep (tishmor). Seven days shalt thou eat unleavened bread, as I have commanded thee" (Ex. XXXIV, 18). This is the sphere called shamor (keep=Kingdom, the "Feminine" emanation), therefore it says in regard to this feast, "keep". These "seven days" are not like the seven days of the feast of Tabernacles, avhich latter are "upper" days (belonging to the world of "Understanding"), whilst the former are "lower" days (belonging to the world of "Kingdom"). Therefore, on the feast of Tabernacles the full "Hallel"[Tr. note: i.e. Ps. CXIII-CXVIII] in full is recited, whilst on that of Passover (after the first day) only a part of it[Tr. note: i.e. the same psalms with the omission of Ps. cxv, 1-1l, and CXVI, 1-11.] is recited. It may be asked, After the feast of the Passover has been sanctified (on the first day), why is there a descent to a lower plane on the succeeding days? Is there not an ancient rule that "in holy things there must be continual progress upward, not regression downward"? Why, then, is not the "complete" Hallel said on the remaining six days of the feast? Why does the sanctification "come down" in these "lower" days? The answer would be as follows: It is written concerning the High Priest: "And he should make an atonement for himself and for his house" (Lev. XVI, 6); from which it is clear that he, being the medium of propitiation, must first make atonement on his own behalf and then be the means of atonement for his household. The same applies here: the grade of the Passover feast began to be sanctified first (on the first day), and having been sanctified itself required to sanctify its household, and for this reason it "came down". And what is the instrument of that sanctification? Israel which is below, when she counts the days of the Omer (from the second night of Passover until the night of Pentecost). And when these have been sanctified, this grade must be raised in order to ascend above, for when the house of the Matrona (Israel, the "bearer" of the Shekinah) is sanctified, it ascends to the upper region in order to unite itself with those "higher" days

Soncino Zohar Shemoth, Section 2, Page 183a

above (on the Feast of Weeks). Therefore we have to count the days of the Omer standing, because these are "high" days. So, also, whenever a man enters into those "high" days, whether it be with prayers nr hymns of praise, he must pray or sing standing, his thighs taut, his feet firm, his body erect: the attitude. of a man,

instinct with power, as distinct from the characteristic attitude of a woman, which is sitting. Another reason for standing is that the counting of the days of the Omer signifies praise-giving to the upper world. And because the counting of the Omer is part of the mystery of the world of Masculinity, therefore it is not obligatory for women; for it is only the men who are obliged to count, in order to unite all the attributes according to the Divine purpose. Similarly it is written (in regard to the pilgrimage to Jerusalem on the three festivals): "Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord God" (Ex. XXIII, 16)-males but not females, because the mystery of the Covenant applies to males but not to females; therefore the command to "appear" being bound up with that supernal mystery, women are not obliged to keep it. We have also learnt in this connection the mystery, that from every seven of those "high" days, one day of the lower days receives holiness, and that day is called Shabu'a (week),[Tr. note: Alluding to the fact that in the counting of the Omer the weeks are mentioned as well as the days] because it was sanctified by the seven "supernal" days. And so it is with all the sevens of the fifty days (between the second night of Passover and the night of Pentecost), or rather the forty-nine days, and as there are forty-nine supernal days, seven days below are sanctified, and every one of these days is called "week", because it ascends by means of those seven. Therefore it is written, "Seven complete weeks they shall be" (Lev. XXIII, 15). Because they (i.e. the "lower" days) are of the Feminine grade they are designated by a feminine form (sheba' instead of shib' ah). And when they have been sanctified by them (i.e. by the supernal days), and the "House" has been prepared, so that the Wife (the Shekinah) may be united with her Spouse, then it is called "The Feast of Weeks" (Pentecost), because of the "lower" days which have been hallowed by the "higher". Therefore it is written: "In your weeks" (Num. XXVIII, 26), because they are "yours", as Israel is also sanctified with them. Hence, when forty-nine days have been reached and passed, the fiftieth day, which reigns over them, symbolizes the mystery of the Torah (given on that day), which possesses forty- nine aspects; and this day, by means of the impulse from below, brought forth the Torah complete with forty-nine aspects.' R. Eleazar quoted in this connection the verse: "Yea, the sparrow hath found an house, and the swallow (deror) a nest for herself, where she may lay her young, at thy altars" (Ps. LXXXIV, 4). 'Of the birds of heaven,' he said, 'some make their dwellings outside (in the open) and some inside human habitations: as, for instance, the swallow, which makes her dwelling in a house, and is not afraid. Why? Because all call it "deror". And what, then, is the meaning of deror? Freedom, as it is written, "Ye should proclaim deror", and the Aramaic translation of deror is,heru (Freedom). These swallows make a nest in a house and bring forth little ones and dwell in that house for fifty days and then separate and go each its own way and to whatsoever place it desires, all being free. Similarly, it is written: "And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year and proclaim freedom throughout all the land" (Lev. xxv, 10). Freedom emanates from this fiftieth year to all, and because of this the Torah which proceeded from that fiftieth day is called "Freedom". Concerning this it is written, "Graven (haruth) upon the tablets", which word haruth contains the same letters as heruth,

which is Freedom, and the Decalogue, which is the essence of the Law, is thus given its due appellation, because whatever this supernal day brings forth is called "Freedom". It is the freedom of all things, of all spheres, of all worlds and of all created beings, both above and below.

'The children of Israel ate, when they left Egypt, two kinds of bread: one on their leaving, unleavened bread, the "bread of affliction"; and the other in the wilderness, "bread from heaven" (Ex. XVI, 4). Therefore the essential sacrifice of the day (Pentecost, when the Torah was given) was bread (Lev. XXIII, 17), and the others were additional to this, as it is written: "And ye shall offer with the bread some lambs", etc. (Ibid. 18), for this was the bread by means of which the Israelites were endowed with the superior wisdom of the Torah, and entered into her ways.

'Now one has to consider: On the Passover the Israelites emerged from their subsistence on the [spiritual] bread called "leaven"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 183b

to be nourished by the more honourable bread called Mazzah (unleavened). Now, when the Israelites were worthy (on the Day of Pentecost) to eat a more excellent bread, would it not have been more appropriate that the "leaven" should have been abolished altogether and not been in evidence at all? Why, then, was that sacrifice based chiefly on leavened bread, as it is written: "They (the two loaves) shall be baked with leaven" (Lev. XXIII, 17)? Moreover, on that day (Pentecost) the "evil inclination" (leaven) came to naught, and the Torah, called "Freedom", was then given. We may, however, explain by the following parable. A king had an only son who fell seriously ill. After a time the prince expressed a desire to eat, but he was forbidden to eat any food other than that prescribed by the physicians, and orders were given that for the set term of that diet no other viands should be found in the palace. All was carried out accordingly. But when the prince was come to the end of the period of his special diet the ban was lifted, and it was intimated that now he was free to eat whatsoever he fancied, since it would not harm him. Similarly, when the Israelites came out from Egypt they knew not the essence and mystery of the Faith. Said the Holy One: "Let them taste only the medicinal food, and before they have finished it be shown no other food soever." But when the mazzoth were finished, which was the medicine by means of which they were to enter and to comprehend the mystery of the Faith, then the Holy One proclaimed: "From now on they may see and eat leavened bread, because it cannot harm them"-especially on the Day of Pentecost, when the supernal bread, which is a cure of all ills, was prepared for them. Therefore leaven was offered to be burnt on the altar, [Tr. note: According to the Talmud, the two loaves of leaven were to be eaten by the priests.] and two other loaves were offered with it, and the leaven was burnt by the fire of the altar, and it could not reign over and do harm to Israel. Therefore holy Israel cleaves to the Holy One, blessed be He, on this day (Pentecost), and if the Israelites had but preserved the two sides (symbols) of the two loaves they would never have

been subjected to chastisement.

'New Year's Day is a day of judgement for those who have not accepted the healing food, and have neglected the "medicine" of the Torah for the sake of another food, which is leaven. For on this day that "leaven" ascends and accuses mankind and speaks evil against all whom it can malign in any wise. And at that time the Holy One, blessed be He, sits in judgement over all and pronounces His decrees in regard to all the spheres. Therefore, when He gave the Torah to Israel He gave them to taste of that supernal bread of the celestial realm, namely, the manna, by means of which they were enabled to perceive and penetrate into the mysteries of the Torah and to walk in the straight path. However, this subject has been elucidated by the Companions, in connection with the mysteries to which we have already referred.'

R. Simeon and his son, R. Eleazar, were out walking one day, accompanied by R. Abba and R. Jose. As they went along, they beheld ahead of them an old man, who led by the hand a young child. R. Simeon, on perceiving them, exclaimed, turning to R. Abba: 'Assuredly, we shall hear new and instructive expositions from that old man.' So they walked on more quickly, and presently overtook the couple. When they approached the old man, R. Simeon said to him: 'Thou travellest in heavy garments. Who art thou?' The stranger replied: 'I am a Jew.' Said R. Simeon: 'Verily we shall hear new interpretations to-day from thee. Whence art thou?' The old man answered: 'I was wont until but lately to live retired from the world, a recluse in the desert, where I studied the Torah and meditated on sacred matters, but now I am come into the midst of the habitation of men, to sit in the shadow of the Holy One in these days of the seventh month.' R. Simeon rejoiced and said: 'Let us sit down, for verily the Holy One has sent thee to us. By thy life, we shall hear words from thy mouth of those which have been planted in the desert concerning this seventh month. But why art thou now so far from thy place of retirement, and why bent upon fixing thy dwelling elsewhere?' The old man replied: 'From this question I can see that thou lackest not wisdom, and that indeed thy words reach the firmament of wisdom itself.' Then he began to speak as follows: 'It is written: "And in the wilderness where thou hast seen how that the Lord thy God bare thee as a man doth bear his son in all the way that ye went, until ye came unto this place" (Deut. I, 31). This verse ought surely to run: "And in the wilderness where the Lord thy God bare thee"; what is the significance of the words "where thou hast seen"? The answer is as follows. The Holy One led Israel through a terrible wilderness "wherein were fiery serpents and scorpions" (Ibid. VIII, 15); indeed, the most fearful wilderness in the world. Why did He do this? Because in the hour when they left

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 184a

Egypt and increased to the number of sixty myriad souls, the Holy Kingdom was strengthened and stood firm, high above all, and the Moon was illumined, and thus the wicked dominion, the "other side", was subdued, and the Holy One brought the Israelites out in order to lead them through the terrible wilderness, the

very realm and domain of Samael the wicked, in order that the evil power might be broken and the ruler of the regions of darkness be crushed, that it might rear its head no more. Had the Israelites not sinned, the Holy One would have resolved to remove him altogether from the world. Therefore He led them through his very dominion and territory. But when they sinned the serpent stung them many a time, and then was fulfilled that which was written: "He shall bruise thy head t rosh) and thou shalt bruise his heel" (Gen. III, 15)- that is to say, Israel first (be-rosh) bruised his head, but because later they knew not how to guard themselves against him he finally smote them and they all fell dead in the wilderness, and then the other half of the verse was fulfilled: "and thou (i.e. the serpent) shalt bruise his heel". And forty years long were they chastised by him, which corresponded to the forty lashes of the judges. Therefore it says: "where thou hast seen". They saw with their own eyes the prince of the desert, a prisoner bound before them, and they took his lot and possession. And so I also separated myself from the haunts of men and departed to dwell in the desert in order to be able better to meditate upon the Torah and to subdue that "other side." Besides, the words of the Torah can best sink into the soul there in the desert, for there is no light except that which issues from darkness, for when that "other side" is subdued the Holy One is exalted in glory. In fact, there can be no true worship except it issue forth from darkness, and no true good except it proceed from evil. And when a man enters upon an evil way and then forsakes it the Holy One is exalted in glory. Hence the perfection of all things is attained when good and evil are first of all commingled, and then become all good, for there is no good so perfect as that which issues out of evil. The divine Glory is extolled and extended thereby, and therein lies the essence of perfect worship. And as for us, we remained in the desert throughout all the days of the year in order to subdue there that "other side", but now, when the time for the divine worship from the side of holiness has come, we return to an inhabited place where the worship of the Holy One is carried on. Moreover, now in the season of the New Year the time has come for that serpent to demand justice from the Holy One, and he rules there at present, and therefore we went away from there and are come to an inhabited place.'

The old man then proceeded to discourse on the verse: "Blow the trumpet in the new moon, in the time appointed on our solemn feast-day" (Ps. LXXXI, 4). He said: 'Now is the time when the mighty supernal judgement is awakened, and with it the "other side" also gathers force. And with this access of force it ascends and veils the Moon that She may no more shine, and She falls entirely under the influence of stern Justice. Then all the worlds and spheres come under the aegis of judgement, both celestial and terrestrial beings, and a herald makes proclamation throughout all the firmaments, saying: "Prepare the Throne of Judgement for the Lord of all, since He cometh to judge all worlds!" Here is a mystery which was revealed to us during our sojourn in the desert. Why is supernal justice roused to activity just on this day? Because all mysteries and all glorious sanctifications are centred in the mystery of seven. And the supernal Seventh, the upper world, called "the

world to come", is the realm whence all lights derive their brightness. And when the time arrives when those blessings and sanctifications are to be renewed with fresh light, all the conditions in the different worlds are passed in review. Then all these preparations ascend from earth if they are fitting, but if not, then it is decreed that the Moon is not to shine till the sinners have been separated from the righteous. Then judgement is awakened, and from that judgement the "other side" gains strength, and the Accuser demands that the wicked should be delivered unto him-for concerning him it is written, "He searcheth out all extremities" (Job. XXVIII, 3); and he causes the light of the Moon to be concealed, as we have said. And why are the wicked not delivered into that Accuser's hands? Because it is not the will of the Holy One to destroy His handiwork. But that "other side" is encased in a powerful shell which cannot be broken, except by means of that counsel which the Holy One, blessed be He, gave to Israel when He said: "Blow the trumpet in the new moon, in the covering (ba-kese) of our solemn feast-day", in order to break that "covering" (kese) which prevents the Moon from shining. And when the Israelites blow the trumpet here below the voice thereof smites the air and breaks through all firmaments until it reaches the mighty rock which covers up the Moon through the evil power of the "other side", and when Satan, who has ascended and stands above, perceives that Mercy has been roused

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 184b

he becomes confused, and the trumpet's voice causes the strength of the Accuser to depart from him, and the voice of judgement to be hushed and rigorous punishments to be revoked. And when Mercy is roused from below another supernal trumpet is roused and brings forth a voice, which is Mercy, in the upper sphere, and voice meets voice, and the awakening below causes an awakening above. If it should be asked, how the awakening below can have such an effect on the higher sphere, the answer is this. The lower world is always in a receptive state-being called "a good (precious) stone"- and the upper world only communicates to it according to the condition in which it is found at any given time. If it shows a smiling countenance, light and joy from the world above pour down upon it; but if it be sad and downcast, it receives the severity of judgement, as it is written, "Worship the Lord in joy" (Ps. c, 2), that the joy of man may draw down upon him supernal joy. So, too, does the lower sphere affect the upper: according to the degree of awakening below there is awakening and heavenly joy above. Therefore the Israelites haste to awaken the voice of the trumpet, which is compounded of fire, water, and wind, and all are made one and the voice ascends and strikes that "precious stone", which then receives the various colours of this voice and then draws down upon itself the attribute from above, according to the colour which it shows. And when it is duly prepared by this voice, Mercy issues from on high and rests upon it, so that it is enfolded in mercy, both above and below. Then is the "other side" thrown into confusion, and its power weakened, so that it lacks the strength to accuse, and the "precious stone" is lit up on both sides, from below and from above. And when is that light shed from the world above upon the ways of

men? Verily, on the Day of Atonement. On that day the "precious stone" is illumined with the light from above, which emanates from the splendour of the world to come. Therefore Israel prepare a goat here below for the Day of Atonement and send it forth to that terrible desert which is under the dominion of the Accuser. That "other side" is the central point of the waste places of the world, just as the central point of the whole inhabited world is occupied by the "holy side", and therefore Jerusalem is in the centre of the inhabited world. The kingdom of heaven, which is the side of holiness, is fixed at two points, one its own and one belonging to the world to come. The upper point is hidden, and therefore it has two points. Under its own point is Jerusalem, the centre of the inhabited world. The point which takes from the hidden supernal Mother is the terrestrial Paradise, which is in the centre of the whole world. In the centre of this Paradise there is a hidden supernal point which is not manifested, and a pillar rises within that point from below, and from thence issue waters which spread to all four sides of the world. Thus there are three points which stand one upon the other, like the three sections of the Torah (Law, Prophets, Writings).

'Observe this: the goat which the Israelites sent down to Azazel, into that desert, was sent with the intention of giving to the "other side" a portion, so pacifying and keeping it occupied that it might not do harm to the sons of the Kingdom. But it may be objected: "Why, then, was it necessary to have two goats, one "to the Lord" and one to the "other side"? The answer to this question can be gathered from the following parable. A king once became angered with his son, and he called to that minister whose office it was to punish offenders that he might be at hand to chastise his son on the morrow. The minister, in high spirits, was overjoyed, and entered the palace to partake of food there. The prince, on seeing him, thought to himself: "Surely, that man comes here to no good purpose, but doubtless because my father is angry with me." So what did he do? He straightway went in unto his father and persuaded him to forgive him. Then the king commanded that a banquet should be prepared for him and his son, but that the minister should not be told thereof, for, he thought to himself, should he get wind of the repast which I have ordered

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 185a

for myself and my son, he will disturb our meal. What, then, did the king do? He called to his chamberlain and said unto him: "Prepare first a meal for this minister, in order that he may imagine that I am showing him a mark of special favour by giving a banquet in his honour, and so be satisfied and depart, without knowing anything of the previous meal which I have commanded thee to prepare, and which we shall consume when he is gone. Therefore let him, as I have said, take his part and then go, that our joy may be complete and undisturbed." And so it was done. Now, if the king had not dealt thus with his minister and his son, the former would not have left the palace, and the feast of forgiveness would have been marred. Similarly, the Holy One said to Israel: "Prepare ye two goats, one for Me and one for that Accuser, in order that he may imagine that he is participating in My meal, but in reality

may be quite unaware of the true meal of our joy. Let him take his part and go his way and leave My house." As the "supernal Mother", the world to come, comes down to dwell in the palace of the lower world in order that all faces should be lit up there, it is meet that the Accuser should not be found in its holy presence, neither he nor any other of the ministers of judgement, when it dispenses blessings and radiates light upon all things and freedom unto all creatures, and Israel takes of these blessings. For when the "world to come" enters into its palace, the lower world, and finds that it rejoices with its children in the most excellent meal, it blesses the table, and all the worlds are blessed, and all is joy and radiant looks. Therefore it says (in regard to the Day of Atonement) : 'That ye may be clean from all your sins before the Lord' (Lev. XVI, 30). It is written: "And Aaron shall cast lots upon the two goats, one lot for the Lord and the other lot for Azazel". This gives the Accuser great joy: that God should take a lot with him, and, as it were, invite him by the Holy One's own desire and invitation. But he little realizes how that the Lord heaps coals of fire on his head and upon the heads of all his legions. Haman, too, "went forth that day joyful and with a glad heart" (Esther v, 9)-namely, with that portion which was given him. But when the Supernal King comes in unto the Matrona She pleads before the King for Herself, for Her children, for Her people, and even when Israel is in exile, if they pray all this day long (on the Day of Atonement), She ascends unto the Supernal King and pleads for Her children, whereby all the punishments which the Holy One is about to inflict upon Edom (Rome) are decreed and fixed, and, in addition, those concerning the unsuspecting Accuser himself -for though he knows it not, he is destined to be done away with, as it is written, "And death will be swallowed up for ever" (Isa. xxv, 8). So Esther said: "For we are sold, I and my people, to be destroyed... for the enemy could not countervail the king's damage" (Ibid. VII, 4). And then: "Haman was frightened before the presence of the King and the queen" (Ibid. VII, 6). Then radiant looks and perfect joy prevail, and Israel enters into freedom on that day. And from that day on freedom and joy reign manifestly over them, and the Holy One wills to associate Himself with them in joy thenceforward. And as the Israelites gave Satan a portion in order that he might leave them alone and in peace, so also did they give a portion to the pagan nations (the offering of seventy oxen on the Feast of Tabernacles for the seventy nations) in order that they might leave them alone here on earth below[Tr. note: The next two Pages in the original, dealing in further detail with the goat and the purifying effects of the Day of Atonement and the resulting joyousness of the Feast of Tabernacles, are made up mainly of fragments which belong in reality to other parts of the Zohar and occur in a more complete form elsewhere.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 185b

[Note: See Translator's note on Page 185a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 186a

[Note: See Translator's note on Page 185a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 186b

[Note: See Translator's note on Page 185a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 187a

R. Simeon wept and rejoiced. Then they lifted up their eyes and saw five persons approaching, who were evidently disciples of the old man, since they followed him as though seeking to speak with him. They all rose and R. Simeon turned to him and said: 'And now, what is thy name?' He replied: 'Old Nehorai is my name: I am so known to distinguish me from another Nehorai who is among us.' R. Simeon and his companions then walked on with him a distance of three miles, accompanied by the five newcomers, to whom R. Simeon said: 'For what have you come here?' They answered: 'We came to find this old man, the waters of whose wisdom we imbibe in the desert.' Then came R. Simeon and kissed the old man and said: 'Nehorai is thy name, and light (nehara) dwells with thee indeed!' Then he turned to the Companions, and said: 'He revealeth the deep and secret things; and He knows what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with Him' (Dan. II, 22). Why does He reveal them? Because He knows what is in the darkness; for, were it not for darkness we would not know what light is. "And light dwelleth with Him." What light is that? It is the light

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 187b

which is revealed out of darkness. And as to us, out of the darkness of the great wilderness this great light has risen to enlighten us. May the Merciful One let His light dwell with thee in this world and the world to come.' R. Simeon and his companions then journeyed with the old man for a further three miles, and then he asked him: 'Why did not thy five disciples accompany thee from the first?' He replied: 'I did not wish anyone to be troubled on my account, but from henceforth they shall go along with me, seeing that they have come.' Then they went their way, and R. Simeon his. Presently R. Abba said: 'Now we know the name of that ancient, but he departed without having learnt the name of the great Master with whom he conversed.' Said R. Simeon: 'I have learnt from him not to tell (without being asked).'

KI TISA

AND THE LORD SPAKE UNTO MOSES SAYING: WHEN THOU TAKEST THE SUM OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL AFTER THEIR NUMBER, THEN SHALL THEY GIVE EVERY MAN AN EXPIATION FOR HIS SOUL UNTO THE LORD. It has been laid down that no blessing from above can rest on anything that is counted. Why, then, it may be asked, were the Israelites counted, as we read in this verse? The truth is that an expiation, a ransom, was obtained from them, and the counting did not begin until the whole of that ransom was collected and reckoned up. Moreover, first the Israelites were blessed, then counted, and then again blessed. On account of this double blessing "there was no plague among them" when they were numbered. And why should a plague come when the people are numbered? Because blessing does indeed not rest on what is numbered, and as soon as the power of the blessing has departed the "other side"

takes possession and is able to do mischief. Therefore a ransom was taken in order that the counting should be applied to that and not to the people itself

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 188a

R. Jose and R. Hiya were once walking together. They went on until darkness fell. Then they sat down and conversed upon many subjects until dawn appeared, when they rose up once more and continued on their way. Said R. Hiya: 'Look at the East, how its face begins to lighten! Now all children of the East who inhabit the mountains of light will be worshipping the light which heralds the sun before it appears. For the sun himself has many votaries, but these are the worshippers of his harbinger, which they call "the god of the shining pearl", and their oath is by "Allah of the shining pearl". Yet say not that this worship is idle, for there is a wisdom in it known from former ancient days. When before the rising of the sun the light shines forth, the angel appointed to rule and guide the sun steps forth with the holy letters of the supernal blessed Name inscribed upon his 188a] KI TISA (EXODUS) 133 brow, and in the power of those letters opens all the windows of Heaven and flies out. Then he enters into the aura of brightness which surrounds the sun and waits there till the sun himself arises to spread his light over the world. And the same angel who is the guardian of the sun is appointed also over gold and rubies; therefore the sun worshippers and the votaries of dawn worship that angel, and by certain spots and signs which they know from tradition and which they perceive in the sun, they find the place of gold and rubies.'

Said R. Jose 'How long will all these pagan worships continue! Surely, "falsehood has no feet on which to stand!" ' R. Hiya replied: 'It is written, "The lip of truth shall be established for ever; but a lying tongue is but for a moment" (Prov. XII, 19). Now, if the objects of men's worship were themselves false, it would be as you say. But, in fact, the light and the splendour which we behold are true; the stars aloft in the firmament are true; because men, in their foolishness and lack of sense, mistake these things for God, and call them so, shall God destroy His own work? But in the time that is to be (the Messianic era), not the stars nor the sun will be destroyed, but they who persist in the worship thereof, and this, in fact, is just what the verse implies: "The lips of truth shall be established for ever"-this refers to Israel, who is "the lip of truth", in that she proclaims: "Hear O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one"-the very essence of truth; and the Shem'a concludes with the words, "I the Lord your God am truth". The second half of the verse we may translate not, "a lying tongue is but for a moment (reg'a)", but, more literally, "until I, Israel, shall find rest (argiy'ah) from my hard burden." For in time to come the lying tongue of those who call that thing "god" which is not God will be destroyed. But of Israel it is written: "This people have I formed for myself; they shall shew forth my praise" (Isa. XLIII, 21). I remember walking once with R. Eleazar, and meeting, while on the way, a Gentile worthy (hegemon). Said he to R. Eleazar: "You are well acquainted with the Jewish Holy Scriptures?" "I am," replied R. Eleazar. "You say, do you not," proceeded the Gentile, "that your Faith is truth and your Scriptures likewise, whereas our faith is a lie and our

Scriptures a lie also? But it is written in your own Book: 'the lip of truth shall be established for ever; but a lying tongue is but for a moment'. Now we have been established in our kingdom from ancient times; it has remained with us for generation after generation, and it is 'established for ever'; whereas your kingdom was short-lived and was soon taken from you, and in you were fulfilled the words, 'the lying tongue is but for a moment'." Then said R. Eleazar unto him: "I see that you are well versed in Holy Scripture. A curse light

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 188b

on you! Were it written, 'has been established', you would be right, but what it says is 'will be established', which means 'Truth will in the future be established, even if it is not established now'. At present 'the lip of lies' stands erect, and the 'lip of truth' lies prostrate. But in the future truth will rise erect and blossom forth from the midst of the earth." Said the Gentile to him: "You are indeed right, and blessed is the people which possesses the truth, and the Scripture thereof!" Later, I heard that he had become a Jew.'

They then went on till they came to a field, where they halted for prayer. After this they exclaimed: 'From now on let us unite ourselves with the Shekinah and discourse on the Torah as we go.' R. Jose then began by quoting the following verse: "Behold, all they that were incensed against thee shall be ashamed and confounded" (Isa. XLI, 11). Said he: 'The Holy One, blessed be He, will in the time to come bring to pass all those good things which He promised Israel through the true prophets, and in the hope of which Israel was able to suffer so much in exile. For were it not for those glorious promises which they see written in the Scripture, and which they await so eagerly, they would have had no strength wherewith to withstand the rigours of exile; but as it is, they repair to the houses of study, open the holy books, and read therein of all those good things which the Holy One has promised them, and are comforted in their exile. The other nations, however, mock and insult them, saying: "Where is your God? Where are all those good things which ye declare are promised to you and because of which all the nations of the world will be ashamed or confounded before 188b] KI TISA (EXODUS) 135 you?" So it is written: "Hear the word of the Lord, ye that tremble at his word; your brethren that hate you, that cast you out as impure for my Name's sake, said, Let the Lord be glorified-that we may behold your joy!-they shall be ashamed" (Isa. LXVI, 5). "Ye that tremble at his word" are those who have endured much evil and many reproaches, one after another, as it is written, "We have heard a voice of trembling, of fear and not of peace" (Jer. xxx, 5). "Your brethren that hate you" are the sons of Esau-"those that cast you out as impure", as it says, "They cried unto them, Depart ye, it is unclean" (Lam. IV, 15), for no people in the world despises Israel so utterly, spitting in their faces with the utmost contempt, as do the sons of Edom, who say unto them: "Ye are all impure like a menstruant". "For my name's sake, let the Lord be glorified": they say, "We are children of the living God and His Name is glorified in us, we reign over the world because of him who is designated 'great'-as it says, 'Esau, her great (eldest) son' (Gen. XXVII, 15), and God is also called 'great' (Ps. CXL, 3), whereas ye are the smallest of all-Jacob, her smallest son' (Gen. XXVII, 15); where, then, is your God? Where are all those good things which are to make you the envy of all other nations? We would greatly like to see that joy of yours of which you boast, saying, 'they will be ashamed'. (The Holy Spirit, however, echoes: 'They will be ashamed!')". Said R. Hiya: 'It is indeed so; we see, nevertheless, as did also the great ones who were in this world in earlier years, that the exile is prolonged and that the son of David (the Messiah) has not yet appeared.' R. Jose replied: 'Yes. But what is it that enables Israel to endure their exile for so long? It is those promises which the Holy One has given them, as we have pointed out; so that when they go to the synagogues and houses of study and see all those consolations, all those comforting and sure hopes, they rejoice in their hearts and are able to endure all that comes upon them; otherwise they would not be able.' Said R. Hiya: 'True. And all depends on repentance. But shouldst thou imagine that they could at this time all together rouse themselves to repentance, I tell thee, no, they could not. Why? Because it is written: "And it shall come to pass, when all these things are come upon thee... and thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations whither the Lord thy God hath driven thee, and shalt return unto the Lord thy God... then the Lord thy God will turn thy captivity.. and will return and gather thee from all the nations... If any of thine be driven out unto the utmost parts of the heaven, from thence will the Lord thy God gather thee..." (Deut. xxx, 1-5). As long as the whole implication of this passage remains unfulfilled, repentance cannot

show itself among them.' Said R. Jose: 'How hast thou closed up all ways and issues of escape against the benighted children of exile, leaving no loophole nor any ground for courage or hope! For there will assuredly be many-as there have been in all generations- who will wish neither the long exile nor the future reward, and will break loose from the precepts of the Torah and be absorbed in other nations! Not so. It says: "Like as a woman with child that draws near the time of her delivery is in pain and cries out in her pangs, so have we been before thee, O Lord" (Isa. XXVI, 17). Now the normal time of pregnancy is nine months, but it frequently happens that the child is born only a few days into the ninth month; yet all the pain and pangs take place in the ninth month, no matter whether the full time of pregnancy has elapsed. So also with Israel: Once they have tasted the pangs of exile, so soon as they repent they will be looked upon as though they had indeed endured all those things which are mentioned in Scripture, all the more so as really many tribulations have befallen them since the exile began.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 189a

'It is written: "When thou art in tribulation and all these things are come upon thee in the end of days" (Deut. IV, 30). The great love which the Holy One has bestowed upon Israel may be illustrated by the following parable. A king had an only son whom he loved dearly, and because he loved him he entrusted to the queen, his mother, the whole care of his upbringing and his instruction in the right manner of life. In course of time the son committed some misdeed which

offended his father. The king punished him and then forgave him. But lo! The prince again offended, and this 189a] KI TISA (EXODUS) 137 time the king was very wroth and expelled him from the palace in disgrace. The young man departed, but, instead of beginning a new life and adopting the path of virtue, so that his father, hearing of his plight, should long for his return, he said to himself: "Since I am out of my father's palace I can behave as I please", and he went and associated with harlots, polluting himself in their filth, and was always to be found in their company. The queen, his mother, inquired every day about him, so that she knew all about his doings from day to day, including his association with harlots, and she wept bitterly and grieved over her son. One day the king entered into her chamber and found her crying. He asked her: "Why weepest thou?" She replied: "Should I not weep when our son is away from the king's palace, consorting with harlots?" Said the king: "For thy sake I will let him come back, but thou must be responsible for him." She replied: "I will be." Said the king: "That being so, we must not fetch him publicly by day, since it would be a dishonour for us to visit brothels in search of him. Had he not so utterly disgraced himself, I would have gone to fetch him with great pomp at the head of all my army, with trumpets and songs of joy for our reconciliation, with a special bodyguard to escort him at his right and at his left, so that the whole world would be filled with awe and know that he is the king's son. But now that he has besmirched my honour, he must return secretly, that no one be aware of it." So the prince was brought back privily to the palace, and the king gave him over to his mother. After a time he misbehaved himself yet again. What then did the king do? He threw mother and son together out of the palace, saying: "Both of you must now be cast out and go, and suffer exile and punishment, for I know in my heart that, when ye shall suffer together, my son will really repent". Similarly, the Israelites are sons of the Holy King, who let them go down into captivity, in Egypt. Shouldst thou say, But at that time they had not sinned, the answer would be that what the Holy One had decreed (to Abraham) "between the pieces" (of the sacrifice, Gen. xv, 6-21) had to be fulfilled, and also Abraham's question, "Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?" (Ibid. v, 8), was a

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 189b

cause of Israel's banishment in Egypt. However, until they went out from Egypt they were not yet a nation and did not appear in a fitting light. It is written: "As the rose among thorns so is my love among the daughters" (S.S. II, 2). The Holy One desired to shape Israel on the celestial pattern, so that there should be one rose on earth, even as it is in heaven. Now, the rose which gives out a sweet aroma, and is conspicuous among all other roses, is the one which grows among thorns. This is the nature of roses. Therefore He planted "rose-trees" to the number of seventy couples-each consisting of male and female-namely, the seventy souls descending from Jacob, -and placed them all between the thorns. And these thorns, as soon as the roses were among them, brought forth branches and leaves and ruled over the world. When the Holy One came to pluck the rose from among the thorns, then the latter dried up and became worthless. When He went to gather this rose-that is to say, to bring His first-born

son out from Egypt-the King came with many mighty angelic hosts with banners flying, and delivered His first-born out of bondage with many mighty deeds and brought him unto His Palace, and there he dwelt for a long time with the King. When he sinned against his Father he was reprov'd and punished by Him, as it is written: "And the anger of the Lord was against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of the spoilers..." (Judges II, 14). And when he sinned again and rebelled against his Father he was driven out of the Father's house. Then what did the Israelites do? They saw that they were driven away to Babylon, so they became reckless and mixed freely with the heathen nations, took foreign women as their wives, and begat children from them. Withal, however, the "Holy Mother" (the Shekinah) pleaded their cause and protected them. And because Israel misbehaved thus, the Holy One said: "Let my son come out from his sojourn by himself, because he has profaned himself. It would be unseemly for Me to go there and bring him out Myself, manifesting signs and wonders as before." So they returned from Babylon alone and without assistance, without signs and wonders, but in separate groups, weary and poverty-stricken, and returned to the King's Palace in shame; and the "Holy Mother" was responsible for them. Then they sinned yet again. What did the Holy One do? He drove the son from out of His Palace, even as He had done the previous time, and his Mother with him, and He said: "From now on let the Mother and Her son suffer many afflictions together", as it is written. "For your transgressions was your mother sent away" (Isa. L, 1). And this is the significance of the words: "When thou art in tribulation and all these things are come upon thee in the end of days". What is "the end of days"? It designates the "Holy Mother" (Shekinah), with whom the children of Israel suffered together all the tribulations of exile. And if they only repent, even one suffering or one sorrow would be considered as equivalent to all the sufferings which were decreed as their portion; but if they do not so repent they will have to remain in exile until the "end" draws nigh to completion, yea, throughout the length of all its generations, as the Holy Lamp (R. Simeon) has told us, quoting the words: "And if it be not redeemed within the space of a full year, then the house that is in the walled city shall be established for ever to him that bought it throughout his generations" (Lev. xxv, 30). Yea, verily, all depends upon repentance?' Said R. Hiya: 'Indeed, thou art right! And therefore the exile is prolonged, but the Holy One will accomplish all His promises to them at the "end of days", as it is written, "And it shall come to pass in the end of days that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it" (Isa. II, 2)1 [Tr. note: Here in the original follows a passage dealing with the allusions to "Ancient Abraham" and "the Cup of Benediction" contained in the expressions "top of the mountains" and "end of days".]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 190a

Note: Translation resumes with line 20 of Hebrew text

In regard to the intimation which God gave to Moses, that although Israel will sin against Him in every

generation He does not desire anyone to rise up and accuse them, what actual examples have we? One is the prophet Hosea, who first said, "The beginning of the word of the Lord by Hosea..." (Hosea I, 2), but soon after had to proclaim, "Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea..." (Ibid. II, 1), i.e. although he began with accusations he had afterwards to proclaim blessings. Therefore the prophet blessed them with many blessings in order to move them to repentance, to turn them to their Father in Heaven, and he ceased interceding until the Holy One forgave their sins and they were purified before Him. The same is true of Elijah. For what do we read concerning him? "And he came and sat down under a juniper tree, and he requested for himself that he might die" (I Kings XIX, 4). He said: "Lord of the world, Thou didst send a woman to Israel whose name was Deborah, and she caused them to repent, as it is written: 'until that I Deborah arose, that I arose a mother in Israel' (Judges v, 7); but I came and preached to them but did not succeed." As he was thus sitting beneath the tree, the Holy One revealed Himself to him and said: "What dost thou here, Elijah? At first thou didst show zeal on behalf of the Covenant, which when I observed I was glad for the sake of thy jealousy on My behalf, in regard to that Covenant, and so I took it with the consent of Moses and gave it to thee"-for it is written: "Wherefore say, Behold I give unto him (Phineas=Elijah) My Covenant: peace" (Num. xxv, 12)-"and now, as this Covenant of peace is thine, it is no longer right for thee to stand forth as an accuser of Israel: thou must let thy zeal lie fallow and leave the punishment of My people to Me, even as in the beginning, when it was mine, I left it in another hand, and did not accuse them." We have learnt that at that moment he lost the gift which Moses had given to him, for it says, "He went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto Horeb, the mount of God". Why did he go there? In order to demand the return of the Covenant from him who acquired it of old on the mount of God. Said Moses to him when he made this demand: 'Thou canst not receive it from me, go to the little ones in Israel (those who are about to be circumcised) and thou wilt benefit from them, and they will give it to thee.' And he did as Moses bade him [Tr. note: The text here seems to be defective.]

What kindness has the Holy One shown to Israel in every period of its history! Observe that it says: "O my people, what have I done unto thee?... and I sent before thee Moses, Aaron and Miriam" (Micah VI, 4). Now, there were many other prophets after Moses,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 190b

and so surely it ought to run: 'And I sent... Moses, Aaron, Eleazar, Phineas, Joshua, Elijah, Elisha, and ever so many other righteous men and saints.' Why are only these three mentioned? Because what the Holy One meant was this: "My people, why do you not remember all the kindness that I have shown you in sending to you Moses, Aaron, and Miriam?" God was like a king who had a province and sent to it august governors to rule it, to lead the people, and to care for their welfare. Upon whom should fall the obligation of providing these high representatives of the king with their requirements, if not upon the inhabitants of that

province? But with God it was the opposite. "I have sent unto you", says the Holy One, "Moses, who gave you manna to eat and led you and your children and your cattle, and exerted himself on your behalf, that all your wants might be satisfied. I have sent to you Aaron likewise, who brought to you clouds of glory wherewith to cover you as with a king's garment, who bathed you with the precious dew so that your garments and your sandals did not wear out, but were renewed every day. Also I have sent unto you Miriam, who brought a miraculous cistern to supply you with water from which you and your cattle drank and were refreshed. These three provided you all things needful for your existence and ye ate and drank and sat under their canopy of glory, but ye gave not anything to them--on the contrary, when they laboured on your behalf and took your burdens on their shoulders, ye rewarded them with insult and scorn." Said R. Jose: 'There never was a father as merciful and loving to his children as the Holy One to Israel. That lovingkindness is expressed in the words: "Blessed be the Lord that hath given rest unto his people... there hath not failed one word of all his good words which he promised" (I Kings VIII, 56). Observe His great mercy and love, how it is specially manifested in this passage. For had it merely said, "There hath not failed one word of all his words", it would have been better for the world and all the people thereof never to have been created; but as it says, "of all His good words", evil and punishment were not included, for the Lord prefers if possible to leave His intention of punishment unfulfilled' And even when He threatens and raises the lash (to punish), the "Mother" (the Shekinah) comes and takes hold of His Right Arm so that the lash remains suspended, but does not descend, because both are of one counsel, He in threatening, and she in holding his hand. If you ask, Whence do we know all this? we answer, from the following clear statement. "And the Lord said to Moses: Go, get thee down, for thy people have corrupted themselves" (Ex. XXXII, 7). The Lord began to lift the lash, and Moses, not knowing the ways of the "Mother", was silent in fear. As soon as the Holy One perceived this, He pricked him and incited him by saying, "Now, therefore, let Me, that My wrath may wax hot against them." Moses divined immediately what this foreboded, and realized what he must do: so he seized the Holy One's arm, for it is written that he said, "Remember Abraham", etc. (Ibid., v. 13), on account of which the lash did not descend. But where was the "Mother", whose proper function it was to stay the Arm and prevent punishment? Why did She leave the task to Moses? I ask this question and am utterly baffled, knowing not what answer to give, until we repair to the Holy Lamp (R. Simeon). When they came into his presence R. Simeon at once saw from their faces that something was troubling them. He said to them: 'Enter, my holy children! Come, O ye beloved sons of the King! Come, my cherished and dearly loved ones, ye who love one another!'-for R. Abba once said that Companions who love not one another pass away from the world before their time. All the Companions in the time of R. Simeon loved one another with heart and soul, and therefore in his generation the secrets were revealed; for he was wont to say that students of the Holy Torah who do not love one another cause a departure from the right path, and what is even more serious, cause a blemish in the very Torah itself, for the

Torah is the essence of love, brotherhood, and truth. Abraham loved Isaac, and Isaac loved Abraham. They embraced one another; and Jacob was held by both in love and fellowship, intermingling their spirits each with each. Therefore members of the fellowship follow that example in order not to cause any blemish in the Torah.

As we have said, R. Simeon, having observed a certain sign in the faces of the newcomers, welcomed them with words of love; and they answered him saying, 'Of a truth the spirit of prophecy rests upon the Holy Lamp, and so we should have known.' R. Simeon, having heard them, wept and said; 'This is one of those sayings whose significance was revealed to me in a whisper from the school of knowledge in Paradise itself, and which should not be repeated openly. Yet, in spite of all this, I will now reveal it unto you, O my beloved children, my children whom my soul loves! What else can I do? It was told to me in a whisper, but I will tell it to you openly, and when the days of the Messiah shall be come, when we shall see face to face,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 191a

all the "faces" will give their consent. Now, the sin which the "outsiders"- "the mixed multitude"- committed, and in which the holy people participated, was a sin against the "Holy Mother", the Shekinah, because they said, "Up, make us a god" (Elohim) (Ex. XXXII, 1)- Elohim, the Glory of Israel, She who rested upon them like a mother on her children. This is the secret contained in the words: "They changed their glory into the similitude of an ox that eateth grass" (Ps. CVI, 20). Yea, verily, that is the Glory of Israel: their Mother. Therefore it also says, "The glory has departed" (I Sam. IV, 22), because they caused the Shekinah to go into exile with them. They changed their glory with what? "The similitude of an ox." Herein lies a mystery. From out of the midst of the dregs of the wine, the dregs of evil, an Accuser emerges, the first Damager, in the form of a man approaching the Sanctuary. As soon as he passes on from there and desires to descend and wreak his evil will upon the earth he has to cover himself with a garment. Then he comes down with his hosts. And the first garment in which he clothes himself is the form of an ox. Therefore the first of those accusing demons is an ox. He is one of the "four principal damagers"[Tr. note: Cf. T. B. Baba Kama, ad init]. who come down to inflict misery on the world. All the three other damagers belong to and are under this first ox. What is the significance of "that eateth grass"? We have already explained it, but the essence of it is that those evil principalities have no portion in the residue of bread or of the seven kinds of wheat. Therefore the "Mother" was not there, and it would have been unfitting for Her to be there. But, knowing Her love and Her compassionate ways, the Father said to Moses: "My beloved son, both (of us) do ever concur in this counsel." This has been whispered to me secretly, and, as I have told you, it is not meant to be noised abroad lest the children should see that the lash is ready to descend, and so be ever in fear and trembling. However, God and the Shekinah are in one counsel, and rule according to the selfsame plan.' 'AND WHEN THE PEOPLE SAW THAT MOSES DELAYED (boshesh) TO COME DOWN OUT OF THE

MOUNT. The word "people" denotes the "mixed multitude". And who were the "mixed multitude"? Were they Lydians, Ethiopians, or Cyprians? Were they not all Egyptians, and did they not all come from Egypt? If they had consisted of a mixture of many different nations, would not the plural verb 'alu (went up) have been used instead of the singular 'ala (Ex. XII, 38)? In fact, however, the "mixed multitude" consisted entirely of one people all the members of which spoke one language: namely, all the sorcerers of Egypt and all its magicians, as it is written, "And the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments" (Ex. VII, 11); for they wanted to oppose the wonderful works of the Holy One, blessed be He. When they beheld the signs and the wonders which Moses wrought in Egypt they came to Moses to be converted. Said the Holy One to Moses: "Do not receive them!" Moses, however, replied: "Sovereign of the universe, now that they have seen Thy power they desire to accept our Faith, let them see Thy power every day and they will learn that there is no God like unto Thee." And Moses accepted them. And why, then, were they called "mixed multitude"? Because they consisted of all the grades of the Egyptian magicians, at their head being Jannes and Jambres.[Tr. note: Cf. Targum Jonathan, Ex. VII, 11] During the hours of the day these wizards practised their unholy arts, and from the time of the setting of the sun, the beginning of the second half of the sixth hour to the commencement of the second half of the ninth hour, they made observations of the heavens: the middle of the ninth hour being the "great evening" (ereb rab, which means both "great multitude" and "great evening"). The lesser magicians, however, did not thus: they made observation from the middle of the ninth hour until midnight. The chief wizards began at the time mentioned above because the nine hundred and ninety-five grades begin then to roam upon the mountains of darkness, and their spirit moved upon all those magicians in virtue of their witchcraft, and they did all that the latter asked of them, so that all the Egyptians had complete faith in them and called them "large evening", in contrast to the "small evening", which began from the middle of the tenth hour.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 191b

And because there were two "evenings", it speaks of the "large evening": that is, the chief magicians, who went out with the children of Israel from Egypt. Their wisdom was great. They studied the hours of the day and their significance, and they studied the grade of Moses and perceived that he was in all quarters in the number six (be-shesh)[Tr. note: Same letters as boshesh- delayed.], namely in the first six hours of the day, over which they had no power and could exercise no control, and also in the six supernal grades to which Moses was attached; and they realized that he was to come down from the Mount in the crowns of these six grades; but when the appointed time was come Moses had not yet returned. At once THE PEOPLE GATHERED THEMSELVES TOGETHER UNTO AARON. Why did the magicians gather themselves unto Aaron? In order that they might be included in the Right Side, while yet evoking the Left; so to Aaron they came, as he represented the Side of Mercy. 'AND SAID UNTO HIM: UP, MAKE US ELOHIM. Observe, that the whole time that Moses was in Egypt he did not once

mention the name Elohim, but only TETRAGRAMMATON, and therefore it was hard for Pharaoh, because through this the "other side" had no power and could not dominate the world. Now, however, the magicians sought after that divine Name, and therefore they said, "Make us Elohim", because we need the knowledge of just this aspect of the Divine Personality in order to strengthen our own side, which has hitherto been pushed away. WHICH SHALL GO BEFORE us. What did they mean by that? We see that all the good things and all the glory of the world belong to you- Israel-while we are pushed outside. We also want Elohim, who should walk before us as TETRAGRAMMATON walketh before you, for our "side" has also the right and the power to walk before us, if we make proper preparation before it. Observe that all the clouds of glory which moved with the people in the wilderness covered only the children of Israel, and the cloud of Glory went before them, as it is written: "And the Lord walked before them by day". But this "mixed multitude", and all the cattle, walked on behind, outside the camp. Observe also this, that all the forty years that the Israelites walked in the wilderness no unclean object was permitted within that cloud-canopy. Therefore all the cattle, the grass eaters, remained outside together with those who tended them.' Said R. Eleazar: 'Father, in that case, that "mixed multitude" did not partake of the manna?' R. Simeon replied: 'Certainly not, indeed! They only had what the Israelites chose to give them, as one gives to a slave. And what part of the food did they eat? Of the husks which remained clinging to the millstones. Scripture proclaims it directly: "And the children of Israel ate the manna forty years long" (Ex. XVI, 35). Thus, until this time, the "mixed multitude" was kept down, but now they sought the performance of some act whereby they might strengthen the "other side", and they said, "either we become all of us one people so that we are included in you, or let us have one to walk before us, even as your God walks before you." Said Aaron: "It is not to be thought of that these should join with the holy people to become one with them, or that the holy should become mingled with them. It would be better to separate them entirely from the holy people until Moses comes back." Aaron verily meant to do all things for the best, only, alas! there were many in Israel who did associate themselves with the others, if not in action at least in their hearts. Therefore, when Moses finally arrived, he had to purify the holy people from that sin, and he gave them that water (Ex. XXXIII, 20) to drink until they were all purified

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 192a

and no dregs of unholiness were left in them. AND AARON SAID TO THEM, BREAK OFF THE GOLDEN EARRINGS (Ex. XXXII, 2). Did they have no other gold? Aaron's idea, however, was that while they were arguing with their wives and children time would be gained and Moses might return before harm was done. Observe how true the saying is: "Proselytes cause as much pain to Israel as a sore does to the flesh", particularly in this case, when they were not even genuine proselytes. AND ALL THE PEOPLE BRAKE OFF THE GOLDEN EARRINGS WHICH WERE IN THEIR EARS, AND BROUGHT THEM UNTO AARON. What quantities of such earrings there must have been

there! AND HE RECEIVED THEM AT THEIR HAND AND FASHIONED IT WITH A GRAVING-TOOL. Here it is plainly to be seen that Aaron did not guard himself against the two magicians who were the head of that "mixed multitude". One of these stood in front of him, and the other busied himself with his witchcraft. After the two sorcerers had hatched their plan they took the gold, one two-thirds and the other one-third, this being the method of that kind of magic.' At this point R. Simeon wept, and said 'O pious one! O holy one! O Aaron, thou anointed of the great God! Through thy piety many of the holy people have fallen, and this all because thou knewest not how to guard thyself! Alas! What did those sorcerers do? When the first six hours had passed and the scales of the day were even, they took that gold which they brake off their ears. Why did they break it off? Because he who desires to perform witchcraft must not consider the value of his possessions; and they thought, "the hour is now propitious for us, provided we do not waste time; therefore it is no time to worry about gold". At once, "All the people brake off the golden earrings", that is, they "brake" or tore their ears in their eagerness to take off the rings.' R. Simeon then wept again and said: 'O holy people, O holy people of God... Alas, alas!' Then he continued in tears: 'It is written: "And if the servant shall plainly say, I love my master... I will not go out free... then his master shall bore his ear..." (Ex. XXI, 5-6), and the Companions have commented: "the ear which heard on Mount Sinai the words, 'For the children of Israel are servants unto Me'-and not servants of servants-and which yet stoops to hearken to the words of tempters, causing its owner to shake off the yoke of the Kingdom of Heaven and sell himself to another man-such an ear must be bored." [Tr. note: v. Mechilta, ad loc.] And these sinners and evildoers, in their eagerness to return to their sinful ways, did not ask their wives and children, but broke their ears and threw off the yoke of heaven, forfeiting their right to any part in the Holy Name or the heritage of the holy people. What did they do, those two magicians? They divided that gold, as we have said: one took two-thirds and the other took one-third. They stood opposite the sun at the sixth hour. They manipulated the instruments of their sorcery and uttered their incantations. And when the seventh hour came they both lifted up their hands and placed them upon Aaron's hands, for it is written: "And he received them at their hand". There were thus only two from whom he "received them". As soon as he took the gold from their hand a voice proclaimed: "When the hand joins hand evil shall not be unpunished" (Prov. XI, 21), as Aaron said: "Thou knowest the people that they are set on evil" (Ex. XXXII, 22); that is, they brought evil into the world. The secret of it was that these wicked sorcerers, sons of wicked Balaam, grandsons of wicked Laban, perceived that the Cup of Benediction must be in the right hand, and that energy and power always emanate from the Right Side; so they thought in their hearts, "If the representative of the Right, namely the High Priest, should be on our side, then the power will properly and completely be ours." As soon as the seventh hour of the day was arrived they gave the gold instantly to Aaron. Now, had he but said to them, "Put the gold first on the ground and I will pick it up", their witchcraft would have had no effect whatever; but alas! he took it from their hand, wherefore Scripture complains: "And he received them at their hand!" See

now the unhappy fate of Aaron! A prophet he, a sage, a holy man of God, and yet he could not guard himself! For had he only taken the gold from the ground all the magicians of the world could not have succeeded in their designs. AND FASHIONED IT WITH A GRAVING-TOOL. This does not mean, as people are apt to think, that he carved designs upon it with a graving-tool or chisel. What the text comes to show us is that Aaron was not sufficiently on his guard. For had he, even after taking it from their hands, thrown in on the ground, even if he had picked it up afterwards, this evil operation would not have

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 192b

succeeded; but what he did was to put the whole of the gold into a bag, so keeping it hidden from view. This made the witchcraft effective. We have found in the Book of Enoch the following: "An only son[Tr. note: Aaron.] will be born unto Him of the White Head, [Tr. note: The Supernal Priest] and when they of the asses' flesh[Tr.note: The mixed multitude, cf Ezek, XXIII, 20]. shall come, they will mislead him through him who puts pearls into bells of gold without knowing what he does, and an image will be fashioned with a chisel." What does heret ("chisel"-or more literally "style") here signify? It alludes to the "style of a man (enosh)" (Isa. VIII, 1), namely, to the style of the wicked Enosh, the grandchild of Adam (Gen. v, 6), who corrupted the world by chiselling images and idols with that "style". Now, this is what occurred in the case of Aaron: first he threw the gold into a bag and hid it from view-which, as we have said, is an essential adjunct to all magical processes, for in their lore it is taught that anything which is to be made a public show of must first be covered up and hidden away; and conversely, what has to be hidden afterwards must first be shown to view. Now, my beloved children, the darlings of my soul! what shall I do? I must perforce disclose to you; but, I pray you, reveal it not again. In the side of holiness the true God (Elohim) reigns over the universe. He takes hold of three worlds-of Beriah (Creation), Yezirah (Formation), and 'Asiyah (Completion); and we have in the verse under consideration an allusion to each one of those phases. "He received them at their hand" corresponds to beriah, since it symbolizes something as yet unfashioned; "and he fashioned it with a graving-tool" corresponds to yezirah; and then "he made it a golden calf". Ah, who has ever beheld such wily magicians, such crafty sorcerers as these! Nou one may well ask, Is it not written that Aaron said: "I cast it unto the fire and then came out this calf"? Yet it is quite impossible to imagine that Aaron himself made that thing; in fact, it expressly states: "And he (Moses) took the calf which they made". Obviously, then, it was made by the unwitting power of those two actions of his: first, his having taken the gold from their hands, and secondly, his binding it up in a bag. It is only in a subsidiary sense that he can be said to have made it: were it not for those two actions, it would not have materialised. But when he took the gold from their hands they began their magical manipulations and incantations and so drew down the spirit of impurity from the "other side", and caused two spirits to come together, one male and the other female. The male was disguised in the form of an ox and the female in that of an ass, and these two became one. Why just these?

As to the ox, an explanation has already been given, but what of the ass? The reason for the inclusion of this beast in the symbolism of that unholy union is that concerning these Egyptian magicians we read: "the flesh of asses is their flesh" (Ezek. XXIII, 20); and through this we know that all those of the people of Israel who died because of that sin of the golden calf had sympathized with them in their hearts. And because there were two images, it says concerning the calf, "these are thy gods, O Israel". AND HE MADE IT A MOLTEN CALF. We are told that it weighed one hundred and twenty-five hundredweight (this figure being the numerical equivalent of the word massekah, "molten"); how, then, could he have taken them all from "their hands"? Could such a heavy weight possibly be lifted and held by human hands? The fact is, however, that they held in their hands only so much as filled them, and this portion represented the whole. It is written: "And when Aaron saw it, he built an altar before it". O holy man! strange that with all thy good intentions thou knewest not how to guard thyself! As soon as the gold was thrown into the fire the power of the "other side" was strengthened there, and the image of an ox emerged,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 193a

as already mentioned, through the two attractive forces of the "other side". At once "Aaron saw". What did he see? He saw that the "other side" had gained power, and immediately afterwards he built an altar; for had he not hastened so to do, the world would have been turned again into a waste. He was like a king's officer who sees that the highway is infested by a very formidable robber. He therefore persuaded the king to go forth on that road and then enticed the robber there. When the robber beheld the figure of the king before him he was seized with fear, and retreated. Similarly, Aaron, when he realized that the "other side" was gaining strength, grasped the one remedy left him and strengthened the side of holiness by making an altar. As soon as the "other side" saw the image of the king before it, it retreated and its power was weakened. Observe what Aaron proclaimed: "It is a feast (hag) to the Lord" (Ibid.). "A feast to the Lord", not to the calf. He laboured for the side of holiness, and summoned the people to the side of holiness. And this was the remedy which he hastened to apply, and failing which the world would have collapsed. And yet for all that "the anger of the Lord was roused against Aaron", although he himself had intended no evil. The Holy One said to him: "Aaron, those two magicians have drawn thee to do whatsoever they would. By thy life! Two of thy sons shall be struck down and die because of this sin." This is the implication of the words: "And the Lord was very angry with Aaron to have destroyed him" (Deut. IX, 20). Observe this: Aaron erected an altar before the Lord, and all that the calf symbolized retreated before it. Aaron's sons (Nadab and Abihu) erected the ensign of the "other side" before the face of the Lord ("strange fire") and the "Side of Holiness" retreated, as it is written, "And they offered strange fire before the Lord" (Lev. X, 1). They brought it unto His altar and were punished for this sin.

'Aaron thought that in the meantime Moses would come back, and therefore Moses did not destroy the

altar. For had it indeed been the case-as some think-that the altar was built in honour of the image, then surely Moses' first action should have been to destroy it, as the prophet Iddo, for instance, prophesied that the altar of Bethel would be destroyed (I Kings XIII). But here it was quite different, as I have made clear. Moses "took the calf which they made and burnt it in the fire and ground it to powder", but it does not say that he destroyed the altar. Observe that it says, "And Aaron proclaimed and said, To-morrow is a feast of the Lord." The expression, "proclaimed and said" is used concerning Jonah (when he preached to the Ninevites, Jonah III, 4): and as there it denoted judgement, so does it also here. 'TO-MORROW IS A FEAST OF THE LORD. He prophesied in the spirit of that altar in order that judgement might come upon the iniquitous: "a feast of the Lord to exercise judgement upon you". The people suffered a threefold punishment: one wrought by the Lord (v. 35), one at the hands of the sons of Levi (v. 28), and one inflicted by Moses, when he made the children of Israel drink the water (v. 20). The night after they had drunk it they slept, but on the next day their bodies were all swollen and they died from the effects of that water. Mark also that the altar which Aaron made was intended for holiness, and dedicated unto the Lord, since it says that Moses "saw the calf and the dancing" (v. 19), but it does not mention the altar, for Aaron knew very well that "he who sacrificeth unto any god, save unto the Lord only, he shall be utterly destroyed" (Ex. XXII, 20) and he was certainly saved by the good plan which he conceived, and all was done by him with a perfect and righteous intention.'

Said R. Eleazar: 'Father, it is indeed and truly so; and they who committed this sin were not genuine Israelites, but when Jeroboam put up the golden calves, were they not Israelites who worshipped them?' R. Simeon replied: 'Truly so. But it has been explained thus. Jeroboam sinned and caused others to do likewise, for he sinned against the Kingdom. He reasoned thus: "I know well enough that the 'side of holiness' dwells only in the heart and centre of the world, namely in Jerusalem, and therefore I cannot draw down that side on to this region (Shechem). What, then, shall I do?" "Whereupon he took counsel and made two calves of gold" (I Kings VI, 28). He conceived a wicked design, thinking:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 193b

"The 'other side' can be drawn to every place, especially in this land (the Holy Land), where it is eager to dwell." But the "other side" could only be represented in the guise of an ox. Why, then, did he put up two calves? Because he thought, "In the wilderness dwelt those sorcerers of whom it says that 'their flesh is the flesh of asses'. Here are those two same evil spirits; let them be clothed in the manner appropriate to them, as male and female-male in Bethel and female in Dan". And so, indeed, it was. And since, as we are told, "The lips of the strange woman (idolatry) drop as an honeycomb", the Israelites were drawn with a special bewitchment towards the female of the kind, as it is written, "And the people went to (worship) before the one, unto Dan" (I Kings XII, 29). Therefore there were two calves, and Jeroboam attracted them unto the Holy Land, and this thing became a sin to him and to Israel,

and he prevented blessings from coming down onto the world; and concerning him it is written, 'Whoso robbeth his father and his mother, and saith, It is no transgression, the same is the companion of a destroyer' (Prov. XXVIII, 24). Therefore, also, they were calves, because the first disguise or garment donned by the powers of the "other side" is an ox, as we have pointed out. And if it be asked why they were calves and not oxen, the answer is that it is ever thus with the demons of unholiness: they first appear in a diminutive form. Therefore, my beloved children, since they (the "mixed multitude") desired the aspect of Elohim, and the act (of the golden calf) was carried out with an intention in which the "side" of Elohim was kept in mind, that Holy Elohim, the "Mother" (the Shekinah), who doth ever keep back the Right Hand of the King (when He is about to punish His people) and holds up the lash, was not present there; so it was necessary for Moses to take Her place; and as soon as the Holy One awakened a certain uneasiness in him, he comprehended what it meant. Three times did the Holy One rouse this feeling in him, as it is written, "Now therefore let Me"; "that My wrath may wax hot against them and that I may consume them"; "and I will make of thee a great nation". Moses showed his wisdom in responding to these three intimations. He took hold of the Right Arm, which action corresponded to the first warning; he took hold of the Left Arm, and this corresponded to the second; he embraced the Body of the King, which corresponded to the last. And when he had embraced the "Body", and the two Arms, the one from this and the other from that side, He could not move to any side. This was Moses' wisdom: that he perceived, by means of the Lord's signs, which place to take hold of; and he did all things in wisdom.'

R. Eleazar and the Companions then approached him and kissed his hands. R. Abba was also present. Said he: 'Had I come into this world only to hear these words, it would have been worth while.' Then he wept, and said: 'Woe unto us, Master, when thou shalt depart from the world! Who will then light up for us the greater radiances of the Torah? This subject was hidden in darkness until now, but at last it has emerged and shines even unto the highest heavens. It is engraved upon the Throne of the King, the Holy One Himself rejoices in this discourse. Joy upon joy has been added before the face of the Holy King. Who will awaken words of wisdom in this world as thou dost?' [Tr. note: From here to the end of Ki Tisa is a verbal repetition of Zohar, Gen., 52a-53a ("Until he sinned... caused that imperfection")].

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 194a

Note: This Page is not translated as per previous translator's note

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 194b

Note: Hebrew text until beginning of Vayqhel is not translated as per translator's note supra

VAYAQHEL

AND MOSES ASSEMBLED ALL THE CONGREGATION OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL,

ETC. R. Hiya opened here a discourse on the text: "And Saul said unto the Kenites: Go depart", etc. (I Sam. xv, 6). 'Observe', he said, 'that in regard to Amalek it is written: "I remember that which Amalek did to Israel", etc. (Ibid. xv, 2). What is the reason that none of the wars waged by other nations against Israel was so displeasing to the Almighty as was the war waged against them by Amalek? The reason, assuredly, is that the battle with Amalek was waged on both fronts, both on high and below; for at that time the evil serpent gathered all its forces both above and below. It is the way of a serpent to lie in wait on the cross-roads. So Amalek, the evil serpent of Israel, was lying in wait for them

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 195a

on the cross-roads, as it is written: "how he set himself against him in the way" (Ibid.). He was lying in ambush on high in order to defile the Sanctuary, and below in order to defile Israel. This we deduce from the expression, "how he met thee by the way" (Deut. XXV, 18), where the term qar'kha is meant to suggest the kindred term in the passage, "If there be among you any man that is not clean by reason of that which chanceth him (miqure) by night" (Ibid. XXIII, 11). By using the term qar'kha, the text as much as says: "He has arrayed against thee that evil serpent from above that he may defile thee on all sides"; and were it not that Moses from above, and Joshua from below, put forth all their strength, Israel would not have prevailed against him. It is for this reason that the Holy One, blessed be He, cherished His enmity against him throughout all generations, inasmuch as he planned to uproot the sign of the covenant from its place. ([Tr. note: i.e. to lead Israel into ways of unchastity.]

'Our verse continues: "And Saul said to the Kenite." The Kenite, as we know, was Jethro. Now, how came the descendants of Jethro to have their abode alongside of Amalek? Was not Jericho their home? But the explanation is found in the verse: "And the children of the Kenite, Moses' father-in-law, went up out of the city of palm-trees (i.e. Jericho) with the children of Judah into the wilderness of Judah" (Judges I, 16); that is to say, when they left Jericho, they moved on as far as the border of Amalek, where they settled and remained until the time of King Saul, when, as we read, "the Kenites departed from among the Amalekites" (I Sam. xv, 6). They had to depart because, when the time comes to punish the guilty, the pious and just who are among them are first made responsible for their sins. This has already been made clear elsewhere. Similarly, if it had not been for the riff-raff that became associated with Israel, the Israelites would not have incurred punishment for the sin of the golden calf. For, observe that first it is written here, "of every man whose heart makes him willing ye shall take my offering" (Ex. xxv, 2); to wit, of the whole body of the people, including the mixed multitude, as the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to have in the work of the Tabernacle the co-operation of all sections of the people, both the "brain" category and the "shell" category: all were charged with the performance of the work. Subsequently, however, the sections separated, each betaking itself to its own affinity, and so the mixed multitude made the golden calf and led astray numbers

who afterwards died, and thus brought upon Israel death and slaughter. The Holy One, blessed be He, then said: "Henceforward the work of the Tabernacle shall be performed from the side of Israel only." Straightway "Moses assembled all the congregation of the children of Israel... Take ye from among you an offering unto the Lord" (Ibid. xxxv, 1-5). "From among you" emphatically, but not "from every man whose heart maketh him willing", as in the previous injunction. Furthermore, as no place of assembly is mentioned, the words, "And Moses assembled", etc., signify that, as the mixed multitude were mingled among the Israelites, Moses found it necessary to assemble the latter on one side so as to segregate them from the former.' AND MOSES ASSEMBLED. R. Abba cited in connection with this the verse: "Assemble the people, the men and the women and the little ones" (Deut. XXXI, 12). 'Just as there', he said, 'the gathering comprised the whole of Israel, so here also Moses assembled the whole of Israel; to wit, the six hundred thousand men.' R. Eleazar expounded our text in relation to Israel at the time when Moses descended from Mount Sinai, regarding which it is written: "And when Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said unto Moses: There is a noise of war in the camp" (Ex. XXXII, 17). Is it possible that Joshua heard it and Moses did not hear it? The truth is that Moses knew already what had befallen, whilst Joshua only now became aware of it; and the word bere'oh (when they shouted) can read bera'ah, i.e. "in evil", as that tumult proceeded from the "other side" (synonymous with evil). For Joshua, who (as compared with Moses) was emblematic of the moon, apprehended the sound that proceeded from the evil side, and straightway "he said unto Moses: There is a noise of war in the camp". At that moment the two first tables of stone became too heavy for Moses' hands, as already stated elsewhere,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 195b

and dropped from them and broke. The reason was that the letters of the tables of stone flew away.

'Mark this. At the turn of the four seasons of the year a sound arises in the four quarters of the world through which the sinister side is stirred up, interposing between one sound and another, and at the same time obscuring the light that streams from on high. It is because the voice from above does not meet that from below that the left side is aroused and is able to insinuate itself between the two. That interposing sound is the sound or noise of war, the noise of the evil forces; and this is the meaning of the word bera'ah (in evil) ([Tr. note: v. supra]. It was for that reason that only Joshua heard that noise but not Moses, for it proceeded from that evil power that impaired the light of the moon. Hence Joshua, who was the replica of the moon, perceived that noise, whereas Moses, who was the replica of the sun, did not perceive it. The light of all Israel was altogether darkened by reason of the evil power that took hold of them. But straightway the Holy One, blessed be He, forgave them their sins.' AND MOSES ASSEMBLED ALL THE CONGREGATION OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL, AND SAID UNTO THEM: THESE ARE THE WORDS, ETC. He took this step because the mixed multitude were now removed

from them. R. Eleazar and R. Jose were sitting one night studying the Torah. When midnight arrived, the cock crew and so they pronounced the benediction [Tr. note: Blessed art Thou, O our God, King of the universe, who gavest the cock understanding to discern between day and night] R. Eleazar wept, and said: 'Observe this. The Holy One, blessed be He, has just smitten three hundred and ninety firmaments, and made them to shake and to tremble; He has wept on account of the destruction of the Temple, dropping two tears into the great ocean, as He bethought Himself of His children with weeping. For the night is divided into three courses which extend over a definite space of twelve hours, any additional hours being counted as belonging to the day and not to the night, which has just its own twelve hours. These three nightcourses are divided between three companies of angels. To the first company is assigned the period of the first four hours for the singing of the night hymn in praise of their Master. That hymn consists of the psalm, "The earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof... For he hath founded it upon the seas... who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord?... He that hath clean hands, and a pure heart..." (Ps. XXIV, 1-6). Why that hymn? Because when the night spreads its wings over the world all human beings have a foretaste of death, so that their souls quit the bodies and soar upwards to heaven. Hence those angels are stationed there, and proclaim: "Who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord?"; to wit, the Temple Mount; "and who shall stand in His holy place?", to wit, the court of the Israelites. [Tr. note: i.e. the Temple area, where non-priests of the male sex could enter.] For the Temple below has been constructed after the pattern of the Temple on high. Now, in each heaven there are various chieftains and commanders; and when the souls leave the body and attempt to enter heaven those that are unworthy are thrust aside by those angels, so that they roam to and fro in the world, being carried about by disembodied spirits who communicate to them lying statements, often mingled with a grain of truth, regarding events of the near future, as already explained elsewhere. But the righteous mount into heaven, where doors are opened for them through which they may enter the place called "the mount of the Lord", which is after the pattern of the Temple Mount below. From thence they penetrate within the place called "His holy place", where all the souls appear before their Master. After the same pattern, the place where Israel had to appear before the Holy One, blessed be He, [Tr. note: v. Ex. XXXIV, 23.] was called the Court of the Israelites. At the moment when the souls stand in that place there is joy before their Master, because by them the place called Holy of Holies becomes re-established: it is the place where are recorded all their deeds and their merits.

The second camp have assigned to them the second four hours of the night, but their chanting only continues until midnight, when the Holy One, blessed be He, enters the Garden of Eden. That company consists of the mourners for Zion, the same that wept for the destruction of the Temple. The litany of the middle four hours begins with: "By the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down, yea, we wept", etc. (Ps. CXXXVII, 1-9), the angels that chant it having themselves actually wept at the time by the rivers of

Babylon together with Israel,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 196a]

as is clear from the words, "yea, we wept". We learn this also from the statement of the Scripture: "Behold, the angels cry without" (Isa. XXXIII, 7), the word "without" indicating Babylon; for that company of angels accompanied the Shekinah as far as Babylon, and there they wept together with Israel. Hence they commence their chanting with "By the rivers of Babylon" and conclude with "Remember, O Lord, against the children of Edom", etc. (Ps. CXXXVII, 7-9). The Holy One, blessed be He, then bestirs Himself and strikes the heavens, as already said, so that twelve thousand worlds quake, and He melts in tears, as it were. So Scripture says: "The Lord doth roar from on high, and utter his voice from his holy habitation; he doth mightily roar because of his fold" (Jer. xxv, 30). He remembers then Israel and drops two tears into the great ocean. At that moment a flame bursts forth in the North, and, impelled by a northerly wind, roams to and fro about the world. It is the moment of midnight, and the flame strikes against the wings of the cock. The cock then crows, and the Holy One, blessed be He, enters the Garden of Eden, for He finds no comfort until He goes thereto have joyous communion with the souls of the righteous. This is the allegorical meaning of the verses: "for we are sold, I and my people.... Then spoke the King... Who is he...? And the King arose in his wrath from the banquet of wine and went into the palace garden", etc. (Esther VII, 4-7). At the moment when the Holy One, blessed be He, enters the Garden of Eden, all the trees of the garden, and all the souls of the righteous, break forth and chant: "Lift up your heads, O ye gates... Who is the King of glory?... Lift up your heads, O ye gates..." (Ps. XXIV, 7-10). And when the souls of the righteous return to their bodies, all those angels lay hold of them and chant: "Behold, bless ye the Lord, all ye servants of the Lord" (Ibid. CXXXIV, 1). We have learned that this hymn is chanted by the third company of angels, who are occupied in song and praise during the last four hours of the night until daybreak, when all the stars and constellations, and all the superior angels who rule over the day, break forth in song and praise to their Master, this being alluded to in the words of the Scripture: "When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy" (Job XXXVIII, 7). Then when the sun appears in full daylight, Israel takes up the song below in unison with the sun above, as Scripture says: "They reverence thee at the appearance of the sun" (Ps. LXXII, 5). For the sun, on commencing his course, breaks forth into sweet melody, chanting: "O give thanks unto the Lord, call upon his name... Sing unto him, sing praises unto him..." (Ibid. cv, 1-45). Said R. Eleazar: 'Were mankind not so obtuse and insensitive, they would be thrilled to ecstasy by the exquisite melodiousness of the orb of the sun when he journeys forth singing praises to the Holy One, blessed be He.'

Whilst they were thus occupied in the study of the Torah the day broke. They then arose and came into the presence of R. Simeon. As soon as he saw them he said: 'Eleazar, my son! You, together with the Companions, must hide yourselves during the next three days, and not go out of doors, as the Angel of

Death is now in the town with permission to do harm; and once such permission is given him he can lay hands on anyone that he sees. For if he catches sight of any man he ascends on high, brings an indictment against him, makes a record of his sins, and demands judgement from the Holy One, blessed be He, and he does not budge from thence until he obtains sentence against that man, after which, having received due permission, he proceeds to take his life.

R. Simeon further said: 'I swear to you that the majority of people do not die before their time, but only those who know not how to take heed to themselves. For at the time when a dead body is taken from the house to the place of burial the Angel of Death haunts the abodes of the women. Why of the women? Because that has been his habit since the time that he seduced Eve, through whom he brought death upon the world. Hence, when he takes a man's life, and the males are accompanying the dead body, he mingles himself on the way among the women, and he has then the power to take the life of the sons of men. He looks on the way at the faces of those who come within his sight, from the time they carry the dead body out from his house to the place of burial until they return to their homes. It is on their account that he brings about the untimely death of many people. Regarding this it is written: "But there is that is swept away without justice" (Prov. XIII, 23). For he, the Angel of Death, ascends and brings accusations and recounts man's sins before the Holy One, blessed be He, so that the man is brought to judgement for those sins, and is removed from the world before his time. What is the remedy against this? When the dead body is carried to the place of burial, a man should turn

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 196b

his face in another direction, and leave the women behind him. Should the latter pass in front he should turn round so as not to face them. Similarly, when they return from the place of burial he should not return by the way where the women are standing, and he should not look at them at all, but should turn a different way. It is because the sons of men do not know of this, and do not observe this, that the majority of people are brought up for judgement and are taken away before their time.'

Said R. Eleazar: 'If that is so, it were better for a man not at all to follow the dead to their resting place.' Said his father to him: 'Not so. For whoever takes heed unto himself in the manner just described is worthy of length of days, and still more of the world to come. Observe that it was not without cause that the ancients ordained the blowing of the trumpet at the time when the dead body is taken from the house to the place of burial. This was not instituted merely for the honour of the dead. Rather is its purpose to protect the living against the Angel of Death, so that he should not be able to indict them on high, and as a warning to us to guard themselves against him.' R. Simeon then discoursed on the verse: "And when ye go to war in your land against the adversary that oppresseth you, then ye shall sound an alarm with the trumpets", etc. (Num. x, 9). 'It has been explained', he said, 'that "the adversary" refers to the Angel of Death "that oppresses" continually and takes the lives of the sons

of men, and is eager to slay others. What is the remedy against him? "Then ye shall sound an alarm with the trumpets." For if on New Year's Day, the Day of Judgement in the Heavenly Court, when the Angel of Death descends here below so as to pry into men's deeds and ascends again in order to indict them-if at that time Israel, being aware that the Angel of Death is descending to earth and again ascending with the object of accusing them, anticipate him by blowing the trumpet so as to confuse him and so protect themselves against him, how much more so is this needful when the Angel of Death here below is executing judgement and taking the lives of men; and how much more still when people proceed to and return from the place of burial! For when the women walk in the funeral procession, the Angel of Death descends and places himself among them. So Scripture says: "Her feet go down to death" (Prov. v, 5), to wit, to the region called by the name of "death". It is thus that Eve brought death into the world. May the Merciful One save us! Observe the verse, saying: "So is the way of an adulterous woman; she eateth and wipeth her mouth, and saith, I have done no wickedness" (Ibid. xxx, 20). That verse has already been explained, but we may also interpret as follows: "The way of an adulterous woman" alludes to the Angel of Death, who is, indeed, called both by one name and the other; "she eateth and wipeth her mouth", to wit, he consumes the world by the conflagration which he kindles, taking men's lives before their time, "and saith, I have done no wickedness", since he invoked judgement against them, and they were found guilty, and thus died in accordance with justice. At the time when Israel made the calf and all those hosts died, the Angel of Death mingled himself among the women who were in the camp of Israel. As soon as Moses became aware of his presence among them he assembled all the male persons separately, and this is why Scripture says, "And Moses assembled all the congregation of the children of Israel", namely, the menfolk, whom he collected and set on one side. But the Angel of Death did not leave the women until the Tabernacle was erected, and even when the women were bringing their offerings to the Tabernacle he did not leave them until Moses, observing it, advised the menfolk not to come in company with them, and not to look at them face to face, but only over their shoulders. Scripture thus says: "And they came, namely, the men" (Ex. xxxv, 22), the expression "and they came", instead of "and they brought" indicating that they did not come alongside of the women, but kept them behind, as the Angel of Death did not depart from them until the Tabernacle was erected.

'Note that the Angel of Death is not found among women if their number is less than seven, or less than ten. That is to say, if seven women are together he is found among them and invokes judgement against men; but if there are no less than ten, he even demands the penalty of death. And it is his presence among the women that is hinted at in the words, "And they came, namely, the men with the women" (Ibid.).' All that day, then, the Companions put themselves on their guard and absorbed themselves in the study of the Torah.

R. Simeon called attention to the verse: "And the

Lord said unto Noah: Come thou and all thy house into the ark" (Gen. VII, 1). 'This verse', he said, 'has already been explained. But observe this. Could not the Holy One, blessed be He, have preserved Noah in some other way, as by putting him in some spot where the flood could not reach,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 197a

in the same way as we read, in connection with Gideon, that "it was dry upon the fleece only" (Judges VI, 40); or even have preserved him in the Land of Israel, of which it is written, "nor was it rained upon in the day of indignation" (Ezek. XXII, 24)? But the truth is that, as soon as the Destroying Angel comes down into this world, whoever does not shut himself in, but exposes himself to his view, forfeits his life, and thus destroys himself. We learn this from Lot, in connection with whom it is written: "Escape for thy life, look not behind thee" (Gen. XIX, 17). Why the warning "look not behind thee"? Because the Destroying Angel was stalking behind him, and had he turned his head and looked straight in the face of the angel, the latter would have been able to injure him. Hence it is written of Noah, "and the Lord shut him in" (Ibid. VII, 16), in order that Noah should not show himself before the Destroying Angel, and should so not fall into his power.' Now whilst the Companions were in concealment there died in the town thirteen men. R. Simeon said: 'Blessed be the Merciful One for that the Angel of Death did not look in your countenances!' AND MOSES ASSEMBLED ALL THE CONGREGATION OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL, ETC. He repeated all over again the instructions concerning the making of the Tabernacle. R. Hiya said: 'It is all as has already been explained. The actual making of the Tabernacle was carried out by Israel alone, without the mixed multitude. For that mixed multitude drew down the Angel of Death into the world. As soon, therefore, as Moses observed him he threw out the mixed multitude and assembled the Israelites by themselves. This is the significance of the words, "And Moses assembled, etc."'

R. Simeon here expounded the verse: "Who hath ascended into heaven, and descended? Who hath gathered the wind in his fists? Who hath bound the waters in his garments? Who hath established all the ends of the earth? What is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou knowest?" (Prov. xxx, 4). 'This verse', he said, 'has already been explained. "Who hath ascended up into heaven?": this alludes to Moses, of whom it is written, "And unto Moses he said, Come up unto the Lord" (Ex. XXIV, 1). According to another interpretation, "Who ascended up into heaven" alludes to Elijah, of whom it is written, "and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven" (2 Kings II, 11). It may be asked, How could Elijah have ascended into heaven, seeing that the heavens cannot endure even so much as a mustard seed of the matter of this world? How, then, can Scripture say, "and he ascended up by a whirlwind into heaven"? But it was with Elijah as with Moses. In connection with Moses it is first written: "And the Lord came down upon Mount Sinai" (Ex. XIX, 20), and further on it is written, "And Moses entered into the midst of the cloud, and went up into the mount" (Ibid. XXIV, 18). Now, inasmuch as the Holy One, blessed be He, was on Mount Sinai, regarding which it is written,

"And the appearance of the glory of the Lord was like devouring fire on the top of the mount" (Ibid. XXIV, 17), how could Moses have entered into His presence? The answer is found in the words, "and Moses entered into the midst of the cloud and went up into the mount". This shows that Moses enveloped himself in the cloud as in a garment, and, having thus wrapped himself round, he was able to draw near to the "fire of the glory of the Lord". In a similar way, Elijah, of whom it is written, "And Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven", entered into that whirlwind and enveloped himself in it as in a garment, and in this way ascended on high. The following recondite passage is found in the Book of Adam the First Man, in describing the generations of mankind: "A certain spirit will one day come down to earth and will clothe itself in an earthly body and will bear the name of Elijah. Whilst in that body he will soar aloft and, divesting himself of that body, enter within a whirlwind, where another and luminous body will have been prepared for him, so that he will be as an angel among angels' But whenever he will come down to earth he will invest himself again in the material body, which will remain in the lower world; and it is in this body that he will make himself visible on earth, whilst it is in the other body that he will appear on high." This is thus the recondite meaning of the words, "Who hath ascended up into heaven, and descended". There was no other man whose spirit ascended to heaven and then descended to earth except Elijah. According to another interpretation, "who hath ascended up into heaven" is an allusion to Elijah, whereas "and descended" alludes to Jonah, whom the fish caused to sink into the nethermost depths of the sea. Jonah was only made possible by Elijah. Elijah ascended and Jonah descended, and the one as well as the other "requested for himself that he might die". Further, "who hath bound the waters" alludes to Elijah, who bound up in a bundle, as it were, all the waters of the world so that neither dew nor rain came down from heaven; "in his garment" alludes further to Elijah, who smote

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 197b

with his mantle to perform his miracles. "Who hath gathered the wind (ruah=spirit) in his fists?" is again an allusion to Elijah, who restored the spirit of a man to his body; "Who hath established all the ends of the earth?" still alludes to Elijah, who, after he had restrained the waters and adjured the heavens not to let rain fall, afterwards, by means of his prayer, restored life to the world by bringing back the rain, which produced an abundance of food for all. "What is his name?" refers to Elijah; "and what is his son's name?" refers again to Elijah. "His name" refers to Elijah when he ascended on high, and "his son's name" refers to Elijah when he comes down to earth and becomes a messenger to perform miracles; he bears, then, the same name of Elijah. According to another exposition: "Who hath ascended up into heaven?" refers to the Holy One, blessed be He, the allusion being contained in the word Mi (Who?), as explained elsewhere. Here in this passage is contained the mystery of the Divine Chariot, consisting of the four directions of the world which are the four primordial elements, all of which depend on that supernal region called Mi (Who?), as already said.

'Observe this. When the hour arrives at which it pleases the Holy One, blessed be He, to unify the Supernal Chariot, [Tr. note: Al. "to combine the Supernal Chariot with the Lower Chariot".] a voice issues from that divine supernal region called Heaven to assemble all the saints beneath and all the holy chiefs and supernal legions, so that they should all be in readiness together. Thus Scripture says, "And Moses assembled", "Moses" being an allusion to Heaven; while the words "all the congregation of the children of Israel" allude to the twelve supernal holy legions. The next words, "and said unto them... This is the thing... Take ye from among you an offering unto the Lord", means, "prepare yourselves, all of you, to take and to bear upon you the glory of the Divine Throne so as to raise it aloft to the divine heights; appoint from among you those supernal glorified chiefs who shall take up that offering containing the mystery of the Divine Throne, in order to bring about a union with the "patriarchs". [Tr. note: Al. "with her spouse".] [for the Matrona (i.e. the Shekinah) may not come to her Spouse except those youthful bridesmaids follow in her train until she is brought to Him, as it says, "The virgins her companions in her train being brought unto thee" (Ps. XLV, 15), to wit, that she may join her Spouse. The next words, "Whosoever is of a noble heart", are an allusion to the four superior legions that contain within themselves all the other legions; it is these who issue forth with the exalted patriarchs called "nobles", as in the passage, "which the nobles of the people delved" (Num. XXI, 18), indicating the patriarchs. The verse continues, "let him bring it". The singular, "him", where we should expect "them", indicates the merging of them all into a unity. In the next words, "the Lord's offering", the accusative particle *eth* indicates the inclusion of all the other supernal legions which were to be integrated into one unity; their number is twelve, symbolized by "gold, and silver, and brass; and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goat's hair; and rams' skins dyed red, and sealskins, and acacia-wood; and oil for the light, and spices for the anointing oil, and for the sweet incense". These are the twelve supernal legions, which are all comprised under the four sacred Hayoth mentioned before. All these ascend towards the Divine Throne, so as to take her up on high that she may join her Spouse, and that He should be with Her in surpassing glory. The Most High King then seats Himself on the Divine Throne in perfect unison with His Spouse, and joy is thus diffused through the universe. (Observe that Scripture here mentions gold before silver, the reason being that this is the scale of values here below; but when it enumerates according to the scale of values in the Heavenly Chariot, Scripture commences from the right and proceeds to the left. So we find it written: "Mine is the silver, and Mine the gold" (Haggai II, 8), first silver and then gold, but here below the left comes first and then the right, as it is written, "gold, and silver, and brass".)

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 198a

Now the phrase, "every noble-hearted", as already said, comprises those four legions who together are named noble-hearted; "the Lord's heave-offering" indicates the Divine Throne, so called because they raise it and cause it to ascend on high. [Tr. note: i.e. from the world of *beriah* to the world of *aziluth*]. And it is

for this reason that Ezekiel, in his vision of the ascending Hayoth, failed to see what it was that they were taking up with them, since it was the Matrona rising to join the Most High King in hidden and supreme glory. "And let every wise-hearted among you come and make all that the Lord hath commanded." This is an allusion to the sixty well-springs that feed the world and so are enjoined to come and bring with them from the treasury of life, by executing the commands of the Holy One, so as to benefit the world.' TAKE YE FROM AMONG YOU AN OFFERING UNTO THE LORD. R. Judah discoursed on the verse: "Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry...?" (Isa. LVIII, 7). 'Happy', he said, 'is the lot of him who happens to meet with a poor man, as the poor man is a present that God has sent him. Whoever receives that present with a cheerful countenance, happy is his portion. See now. Whoever takes compassion on a poor man and quickens his soul, the Holy One counts it to him as though he had created his soul. Hence, because Abraham took compassion on all men, God counted it to him as though he had created them, as it is written, "and the souls that they had made ('asu) in Horan" (Gen. XII, 5). The term "paros" (breaking) has also the significance of "spreading", it being incumbent on the host to spread for the poor man a table-cloth for the bread and other food offered. Again, the term "paros", in its significance of "breaking", teaches that it is the proper thing to cut the bread for the poor man into slices, so that he should not feel ashamed, and that there should be no stinting: "thy bread", says Scripture, thy emphatically, thine own property, but not that gotten by robbery or violence or theft; for, in that case, so far from its being a source of merit, it will be a reminder, woe to him! of his sins. Similarly, in our text it says: "Take ye from among you an offering", from among you emphatically, but not from what has been gotten by violence, robbery or theft.'

R. Hiya and R. Isaac and R. Jose were walking together on the road when R. Abba met them. Said R. Hiya: 'Assuredly the Shekinah is with us.' R. Abba, when he came up with them, expounded the verse: "Since the day that I brought forth my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel to build a house, that my name might be there; but I chose David to be over my people Israel" (I Kings VIII, 16). 'This verse', he said, 'does not seem to be logically constructed. It begins, "I chose no city", and ends, "but I chose David", instead of, as we should expect, "but I chose Jerusalem". What connection have the two with each other? But the truth is, that when it is the pleasure of the Holy One, blessed be He, to build a city, He first considers who shall be the leader of its people, and not until then does He build the city and bring the people into it. The verse then says, in effect, "I chose no city until I had observed David to be fitting shepherd of Israel." For a city with all its inhabitants depends for its existence on the care of the people's shepherd and leader. If the latter be a good shepherd, it is well with him, well with the city, and well with the people; but if he be an evil shepherd, woe to him, woe to the city, and woe to the people!

'Thus, the Holy One, blessed be He, when He looked at the world and decided to build the city, first raised up David, as it says, "but I chose David", etc.'

'This is a new thought, what we have just heard', said his Companions.

R. Abba then further discoursed as follows. 'It is written, "Happy is he whose help is the God of Jacob, whose hope (sibro) is in the Lord his God" (PS.CXLVI, 5). Why "the God of Jacob", and not "the God of Abraham", or "the God of Isaac"? The reason is that Jacob placed his trust neither in his father nor in his mother when he fled from his brother and went on his way alone, penniless, as Scripture says, "for with my staff I passed over this Jordan" (Gen. XXXII, 11), but he put his trust in the Almighty, as it is written, "If God will be with me, and will keep me" (Ibid. XXVIII, 20); and he made all his requests only to the Holy One, blessed be He, who granted them to him. Further, the term "sibro" (whose hope) can also be read (by a change in the diacritical point) shibro (being bruised), pointing to the righteous who are content to be broken and bruised and to submit to tribulation upon tribulation, and all for the sake of "the Lord his God. So Scripture says: "Nay, but for thy sake are we killed all

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 198b

the day" (Ps. XLIV, 23); and further, "Because for thy sake [Tr. note: The text of the Zohar wrongly quotes "we" instead of "I"].we have borne reproach" (Ibid. LXIX, 8). This was exemplified in Jacob, of whom it is written: "Now Jacob saw that there was crushing [Tr. note: Sheber= corn; also=crushing, breaking, misfortune.] in Egypt" (Gen. XLII, 1), indicating that Jacob foresaw the calamity of the exile that he would undergo in Egypt, but he placed his confidence in the Holy One, blessed be He. Similarly, the children of Jacob endured the calamity of exile, and yet did not deviate from the essence of the faith of their ancestors, the name of the Holy One, blessed be He, always having been, in the midst of the exile, on their lips. Hence the words of Moses: "and they shall say unto me: What (mah) is his name" (Ex. III, 13), signifying that the Israelites knew the Holy One, blessed be He, at no time having forgotten Him, but having suffered the pangs of exile for His sake. For the sake of this they merited redemption and great miracles and signs. Now, you exalted saints who endure bodily affliction in wandering from place to place for the sake of the Holy One, blessed be He, how much more are you worthy that miracles and acts of redemption should be performed for you, and that you should win the life of the world to come!

They then proceeded on their journey together, and R. Abba then opened a discourse on the text: "Take ye from among you an offering unto the Lord, whosoever is of a willing heart let him bring it", etc. 'Observe', he said, 'that when a man wills to serve his Master, his desire is first generated in the heart, which is the basis and the active principle of the whole body. From thence the desire is diffused through all the members of the body, so that the desire of the rest of the members of the body, and the desire of the heart, unite into one whole and draw upon themselves the resplendence of the Shekinah to reside with them. Such a man becomes himself, as it were, a portion of the Holy One, blessed be He. Scripture thus says: "Take you from among you", or, in other words, "take you of your very

selves, and become yourselves an offering and a portion for the Lord. And so that no one should say that this is not within man's power, observe the sentence saying, "whosoever is of a willing heart, let him bring it, the Lord's offering". Assuredly so, whosoever is of a willing heart may draw unto himself the Shekinah, may bring her (yebieha) from on high, may draw her from the supernal region to reside with him; and when she comes to reside with him, how many blessings, and how much riches, does she bring with her! So Scripture says, "gold, and silver, and brass", so that nothing is lacking for him of all the riches of the world. This', R. Abba concluded, 'is for the rest of mankind, but you exalted saints, "take from among you an offering unto the Lord". [Tr. note: i.e. the Shekinah is already among you, and you must raise Her on high.] Said R. Hiya: 'He who has begun to take an offering, let him continue in the work.'

R. Abba then discoursed on the text: "And the Lord (had) said unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land" (Jonah II, 11). 'Where and when did God speak to the fish?' he asked. 'It was', he replied, 'at the time of Creation, when the Holy One, blessed be He, created the world; to wit, on the fifth day, when He created the fishes of the sea. Then He ordained and appointed a certain fish to swallow up Jonah and retain him in its body three days and three nights and then eject him. And not only in this case, but with all that He created did God make certain stipulations. Thus, on the first day, when He created the heavens, He stipulated with them that they should take up Elijah into heaven by a whirlwind, and so it was, as it is written, "and Elijah went up [Tr. note: And it does not say, "and God took up", by a special act.] by a whirlwind into heaven" (2 Kings II, 11). On the same day He created the light and stipulated with it that the sun should become darkened in Egypt three days, as it is written, "and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt three days" (Ex. x, 22). On the second day He created the firmament to divide the waters from the waters, and in doing so He stipulated that they should separate between defilement and purity on behalf of Israel and be to them a means of cleansing, and so it was. On the third day He made the dry land emerge from the waters and caused the waters to be gathered together into one place, forming from them the sea, and He stipulated with it that it should allow the Israelites to pass through it on dry land and then overwhelm the Egyptians. And so it happened, as it is written, "and the sea returned to its strength when the morning appeared" (Ex. XIV, 27), where the term l'ethano (to its strength), by a transposition of letters, can be read litnao (to its stipulation). In addition, God stipulated with the earth that it should open its mouth on the occasion of the rebellion of Korah and swallow him up with all his company. And so it happened. On the fourth day he created the sun and the moon, and He stipulated with the sun that he should stand still in the midst of heaven in the days of Joshua

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 199a

; He also stipulated with the stars that they should wage war against Sisera. On the fifth day He created the fishes of the sea and the birds of heaven. With the birds he stipulated that they should feed Elijah when he

restrained the heaven from rain, as it is written: "and I have commanded the ravens to feed thee there" (I Kings XVII, 4); and He stipulated with the fishes of the sea to appoint one fish that should swallow up Jonah and then eject him. On the sixth day He created Adam and stipulated with him that a woman should descend from him who should sustain Elijah, as it is written, "Behold I have commanded a widow there to sustain thee" (Ibid. XVII, 9). Similarly, in regard to every unique phenomenon that has happened in the world, the Holy One, blessed be He, had predestined it from the time when the world was created. And so here the meaning of "And the Lord said to the fish" is that He had commanded it at the creation of the world.

'In the story of Jonah we have a representation of the whole of a man's career in this world. Jonah descending into the ship is symbolic of man's soul that descends into this world to enter into his body. Why is she called Jonah (lit. aggrieved)? Because as soon as she becomes partner with the body in this world she finds herself full of vexation. Man, then, is in this world as in a ship that is traversing the great ocean and is like to be broken, as it says, "so that the ship was like to be broken" (Jonah I, 4). Furthermore, man in this world commits sins, imagining that he can flee from the presence of his Master, who takes no notice of this world. The Almighty then rouses a furious tempest; to wit, man's doom, which constantly stands before the Holy One, blessed be He, and demands his punishment. It is this which assails the ship and calls to mind man's sins that it may seize him; and the man is thus caught by the tempest and is struck down by illness, just as Jonah "went down into the innermost part of the ship; and he lay, and was fast asleep". Although the man is thus prostrated, his soul does not exert itself to return to his Master in order to make good his omissions. So "the shipmaster came to him", to wit, the good prompter, who is the general steersman, "and said unto him: What meanest thou that thou sleepest? Arise, call upon thy God", etc.; it is not a time to sleep, as they are about to take thee up to be tried for all that thou hast done in this world. Repent of thy sins. Reflect on these things and return to thy Master. "What is thine occupation", wherein thou wast occupied in this world; and make confession concerning it before the Master; "and whence comest thou"; to wit, from a fetid drop, and so be not thou arrogant before him. "What is thy country"-reflect that from earth thou wast created and to earth thou wilt return; "and of what people art thou"; that is, reflect whether thou canst rely on merits of thy forbears to protect thee. When they bring him to judgement before the Heavenly Tribunal, that tempest, that is none other than the judgement doom which raged against him, demands from the King the punishment of all the King's prisoners, and then all the King's counsellors appear before Him one by one, and the Tribunal is set up. Some plead in defence of the accused, others against him. Should the man be found guilty, as in the case of Jonah, then "the men rowed hard to bring it to the land, but they could not"; so those who plead on his behalf find points in his favour and strive to restore him to this world, but they cannot; "for the sea grew more and more tempestuous against them", the prosecution storms and rages against him, and, convicting him of his sins, prevails against his defenders. Then three appointed messengers descend

upon the man; one of them makes a record of all the good deeds and the misdeeds that he has performed in this world; one casts up the reckoning of his days; and the third is the one who has accompanied the man from the time when he was in his mother's womb. As already said, the doom summons is not appeased until "they took up Jonah", until they take him from the house to the place of burial. Then proclamation is made concerning him. If he was a righteous man, it runs, Render honour to the King's image! "He entereth into peace, they rest in their beds, each one that walketh in his uprightness" (Isa. LVII, 2).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 199b

But when a wicked man dies, the proclamation runs: Woe to that man, it would have been better for him had he never been born! Regarding such a man it is written, "and they cast him forth into the sea, and the sea ceased from its raging", that is, only after they have placed him in the grave, which is the place of judgement, does the judgement summons cease from its raging. For the fish that swallowed him is, in fact, the grave; and so "Jonah was in the belly of the fish", which is identified with "the belly of the underworld" (Sheol), as is proved by the passage, "Out of the belly of the underworld (sheol) cried I". "Three days and three nights": these are the three days that a man lies in his grave before his belly splits open. After three days it ejects the putrid matter on his face, saying: "Take back what thou gavest me; thou didst eat and drink all day and never didst thou give anything to the poor; all thy days were like feasts and holidays, whilst the poor remained hungry without partaking of any of thy food. Take back what thou gavest me." In regard to this it is written: "and I will spread dung upon your faces", etc. (Malachi II, 3). Again, after the lapse of three days, the man receives chastisement in each organ-in his eyes, his hands, and his feet. This continues for thirty days, during which time the soul and the body are chastised together. The soul therefore remains all that time on earth below, not ascending to her place, like a woman remaining apart all the days of her impurity. After that the soul ascends whilst the body is being decomposed in the earth, where it will lie until the time when the Holy One, blessed be He, will awaken the dead. A voice will then resound through the graves, proclaiming: "Awake and sing, ye that dwell in the dust, for thy dew is as the dew of light, and the earth shall cast forth the dead (rephaim)" (Isa. XXVI, 19). That will come to pass when the Angel of Death will depart from the world, as it is written: "He will destroy death for ever, and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the reproach of his people will he take away from off all the earth" (Ibid. xxv, 8). It is of that occasion that it is written: "And the Lord spoke unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land"; for as soon as that voice will resound among the graves they will all cast out the dead bodies that they contain. The term rephaim (the dead) being akin to the root, rapha (healing), indicates that the dead will be restored to their former physical condition. But, you may say, is it not written elsewhere, "the rephaim will not rise" (Ibid. XXVII, 14)? The truth is that all the dead will be restored to their former state whilst in the graves, but some of them will rise and others will not. Happy is the portion of Israel, of whom it is written, "My dead bodies

shall arise" (Ibid. XXVII, 19). Thus in the narrative of that fish we find words of healing for the whole world. As soon as it swallowed Jonah it died, but after three days was restored to life and vomited him forth. In a similar way the Land of Israel will in the future first be stirred to new life, and afterwards "the earth will cast forth the dead".

'It has been affirmed that in quitting this world a man has to endure seven ordeals. The first is the judgement of heaven when the spirit leaves the body. The second is when his actions and utterances march in front of him and make proclamation concerning him. The third is when he is placed in the grave. The fourth is the ordeal of the grave itself. The fifth consists in his being consumed by the worms. The sixth is the suffering endured in Gehenna. The seventh ordeal is that his spirit is condemned to roam to and fro in the world, and is not able to find a resting place until his appointed tasks have been completed. Hence it behoves man continually to review his actions and to repent before his Master. When David reflected on these ordeals which a man has to endure he made haste to exclaim: "Bless the Lord, O my soul, and all my inward parts, bless his holy name" (Ps. CIII, 1), as much as to say: "Bless the Lord, O my soul, before thou quittest the world, whilst thou still inhabitest the body; and all my inward parts, all the members of the body that are in union with the spirit, whilst this union still lasts, hasten to bless His holy name, before the time will come when you will not be able to bless or to repent." David therefore repeats again: "Bless the Lord, O my soul, Hallelukah" (Ibid. CIII, 22).,

R. Abba ceased, and the Companions approached him and kissed him on his head. R. Hiya then began a discourse on the text:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 200a

Take ye from among you an offering (t'rumah) unto the Lord. 'When God', he said, 'created the world, He did so for no other purpose than that Israel should one day come and receive the Torah. It was by means of the Torah that the world was created, and it is on the Torah that the world is established. So Scripture says: "Werc it not for my covenant that endureth day and night, the ordinances of heaven and earth I would not have appointed" (Jer. XXXIV, 25). The Torah is length of life in this world and in the world to come. And he who labours in the Torah labours in the Palace of the Holy One, blessed be He, inasmuch as the supernal Temple of the Holy One is the Torah itself. And whenever a man labours in the Torah, there the Holy One, blessed be He, stands and listens to his voice, as it is written: "And the Lord hearkened, and heard, and a book of remembrance was written before him, for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name" (Malachi III, 16); and that man escapes three ordeals-the ordeal of this world, the ordeal of the Angel of Death, who has no power over him, and the ordeal of Gehenna. What is the "book of remembrance"? It is an allusion to the duplicate Book which is at once above and below. [Tr. note: v Zohar, Ex., 70a.] The term "remembrance" is a designation of the region of the holy covenant and concentrates and gathers within itself the whole of the supernal life-energy. Hence,

"book of remembrance" signifies the two grades that are yet one. [Tr. note: Malkuth and Yesod.] This is the underlying mystery of the "name TETRAGRAMMATON", of which the Name is one and TETRAGRAMMATON is one, yet the two are only one. For there is name and name. There is the name on high [Tr. note: Hohmah.] that is the sign of the unknown, of that which is above and outside all knowledge-it is the supernal point; and there is the name below which is expressive of the central point here below. So Scripture says: "from the one end of the heaven unto the other" (Deut. IV, 32), that is, from the supernal point that concentrates within itself all the supernal life-energy "unto the lower end of heaven", which bears the name "lower central point". [Tr. note: Malkuth.] This point is identical with the "book", and, being in the centre, it unites within itself all the world's directions; six directions come to a union in the supernal book which is above and over them, and six directions find their union again in the lower book which is above and over them; and the two, the supernal book and the lower book, constitute together the Law (Torah), the one the written Law, it being undisclosed and only to be revealed in the world to come, the other the oral Law. Of the written Law the writing is made, as it were, into a Palace of the central point, wherein the Law is concealed. The lower Law, on the other hand, is not embodied in writing, and hence is not constructed into a Palace for the central point beneath as is the superior Law for the supernal point. Hence, also, the oral Law is designated t'rumah (heave-offering, something separated), being apart and separated. I have further heard from the Sacred Lamp (R. Simeon) that the t'rumah is meant to be resolved into tre (two) and meah (hundred), indicating two out of a hundred. For the sum of the holy grades involved in the mystery of Faith, by which the Holy One, blessed be He, manifests Himself, amounts to ten, and these are also ten utterances. The whole thus amounts to a hundred; and so in bringing an offering [Tr. note: A side allusion to the heave-offering (t'rumah) due to the priest which, according to the Mishnah, normally consisted of a fiftieth part (2/100) of the produce.] we have to combine the lower central point with the supernal central point, so as to unite the Shekinah with her Spouse, these being the two of the hundred grades and sub-grades just mentioned.

'Observe too that every day a proclamation goes forth, saying, "O ye peoples, this thing depends on your own effort". And this is the sense of the words,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 200b

"Take ye from among you an offering unto the Lord", not as a burden, but "whosoever is of a willing heart let him bring her (yevieha)". [Tr. note: i.e. the Shekinah.] From this we learn that prayer offered with concentrated devotion by a man that fears his Master produces great effects on high, as already said elsewhere. First come the songs and hymns chanted by the angels on high, and the series of hymns recited by Israel here below. With these the Shekinah decks and adorns herself like a woman who prepares to meet her spouse. Then follows the recital of prayer. By virtue of the prayer they recite while sitting they adorn her bridesmaids and all her retinue. By the time "True and

firm”[Tr. note: Benediction following the recital of Sh'ma and preceding the 'Amidah.] is reached, the bride with all her attendant damsels is fully arrayed. When the worshippers reach “who hast redeemed Israel”, [Tr. note: Conclusion of above-mentioned benediction.] the whole assembly has to stand up. For at the moment “true and firm” is reached the bride's attendants accompany her towards the Most High King, but when it comes to “who hast redeemed Israel”, the Holy and Most High King appears in His grades and comes out to receive her; and we must then stand on our feet in awe and trembling before the Most High King, as it is the moment when he stretches forth His right hand towards Her, and then puts His left hand under her head, then there is a mutual embracing and kisses. This comes to pass during the first three benedictions. It behoves, then, a man to concentrate his thoughts and to focus his mind on these great effects and on the ordering of the prayer. His mouth, his heart, his thoughts, must all work in unison. The Most High King and the Matrona being then in close and joyful embrace, whosoever has a petition to offer let him do so now, as it is an opportune moment. After having made his request of the King and the Matrona, he must then concentrate his thought and mind upon the last three benedictions so as to excite the inner delight, since by these benedictions the Shekinah is blessed with another embrace, in which he takes his departure. Withal, it should be his intention that the denizens of this world also should be blessed. The worshipper has next to fall on his face in token of surrender of his soul, among all the souls and spirits which the Shekinah at that moment collects in the “bundle of life”. This I have heard among the mysteries expounded to me by the Sacred Lamp, who has not permitted me to reveal it save to you, O exalted saints. For whosoever surrenders his soul so at that moment will be bound in the bundle of life in this world and in the world to come. Moreover, it is important that the King and the Matrona should be united both above and below, and be crowned with a crown wrought of the souls above and the souls below; and whosoever concentrates his mind and heart on all this and surrenders his soul in complete devotion, the Holy One, blessed be He, names him “peace” below after the pattern of the peace above, as we read, “and the Lord called him peace” (Judges VI, 24). And when that man's soul quits this world it ascends and cleaves its way through all the heavens, and nothing can stop it, the Holy One, blessed be He, proclaiming: “He entereth into peace” (Isa. LVII, 2), and the Shekinah adding, “may they rest in their beds”, etc. (Ibid.); and they open up for it

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 201a

thirteen mountains of pure perfume, without let or hindrance. Hence, happy is the man who concentrates his thought on this. This, then, is the sense of “whosoever is of a willing heart, let him bring it, the Lord's offering”, to wit, toward the Most High King.’ R. Abba then lifted up his voice and said: ‘Woe! O Rabbi Simeon! thou art living and we weep concerning thee; but we weep not for thee, we weep for the Companions and for the world. R. Simeon is like a bright lamp which throws light above and below. Alas for the world, for the time when the lower illumination will pass away and be absorbed in the upper illumination! Who will then

diffuse through the world the light of the Torah?’ R. Abba then rose and kissed R. Hiya, saying: ‘You were in possession of these thoughts, hence the Holy One, blessed be He, sent me hither to become one of your company. Happy is my portion!’

R. Jose then followed with a discourse on the text: And let every wise-hearted man among you come and make, etc. ‘This passage’, he said, ‘has already been expounded. When God said to Moses, “Get you wise men and men of discernment” (Deut. I, 13), the latter searched the whole of Israel but did not find men of discernment; it is thus written, “So I took the heads of your tribes, wise men, and full of knowledge” (Ibid. I, 15), without mentioning men of discernment. Assuredly the man of discernment (naban) is of a higher degree than the wise man (hakham). Even a pupil who gives new ideas to his teacher is called “wise”. A wise man, then, it is true, knows for himself as much as is required, but the man of discernment apprehends the whole, knowing both his own point of view and that of others. The term “wisehearted” is used here because the seat of wisdom is the heart. As for the man of discernment, he apprehends the lower world and the upper world, his own being and the being of others.’

R. Jose further discoursed on the verse: “And He said unto me: Thou art my servant, Israel, in whom I will be glorified” (Isa. XLIX, 3). ‘Observe’, he said, ‘that there is an outer and bodily worship of the Holy One, blessed be He, and an inner and spiritual worship which is the true and genuine worship. The body possesses twelve members that participate in rendering worship. These are the outer members of the body, but there are also twelve inner members whose act of worship is of benefit to the spirit. For this is the inner and precious worship of the Holy One, blessed be He, as expounded among the mysteries taught by R. Simeon, and as belonging to the mysteries of supernal wisdom known to the Companions, happy is their portion! Prayer is spiritual worship. Deep mysteries are attached to it, for men wot not that a man's prayer cleaves the ethereal spaces, cleaves the firmament, opens doors and ascends on high. At the moment of daybreak, when light emerges from darkness, a proclamation resounds through all the firmaments, saying: Make yourselves ready, ye sentinels at the doors, chiefs of the Palace—each one to his post! For the day-attendants are not the same as the night-attendants, the two groups replacing each other with the succession of day and night. This is alluded to in the passage, “the greater light for to rule the day”, etc. (Gen. I, 16), “the rule of the day” and “the rule of the night” signifying the day-attendants and the night-attendants. When night arrives proclamation is made, saying: Make yourselves ready, O ye rulers of the night—each

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 201b

one to his place! Similarly, when day breaks a proclamation goes forth: Make yourselves ready, ye rulers of the day—each one to his place! Each one thus, following the proclamation, is assigned his suitable place. The Shekinah then descends whilst Israel enter the Synagogue to offer praise to their Master in song and hymn. It behoves, then, every man, after equipping

himself with emblems of holiness, [Tr. note: Fringes and phylacteries.] to attune his heart and his inner being for that act of worship and to say his prayers with devotion. For the words that he utters ascend on high, for the scrutiny of angelic supervisors. These abide in ethereal space on the four sides of the world. On the eastern side there is the chief supervisor, whose name is Gezardiya, and who is attended by a number of other chieftains, all awaiting the word of prayer that is about to ascend to the ethereal realm on that side. The moment it does so the supervisor takes it up. If it be fitly uttered, he, together with all the other chieftains, kisses that utterance and carries it aloft into the supernal firmament, where other chieftains are awaiting it. When kissing the utterance of prayer they say: "Happy are ye, O Israel, who know how to crown your Master with holy crowns. Happy is the mouth from which issued this utterance, this crown." Then the letters of the Divine Name that abide in the ethereal space soar upwards. That Divine Name is formed of twelve letters, and is the one by which Elijah flew to the ethereal regions until he reached heaven. This is indicated in the words that Obadiah spoke to Elijah, saying, "... that the spirit of the Lord (TETRAGRAMMATON) will carry thee...." For it was that Name by which Elijah flew upwards, and it is that Name that rules the ethereal space. The letters, then, of the Name fly upwards with the prayer-utterance, in company with the chief who holds the keys of the ether, and all the other chiefs, until heaven is reached, where the prayer is taken in charge by another chief to carry it still higher. On the southern side there is another chieftain ruling over the ethereal space of that region and having under him a number of supervisors and officers. His name is Pesagniyah, and he is in charge of the keys of the ethereal space in that quarter. Now the prayer of persons in deep sorrow and anguish, if uttered with due devotion, ascends into that region and is taken up by the chief, who kisses it and pronounces over it the words, "The Holy One, blessed be He, be merciful towards thee and be filled with compassion on thy behalf." Then all the chieftains and officers administering that region accompany it upwards, along with the letters of the Divine Name-to wit, the Name of four letters that rule that region-until it reaches the heaven over that region. There it is taken in charge by the chief of that region. The name of the one in charge of the northerly region, who also has under his command a number of chieftains and officers, is Petahyah. He is appointed over that side to which prayers offered for deliverance from enemies ascend. If such a prayer be found worthy, the chief takes it up and kisses it. Then a spirit emerges out of the abyss in the North who makes proclamation through all the ethereal spaces, so that they all take up that prayer and carry it into heaven, all the while kissing it and exclaiming, "May thy Master cast thy enemy down before thee." It then ascends and cleaves the heavens. [Tr. note: Al. and ethereal spaces.] When it reaches the first heaven it is met by the chief of the West, whose name is Zebuliel, and who presides over numerous chieftains and officers that stand sentry over nine doors. The same Zebuliel would fain minister in that heaven in the daytime, but he is not permitted until moonlight appears, when he comes out with all those legions and chieftains. But when day breaks they all retire through one, the most prominent of the nine doors. Now any

ascending prayer

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 202a

enters through that door, and then all officers and chieftains, under the guidance of Zebuliel their chief, emerge through that door. They embrace it, and accompany it to the second heaven. That heaven is fitted with twelve gates, at the twelfth of which there stands a chief, named 'Anael, who is in command of numerous hosts and legions. And when the prayer arrives there that chief loudly orders all those doors to be opened, exclaiming, "Open ye the gates", etc. (Isa. XXVI, 2). All the gates then open, and the prayer enters through all the doors. Then arises a chief, ancient of days, who is placed at the northern side, and whose name is 'Azriel the Ancient, though sometimes he is called Mahniel (lit. mighty camp). This other name is given him because he commands sixty myriads of legions. All these legions are winged, part of them are full of eyes, and by their side are others full of ears. These are called "ears" because they listen to all those who pray in a whisper, from the heart, so that the prayer should not be overheard by anyone else. Only such a prayer is accepted by these "all-eared" legions, whereas a prayer that is heard by the ears of man is not listened to on high, and so remains unheard by anyone save by him who overheard it at first. Hence it behoves man to be careful not to let others hear his prayer. Furthermore, prayer becomes absorbed in the upper world, and the speech of the upper world should remain inaudible. Similarly, in the reading of the Book of the Law, while one reads, the other standing by him should be silent. For, if two read together faith is diminished, because voice and utterance are only one. For only a single voice and a single recital must be heard; so that if there are two voices and two utterances there is a diminution of Divine Faith. When the silent prayer soars aloft, all those sixty myriads of legions, all those "all-eye" and "all-ear" hosts, come forward and kiss it. So Scripture says: "The eyes of the Lord are toward the righteous, and his ears are open unto their cry" (Ps. XXXIV, 16), indicating the "all-eye" and the "all-ear" legions. From thence the prayer mounts to the third heaven, the chief of which is Gedariah, who has under him numerous officers and chiefs. He ministers three times a day in the presence of a ray of light that is constantly shooting up and down in that heaven without ever being still. And when the prayer mounts up there that ray descends and bows down before it. Then the chief of that heaven, after bowing down to the prayer, strikes with the ray of light against a mighty rock that is placed in the centre of that heaven, and there emerge from it three hundred and seventy-five legions that have been confined within it since the day the Torah came down to earth. They were so confined because they endeavoured to prevent the Torah descending on earth, and God rebuked and shut them up in the interior of that rock, whence they do not emerge save at the time when prayer ascends. They then break forth into song, chanting: "O Lord, our Lord, how glorious is thy name... above the heavens" (Ps. VIII, 2). They then bow to the prayer, after which it is crowned with supernal crowns and mounts up into the fourth heaven. Then comes forth the sun and Shamshiel (=mighty sun or sun of God) the chief enters that heaven accompanied by

three hundred and sixty-five legions called days of the solar year, and they all crown that prayer with crowns of sweet perfume of the Garden of Eden. There it tarries until all those legions accompany it into the fifth heaven, the chief of which is Gadriel. This angel is in charge of the wars waged among the nations, but as soon as the prayer arrives there a trembling seizes him with all his hosts so that

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 202b

their strength is enfeebled; and they come forward and bow down to the prayer, and crown it and accompany it into the sixth heaven. There numerous hosts and legions come out to receive it and ascend with it until they reach a series of seventy gates in charge of a chief whose name is 'Anpiel. He crowns the prayer with seventy crowns. Then all the hosts and legions of all these heavens join together and take up that prayer, crowned with all these crowns, into the seventh heaven. Finally Sandalphon, the supreme chief, the keeper of all his Master's keys, introduces the prayer into the seven Palaces, to wit, the Palaces of the King. When the prayer enters there, decorated with all those crowns, it combines them all into one heavenly crown, each prayer according to its rank. And the name of the Holy One, blessed be He, is crowned on all sides, above and below, so that the whole forms a unity. Of this Scripture says: "Blessings are upon the head of the righteous" (Prov. x, 6). Happy is the portion of the man who knows the proper way in which to order his prayer. The Holy One, blessed be He, being glorified in such a prayer, awaits the completion of all the prayers of Israel, so that the whole is fitly harmonized, both the above and the below.

'So far we have spoken of prayer. But there are in addition certain precepts that are bound up, not with action, but with the words of prayer. These are in number six. The first is "to fear the glorious and awful Name" (Deut. XXVIII, 58); the second is "to love Him" (Ibid. x, 12); the third is to bless Him; the fourth is to proclaim His unity; the fifth enjoins the priests to bless the people; the sixth bids man to surrender his soul to Him. These six precepts are bound up with the words of prayer, just as there are other precepts that are connected with the action of prayer, such as those of the fringes and phylacteries. Now the injunction "to fear the Name" is accomplished by means of the hymns and songs that King David chanted, and of the sacrifices ordained by the Torah. For it behoves man to be filled thereby with fear of his Master, for those hymns belong to a region called "Fear" (yir'ah), [Tr. note: Malkuth.] and all the Hallelukahs are emblematic of the fear of the Holy One, [Tr. note: Because the word Hallelukah has the same numerical value as Elohim, signifying the attribute of Justice.] blessed be He; it thus behoves man to attune his mind to a spirit of awe in the recital of those hymns. In arriving at "Praised be" it behoves a man to concentrate his thoughts on the Holy One, blessed be He, in that benediction which reads: "Blessed art Thou... who formest light... Blessed art Thou, O Lord creator of the universe." The precept, "to love Him", is realized in the benediction commencing with "With abundant love", which is followed by the reading of "And thou shalt love the Lord thy God...", containing the mystery of the love of the

Holy One, blessed be He. And we proclaim His unity when we recite "Hear, O Israel: the Lord our God, the Lord is One", as that declaration contains the secret of God's oneness. After the reading of these sections comes the passage wherein we mention our exodus from Egypt, in fulfilment of the injunction, "But thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in Egypt" (Deut. XXIV, 18). There follows the pronouncement of the blessing of the people by the priests in order to embrace all Israel at the moment when they receive blessings. For at that moment the Community of Israel receives blessings, and it is a propitious moment to surrender our souls to Him in the full willingness of our heart when we fall on our faces and recite the Psalm: "Unto Thee, O Lord, do I lift up my soul..." (Ps. xxv, 1), which should be the expression of our full and complete self-surrender to Him. These are the six precepts that are bound up with our daily prayer, and that comprise in a way the six hundred precepts of the Torah. If you ask, What of the thirteen left over, [Tr. note: There being, according to the Rabbinic reckoning, six hundred and thirteen precepts.] these are a category apart designed to draw upon us the thirteen attributes of mercy that comprise all the precepts. These are the six precepts by which prayer is embroidered. Happy is the portion of whoever concentrates his heart and will on them and realizes

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 203a

them every day. With these precepts many others are interwoven, but at each particular passage it behoves man to concentrate his heart and will on the particular precept contained in that passage. Such a man is praised aloud in the words contained in the passage: "And He said unto me: Thou art My servant, Israel, in whom I will be glorified" (Isa. XLIX, 3).'

R. Jose ceased, and R. Abba went up to him and kissed him; and R. Isaac next began a discourse on the text: And Moses assembled all the congregation of the children of Israel, etc. 'The object', he said, 'of this assembling was to give them anew the law of the Sabbath. For the previous promulgation of the Sabbath before the Israelites made the golden calf was not observed by the mixed multitude. When they heard the words, "between Me and the children of Israel" (Ex. XXXI, 17), they said in protest: Are we then to be excluded from this? Straightway, "the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron", etc. (Ibid. XXXII, 1), and many were they that followed them. Then, after the guilty ones were put to death, Moses assembled the children of Israel separately and gave them the Sabbath anew, saying: "Six days shall work be done... Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the Sabbath day." Herein is involved the mystery of the Sabbath, the supreme mystery that is only revealed to those versed in the Supreme Wisdom. On the sixth day, when the time of evening arrives, a brilliant star appears in the north accompanied by seventy other stars. That star smites the others, absorbing them all into itself, so that one takes the place of seventy. The same star then becomes enlarged, and is made into a fiery mass, blazing on all sides. The flaming mass then extends itself round a thousand thousand mountains, becoming in the process a mere thread. After this the fiery mass draws out from within itself a variety of

colours. The first is a green colour. When that colour appears, the fiery mass raises itself and plunges into the midst of the green colour, occupying the inner part of it. Then the fiery mass of the star attracts within itself the white colour. Then it ascends on high and plunges again in the midst of that colour, occupying its interior. The same is repeated with the whole gamut of colours, all of which it thrusts outside, concentrating itself more and, more in the middle until it approaches that hidden point to derive light therefrom.'

At this point R. Isaac quoted the verse: "And I looked, and, behold, a stormy wind came out of the north, a great cloud, with a fire flashing up, so that a brightness was round about it; and out of the midst thereof as the form of electrum (hashmal), out of the midst of the fire" (Ezek. I, 4). 'Ezekiel', he said, 'saw this vision with a completeness which is only possible when the above-mentioned star is in the ascendant. The "stormy wind" has been explained as being a reference to the storm that came to subdue the whole world before the wicked Nebuchadnezzar. But in reality the "stormy wind" is identical with the star that swallowed up the other seventy stars; and it is the same "stormy wind" that Elijah saw "rending the mountains and breaking in pieces the rocks" (1 Kings XIX, 11); it is, moreover, the force that continually protects the inward part as the membrane protects the brain. It is called "stormy wind" because it shakes the upper world and the lower worlds; it "came out of the north", from the side of which it is said, "Out of the north the evil shall break forth" (Jer. 1, 14), for many other sinister forces were united within that "stormy wind"; hence its origin was the north. "A great cloud": so called because it represents the dross of the gold that concentrates itself in the north and forms the central point of destruction ; [Tr. note: v, p. 184b.] and being skilled in the arts of seduction it obtains power within the inhabited region, save in the Land of Israel, where, during the time Israel dwelt therein, it had no power; but after Israel sinned it obtained power, even in the Holy Land, as Scripture says: "He hath drawn back his right hand from before the enemy" (Lam. II, 3). "A great cloud" indicates the cloud of darkness that darkened the whole world. Observe the difference between this cloud and the other cloud. Of the other cloud

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 203b

it is written: "And the cloud of the Lord was over them by day" (Num. x, 34), also, "and thy cloud standeth over them" (Ibid. XIV, 14), indicating the bright and luminous cloud wherein there are visible all varieties of light. But this cloud is the cloud of utter darkness that prevents any light whatever from penetrating through it. Really it is insignificant, but it is called a "great cloud" when it obtains sway. Alternatively, it is called "great", on account of its darkness, which is so intense that it hides and makes invisible all the sources of light, thus overshadowing the whole world. "With a fire flashing up" indicates the fire of rigorous judgement that never departs from it. "And a brightness was round about it": that is, although it is all that has been described, yet "a brightness was round about it". From here we learn that, although it is the very region of defilement, yet it is surrounded by a certain brightness, and hence we may

not thrust it completely out; it possesses an aspect of holiness, and hence should not be treated with contempt, but should be allowed a part in the side of holiness. Rab Hamnuna the elder took this phrase interrogatively, thus: "is there a brightness round about it?", implying that it may be treated with contempt, since its brightness is concealed within it and is not visible from without. And because the brightness is within, the verse continues, "and out of the midst thereof", to wit, of the midst of that brightness, "as the form of hashmal" (electrum). The term hashmal has been interpreted as being composed of hash and mal, meaning Hayoth (order of angels), of quivering fire. [Tr. note: The term hashmal is resolved into hayoth (beasts), esh (fire), mallel (mutter or quiver).] From the Sacred Lamp (R. Simeon), however, we have heard in exposition of this the following most recondite doctrine. As long as the foreskin rests upon the sign of the holy covenant, the holy principle is prevented from disclosing the mystery of the convenantal sign. But when the bright light enters therein and separates between foreskin and holiness, the result is hash-mal, to wit, there is a speedy uncovering of circumcision. [Tr. note: Hash =speedy, mal=circumcision.]

'To resume. On the sixth day, when the evening approaches, that blazing fire we have mentioned plunges into the midst of the colours. It is then that Israel here below prepare themselves for the Sabbath, arrange their meals, and lay their tables, each one according to his means. Then a tongue of fire emerges and strikes against that flame, so that both of them are hurled down into the cavern of the great abyss. There they remain imprisoned. That tongue of fire is of the side of the Right, and it is in virtue of that that it sweeps away the blaze of fire and confines it to the great abyss, where it abides until the Sabbath ends. At the conclusion of the Sabbath it behoves every Israelite to pronounce a benediction over fire, so that the tongue of fire, under the force of that benediction, re-emerges, retaining its command over the flame, and keeping it in subjection all that night. Observe that the moment the Sabbath begins and that blaze of fire is imprisoned, all fires of the harmful kind are similarly hidden away and suppressed, including even the fire of Gehinnom, so that the sinners obtain a respite. Indeed, there is then a period of rest for all, both in the upper worlds and in the lower worlds. At the conclusion of the Sabbath, when Israel say the blessing over the light, all the fires that were hidden away re-emerge and return each to its place. Now it is in order to prevent any other fire being awakened that the injunction is given: "Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the Sabbath day". But it may be asked, What about the fire on the altar? The following is the explanation. Immediately on the entrance of the Sabbath, proclamation is made in all the heavens, saying: Make ready, O ye Chariot teams and legions, to meet your Master! Following this there comes forth out of the south a spirit that spreads itself

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 204a

over all those Chariot teams and legions of the side of the Right, who are wrapt with it as with a garment. That spirit is thus called "the solemn robe of the Sabbath". Then the tables of this world are prepared in a certain

Palace. Happy is the portion of the man whose table here below appears there properly laid, everything prepared in the best manner, according to his means, so that he has no cause to feel ashamed.

'When the Sabbath comes in it is incumbent on the holy people to wash away from themselves the marks of their weekday labour. For what reason? Because during the weekdays a different spirit roams about and hovers over the people, and it is in order to divest himself of that spirit and invest himself with another spirit, a spirit sublime and holy, that he must wash away the stains of the workaday world. The inner meaning of this action is as follows. All the six days are concentrated within one sacred point, where they form a unity. There is another sextet of days that stand without and belong to the "other side". Now, for holy Israel, for all those who lead a holy life during all the week, all the six days become as one with those six days that are within and that are concentrated into that central point wherein they are kept and guarded. That point, again, is hidden during the six days, but at the entrance of the Sabbath it rises on high, where it is decorated and becomes unified with the whole cycle of days, all of whom become absorbed by it. Observe this. There are days and days. There are common weekdays, as said already: these exist on the fringe, and for other nations, but there are the Sabbath[Tr. note: i.e. Sabbath as signifying, in an extensive sense, week, but, according to the Zohar, of a sanctified nature, partaking of the sanctity of the Sabbath.] days, to wit, the weekdays as they exist for Israel. Now, when that point ascends, everything else is hidden away, it alone holding sway, and it assumes the name of Sabbath (SH a BB a TH). That name, apart from its simple meaning of "rest", has an esoteric significance associating that point with the Patriarchs. For the term SH a BB a TH is resolvable into the letter shin, betokening three, [Tr. note: To wit, by the three bars in its shape.] and the term B a TH, signifying daughter, the whole indicating that the Sabbath-point, when it rises in its resplendence as an only and beloved daughter, joined to the three Patriarchs, who together with her form a complete unity. We have thus SH in (symbolic of the three Patriarchs), and B a TH (symbolic of the beloved daughter, the Sabbath-point), together forming a unity expressed in SH ab B a TH. (There is also a higher Sabbath similarly made up of the Future World (Binah) and the Central Point, which is also called bath.) When that lower Sabbath-point ascends, comes into view and bedecks itself, a spirit of rejoicing is suffused through the upper and the lower worlds. In addition, during that night that point radiates its light and spreads forth its wings over the world, so that all other powers disappear and the world abides in a state of security. As for the Israelites, each one of them becomes the habitation of an additional soul, under the influence of which all sadness and gloom and irritation are forgotten, there being only joy and gladness diffused through both the upper and the lower worlds. In its descent, the additional soul bathes itself in the sweet perfumes of the Garden of Eden, after which it descends and rests upon the holy people. Happy are they when that spirit is stirred within them. At the time of the spirit's descent there accompany it into the Garden of Eden sixty Chariot teams in all their glory, facing towards the six directions. When it arrives

in the Garden of Eden all the spirits and souls abiding therein bestir themselves to meet that Sabbath spirit, and a proclamation goes forth, saying: Happy are ye, O holy people of Israel, on whom your Master has bestowed

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 204b

an additional spirit. Here is a most recondite doctrine only known to the initiated of the mystical Wisdom. This spirit is indeed the extension of the Sabbath-point, from which it grows out and diffuses itself into the world. This constitutes the true inwardness of the Sabbath here below; and this is specially alluded to in the injunction: "Wherefore the children of Israel shall guard the Sabbath" (Ex. XXXI, 16), where the particle *eth* is meant to include the additional spirit that requires special attention in order that it may remain with a man. The same is indicated in the clause, "that guards the Sabbath from profaning it" (Isa. LVI, 2). Within the mystery of the special spirit there is this further mystery, to wit, that it shares in all the enjoyments and delights that Israel partakes of on that day; hence it behoves us to afford it pleasure by partaking of food and drink three times, the three meals corresponding to the three grades of Divine Faith, as explained elsewhere. Happy is the portion of whoever affords it pleasure and delight on that day. During the six days of the week that spirit experiences a heavenly bliss radiated from the Ancient of Ancients. But on the Sabbath, after it descends and bathes itself in the Garden of Eden, it shares in the bodily pleasure derived from the meal of Faith, and is thus filled with the delights both of the superior world and the lower world. Insomuch, then, as it abides with man, it is necessary for him to guard it, conformably to the Scriptural injunction: "Wherefore the children of Israel shall guard the Sabbath" (Ex. XXXI, 16), the term "Sabbath" alluding to the terrestrial Sabbath-point, and the particle *eth* to the special spirit which is the expansion of the same Point. When that expansion brings an affluence of holiness and beatitudes from on high on to that point, there is an effulgence of light all around, and the spirit is illumined on all sides, the heavenly and the earthly. This is alluded to in the words, "It is a sign between me and the children of Israel" (Ibid. XXXI, 17), as much as to say: "It is a portion and a heritage shared between us jointly." The heavenly part of it consists of transcendental holy bliss and sublime delight in the resplendency of the Ancient of Ancients; whilst in the terrestrial part there is the physical enjoyment of the repasts. It behoves, therefore, a man to cheer that day with sumptuous food and drink, with noble raiment, and with whatever conduces to joyfulness. And when the terrestrial portion is duly decorated and is properly tended it ascends on high and becomes merged into one with the heavenly portion; so that the "Point" becomes an amalgam of the upper and the lower worlds, and a unification of all the elements. In the mystical book of King Solomon the following recondite doctrine, as expounded by the Holy Lamp, is found. The term *vayinefash* (and He rested) (Ibid.) may be resolved into *vai* (woe), *nefesh* (soul), that is, woe to the soul forlorn! Now we may well argue that it should rather be woe to the body that loses the special spirit with the departure of the Sabbath. But the truth is that man possesses a certain *nefesh* (psyche)

that attracts to itself the special spirit on the eve of Sabbath, so that that spirit takes up its abode and resides within it the whole of the Sabbath. It thus becomes a superior nefesh, with greater power and resources than it possessed before. It is in reference to this that we have learned that the nefesh of every Israelite is decorated on the Sabbath day, that decoration consisting of the special spirit within them. But at the conclusion of the Sabbath that spirit departs, and then woe to the nefesh that is thus bereft. It has lost the heavenly crown and the holy energy it thereby possessed.

‘Those initiated in the higher wisdom perform their marital duties on each Sabbath night. Concerning this, we put a question to the Holy Lamp, pointing out to him that it seems to contradict the known fact that the lower Crown receives what it receives [Tr. note: i.e. the souls from on high.] in the daytime, and in the night it distributes sustenance to all its host, as Scripture says: “She rises also while it is yet night, and giveth food to her household, and a portion to her maidens” (Prov. XXXI, 15). If this be so, how can we say the proper time for intercourse is on that night in particular? He replied: Assuredly, that is the proper time for marital intercourse, insomuch as that night distributes souls for those

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 205a

initiated in the mystical Wisdom, and no other time is appropriate for this junction to be performed with all joy without any extraneous admixture, save that night when the souls are distributed to the wise, the righteous, and the pious. Each night, indeed, may be proper for it, and that at midnight, as explained elsewhere, but it behoves the initiated to limit themselves to that night. The reason is that one spirit hovers over the world during the other days of the week, but on Sabbath night another spirit, a sacred and sublime spirit, descends for the holy people. That spirit flows from the Ancient of Ancients and descends into the lower “Sabbath-point”, bringing therein rest for all, whence it expands into all directions on high and below, as it says: “between Me and the children of Israel”. Hence, for those men of wisdom the proper time for that function is when that holy and exalted spirit is diffused around them, since that same spirit draws after it in its descent here below all the holy souls, so that by its means the exalted saints transmit to their offspring those holy souls.

‘Furthermore, as soon as that spirit hovers over the world, all the malignant spirits and the evil accusers of men vanish from the world. And so there is then no need to pray for protection, as Israel is then under the guardianship of that spirit, with the wings of the tabernacle of peace spread over them, so that they may be perfectly secure. There is, it is true, a traditional teaching which says that a man should not go out alone either on the night of the fourth day of the week or on the night of the Sabbath, and that at these times one has to be on one’s guard; and this seems to contradict what has just been said, that on Sabbath night men are shielded from all evil accusers and need not therefore offer up a special prayer. Still, all this is assuredly correct. The fourth night of the week we have

to be on our guard against them, for the reason that at the creation of the lights the moon was cursed, its light diminished, and occasion was thus given to bands of malignant roving spirits to exercise power that night; on Sabbath night, again, whilst these spirits scatter themselves in order to retire into the cavern of the abyss where they are powerless to harm, a solitary man must be on his guard against them, since, although they are deprived of power, now and then they show themselves, and so a solitary wayfarer has to be on his guard. If that be so, it was said, does it not betoken an inadequate degree of security? Not so, it was answered. On the Sabbath there is protection for the holy people, and the Holy One, on the entrance of the Sabbath, decorates every member of Israel with a crown—a holy crown, which every wearer must cherish and guard. Now, although the malignant spirits do not then frequent inhabited places, they often appear to a man that walks alone, and then his “lucky star” (mazzal) deserts him. It is therefore incumbent upon a man to decorate himself with the holy crown and to guard it. Howbeit, on that night the holy people are fully protected, since the tabernacle of peace overspreads them, and tradition tells us that the tabernacle of peace and the “other side” cannot coexist together. The Sabbath day is thus a day of universal joy and security, both in the upper and the lower worlds; and the lower light, radiating into the upper world, through the resplendency of the Sabbath crowns, is there intensified seventy-fold, so that the Ancient of Ancients bestirs Himself. Then at break of day the holy people proceed to Synagogue in a joyous spirit robed in their best, crowned with the celestial holy crown and endowed with the additional celestial spirit, and there they offer up praises in songs and hymns, which mount up on high, so that the upper and the lower worlds are filled with joy and are all decorated together. Then the celestial beings hold forth and say: “Happy are ye, O holy people on earth, through whom your Master is crowned, as well as all the sacred hosts.” This day is the day of the soul and not of the body, exhibiting the sway of the “bundle of souls”, when the upper and the lower beings are mated

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 205b

together in virtue of the additional celestial spirit by which man is crowned.

‘The prayer offered by the holy people on the Sabbath is of three parts, corresponding to the three Sabbaths, but being in essence only one. [Tr. note: i.e. the Sabbath of the Creation, the Sabbath on which the Torah was given, and the Sabbath of the Millennium.] Once the holy people enter the precincts of the Synagogue it is forbidden them to concern themselves with anything, even the requirements of the Synagogue, save words of thanksgiving and prayer and the study of the Torah; and whoever directs his mind to other and worldly matters profanes the Sabbath, and thus has no portion among the people of Israel. For such a one two angels are appointed on the day of Sabbath, who proclaim, saying: “Woe to So-and-so who has no portion in the Holy One, blessed be He.” Hence it behoves the people to absorb themselves in prayer and songs and hymns to their Master, and in the study of the Torah. It is a day of the souls, a day in

which the "bundle of the souls" is decorated by the praises offered to their Master. Hence on that day is recited the "Hymn of the Soul" which reads: "The soul of every living being shall bless Thy name, O Lord our God, and the spirit of all flesh...", as that day subsists solely by the spirit and soul, and not by the body. Another hymn that concerns the mystery of day, of the sacred sun that illumines it, is "... who formest light...", to wit, the illuminating light which affords sustenance and light for all the hosts and heavenly Chariots and stars and constellations, and all those who exercise sway over the world. Then follows a Hymn of the universe, couched in the words, "God, the Lord over all works...", an alphabetical hymn which contains the mystery of the twenty-two sacred celestial letters which are decorated with a crown made of the Patriarchs and the holy heavenly Chariot. Opposite to them are the twenty-two little letters of the lower world which enter in the daily hymn that reads: "The God, the blessed One, great in knowledge...". Herein the alphabet ranges over single words in succession, there being no space between the words; whereas in the Sabbath hymn, symbolic of the upper world, there is a wide space, significant of holy mysteries, between the successive letters. The seventh day thus chants a most sublime hymn, composed of the celestial letters, in praise of the Most High King, of Him who formed the world at the beginning. When this hymn mounts up on high, sixty celestial Chariots of those alluded to before, take it up from the holy people and ascend with it to where it is woven into a crown for the decoration of the many heavenly Chariots, and for all the righteous in the Garden of Eden, all of whom mount up with that hymn to the Divine Throne. There this hymn, recited by the whole of Israel, halts until the recital of the Sanctification (k'dushah) in the additional prayer (musaph). Thus is effected the complete union of the upper and the lower worlds. So much for this hymn-the gem of all hymns. Then follows the regular daily order of prayer up to "Moses rejoiced in the gift of his portion..." This expresses the joy of the supreme grade, the chief of the "Patriarchs", who rejoices in His portion when the Divine Throne approaches Him, and the two worlds are fused into one; again, it expresses the rejoicing of the Written Law on high in the Oral Law here below, and their fusion into one. To the joy at that union we have to add the joy of the holy people as expressed in the words: "May they rejoice in Thy kingdom, those who observe the Sabbath, and call the Sabbath a delight... O God and God of our fathers, accept our rest..." Now, the inwardness of the interrelationship between the Book of the Law (Sepher Torah) and that day has been expounded elsewhere. In this regard we have been taught as follows. It is written: "And they read in the book, in the Law of God, distinctly; and they gave the sense, and caused them to understand the reading" (Nehemiah VIII, 8). The inner implication of this verse is that the verse-divisions, the tonal accents, the Massoretic readings, and all the minutiae of the text with their profound mysteries, were all delivered to Moses on Sinai. It may be asked, If that is so, why are all these signs and notes, with all the mysteries they contain, absent from our most holy Scroll of Law? The explanation is as follows. When the Divine Throne was decorated and completed with the crown formed from the Written Law, all the points and tonal accents and Massoretic signs

were hidden

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 206a

in the interior of the Divine Throne; then all these signs were the means by which the Written Law fertilized the Oral Law, as a female is fertilized from the male. But the celestial letters remained in their original sanctity unaccompanied by any signs, and hence they have to appear in this guise in the Synagogue, seeing that the Divine Throne was decorated and sanctified by the Written Law in its bare letters. The celestial holiness is thus diffused through the whole, especially on the day of Sabbath. On that day seven persons are called up to take part in the public reading of the Law, corresponding to the seven voices[Tr. note: vide Ps. XXIX, which, according to the Midrash, refers to the giving of the Law.] amidst which the Torah was given; on the other festivals five persons read the Law, and on the Day of Atonement the number is six. All these regulations have a similar recondite significance. The number five corresponds to the five (divine) grades that come after the primordial Light, which are a symbol of the Law; six signifies the so-called "six directions", and seven corresponds to the seven voices: thus all have the same symbolism. On the day of New Moon a fourth is added to the three who are called up on an ordinary day, to symbolize the Sun that gives light at that time to the moon; and this is the inner significance of the additional sacrifice and the additional prayer (musaph) offered on that day. In the reading of the Law only one voice should be heard at a time. Both on the Sabbath and on other days when the Law is publicly read the holy people must have a Throne prepared in the form of a reading-desk with an ascent of six steps and no more, conformably to the passage saying, "and there were six steps to the throne" (2 Chron. XI, 18), and having one step above on which to place the Book of the Law, that it may be seen by the whole congregation. As soon as the Book of the Law is placed thereon the whole congregation below should assume an attitude of awe and fear, of trembling and quaking, as though they were at that moment standing beneath Mount Sinai to receive the Torah, and should give ear and listen attentively; for it is not permitted then to open one's mouth, even for discussing the Torah, still less other subjects. All must be in awe and fear, as though they were speechless. So Scripture says: "And when he opened it, all the people stood up" (Neh. VIII, 5); also, "And the ears of all the people were attentive unto the Book of the Law" (Ibid. VIII, 3). R. Simeon said: When the Book of the Law is taken out to be read before the congregation, the mercy-gates of heaven are opened and the attribute of Love is stirred up, and each one should then recite the following prayer: Blessed be the name of the Master of the universe, blessed be Thy crown and Thy place; may Thy favour accompany Thy people Israel for evermore, and manifest Thou to Thy people the redemption of Thy right hand in Thy Sanctuary so as to make us enjoy Thy goodly light and to accept our prayer in mercy. May it be Thy will to prolong our life in goodness, and may I, Thy servant, be counted among the righteous so that Thou have mercy upon me and guard me and all mine and all that are of Thy people Israel. Thou art He that nourisheth and sustaineth all, Thou art ruler over all, Thou art ruler over all kings, and

the kingdom is Thine. I am the servant of the Holy One, blessed be He, and bow down before Him and before His glorious Torah at all times. Not in man do I put my trust, nor do I rely upon angels, but on the God of heaven, who is the God of truth and whose Torah is truth and whose prophets are true prophets: in Him do I put my trust and to His holy and glorious name do I sing praises. May it be Thy will to open my heart to Thy Law, and grant me male children, such as will do Thy will, and mayest Thou fulfil the desires of my heart and that of Thy people Israel, for whatever is good, for life, and for peace. Amen. It is forbidden for more than one at a time to read in the Book of the Law; the rest should listen attentively and in silence to the words coming from his mouth as though they were receiving them at that moment from Mount Sinai. Another person should stand next to the reader, but in silence, so that there should be heard one sole utterance, and not two. As the holy tongue stands alone, so its message must be delivered by one only; and for two to read simultaneously in the Book of the Law would be a lessening of Divine Faith and a lessening of the glory of the Torah. (Similarly, in reciting the translation, [Tr. note: It was formerly the custom that after each verse of the original the Aramaic translation (Targum) should be recited.] only one voice should be heard. The translation and the reading are related as the shell and the brain. [Tr. note: Al. as this world and the next world.]) All should be silent, one only reading, just as at Sinai, as we are told, "God spoke all these words, saying" (Ex. XX, 1), He being above and all the people beneath, as we read,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 206b

"and they stood at the nether part of the mount" (Ibid. XIX, 17). We also read, "And Moses went up unto God" (Ibid. XIX, 3). It behoves the reader to concentrate all his mind on the words he reads, and to realize that he is the messenger of his Master, charged with the duty of communicating these words to the whole congregation, he being in the place of heaven to them. Hence, whoever would go up to read in the Torah should previously rehearse his reading at home, or else not read at all. This we learn from the giving of the Law on Mount Sinai, of which we read, first, "Then did he see it and declare it; he prepared it, yea, and searched it out" (Job. XXVIII, 27), and then, "And unto man he said: Behold, the fear of the Lord, that is Wisdom" (Ibid. XXVIII, 28). It is forbidden to the reader to break off anywhere save where Moses indicated a pause. Neither may he in reading the portion of one week add part of the portion of another week. The inner reason of this is as follows. Each weekly lesson is at its conclusion adorned with a crown, and presents itself before God. At the conclusion of their yearly cycle they all present themselves, thus crowned, before the Holy One, blessed be He, each one announcing: I belong to the Sabbath so-and-so, and to congregation so-and-so. At that moment the angel Youfiel, the great chief, is called for, who presents himself accompanied by the fifty-three [Tr. note: The traditional division of the Pentateuch is into fifty-four sections. Some say that the sections Nizabim and Vayelekh are, by the Zohar, counted as one; others, that V'zoth Habbrakhah is here excluded, as not belonging to any Sabbath.] legions under his charge. These legions superintend the

reading of the Law, each one having to preside over the reading on a particular Sabbath assigned to it. It is thus forbidden us to disarrange the Lessons and thereby cause the overlapping of one legion with another, even by so much as a hairbreadth, by so much as a single word or even a single letter; but each must be kept within its own limits as fixed by the Holy One, blessed be He. All the legions thus present themselves, each one standing guard over the weekly Lesson under its charge. Each portion thus decorated with a crown, after its reading has been completed by the congregation, is taken up by its superintending legion and brought before the presence of the Holy One, blessed be He, in all its several words. These words declare: "We are such-and-such a section, completed by such-and-such a congregation in such-and-such manner." If the reading of them has been completed in the proper manner, the words ascend and themselves are woven into a crown to adorn the Divine Throne, with its superintending legion standing guard over it. The same is repeated with each separate Sabbath lesson in turn until they are all joined and become interwoven into one single crown. Hence, happy is the portion of whoever completes the reading of the weekly portion of each and every Sabbath in the proper manner, and in accordance with the divisions fixed on high.

'On Sabbath we have to read in the Book of the Law twice: once in the morning and a second time at dusk. For the late afternoon is the time when judgement hangs over the world, hence it is necessary for us to intertwine the Left with the Right, [Tr. note: i.e. Rigour with Clemency.] seeing that the Torah proceeded from the two sides, as it is written: "At his right hand was a fiery law unto them" (Deut. XXXIII, 2), implying both the right and the left. Hence the reading of the Law at dusk should comprise ten verses or more, but not the entire portion, as the complete portion is of the right, and the right prevails only until the time of afternoon service. We have also to read the Law on the second and the fifth days of the week, as on these days the higher grades descend below, those grades that represent the main principles of the Torah. The esoteric significance of the matter is this. These superior grades represent one portion of the Torah, but from them there emanate nine grades, [Tr. note: The grades of Nezah, Hod, and Yesod, each with its three sections.] which form a unity, and hence have their counterpart in the nine persons called to read the Law: to wit, three on Sabbath at Minha, and three each on the second and the fifth days of the week. Similarly we read in the Book of R. Yeba the Venerable: "At Minha-time on Sabbath there is an awakening of the mysterious forces of the Left, and the lower 'Sabbath-Point' within that left side receives the mystery of the Torah. At that moment, therefore, it receives from the domination, as it were, of the left side, the side which is esoterically represented

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 207a

by nine, and hence the nine persons who read the Law, to wit, six on weekdays and three on Sabbath at the moment when the left side bestirs itself." Happy is the portion of whoever is privileged to do honour to the Sabbath; happy is he in the two worlds, in this world and in the future world.

'It is written: "Let no man go out of his place on the seventh day" (Ex. XVI, 29). We have learned that the term "place" signifies the space wherein it is fitting for a man to walk; and esoterically it is the counterpart of the similar term in "Blessed be the glory of the Lord from his place" (Ezek. III, 12); also in "for the place whereon thou standest", etc. (Ex. III, 5); it is a place well known on high, and we call it the place wherein is revealed the most high glory in heaven; and hence the warning to the man who is adorned with the holy heavenly crown not to "go out of his place on the seventh day", that is, not to speak of workaday matters, as that would be a profanation of the Sabbath, nor to do work with his hands, nor to walk beyond the limit of two thousand cubits. "Let no man go out of his place", to wit, the place of Holy Majesty, as beyond it is the place of strange gods. "Blessed be the glory of the Lord", to wit, His glory in the high heavens; "from His place", to wit, His glory in the lower world, the two together forming the Sabbath-crown. Hence, "let no one go out of his place". Blessed be He for ever and to all eternity. It is written: "Behold, there is a place by me" (Ex. XXXIII, 21), a place, that is, concealed and hidden, eluding all inquiry, the place which is in the height of heights, the most high Temple, withdrawn from all cognition. But over against it is the lower place, referred to above. Thus there is "place" above and "place" below, and hence "let no man go out of his place on the seventh day". It is written: "And ye shall measure without the city for the east side two thousand cubits," etc. (Num. xxxv, 5). This verse contains sublime mysteries, indicated already elsewhere. It speaks of a higher and a lower region, the two thousand cubits extending on all sides. So the Shekinah does not hover anywhere outside the boundaries assigned to her.

'When the Sabbath begins to draw to a close Israel must draw it out as long as possible, for it is a great and exalted day, and the Shekinah, moreover, is our guest on that day, and so we must make every effort to detain the celestial guest as long as possible. Then, at the conclusion of the Sabbath, we commence prayers by reciting: "And He being merciful, forgiveth iniquity...." This verse is very appropriate for that night, because then Rigour resumes its sway, whereas it is not appropriate for reciting at the entrance of the Sabbath, since that Rigour is then completely withdrawn from the world. Then, when the congregation recite the passage beginning, "And let the pleasantness...", succeeding Sanctification, all the sinners in Gehinnom exclaim: "Happy are ye, O Israel! Happy are ye righteous men who observe the commands of the Torah! Alas for the wicked who did not succeed in observing the precepts of the Torah." Then appears Dumah, [Tr. note: The chief of the under world.] and proclaims: "Let the wicked return to the nether-world, even all the nations that forget God" (Ibid. IX, 18). The wicked are then driven back by all the bands of demons into Gehinnom without anyone having compassion on them. Happy are those who observe the Sabbath in this world, and so enjoy the celestial delight vouchsafed to them from above, as already mentioned. On the other hand, he who keeps the Sabbath as a day of fasting provokes against himself two accusers who indict him before the Holy King. One is the holy Sabbatical super-spirit who is deprived of his due share of Sabbath-day delight;

and the other is the angel named Sangariah, who has charge over those who observe a fast. These two accuse the man before the Holy King. For, since the lower spirit is deprived of its proper share of Sabbath delight, it is in a state of imperfection and therefore the corresponding spirit above is also in a state of imperfection, and the man thus deserves curses and punishments. If, however, he makes good on other occasions, so that the angel of

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 207b

fasts finds satisfaction in the celestial bliss which he enjoys in the company of other guardian angels, his punishment is remitted. Suppose a king in the midst of his marriage festivities, in which all his subjects are invited to participate, notices a man being led in chains to the place of punishment. Straightway he gives orders for the man to be released, so that all, without exception, may share in his rejoicings. Afterwards, the officers return and lead the man to the place of punishment. Similarly, the celestial officers come in due course and exact punishment of the man who caused a diminution of joy both in heaven and on earth by fasting on Sabbath. What, then, is his remedy? That he observe another fast to atone for his Sabbath fast; as he did away with the joy of Sabbath, so let him do away with the pleasure of weekdays. But if he banishes joy on Sabbath and indulges in it on weekdays, by fasting on the Sabbath and feasting on the following weekday, he will show that he thinks more of this world than of God, since he neglects the holy super-spirit of the Sabbath, and entertains the weekday spirit, which rests on the world afterwards. It is therefore incumbent on him to observe a fast on the first day of the week, the time when the ordinary weekday spirit resumes its sway, so that he may obtain healing by disregarding the everyday spirit. Happy is he who on earth rises to that sublime heavenly delight in the manner due. For this day is adorned with seventy crowns, and the Divine Name is perfected in all sides, and all the grades are illumined, and all is pervaded with joy, with blessing, and with an overflowing measure of holiness.

'The Sanctification (Kiddush), recited on the eve of the Sabbath, ushers in a holiness equal to that of the Sabbath of Creation, which was hallowed by the "thirty-two Paths of Wisdom" and "three holy apple-trees". [Tr. note: The three highest grades.] Hence, in the Sanctification ceremony we have to recite the passage: "And the heaven and the earth were finished... which God in creating had made" (Gen. II, 1-3), which contains an essential testimony to the work of creation. For this passage contains thirty-five words representing the "thirty-two Paths" and the three "holy apple-trees", which are represented by the three occurrences of the word "seventh" in the passage. This section also contains allusions to the upper world, the lower world, and the Divine Faith in all its compass. The word "Elohim" is mentioned three times, pointing to the lower world, the "Fear of Isaac" (Rigour), and the highest world, which is the Holy of Holies. Now, it behoves man to give testimony to this before his Master, gladly, joyfully, and with all his heart and mind. Thereby all our sins are atoned for.

'Next we recite the benediction, which runs:

“Blessed art Thou, O Lord our God, King of the universe, who hast sanctified us by thy commandments and hast taken pleasure in us...” This part of the recital balances the other part, called the testimony to Divine Faith, and so it also contains thirty-five words. Together we thus have seventy words, which are so many crowns by which the Eve of the Sabbath is adorned. Happy is the man who in his recital meditates over all this to the glory of his Master. The Sanctification (Kiddush) recital in the morning consists of the blessing over the cup of wine, to

wit, “... who createst the fruit of the vine”, and no more. The reason of this is that then it is the day that sanctifies itself, whereas the Eve has to be sanctified by us with all the recital just mentioned. The Eve is only consecrated by the holy people on earth what time the supersoul descends on them; we thus have to sanctify it with special concentration of our thought on this. Contrariwise, the day makes itself holy, and Israel, being hallowed through prayers and supplications, sanctify themselves still further through the holiness of the day. Happy are the holy people of Israel who have inherited this day as an everlasting heritage.

‘At the conclusion of the Sabbath we have to make “separation” between holy and profane, for the reason that at the moment the inferior spirits resume their sway over the world and all its doings; and so we have to demonstrate the existence of the Holy One in His holy place wrapt in holiness absolute, and to distinguish between the lower elements and most exalted Unity.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 208a

To do this, we recite a blessing over the light of fire. For, although all other fires are put out and hidden on the Sabbath, one fire still shows itself on this day, being included in the holiness of Sabbath; when this comes forth, all the other fires hide themselves. It is the fire of the altar upon which Isaac was to have been offered as a sacrifice. We have to say the blessing over the fire that burnt on the Sabbath, which is the fire that emanated from the celestial fire, the fire that carries fire; and when this is blessed, all other fires come forth and are assigned to their places. When we say the blessing over that fire, four legions of angels, called “lights of the fire”, come down to be illuminated by this blessed fire. Therefore do we bend the four fingers of our right hand to catch the light of the lamp that is blessed, symbolic of the four legions, called “lights of the fire”, who themselves are illumined by, and derive power from, a certain supernal Lamp. Those legions, moreover, are of the lower grades, and we bend thus our fingers before the light to show its supremacy. Contrariwise, in the recital of other blessings we have to raise our fingers, to show the supremacy of the supernal holy grades which rule over all, the Divine Name being by them crowned and sanctified, and which are illumined by the Supreme Lamp. But here we incline our fingers downwards against the light as a symbol of the lower grades which are illumined by the light of blessing, and so are called “Lights of the Fire”. On all other days we praise the Almighty for having made the luminaries of “light” (or), in allusion to the supreme radiations of the primordial light which shed

blessings and light over all grades together; whereas here we only mention the “lights of the fire” (esh). Now, inasmuch as these “lights of the fire” emanate from the fire over which the benediction was recited, why, one may ask, not say “lightest” instead of “createst”? The explanation is that at the entrance of the Sabbath all the lower grades and luminaries and potencies are absorbed by the Supreme Lamp and become invisible save for the one single point; and they remain in it the whole of the Sabbath day. Then, at the conclusion of the Sabbath the Almighty makes them appear one by one, as if created anew, in the same manner as at the first creation, and assigns each one to its place of domination. In the same manner, the supernal grades, called “luminaries of light”, rule over the day and receive their light from the Supreme Lamp. When night falls, the Supreme Lamp gathers them up and absorbs them within itself until daybreak. As soon as Israel recites the blessing over the light of day the Supreme Lamp sends them forth fully radiant. We then thus bless the Lord “who formest (yozer) the luminaries”, but not “createst” (bore). It is only at the conclusion of the Sabbath that we say “who createst the lights of the fire” in allusion to the lower grades. But both the upper and the lower grades are symbolized by our fingers. The finger-nails are of great importance in this symbolism. They are on the back of the fingers, and thus symbolize the Hinder Countenance, which needs to be illumined from that Lamp: it is called

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 208b

“the back”. Whereas the inner and nail-less side of the fingers symbolizes the Inner Countenance which is hidden. This symbolical action is based on the verse, “and thou shalt see my back; but my face shall not be seen” (Ex. XXXIII, 23). “My back” is represented by the outer and nail-part of the fingers which, when we say the blessing over the light, must be placed so as to catch that light; “but My face shall not be seen”, and hence the inner side of the fingers symbolizing the Inner Countenance, need not face the light to be illumined by it, as their illumination emanates from no other source but the Supernal Lamp in the height of heights, which is utterly concealed and undisclosed. The outer and nail parts of the fingers must therefore be shown to the light, but the inner parts not. They are hidden and illumined from the hidden; innermost and illumined from the innermost; exalted and illumined from the highest. Happy is Israel in this world and in the world to come.

‘It behoves us at the conclusion of the Sabbath to inhale the sweet odour of aromatic spices in order to fortify ourselves against the departure of the super-spirit, as by this departure a man's own soul is left forlorn and naked, as it were. In this regard it is written, “and he smelled the smell of his raiment” (Gen. XXVII, 27). This passage has already been expounded in a way. But observe further that the sweet smell provides sustenance for the soul, it being a substance which enters the soul but is too tenuous for absorption by the body. Now, the raiment here mentioned has been expounded as alluding to the garments of Adam the first man, those in which the Holy One arrayed him when He placed him in the Garden of Eden. When Adam sinned, however, he was stripped of these

precious garments and was clothed in others instead. The original garments with which Adam was arrayed in the Garden of Eden were of the same kind as those in which the legions, called "hind-parts" (ahorayim), are arrayed, and bear the name of "nail-raiment". And so long as Adam remained in the Garden of Eden all those legions encompassed and guarded him so that no evil could come near him. But after he sinned he was stripped of those garments and clothed in profane garments, made out of vicious stuff and evil spirits, and the holy legions departed from him; and there was only left on him of the original covering the fingernails. These, however, have also an outer edge of impurity. For this reason we should not allow those nails with their impurity to grow; for as they keep growing so do the man's accusers multiply, and so does he himself sink every day into deeper melancholy. It behoves us, then, to cut them off, nor must we throw the cuttings away in a place where people pass, lest harm come to them. Now, all this is on the celestial pattern; for there also the "hinder" region is surrounded by the "other side". Later on, the Holy One made for Adam other garments out of the leaves of the terrestrial Garden of Eden. Now, those original garments, which were an emanation of the celestial Garden of Eden, emitted the sweet fragrances and aromas of the kind which calm and soothe the soul and make it happy. Isaac thus "smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him", as that fragrance calmed and soothed his soul and spirit. Hence, at the conclusion of the Sabbath we have to inhale the odour of sweet spices in order to restore our soul and counteract the effect of the loss of the superior spirit that has left it. The best odour for this purpose is that of the myrtle, as it is myrtle which sustains the holy place from which souls issue, and so in this world it is potent to uphold man's soul at the moment when it is deprived of its higher soul-companion. It was at the conclusion of the Sabbath that Adam was clothed in the garments of the terrestrial Paradise, the sweet odours and fragrance of which sustained his soul in the loss it suffered through the departure of the superior and glorified holy spirit. The myrtle thus assuredly sustains man's soul on earth as it does the souls on high-that superior spirit that descends into man on the Sabbath and fills his soul with joy. Thus this soul is raised to the state in which it will be in the future world,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 209a

for in the same measure as a man feasts and delights that spirit in this world will that spirit cause delight to the man in the future world. So Scripture says. "Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord", etc. (Isa. LVIII, 14), also, "and the Lord will... satisfy thy soul with brightness" (Ibid. 14). Whoever thus fully honours the Sabbath in the manner described, the Holy One, blessed be He, says to him: "Thou art my servant, Israel, in whom I will be glorified" (Ibid. XLIX, 3).'

R. Isaac now ceased, and R. Abba and the other Companions rose up and kissed him on his head. They all wept and said: 'Happy is our portion in that the Holy One, blessed be He, has led our feet on this path.' Said R. Abba: 'The Lord led me on this way so that I might join your company. Happy is my portion in having been thus privileged.' R. Abba further said to them: 'Let me

relate to you what I saw. When I set out on my journey to-day I saw a light ahead of me which split into three separate lights. They all went in front of me and then disappeared. I said to myself: Assuredly, what I saw was the Shekinah. Happy is my portion. Now I know that those lights I saw were yourselves. Verily, you are the supernal lights and lamps to lighten this world and the world to come.' R. Abba continued, saying: 'Until now I did not know that all these hidden pearls were in your possession. And now that I see that all these words of yours have been uttered by the will and command of your Master, I know that they are all ascending this day to the Divine Throne, and that the Chief of the angels[Tr. note: Metatron] is taking them up and weaving them into crowns for his Master, and this very day sixty holy legions are adorned with crowns, made of the words uttered here this day, to the glory of the Divine Throne.' At this point he raised his eyes and noticed that the sun had gone down. 'Let us proceed to that village yonder,' he said, 'as it is the nearest to us in this desert.' So they went there and stayed there overnight. At midnight R. Abba, with the other Companions, arose in order to study the Torah. Said R. Abba: 'Now let us weave discourses which will be made into crowns for the righteous in Paradise, as now is the hour when the Holy One, blessed be He, and all the righteous in Paradise, listen to the voices of the righteous on earth.'

R. Abba then began to discourse on the verse: "The heavens are the heavens of the Lord, but the earth hath he given to the children of men" (Ps. cxv, 16). 'This verse', he said, 'contains a difficulty. For would it not have sufficed to say "the heavens are of the Lord"? Why, then, repeat the word "heavens", and say "the heavens are the heavens", etc.? But we account for it in this way. There are heavens and heavens; to wit, lower heavens with an earth beneath them, and upper heavens also having an earth beneath them. They constitute upper grades and lower grades, the two being counterparts of each other. The lower heavens are identical with the ten curtains, to which allusion is made in the words: "Who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain" (Ps. CIV, 2). The Holy One made them, with the legions that people them, to regulate the affairs of the lower earth. The ninth heaven propels all the lower heavens, which are harnessed to it, as it were, by a chain of links. (The tenth, however, is the chief of them all.) In each heaven are controlling angels, as far as the seventh; the rest are all illumined by the light that radiates from the Divine Throne, reaching the tenth heaven, whence it is extended towards the ninth and further to the eighth, whence it reaches those below. It is the light of the eighth which gives to each of the stars, when they are brought out to their places, its requisite light and force. In regard to this it is written: "He that bringeth out their host by number... by the greatness of might" (Isa. XL, 26), the term "greatness of might" referring to the supernal resplendency. Furthermore, there is in each heaven a chieftain who is in charge of a part of the world and a part of the earth, except the Land of Israel, which is not under the rule of any heaven or any other power but that of the Holy One, blessed be He, alone. But, it may be said, how can the sky over the Land of Israel be without effect, seeing that the Land of Israel receives rain and dew from heaven like any other land? The explanation is as

follows. In the case of other lands,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 209b

the ruler in each heaven transmits of his power to the earth below through the medium of the heaven under his charge-of that power which he himself has received from the residue left of the supernal source. But the heaven which is over the Holy Land is not ruled by any chieftain or any other power, but is in the sole charge of the Holy One, blessed be He, who Himself directs the affairs of that land from that heaven. Each heaven is provided with a certain number of portals, and the charge of each chieftain extends from one portal to the next, and he may not encroach on the sphere of his fellow-chieftain by even so much as a hairbreadth, except he receive authorization to exercise dominion over his neighbour; when this happens one king on earth obtains power over another. There is, besides, in the centre of the whole of the heavens, a door called G'bilan; underneath that door are seventy other doors, with seventy chieftains keeping guard, at a distance from it of two thousand cubits, so that no one should come near it. From that door, again, there is a path mounting higher and ever higher until it reaches the Divine Throne. The same door gives access to all quarters of heaven as far as the gate called Magdon, [Tr. note: Al. Mandon] where is the end of the heaven that extends over the Land of Israel. All the seventy doors that are inscribed on the door called G'bilan, are called "gates of righteousness", being under the direct control of the Divine Throne, and no other power; and it is through those gates that the Holy One provides the Land of Israel with all that it needs; and it is from the residue of that provision that the Chieftains take and transmit to all the lower chieftains.

'In connection with the firmament that is above the lower Paradise there are sublime mysteries. When the Holy One was about to make the firmament, He took fire and water out of His Throne of Glory, fused them into one, and out of them made the lower firmament, which expanded until it reached the area of the Lower Paradise, where it halted. The Holy One, blessed be He, then took from the holy and supernal heaven fire and water of another kind, such as both are and are not, are both disclosed and undisclosed, and of them He made a further expanse of heaven which He spread over the lower Paradise where it joins the other firmament. That expanse of heaven, above the lower Paradise, displays four colours: white, red, green, and black, and correspondingly contains four doors in its four sides. These four openings form a passage for four light-radiations. On the right side two lights shine forth through two doors, one through the door of the right and one through the opposite. Within the light-radiation on the right a certain letter stands out with scintillating effulgence, to wit, the letter Mim. That letter moves up and down continually without ever resting at one point. Within the opposite light-radiation there similarly stands out with a scintillating effulgence the letter Resh, which on occasions, however, assumes the shape of the letter Beth. This similarly moves for ever up and down, at times being revealed and at other times hidden. When the soul of a righteous man enters the Lower Paradise, these two letters emerge out of the midst of that radiation, and appear above that soul,

where they continue to rise and fall. Then out of the same two doors there emerge from on high two legions, one under the charge of Michael the great prince, and the second under the great chieftain called Bael, who is the noble minister

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 210a

called Raphael. These legions descend and pause above the soul, which they greet with the words: "Peace be thy coming, he entereth into peace, he entereth into peace!" The two letters then return to their place and become absorbed within the radiation that passes through those two doors. Similarly, through the other two doors, that on the left and on the west, there pass two light-radiations, out of which there project two other flaming and scintillating letters, to wit, a Gimel and a Nun; and when the two previous letters return to their own place these two flaming letters emerge from the midst of their surrounding illumination and appear above that soul. Then, again, emerging out of the other two portals, there come forth two other legions, one under the charge of the great chief Gabriel, and the other under that of the great chief Nuriel. These fix themselves above the soul whilst the letters return to their place. After that these two legions enter into a certain hidden Palace in the Garden, called Ahaloth (lit. aloes). Therein is the hidden store of the twelve varieties of sweet spices which Scripture enumerates, "Spikenard and saffron, calamus and cinnamon..." (S.S. IV, 14), these being the twelve varieties of spices of the Lower Paradise. Therein is also the repository of all the garments wherewith men's souls are invested, each according to its desert. On each garment all the good works that a man did in this world are inscribed, and in each case proclamation is made, saying: "This garment belongs to such a one"; after which the soul of the righteous in Paradise is clothed therewith, so as to become a replica of the man's personality whilst in this world. This takes place not less than thirty days after the man's death, inasmuch as for the first thirty days there is no soul but must undergo correction before entering Paradise, as already stated elsewhere. After purification it receives its garment, in virtue of which it is then assigned to its appropriate place. All the letters and legions then disappear. Now, the firmament over the Lower Paradise revolves twice a day under the impetus of the other firmament that is attached to it. That firmament, moreover, is inwrought with all the letters of the alphabet in various colours, each letter distilling of the heavenly dew over the Garden. It is in that dew that the souls bathe and recuperate after their previous immersion in the Nehar dinur (river of fire) for purification. That dew descends from no other source but from the midst of the letters that are graven in that firmament, these letters containing in miniature the whole of the Torah, and that firmament forming the esoteric aspect of the Torah, since it is made out of the fire and water of the Torah itself. Hence they drop their dew upon all those who in this world give themselves up to the study of the Torah for its own sake. The very words of their studies are inscribed in Paradise, whence they mount up to that firmament where they receive from those letters that dew on which the soul of the good man is nurtured. So Scripture says: "My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my speech shall distil as the dew" (Deut. XXXII, 2). In the centre of that

firmament there is an opening directly facing the opening of the supernal Palace on high and forming the gateway through which the souls soar up from the Lower Paradise unto the Higher Paradise by way of a pillar that is fixed in the Lower Paradise reaching up to the door on high. There is, moreover, a column of light, formed of a combination of three lights of so many different colours, radiating upwards from the opening in the centre of that firmament, and thus illuminating that pillar with a many-hued light. Thus that firmament scintillates and flashes with a number of dazzling colours. The righteous are illumined by the reflection of that supernal resplendency, and on each New Moon the glory of the Shekinah as revealed in that firmament transcends that of other times. All the righteous then approach and prostrate themselves before it. Happy is the portion of whoever is found worthy of those garments wherein the righteous are clad in the Garden of Eden. Those garments are made out of the good deeds performed by

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 210b

a man in this world in obedience to the commands of the Torah. In the Lower Paradise man's soul is thus sustained by these deeds and is clad in garments of glory made out of them. But when the soul mounts up on high through that portal of the firmament, other precious garments are provided for it of a more exalted order, made out of the zeal and devotion which characterized his study of the Torah and his prayer; for when that zeal mounts up on high a crown is made out of it for him to be crowned with, but some of it remains as the man's portion, out of which garments of light are made for the soul to be clad in when it has ascended on high. The former garments, as we have said, depend on his actions, but these depend on his devotion of spirit, so as to qualify their owner to join the company of holy angels and spirits. This is the correct exposition of the matter as the Holy Lamp learned it from Elijah. The garments of the Lower Paradise are made of man's actions; those of the celestia; Paradise of the devotion and earnestness of his spirit.

It is written: "And a river went out of Eden to water the garden", etc. (Gen. II, 10). It is of importance to know the source and origin of the river that went out of Eden into the Lower Garden. Eden itself is most recondite, and no eye is permitted to discern it. The inner reason is that had the Lower Eden been allowed to be disclosed, the position of the Higher Eden also would have become discoverable. In order, therefore, that the Higher Eden should remain enveloped in holy mystery, the Lower Eden, from which a river went out, had also to be entirely hidden, and so it is undisclosed, even to the souls in the Garden of Eden itself. Now, as that river flows out of Eden to water the Garden, so from the portal in the centre of the Garden emerges a stream of light that divides into four sections, radiating in four directions, passing the four portals previously mentioned, and illuminating the inscribed letters. That fourfold beam issues from Eden, at the Lower Point that shines opposite the Celestial Point. That point is illumined, and is itself transmuted into Eden, the fount of the light. That Point itself is not given to any to see or know, but only the light radiating from it, before which the righteous in the Garden of Eden prostrate

themselves, as already said. That Lower Point is in its turn Garden in relation to the Celestial Eden, a spot not given to any to know or to perceive. Concerning all this it is written: "No eye hath seen beside thee, O God" (Isa. LXIV, 3), which is an allusion to the holy Lower Point that alone has knowledge of the Lower Eden which is hidden in the Garden, there being none other that has knowledge of it. Again, "beside thee, O Elohim," alludes to the Higher Eden, which is identical with the mystery of the world to come, with the principle that knows the Lower Point, none other knowing it save Elohim, the One who ascends ever higher into the Boundless (En-soph).

The river that goes forth out of the Lower Eden is a mystery only known to the initiated, and is alluded to in the words: "and he will satisfy thy soul in dry places (zahzahoth, al. with brightness)" (Isa. LVIII, 11). The soul that quits this dark world pants for the light of the upper world. Just as the thirsty man pants for water, so does the soul thirst for the brilliancy of the light of the Garden and the firmament. The souls sit there by that river that flows out of Eden; they find rest there whilst clad in the ethereal garments. Without those garments they would not be able to endure the dazzling light around them; but protected by this covering they are in comfort and drink their fill of that radiance without being overwhelmed by it. It is the river which renders the souls fit and able to feast on and to enjoy that radiance. The celestial river brings forth the souls who fly off into the Garden; the lower river in the terrestrial Garden, on the other hand, builds up the souls and makes them fit and able to enjoy those

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 211a

radiances, and so to mount up to the celestial Paradise through the central opening of the firmament and by the pillar that stands in the centre of the Lower Paradise. That pillar is enveloped in cloud and smoke and bright flashes, the cloud and smoke encircling it from the outside in order to screen those mounting up into the Upper Paradise that they should not be seen by those remaining below. Herein is involved a most recondite doctrine. When the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to adorn the "Supreme Point" with Sabbaths and festivals and ceremonial days, He sent the Eagle with the four faces who fixed himself on the Temple called "Freedom" (d'ror). So in the Jubilee year we have to proclaim freedom, as we read, "and ye shall proclaim freedom (d'ror)" (Lev. xxv, 10). These four faces emit a sound inaudible to any save those souls that are worthy to ascend into the upper Paradise. These foregather there and are taken up by the four-faced eagle and made to mount by way of the central pillar. At that moment the other pillar goes up, the pillar of cloud and fire and smoke, with shining light in the interior (v. Isa. IV, 5). As soon as the souls arrive at the gate of the firmament the latter revolves three times round the Garden of Eden, producing thereby such sweet music that all the souls come forth and listen and behold the rising of the pillar of fire and cloud and smoke and shining brightness, before which they all prostrate themselves. After this the souls ascend through that portal until they enter within the Supreme Point, where they see wonderful sights, and in their ecstasy flit up and down, approaching each other and

again retreating. The Supreme Point, on its side, yearns for them and adorns itself with radiance. Then one Righteous on high puts on garments of jealousy, as it were, surveys the effulgence and the gracefulness of the Supreme Point and its adornment, seizes it, raises it to Himself, so that radiance joins radiance and both become one. At that moment all the hosts of heaven break forth in chorus, saying: "Happy are ye, O righteous, who observe the Torah; happy are they who are assiduous in the study of the Torah, inasmuch as the joy of your Master is in you and the crown of your Master is fashioned by you." Now, after effulgence and effulgence have joined into one, a radiation of manifold hues descends to have converse with the souls of the righteous, and weaves them into a crown for the Divine Throne. Concerning this, then, Scripture says: "No eye beside thee hath seen what Elohim doth for those who wait for him" (Isa. LXIV, 3).'

R. Simeon said: 'It is written, "And over the heads of the living creatures there was the likeness of a firmament, like the colour of the terrible ice, stretched forth over their heads above" (Ezek. I, 22). This verse has already been expounded in a way. But there is a firmament and a firmament. There is a lower firmament that rests upon the four lower Holy Beasts, whence it extends and begins to take on the form of a female figure behind a male figure: this is esoterically implied in the passage, saying, "and thou shalt see my back, but my face shall not be seen" (Ex. DCXIII, 23), also in "Thou hast formed me aft and fore" (Ps. CXXXIX, 5), and again in the words, "and he took one of his ribs" (Gen. II, 21); and there is an upper firmament resting on the four upper Holy Beasts, whence it extends and takes on the figure of a male, very recondite. Of these two firmaments one is named "end of heaven", and the other, "from the end of heaven" (Deut. IV, 32). "The heads of the living creatures" refers to the four lower Holy Beasts who are inscribed above the four letters that are graven on the inner side of the four portals of the Garden of Eden. Now, although we said that the Lower Eden is on earth, and it is indeed so, nevertheless the subject is a most recondite one,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 211b

the fact being that the Supreme Point mentioned above has its part in the lower world as well as in the upper world, the Lower Garden being the portion of that Point through which it communes joyfully with the souls of the righteous on earth, and thus is filled both with celestial and terrestrial delight, communing above with the Righteous One and below with the product of the Righteous One (the souls of the righteous). The Garden is an emanation of the Point called Eden. "The heads of the living creatures", every one having four faces, that of a lion, an ox, an eagle, and that of a man, the latter embracing them all-as it says: "And the likeness of their faces was that of a man" (Ezek. I, 10)-are identical with the four "heads of the rivers" (Gen. II, 10); and it is they who support the Divine Throne; and out of the weight of that burden they ooze perspiration; and out of that perspiration there was formed the River of Fire (nehar dinur), of which it is written "a fiery stream issued and came forth from before him; thousand thousands ministered unto him" (Dan. VII, 10). The souls of men before ascending into Paradise

are immersed in that "river of fire", where they are purged without being consumed. It is with the soul as with a garment made of the skin of a salamander. [Tr. note: A reptile believed to be engendered in fire, so that its skin was fireproof.] Such a garment, by reason of its having its origin in fire, can only be cleansed in fire, fire alone having the power to purge it of its impurities. For the soul indeed originated in fire, being an emanation from the Divine Throne, of which it is written, "his throne was fiery flames" (Ibid. VII, 9). So, in order to be purged of its impurities it has to pass through fire. Thus fire alone has the virtue of consuming every pollution in the soul, and making it emerge pure and white. Yet let it not be thought from this that the soul undergoes no penance. For, indeed, woe to the soul that has to endure a strange fire, although it thereby be purged and made white; and still more, woe to the soul which is greatly defiled, for that soul will have to pass twice through the fire in order to come out pure and white. At first the soul is taken to a spot called Ben-hinnom, so called because it is in the interior of Gehinnom, where souls are cleansed and purified before they enter the Lower Paradise. Two angel messengers stand at the gate of Paradise and call aloud to the chieftains who have charge of that spot in Gehinnom, summoning them to receive that soul, and during the whole process of purification they continue to utter aloud repeatedly the word "Hinnom". When the process is completed, the chieftains take the soul out of Gehinnom and lead it to the gate of Paradise, and say to the angel messengers standing there: "Hinnom (lit. here they are), behold, here is the soul that has come out pure and white." The soul is then brought into Paradise. Oh, how broken is that soul after her ordeal in the infernal fire! For, although it has descended from on high, yet when it reaches the earth below it is less rarefied, and it causes the soul intense suffering and leaves it enfeebled and broken. God then causes the rays of the sun to penetrate through the four openings of the firmament above Paradise and to shed its rays on that soul and heal it. Of this Scripture says: "But unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in its wings" (Malachi III, 29). A second ordeal has to be undergone by the soul on its passage from Lower Paradise to Upper Paradise; for whilst in Lower Paradise it is not yet entirely purged of the materialities of this world, so as to be fit to ascend on high. They thus pass it through that "river of fire" from which it emerges completely purified and so comes before the presence of the Sovereign of the universe beatified[Tr. note: Al. purified.] in every aspect. Also the rays of the celestial light afford it healing. This is its final stage. At that stage the souls stand garbed in their raiment and adorned in their crowns before their Master. Happy is the portion

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 212a

of the righteous in this world and in the world to come.

'The souls in Lower Paradise, on every New Moon and Sabbath day, go about and ascend to the spot called "Walls of Jerusalem", where there are a great many chieftains and legions mounting guard, as written: "I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem" (Isa. LXII, 6). They mount up as far as that spot, but do not enter it until their purging is complete.

There they prostrate themselves, drink in ecstatically of the celestial radiance, and then return into Paradise. They also at times go forth, roaming about the world and viewing the bodies of the sinners undergoing their punishment. So Scripture says: "And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcasses of the men that have rebelled against me; for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh" (Ibid. LXVI, 24). They continue to roam about, casting their glance on those who are victims of pain and disease, who suffer for their belief in the unity of their Master. They then return and make all this known to the Messiah. When the Messiah hears of the great suffering of Israel in their dispersion, and of the wicked amongst them who seek not to know their Master, he weeps aloud on account of those wicked ones amongst them, as it is written: "But he was wounded because of our transgression, he was crushed because of our iniquities" (Ibid. LIII, 5). The souls then return to their place. The Messiah, on his part, enters a certain Hall in the Garden of Eden, called the Hall of the Afflicted. There he calls for all the diseases and pains and sufferings of Israel, bidding them settle on himself, which they do. And were it not that he thus eases the burden from Israel, taking it on himself, no one could endure the sufferings meted out to Israel in expiation on account of their neglect of the Torah. So Scripture says; "Surely our diseases he did bear", etc. (Ibid. LIII, 4). A similar function was performed by R. Eleazar here on earth. For, indeed, beyond number are the chastisements awaiting every man daily for the neglect of the Torah, all of which descended into the world at the time when the Torah was given. As long as Israel were in the Holy Land, by means of the Temple service and sacrifices they averted all evil diseases and afflictions from the world. Now it is the Messiah who is the means of averting them from mankind until the time when a man quits this world and receives his punishment, as already said. When a man's sins are so numerous that he has to pass through the nethermost compartments of Gehinnom in order to receive heavier punishment corresponding to the contamination of his soul, a more intense fire is kindled in order to consume that contamination. The destroying angels make use for this purpose of fiery rods, so as to expel that contamination. Woe to the soul that is subjected to such punishment! Happy are those who guard the precepts of the Torah!

'As already said, the Supreme Holy Point desires to hold converse with the spirits of the righteous, both on high and here below. It is at midnight that it descends below to converse with the spirits of the righteous and to fondle them as a mother fondles her children.

'The firmament overspreading the Garden of Eden is supported by the heads of the four Holy Beasts, who are symbolized by the four letters referred to above. There is, besides, a lower firmament on the pattern of the upper firmament. This firmament is embroidered with all divine colours, and it possesses four portals marked respectively by four scintillating letters. One portal is to the east, having stamped on it the letter aleph, which scintillates and constantly moves up and down. The second portal is on the north side with the letter dalet stamped on it,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 212b

which likewise scintillates, and without pause moves up and down. Its scintillation, however, is inconstant, as sometimes it flashes brightly and sometimes its light completely disappears. The third portal is on the west with the letter nun stamped on it, likewise scintillating. Finally, there is the fourth portal on the south, having stamped on it a point, the Lower Point, a tiny point, visible and yet not visible, to wit, the letter yod. The other letters of the alphabet are also stamped on that firmament, numbering altogether twenty-two, all adorned with crowns. The firmament revolves on the Living Beings, carrying with it letters arranged in a certain grouping which symbolizes the Divine Unity, viz. Aleph Teth, Beth Heth, Gimel Zain, Daleth Vau. These letters themselves symbolize other higher letters. When that firmament is illumined there become revealed four mystical groupings of letters, each composing the Divine Name, and together spelling out the thirty-two Paths of Wisdom. At that moment a dew descends from that firmament, distilled through the letters of the mystery of the Divine Name, which forms the food of all the celestial holy legions and hosts, who gather it up joyfully. When chastisement impends over the world, the first of each pair of these letters is absorbed, as it were, in the second, thus leaving only Teth, Heth, Zain, Vau (THZV). Then a voice from the north is stirred up so that all know that Rigour prevails over the world; at that moment, also, that firmament assumes a colour that comprehends all colours. When there is a movement in the eastern side of the firmament it embraces the aforesaid four four-faced Holy Beasts with the aforesaid letters, who all rise upward. The hidden letters then reappear, restoring the mystical letter-grouping of Aleph-Teth, Beth-Heth, Gimel-Zain, Daleth-Vau; the firmament is irradiated, a resounding voice proceeds from the letters, reaching the highest heavens, and celestial food and blessings and beatitudes are diffused again in plenty for those who come to partake of it. The letters then in their turn make the tour of the firmament until they reach the southern side; then they ascend, scintillating with a fiery gleam. Then in the centre of that firmament there is traced out a certain letter, to wit, Yod, followed by another three flaming letters, viz. He', Vau, He'. These letters swing up and down, sending out thirteen flames of fire. Then there descends a something which becomes absorbed in these letters, is adorned by them as with a crown, but remains undisclosed. Great joy is then among all the hosts and legions, hymns and praises ascend on high, the firmament begins a second time to rotate and revolve, and the aforementioned letters-t, b.h, gz, dv-become absorbed in the supernal letters that contain the mystery of the Divine Name just mentioned, and these letters that were in the centre of the firmament, containing the mystery of the Divine Name are now traced out in the north side. They are traced out most faintly, and there is no one who can observe steadily that side. The celestial hosts then break forth in melodious song, reciting: "Blessed be the glory of the Lord from his place" (Ezek. III, 12).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 213a

And they repeat the same from all sides. As the firmament revolves, the volume of melodious sound,

with the same refrain, goes up from all the numerous legions, at each of the four sides of the firmament. The firmament then becomes illumined with an exceedingly bright light, brighter than before, displaying, in a different mode, a colour composed of the whole range of colours; and the aforementioned Divine Name of four letters becomes augmented by an additional letter from on high, to wit, the letter Vau, resulting in V-TETRAGRAMMATON (lit. and TETRAGRAMMATON), expressive of both the male and female principles. Yet the Divine Name is not perfect except when it is composed of the nine letters, to wit, TETRAGRAMMATON ELHYM (Elohim). When these letters are thus joined, that firmament shines with thirty-two lights, and all is joy, all is joined in one recondite union, both the upper and the lower world. In that same firmament, again, there is on the north side a flaming light that is never extinguished, to the right of which there are impressions of other letters, forming ten Sacred Names, in which are implicit seventy Names.

'By that firmament are borne along all the lower firmaments within the region of holiness as far as the boundary of the "other" firmaments belonging to the "other side". These latter are called "curtains of goats' hair", allusion to which is made in the verse, "And he made curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle." For there are curtains and curtains. The "curtains of the tabernacle" are the counterpart of the firmaments spread over the Holy Beasts in the Holy Tabernacle; whereas the "curtains of goats hair" represent altogether different firmaments, those of the "other side". The former contain the mystery of the legions of the holy spirits; the latter represent the substance of mundane matter, of bodily appetites and actions, and hence form the outer covering of the inner firmaments similar to the shell that surrounds the brain. The latter are called "heavens of the Lord". Opposite to these lower heavens are the supernal heavens, heavens within heavens, called the "heavens of the Holy Beasts", in allusion to the supernal mighty Holy Beasts. They contain the mystery of the Torah, and on the highest heaven of all, namely, the eighth, [Tr. note: Binah.] there are engraved the twenty-two letters of the alphabet. That heaven is supported by the supernal Holy Beasts, and itself is of an essence entirely undisclosed, beyond any attribute of colour, whilst being itself the source and origin of all colours and all light. There is neither light nor darkness in it, but the souls of the righteous, as from behind a wall, discern the light which it sends forth and which illumines the supreme heaven, a light never ceasing, a light not to be known or grasped. There are lower heavens and upper heavens, both referred to in the passage, saying, "The heavens, heavens of the Lord" (Ps. cxv, 16), but this is the supremest heaven, raised

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 213b

over them all. Up to this point some hint is given by the holy names by which the Holy One, blessed be He, is called, but beyond this point the discernment even of the wisest cannot pierce, and it is altogether outside the range of our faculties, excepting for one gleam of light, too minute to be dwelt on. Happy is the portion of whoever can penetrate into the mysteries of his Master and become absorbed into Him, as it were. Especially

does a man achieve this when he offers up his prayer to his Master in intense devotion, his will then becoming as the flame inseparable from the coal, and his mind concentrated on the unity of the lower firmaments, to unify them by means of a lower name, then on the unity of the higher firmaments, and finally on the absorption of them all into that most high firmament. Whilst a man's mouth and lips are moving, his heart and will must soar to the height of heights, so as to acknowledge the unity of the whole in virtue of the mystery of mysteries in which all ideas, all wills and all thoughts find their goal, to wit, the mystery of the En-Sof (Infinite, Illimitable).

'We should repeat the same endeavour at each prayer, so as to adorn each day with the crown of the mystery of its corresponding supernal day, by means of our prayer. At night a man should represent to himself that he is about to quit this world, and that his soul will leave him and return to the Master of all. For every night the Supreme Point absorbs in itself the souls of the righteous. Here is a recondite truth for the initiate. The lower firmament, as mentioned above, is sustained by that Point. That firmament, moreover, is a fusion of the upper and the lower worlds, having its basis in the lower world, much as the dark flame of a lamp merges into the white flame above while having its basis below in a wick sunk in oil. So in the daytime that Point is essentially above, but in the night it is essentially below, becoming absorbed in the souls of the righteous, since at night all things return to their original root and source. So the soul mounts up, returning to its source, whilst the body lies still as a stone, thus reverting to its own source of origin. Whilst in that state the body is beset by the influences of the "other side", with the result that its hands become defiled and remain so until they are washed in the morning, as explained elsewhere. The souls of the righteous, in ascending in the night into their own celestial spheres, are woven into a crown, as it were, with which the Holy One, blessed be He, adorns Himself. There are night attendants who have charge of those souls, take them up on high and offer them up as an acceptable sacrifice to their Master. The supreme chieftain of those legions bears the name of Suriya, and each soul, as it passes through all the firmaments, is first brought before him, and he inhales its scent, as it says: "And he will inhale the scent of the fear of the Lord" (Isa. XI, 3). He takes them under his charge, and passes them on higher, until they arrive at the place of sacrifice. There all the souls are absorbed in the Supreme Point; as a woman conceives a child, so does the Supreme Point conceive them, experiencing a rapturous pleasure in absorbing in itself the souls with all their good deeds and Torah studies performed during the past day. The souls then re-emerge, that is to say, they are born anew, each soul being fresh and new as at its former birth. This is the inner meaning of the words, "They are new every morning; great is thy faithfulness" (Lam. III, 23). That is to say, "they (the souls) are new every morning",

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 214a

because "great is thy faithfulness" to absorb them and then let them out as newly-born. Happy are the righteous in this world and in the world to come.'

By now day had broken, and R. Abba said: 'Let us rise and offer up praise to the Master of the World.' Then, after having recited their prayers, the Companions returned to him and said: 'Let him who began the discourse conclude it. Happy is our portion that we have been privileged to adorn the Holy One, blessed be He, with the crown of the recondite teachings of Wisdom.' R. Abba then began the following discourse:

AND BEZALEL MADE THE ARK OF ACACIA WOOD, ETC. 'The Holy Assembly', he said, 'have, indeed, already expounded the esoteric aspect of the Tabernacle. Yet there is still much here to ponder on, as its inner meaning is adorned with many mysteries of the teaching of Wisdom. The ark is one vessel with six sides, and it contains and conceals in its interior the Written Law that reaches out into the six directions of the creation. Again, the ark consists of five boards and an ark-cover, to symbolize the five books of the Pentateuch with the one grade that pervades them all, called the mystery of the covenant. Together, the six-sided ark and the Torah represent the inwardness of the nine grades that are summed up in the two Divine Names- TETRAGRAMMATON, ELoHYM- whilst the ark-cover represents the most high heaven that surrounds all, covers up all, so that the whole remains undisclosed. Now we have to investigate the recondite significance of the ark. For there is ark and ark, one the opposite of the other. In connection with one,' continued R. Abba, 'it is written: "All this did Araunah the king give to the king", etc. (2 Sam. XXIV, 23). Now, even if we allow that Araunah was a king, yet seeing that David conquered Jerusalem and made it his own, as it says, "David took the stronghold of Zion", etc. (Ibid. v. 7-8), why did he need to buy the spot from Araunah with money? A simple explanation would be that although David was the ruler of Jerusalem, that spot was the heritage of Araunah, and so it could only be taken from him by his consent; in the same way as Ahab, although king and ruler in Israel, in order to acquire the vineyard of Naboth the Jesreelite, had first to obtain the latter's consent. But a deeper explanation is that Araunah indeed was king and ruler of that spot, and when the time came for it to pass out of his possession, this could only be effected at the cost of much blood and slaughter to Israel. Subsequently, when the Destroying Angel in the execution of his work of slaughter reached that spot he could not prevail there, and his strength was exhausted. It was, indeed, the spot where Isaac was bound on the altar that Abraham built; and so, when the Holy One looked at that place He was filled with compassion, as we read, "and as he was about to destroy, the Lord beheld, and he repented him of the evil" (I Chron. XXI, 15), meaning that He beheld there the binding of Isaac, and so had compassion on them, and straightway said to the Destroying Angel: "It is enough", etc. (Ibid.); the words, "it is enough", have the same import as the similar words in the passage, "Ye have dwelt long enough in this mountain" (Deut. I, 6), as much as to say: "This place has been long enough in thy possession; thou hast had it for many years, now return it to its rightful master." And for all that it could only be taken from him at a great sacrifice of life and money. What is the significance of the name "Araunah"? The same name is also written "Ornan" (I Chron. XXI, 15). So long as that

place was in his possession he was called Araunah, a word of five letters, for in the case of such a niggard who represents the "other side", the addition of a letter implies a degradation, whereas for the side of holiness the diminution of the letters implies an added holiness.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 214b

Observe now that the holy side is called the ark (aron) of the covenant, and such an ark is appropriate for the placing therein of the bodily remains of a man. For this reason, when the holy and pious depart this world their bodies are placed in an ark, since the "other side" has not been provided with a body and has nothing in common with the body of Man. Of Joseph we find it written, "and he was put in a coffin (aron) in Egypt" (Gen. L, 26), where the word vayyisem (and he was put) is written with a double yod. For what reason? [Tr. note: Al. Observe that the "holy side" is called "ark of the covenant", that ark being a pit wherein is a receptacle for the Torah in its esoteric aspect, which aspect is the mystery of the image of the pure celestial Body. Corresponding to this, in the terrestrial world an ark has been provided wherein to place the earthly body that symbolizes Man, to wit, the body of him who has preserved the purity of the sign of the holy covenant. Hence the bodies of the holy and pious are placed in an ark, which is fitting only for such a one. Thus in connection with Joseph it is written: "and he was put in a coffin (aron)", etc.] Because he kept unimpaired the symbol of the holy covenant and therefore merited to be put into the ark.' R. Abba here wept, saying: 'Woe to mankind, that they are unaware of this disgrace! Alas, for their offence, in that everyone who wishes is placed in an ark! For this privilege should be reserved for those who are conscious that never in their lives have they transgressed against the sign of the covenant. To put anyone else into an ark is to desecrate it. There is a certain symbolism in this connection which makes it fitting for him and for no other; and woe to him who, notwithstanding his abuse of the sign of the covenant, is admitted into the ark-woe to him who abused it during life, woe to him who now abuses it when dead, woe to him for impairing the sign and the ark of the holy covenant, woe for the punishment to be exacted from him for his wrongs committed in this world and for that abuse of the ark! To this Scripture alludes in the words: "For the rod of wickedness shall not rest upon the lot of the righteous" (Ps. cxv, 3). That is to say, when such a one comes up for judgement in the other world, and it is found that in addition to having impaired the sign of the holy covenant stamped on his body he also impaired the ark in the other world, he is excluded from any lot among the righteous and is put outside the category of man, and consequently of all those destined for everlasting life, and is delivered into the power of the "other side", the side which has no kinship with the mystery of the body of Man. When he is delivered into the power of that side, woe to him, since he is thrown into Gehinnom, whence he will not come out for all eternity. In allusion to such it is written: "And they shall go forth and look upon the carcasses of the men that have rebelled against me", etc. (Isa. LXVI, 24). This doom, however, is only meted out to those who have not turned with a full repentance sufficient to wipe out all their misdeeds. But even after full repentance it is

better for such a one not to be put into the ark, because as long as the body is in being the soul is under sentence and may not enter into its own place. But this is not so with the pious who are worthy to ascend, even whilst their bodies endure. Happy is their portion in this world and in the world to come. As regards the aforementioned sinners, there is no sin so grievous in the sight of the Holy One as the sin of perverting and impairing the sign of the holy covenant; and he who commits such an offence is excluded from the sight of the Shekinah.

'It is written here: "And Bezalel made the ark." Why did the wise men who made the Tabernacle not make the ark as well? The reason is that Bezalel represented the final part of the body, the symbol of the holy covenant which he kept pure, and hence it was his part to make the ark, which was, as it were, his own portion.' All the Companions then came near and kissed R. Abba. When they came to R. Simeon and repeated to him all the expositions they had heard during that walk he quoted the verse: "But the path of the righteous is as the light of dawn, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day" (Prov. IV, 18).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 215a

'This verse', he said, 'has been already expounded in a way, but there is still a deeper truth underlying it. "The path of the righteous" is the path of truth, the path the Holy One, blessed be He, delights in, the path along which the righteous proceed, with the Almighty, as it were, leading the way whilst all the heavenly legions come down to listen to their expositions and teachings; "as the light of dawn", that is, as a light that continues without ever fading, unlike the path of the wicked, of which it says: "The way of the wicked is as darkness" etc. (Ibid. 19). The following is an alternate comment. What is the difference between "path" (orah) and "way" (derekh)? A "path" is newly opened and still little trodden, whereas a "way" is a well-worn track, already traversed by many feet. Hence that whereon the righteous walk is called "path", since they are the pioneers who open up a new path for themselves; and even though others have preceded them, yet when they walk on it it becomes a new path, as though never trodden on by any before. For they metamorphose it in virtue of the many sublime and holy teachings with which they delight the Holy One. Moreover, the Shekinah now goes in that path, which she did not before. But "way", on the other hand, is a common road, open to all and trodden on, even by the wicked. This is hinted in the words, "Who maketh a way (derekh) in the sea" (Ibid. XLIII, 16), the word "way" being used because it is accessible to the "other side", the unwanted influence that exerts its power to defile the Tabernacle, and so the righteous are left to themselves, to rule over the region called "path" (orah), as already said. "Way" is thus open for all, for this "side" and its opposite, and you, O exalted saints,' concluded R. Simeon, 'you have entertained the heavenly Visitor (oreah), and sublime expositions have been uttered and displayed by you in the presence of the Ancient of Days. Happy is your portion!'

R. Simeon further discoursed, citing the verse: "And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom,

for Moses had laid his hands upon him" (Deut. XXXIV, 9). 'In many places we have laid down', he said, 'that the face of Moses was as the face of the sun, whilst that of Joshua was like that of the moon. For the moon has no light of its own, but receives its light by reflection from the sun until it becomes full, when it may be said to reach its state of completeness. The completeness of the moon is when it is called "reflection" (d 'muth), in relation to the supernal Sun called TETRAGRAMMATON, for it receives this name only when it is complete, for it has many names according to its various manifestations. So when it is complete on all sides it is called TETRAGRAMMATON, its completeness corresponding to the higher completeness. The Daughter, as it were, is the heiress of the Mother. This is the case on the fifteenth day of the month, and thus, "On the fifteenth day of this seventh month is the feast of Tabernacles" (Lev. XXIV, 34). It is also written, "Howbeit on the tenth day of this seventh month is the day of Atonement" (Ibid. 27), which has the same allusion. When the World-to-be is symbolized by all the Ten Utterances, and centred in this month, it is first named "ten", and afterwards when the moon is joined with them in completeness it is named "fifteen", the He (=5) joining the Yod (= 10), both forming the Divine Name YH. In the completed name TETRAGRAMMATON there is a second He added, the first He' being associated with the supernal mystery, and the second symbolizing the Providence that provides the lower world with its sustenance. The moon is thus in its completeness, a completeness embracing the upper and the lower worlds, through the inner meaning of the Divine Name, all forming a unity of perfection. Joshua is the symbol of the fulness of the moon, he truly being the son of Nun, as the letter Nun is expressive of the recondite significance of the moon. And so "Joshua was full of the spirit of wisdom", full in the completeness of the Divine Name. For the Supreme Point, identical with the letter Yod, expanded and produced a Spirit, which Spirit produced a Temple. That Spirit then expanded further, and so became six directions. Having expanded through all these, it filled out and caused to come into being the Lower Temple. Thus

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 215b

the Divine Name became manifest in a unity of completeness. "Joshua", then, "was full of the spirit of wisdom, for Moses had laid his hands upon him", that is, he poured out blessings upon him, and the well, so to speak became filled through him. And you,' concluded R. Simeon, 'you exalted saints, each one of you is filled with the spirit of wisdom and has attained the full phase of the mystic wisdom, inasmuch as the Holy One, blessed be He, found delight in you and had laid His hands upon you. Happy is my portion in that my eyes have seen this, to wit, the fulness of the spirit of wisdom that is in you.'

R. Simeon further discoursed, citing the verse: "Ye shall not eat with the blood; neither shall ye practise divination nor soothsaying" (Lev. XIX, 26). 'The esoteric teaching of this verse', he said, 'is that if a man eats before he has prayed, as it were, for his blood, it is as though he were practising divination and soothsaying. For in the night man's soul mounts up into heaven to

gaze upon the mystery of the Divine Glory, each one according to its merits, and the body is thus left deriving its life-force solely from the blood. And although alive, the man has then a foretaste of death, that life-force being too sluggish to be reawakened on the return of the soul, so as to be able to receive it. For when man awakens from his sleep he is not in a state of purity, because, as explained elsewhere, the "other side" has sway wherever the soul is absent. He has first to purify himself with water, but even then, and although he may have been engaged in studying the Torah, the soul does not resume its former place and sway, and he is still sustained by the blood life-force alone, the force called nefesh (soul), which permeates the blood. It is only when he worships his Master in prayer that the blood-force resumes its normal position so that the soul regains its control in its own sphere. It is thus that man attains his proper and perfect condition, with the vital force (nefesh) beneath and the soul above. Hence, if a man prays before he eats he puts himself in a proper condition, but if he eats before he prays for his blood to resume its proper sphere, it is as though he were practising divination and soothsaying, seeing that it is the way of the diviner to elevate the "other side", and to degrade the side of holiness. The term m'nahesh (diviner) is related to nahash (serpent), and the diviner is so called because he gives himself over to the Serpent in order to obtain from him power and strength. Such a man is like one serving other gods, and so likewise is he who eats before prayer, worshipping the blood life-force instead of worshipping the Almighty in order to fortify the side of the soul, the side of holiness. Happy is your portion, O exalted saints', continued R. Simeon, 'in that through prayer man's body and soul are edified so that he becomes complete.

'Prayer works a fourfold process of upbuilding which is in essence one. First, it builds up him who prays; secondly, it builds up this world; there comes, third, the upbuilding of the upper world with all the heavenly hosts; the fourth process of upbuilding is wrought on the Divine Name, so that all the upper and lower regions are embraced in one edifying process, in the manner appropriate. First, as to man himself, it is incumbent on everyone to edify himself by means of meritorious action and holiness and sacrifices and burnt offerings. The upbuilding of this world is then effected when we recite the works of creation, praising the Almighty for each separate work through our reading of the Hallelukah Psalms, such as "Praise him, all ye stars of light, praise him, ye heavens of heavens", etc. (Ps. CXLVIII, 3-4). This is for the sustaining of this world. The third process is wrought on the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 216a

upper world with all its hosts upon hosts and legions upon legions. We thus recite: "Creator of ministering spirits... And the Ophanim and the holy Hayoth...." Finally comes the fourth process, wrought, as it were, on the Divine Name, which, by means of our prayer, becomes perfected. Happy is your portion', concluded R. Simeon, 'in this world and in the world to come. This is truly the effect of those precepts which you carry out by means of prayer.'

He further discoursed as follows. 'It is written: "Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God" (Deut. x, 20), and also, "and thou shalt fear thy God (m'elohekho, lit. from thy God)" (Lev. XIX, 14). Why in the latter passage is it written, "from thy God" and not simply "thy God", as in the former passage? The preposition "from", however, points to the place which is attached to the "brain" and surrounds it. That spot is the central fire that surrounds the innermost fire. For there are three varieties of fire in that connection. The first is the fire that receives fire with joy, the two meeting each other in love and joy; the second is that of which it is written, "and there was brightness (nogah) to the fire" (Ezek. I, 13); it is the inmost fire which is joyful at the presence of the other fire. Then comes the third fire which surrounds that brightness, and wherein resides the terror of Severity for the punishment of the wicked. Indeed, there is also a teaching that speaks of four varieties of fire-four that are in essence one. However, it is in the aforementioned fire that the terror of Severity resides. Hence "thou shalt fear (that which comes) from thy God", meaning: "Thy fear shall start from, or be inspired by, His punishment." Furthermore, we should combine fear with love, fear on one side and love on the other. We have to fear on account of the punishment that proceeds from the one side for the transgression of the precepts of the Torah-for once this is begun, the side that inflicts it never relaxes until the transgressor is exterminated from this world and from the world to come. Man has thus to fear that fire which is the seat of fear. That fire spreads out into another fire outside, belonging to another object of fear, in regard to which it is written, "ye shall not fear the gods of the Amorites" (Judges VI, 10). But the aforementioned fire belongs to the holy side, and is the one that surrounds that brightness (nogah) mentioned before. The other and extraneous fire at times joins this fire, and at other times moves away from it. When it does join, it turns into darkness so as to darken and shut out the light of the other fires. After fear comes love. This is esoterically expressed by saying: "After fear has hovered over a man's head there awakens love, which belongs to the right side." For he who worships out of love attaches himself to a very sublime region and to the holiness of the "World-to-be", by reason of love ascending to the "right side" for its attachment and adornment. Think not, however, that worship coming from the side of fear is no worship at all. In truth it is worship highly to be prized. It does not ascend, however, so as to join the highest part of the supernal sphere. This is reserved for worship inspired by love, and he who worships in a spirit of love is the man destined for the future world. Happy is the portion of such a one in that he exercises dominion over the region of fear, love being the sole power dominating fear in virtue of its belonging to the recondite influence of the right. It is further essential in the performance of our worship to avow the unity of the name of the Holy One, blessed be He, and to avow the oneness of the upper and lower members and grades, and to combine them all in the spot to which they fittingly converge. This is the recondite significance of the declaration: "Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God, the Lord is one" (Deut. VI, 4). The term SH e M a' (hear) is esoterically analysed into SH e M (name) and the letter 'Ain (= 70), that is, one Name comprising seventy names whilst

remaining a unity. "Israel" here signifies "Ancient Israel", in contrast to "Little Israel", of whom it is written: "When Israel was a child, then I loved him" (Hos. XI, 1). "Ancient Israel" symbolizes the union of the Shekinah with her Spouse, and in pronouncing that name we have to concentrate our mind on the principle of unity,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 216b

on the union of the two habitations; we have to put all our being, all the members of our body, our complete devotion, into that thought so as to rise and attach ourselves to the En-sof (Infinite), and thus achieve the oneness of the upper and the lower worlds. The words, "the Lord our God" are to reunite all the Members to the place from which they issued, which is the innermost Sanctuary. The same thought is continued in the words, "the Lord is one", in the recital of which we have to make our thoughts range throughout all the grades up to the Infinite (En-sof) in love and fear. This is the method of avowing the unity of God practised by Rab Hamnuna the Venerable, who learnt it from his father, who had it from his master, and so on, till it came from the mouth of Elijah. And it is the correct and proper method. The same Rab Hamnuna further said, that to concentrate the whole idea of unification in the term "one" (ehad) is a still better way; and it is for this reason that we dwell long over the enunciation of the word "one" (ehad), during which we effect the fusion into one of the upper and the lower worlds. As we have learnt, "one" alludes to above, below, and the four quarters of the universe, these being the supernal Chariot, so that all are embraced in a single unity reaching out to the En-sof (Infinite). After the recital of "Hear, O Israel...", we have to recite the section containing mention of the Exodus from Egypt (Num. xv, 37-41), for the reason that the Shekinah was in the Egyptian exile, and as long as She is in exile there is no union between the upper and the lower worlds. But the redemption from Egypt, attended by all those signs and wonders, set Her free; and that redemption has to be mentioned by us to show that though She was in chains She is now free, so as to join her heavenly Spouse. It is hence incumbent on us to let the recital of the Redemption be followed closely by our petitionary prayers, as a sign of perfect unity (between the divine aspects) without a rift and without any separation whatever. The mnemonic for this is: "neither shall they take a woman put away from her husband" (Lev. XXI, 7). But, you may say, is She not at present in exile, and so put away? This is not so. She is indeed in exile, but only for the sake of Israel, so as to dwell with them and to shield them, but She is not put away. Now the Shekinah appeared neither during the first Temple nor during the second Temple. In the second Temple, before Israel were driven into exile, She ascended on high, and only after the exile did She make Her abode with them. But She was never put away. Hence the importance of the first redemption, the one from Egypt which comprehended all the four redemptions. The esoteric exposition of the matter is as follows. When the Shekinah left the exile of Egypt, She besought the Holy One, blessed be He, that She might there and then be redeemed with a fourfold redemption, corresponding to the four exiles, so that She might remain free and not be put away any more. This request was granted and the exodus thus embraced for the Shekinah all the four redemptions. At

the moment, therefore, of Her union with Her heavenly Spouse there is need for the display, so to speak, of the redemption from Egypt, comprehending as it does the four redemptions. Hence, we have,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 217a

in the recital of that redemption, to repeat four times the term "true" before we reach the portion beginning with "Thou hast been the help of our fathers...", a prayer which is a firm support for all Israel. Then, in the course of the recital, "Thou hast been...", the term "true" recurs again four times, whereby we fortify, confirm and corroborate, as it were, the same four redemptions with the seal and signet of the King. Were not the four redemptions comprehended within the Exodus during the whole of the exile She would not obtain Her adornments so as to manifest the unity of the Divine Name. We have thus to make mention of the redemption from Egypt in every recital of Sanctification offered to the Holy One, blessed be He, for ever and to all eternity. The inward significance of the Sanctification recitals is, as already stated, that thereby both the upper and the lower worlds, all grades, all the upper and lower legions, become sanctified. Herein are involved sublime mysteries through which the initiated discern the holiness of their Master. Happy is their portion! Happy is your portion," concluded R. Simeon, "and happy my eyes that they have witnessed the awakening of these holy words in this world, inasmuch as they are all inscribed in the world on high before the Holy King."

He next discoursed on the verse: "Then they that fear the Lord spoke one with another; and the Lord hearkened, and heard, and a book of remembrance was written before him, for them that fear the Lord, and that thought upon his name" (Malachi III, 16). "This verse", he said, "presents a difficulty in using the word *nidb'ru* (lit. they were spoken) instead of *dibbru* (they spoke). What it signifies, however, is the repetition of the words spoken on earth in the upper world, by all the sacred hosts and legions. For the words of the holy Law spoken here below ascend on high, where multitudes come to meet them to take them up and present them before the Holy King, there to be adorned with many crowns woven of the supernal radiances. All these words, then, are self-spoken, as it were, before the Most High King. Whoever saw such joy, whoever witnessed such praises, as mount up into all those heavens at the moment those words ascend, whilst the Holy King looks on them and crowns Himself with them! They spring up and down, they settle, as it were, on His bosom for Him to disport Himself with them, whence they ascend toward His head and are woven there into a crown. Hence the words spoken by the Torah: "and I would be playing always before him" (Prov. VIII, 30). In the verse cited there is twice mention of "them that fear the Lord"; the first indicates the men themselves as they are here below, and the second their images as reflected in their words that ascend on high. This esoteric doctrine is found in the Book of Enoch, where it says that all the words of exposition uttered by the righteous on earth are adorned with crowns and are arrayed before the Holy One, blessed be He, who delights Himself with them. They then descend and come up again before His presence in the

image of that righteous man who gave expression to them, and God then delights Himself with that image. The words, then, are inscribed in "a book of remembrance before Him", so as to endure for evermore. "And they that thought upon His name" is an allusion to those that meditate on the words of Torah in order thereby to cleave to their Master through an insight into the Divine Name, so as to know Him and become equipped with the wisdom of His name in their heart. It is written: "And above the firmament that was over their heads was as the appearance of a sapphire stone, the likeness of a throne" (Ezek. I, 26). This firmament', said R. Simeon, 'is the lower firmament, as you, Companions, have explained. Happy is my portion and happy is your portion, since as regards the supernal firmament there is no one who can ever discern it. Above that lower firmament, then, there is that "sapphire stone", that precious jewel by which it is adorned. It says, "the likeness of a throne", and not "the throne". For there is throne and throne. The term "the throne" would signify the Supernal Throne, which is undisclosed and beyond all knowledge and comprehension. Hence it says here "a throne", to wit, a lower throne. The verse cited continues: "and upon the likeness of the throne was a likeness as the appearance of a man" (Ibid.). Why say both "likeness" and "appearance" when "likeness" would be enough? The explanation is that the term "likeness" alludes to the higher glory, the image of Man; whereas the word "appearance" embraces the likenesses generated in his words of Torah exposition and mystic doctrines,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 217b

which ascend and are crowned on high, and afterwards assume the image of man, of those righteous ones who crown them, for the delight of the Holy One, blessed be He. And you, Companions, behold, the Holy One disports Himself now with those words you uttered, and you are standing now before your Master as represented by your holy images. For when I saw you and looked well at your inward forms, I saw that you were stamped with the mystical impress of Adam, and so I knew that your image is stationed on high. In this way the righteous are destined in the future to be distinguished in the eyes of all men, and to make their holy countenance manifest before all the world' It is thus written: "all that see them shall acknowledge them, that they are the seed that the Lord hath blessed" (Isa. LI, 9).'

At this point R. Simeon noticed R. Jose meditating worldly matters. Said he to him: 'Jose, arise and make complete your image, inasmuch as you are short of one letter.' R. Jose then rose up and joyously absorbed himself in expositions of the Torah. R. Simeon then looked at him again, and said: 'R. Jose, now you are whole before the Ancient of Days, and your image is complete.'

R. Simeon further discoursed, citing the verse: "And they made the plate (ziz) of the holy crown of pure gold", etc. (Ex. XXXIX, 30). 'Why was the plate called ziz (lit. gaze, peep)? Because it was a reflector, mirroring the character of any man gazing at it. For in that plate were graven the letters of the Divine Name, and when a righteous man appeared before it the

letters so engraved bulged out and rose luminous from their sockets, from which a light shone on the man's face with a faint sparkling. For a moment the priest would notice the reflection of the letters on the man's face; but when he looked more closely he would see nothing more than a faint light, like the reflection of shining gold. But the first momentary glimpse that the priest caught was a sign to him that that man was pleasing to the Holy One, blessed be He, and that he was destined for the world to come, inasmuch as that light was an illumination from on high and a mark of divine favour. On the other hand, if a man's face failed to show any such sacred sign when he stood before the plate, then the priest knew that that man was an evildoer, and in need of atonement and intercession.'

R. Judah began a discourse on the verse: "Let thine eyes be on the field that they do reap, and go thou after them;... and when thou art athirst, go unto the vessels, and drink of that", etc. (Ruth II, 9). 'This verse', he said, 'raises a problem; for the point of it is not at all apparent.' R. Isaac interposed, saying: 'But are there not many more verses in Scripture which seem to be needless, and the purpose of which is not apparent, yet we know that they conceal within them deep esoteric doctrines.' Then R. Judah, resuming his discourse, said: 'As regards this verse, whoever just looks at it and does not study it deeply is like a man who looks at a dish without tasting it. In truth, there is an inner meaning in it, and it has been composed under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. It amounts to this. Boaz, the Judge of Israel, observed the modesty of that righteous woman in that she did not turn her eyes hither and thither, but only looked straight in front of her, and that she had a benignant eye, and that there was no trace of impudence in her. He thus spoke in praise of her eyes. For there are eyes that throw a blight on any spot on which they are cast. But he observed in her a kindly eye, and he also saw that everything prospered in her hands, that the more she gleaned the more the gleanings in the field increased; and so Boaz recognized that the Holy Spirit hovered over her. Hence he thus addressed her, saying: "Let thine eyes be on the field that they do reap, and go thou after them", to wit, "after thine eyes". For the phrase "after them" cannot be construed as alluding to the gleaners, as if so it should have been written "and glean thou" instead of "and go thou". Boaz thus bade her "go after" her eyes, having observed that her eyes carried with them a blessing and were the cause of a manifold increase in the gleanings. "Other people", he as much as said, "are not

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 218a

permitted to follow after their eyes, but thou mayest follow thine eyes, for they are the begetters of manifold blessings." The verse may also be explained as follows. Boaz saw, under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, that great kings and rulers were destined to issue from her, they being called the "eyes" of the people, as in the passage: "And it shall be, if it be done in error through the eyes of the congregation" (Num. xv, 24), alluding to the Sanhedrin. For, as the members of the body must follow the eyes, which are the leaders of the body, so kings, members of the Sanhedrin, and other rulers, lead the way for the people to follow. This

is thus what Boaz indicated in his words: "Let thine eyes be in the field". The term "field" is a reference to Zion and Jerusalem, as it is written: "Zion shall be plowed as a field" (Micah III, 12), and also, "as the smell of a field which the Lord hath blessed" (Gen. XXVII, 27), in allusion to Jerusalem. Hence, "Let thine eyes be on the field", that is, the rulers that were destined to come forth from her should have their centre only in Jerusalem. Boaz continued: "where they do reap", inasmuch as from that "field" all the peoples of the world would reap law and illumination, as Scripture says: "For out of Zion shall go forth the Law" (Isa. II, 3); "and go thou after them", meaning "after the virtuous deeds that I observed in thee". "Have I not charged the young men that they shall not touch thee": this can be taken literally, women being easily swayed. "And when thou art athirst": this is a euphemism, Boaz saying, in effect: "When thou conceivest a desire to attach thyself to a man in order to raise up seed", "go unto the vessels", to wit, to the righteous, who are called vessels, as it is written, "be ye clean, ye that bear the vessels of the Lord" (Isa. LII, 11); they are the vessels which mankind will in time to come bring as a present to King Messiah; they are the "vessels of the Lord", in whom the Holy One, blessed be He, rejoices; and although broken vessels, bruised in this world for the sake of observing the Torah, yet the Holy One makes use only of them: "attach thyself to such vessels", Boaz bade Ruth, "and drink", etc.'

R. Jose began a discourse on the verse: "And when Boaz had eaten and drunk, and his heart was merry", etc. (Ruth III, 7). 'His heart was merry,' he said, 'by reason of his having pronounced a benediction over his food; and there is, further, a deeper significance here, to wit, that whoever says a blessing after his meal satisfies his "heart", that which is by him alluded to in the words: "In thy behalf my heart hath said" (Ps. XXVII, 8), also in, "but God is the rock of my heart" (Ibid. LXXIII, 26). For, since the blessing offered up for one's food is precious before the Holy One, blessed be He, whoever pronounces such a blessing after he is satisfied does good and brings joy to "another region". So here "another region" derived enjoyment from the blessing after the meal that the righteous Boaz pronounced, and thus we read, "and his heart was merry". Why pronounce a blessing? It is because the sustenance of man is troublesome, so to speak, for the Almighty, but when the words of the benediction pronounced by a man after eating and drinking ascend on high, that place derives an enjoyment from those words, and so benefit is drawn from the food, both below and above. This is a recondite teaching known to the Companions. Furthermore, on weekdays "that region" enjoys only the words of the after-meal benediction that ascend on high. On Sabbath days, however, there is an enjoying on high of the very food enjoyed on earth by man in virtue of this being part of the holy joy of the Sabbath. There is thus here a merging of the heavenly and the earthly. This recondite teaching is indicated in the passage, "for all things come of thee, and of thine own have we given thee" (I Chron. XXIX, 14), alluding to the enjoyment in heaven of the holy joy in the Sabbath repasts partaken of below. Whoever pronounces the after-meal benediction must do so devotedly, and in a joyful mood unmingled with any tinge of sadness, inasmuch as in giving thanks

he is giving of his own to someone else; and thus, as he gives thanks joyfully and unstintedly, so will sustenance be given to him joyfully and unstintedly. By the benedictions, each commencing with "Blessed art Thou", are sustained the four legions that rule over the four corners of the world. Hence we ought to recite them with heartiness. So Scripture says: "He that hath a bountiful eye shall be blessed, for he giveth of his bread to the poor" (Prov. XXII, 9),

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 218b

where the term yeborakh (shall be blessed) can be read yebarekh (shall-or does-bless); and the verse thus amounts to saying that we should pronounce the after-meal blessing in a bountiful spirit, for through that blessing and our joyousness in uttering it we provide, as it were, sustenance for the poor, to wit, for that region[Tr. note: Malkuth.] that possesses naught of itself, but draws its sustenance from all sides and is made up from all sides. Now, these teachings have only been transmitted to the initiated who are conversant with the sublime mystical doctrines and with the paths of the Torah. Observe now that Boaz was bountiful of heart and free from all presumptuousness. It is thus written of him: "he went to lie down at the end of the heap of corn" (Ruth III, 7). This is esoterically elucidated by the passage: "Thy belly is like a heap of wheat" (S.S. VII, 3), and so we learn from here that whoever pronounces the after-meal grace joyfully and with devotion, when he quits this world there is a place prepared for him in the sacred and mysterious mansions. Happy is the man who gives heed to the precepts of his Master and knows their recondite significance, since there is no precept in the Torah but contains manifold sublime recondite teachings and radiances and resplendencies; but the sons of men know not nor give they heed to the glory of their Master. Happy is the portion of the righteous who are assiduous in the study of the Torah; happy are they in this world and in the world to come.

'Our sages have said that the arrogant and shameless have no portion in this world nor in the world to come. All the arrogant of Israel, when they gazed on the Plate, became contrite of heart and looked inwardly into their own deeds. For the Plate possessed miraculous powers, and thus was the means of making all who looked on it feel ashamed of their misdeeds. In this way the Plate secured atonement for the arrogant and the insolent. The letters of the Divine Name engraved on it stood out shining and flashing, and whoever looked at that flashing had to cast down his eyes in fear, and become contrite of heart, and thus the Plate effected their atonement. Of a similar potency was the Incense. For whoever smelled the smoke of the pillar that ascended from the "smoke-raiser"[Tr. note: One of the ingredients of the incense.] became cleansed of heart and intent on worshipping his Master: the taint of the evil spirit disappeared from him, leaving him to serve with single heart his Father in heaven. The Incense thus possessed the potency of breaking completely the evil spirit in man. As the Plate possessed miraculous powers, so did the Incense, nothing in the world having power to crush the "other side" like the Incense. Thus we read: "Take thy fire-pan, and put fire therein from off the altar, and lay incense

thereon... for there is wrath gone out from the Lord: the plague is begun" (Num. XVII, 11). For there is nothing so beloved by the Holy One, blessed be He, as the Incense. It is able to banish sorcery and all evil influences from the house. Seeing that perfumes prepared by men possess the virtue to counteract, by their odour and fumes, the ill-effects of evil things, how much more so the Incense! It is a firmly established ordinance of the Holy One, blessed be He, that whoever reflects on and recites daily the section of the Incense will be saved from all evil things and sorceries in the world, from all mishaps and evil imaginings, from evil decrees and from death; and no harm will befall him that day, as the "other side" has no power over him. But it must be read with devotion.' R. Simeon remarked: 'Were people to know how precious the offering of the Incense is to the Holy One, blessed be He, they would take every word of the passage where it is enjoined and make it into a crown for their heads, as it were, a crown of gold. And whoever studies it ought to reflect deeply on the way it was carried out; and through the reciting of it daily with devotion a man merits a portion in this world and in the world to come, and keeps away death from himself and from the world, and is saved from all punishments in this world, from the "evil sides", from the punishment of Gehinnom, and from strange powers. When the pillar of smoke ascended from the burning Incense, the priest used to see the mystical letters of the Divine Name

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 219a

ascending on high in that pillar. Then numerous holy legions would surround the pillar on all sides until it rose in the midst of light and gladness to the region where it diffused joy and knitted together the upper world and the lower world in a complete unity, thereby achieving atonement for the evil spirit in man and for idolatry, which is of the "other side".

R. Simeon further discoursed on the verse: "And thou shalt make an altar (mizbeah) to burn incense upon" (Ex. XXX, 1). 'This verse', he said, 'raises a problem, for we find that there were two altars, namely, the altar of burnt-offering and the altar of incense, the former the outer altar and the latter the inner one. Now, why was the altar of incense called mizbeah (lit. slaughtering-place), seeing that it had no connection with animal slaughter? The explanation is that this altar was efficacious in defeating and subduing the numerous powers of the "other side", so as to make them powerless and unable to act as accusers. Hence the name mizbeah (place of slaughter). The "evil side", when it beheld the smoke of the incense ascending in a pillar, was subdued, and fled, and was quite unable to approach the Tabernacle. Now, because that joy was shared by no one beside the Holy One, blessed be He, by reason of this offering being so precious in His sight, that altar was placed in the innermost part of the Tabernacle, for it was the repository of blessings, and was therefore hidden from the eye of man. In regard to this, it is written: "And he stood between the dead and the living; and the plague was stayed" (Num. XVII, 13). For Aaron put the Angel of Death in chains so that he could not exercise dominion nor execute any judgement. It is a traditional teaching that wherever people recite with heartfelt devotion the portion relating

to the incense there will be immunity from death and from injury; nor will any other nation have power over that place. The name, "altar to burn incense upon", further tells us that the altar had to be consecrated by the burning of incense. It further teaches us, in accordance with the Chaldaic rendering, that it is forbidden to burn incense anywhere save on coals of fire taken with the censer from this altar. Observe that whoever is pursued by Rigour needs the remedy of incense-burning to save him, as also repentance before his Master, this helping greatly to keep chastisement away from him. That will assuredly result if the man is accustomed to recite the incense-ordinance twice a day, in the morning and in the evening, corresponding to the precept, "And Aaron shall burn thereon incense of sweet spices; every morning... at dusk, he shall burn it" (Ex. xxx, 7-8). And this service, moreover, perpetually upholds the world, as is indicated in the phrase, "a perpetual incense before the Lord throughout your generations" (Ibid. 8); truly it is a means of upholding both the lower world and the upper world. Where the daily recital of the incense-burning does not take place, there heavenly judgements impend, many people die there, and other nations obtain dominion. Thus Scripture says, "a perpetual incense before the Lord" (Ibid.), indicating that it abides in the presence of the Lord, more than all other modes of worship, it being the most precious and beloved to the Holy One, blessed be He. Prayer, indeed, is the highest service of all, yet is incense-burning dear and acceptable to the Almighty. Observe the difference between prayer and incense-offering. Prayer has been instituted to take the place of the sacrifices that Israel used to offer, but none of the sacrifices had the same value as the incense. There is, further, this difference between the two. Prayer repairs damage which has been done, but incense does more-it strengthens, it binds together, it is the greatest light-bringer. It was incense that removed the evil taint (zuh'ma) and purified the Tabernacle, so that the whole was illumined, renewed, and knitted together into a combined whole. Hence the incense-recital must always precede our daily prayer as a means of removing the evil taint from the world, inasmuch as it acts as a daily therapeutic like the offering itself, in which God delighted. Now we find it written of Moses: "And the Lord said unto Moses: Take unto thee sweet spices, stacte", etc. (Ibid. xxx, 34). Why specifically in this place "unto thee"? It means "for thy sake", that is, "for thy satisfaction and gain". The purification of a woman redounds to the satisfaction of her husband. So, esoterically, we have thus to read that ordinance as saying: "Take unto thee sweet spice for the purpose of removing the evil taint, that the Shekinah and Her Spouse may be joined in sanctified union." Happy thus the portion

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 219b

of Moses! Similarly do we read: "Take thee a bull calf for a sin offering" (Lev. IX, 2), an ordinance meant personally for Aaron to atone for the sin of the golden calf which he brought upon Israel. So here Moses was bidden "Take unto thee", that is, "take for thy benefit and use" the incense (q'toreth), which is potent to bind together (qatar), to illumine and to remove the evil taint. The Daleth is linked to the He', the He to the Vau, the

Vau ascends and is adorned with the He, the He, is illumined by the Yod, and the whole ascends, reaching out to the En-sof (Infinite, Illimitable), so that there results one organic whole, interrelated under one principle, the most exalted of all. From thence and upward the whole is adorned as with a crown by the ineffableness of the En-sof; and the Divine Name in its mysteriousness is illumined and is adorned on all sides, and the worlds are all wrapt in joy, the lamps radiate their lights, and sustenance and blessing pour down on all the worlds. All this follows the hidden virtue of the incense, without which the evil taint would not be removed. All thus depends on it. Observe that the offering of the incense used to precede all other services, and hence its recital should be a prelude to our service of hymns and praises, as these latter do not ascend, nor is the required readjustment and unity achieved until the evil taint is removed. So Scripture says: "And he shall make atonement for the holy place... and because of their transgressions, even all their sins" (Lev. XVI, 16), first "atonement for the holy place" and then for "their transgressions". We, too, thus have first to remove the evil taint and purge the holy place, and then engage in song and hymn and prayer, as already said. Happy are Israel in this world and in the world to come, inasmuch as they know how to effect adjustment on high and below; to achieve adjustment from the lower world upwards until the whole is bound together in the most sublime union. The process of adjustment performed in the lower world is by means of the impressed letters of the Ineffable Name by which the Holy One, blessed be He, is named.'

R. Simeon and R. Eleazar his son were one night sitting together studying the Torah. Said R. Eleazar to his father, R. Simeon: 'It is written: "Unto the woman he said: I will greatly multiply thy pain and thy travail, in pain thou shalt bring forth children; and thy desire shall be to thy husband", etc. (Gen. III, 16). We have learned that this passage contains a profound mystical teaching. One may comprehend this passage in its terrestrial significance, but what corresponds in the supernal world?' R. Simeon cited the verse: "As the hart panteth after the water brooks", etc. (Ps. XLII, 2). 'This verse has already been expounded,' he said. 'There is, however, a certain female animal that has under her daily charge a thousand keys, and that pants continually after the water brooks to drink and quench her thirst, of which it is thus written, "As the hart panteth after the water brooks." It is to be observed that this verse commences with a masculine subject, "hart" ('ayyal), and continues with a feminine predicate, tha'erog (she panteth). The recondite explanation of this is that it is an allusion to the male-female as one undivided and inseparable; and so it is the female part of the same that "panteth for the water brooks" and then becomes impregnated from the male element, and is in labour, coming under the scrutiny of Rigour. But at the moment when she is about to be delivered of offspring the Holy One, blessed be He, prepares for her a huge celestial serpent through whose bite she is safely delivered. And this is the hidden meaning of, "I will greatly multiply thy pain and thy travail", for she is in daily convulsions and pain because of the deeds of mankind: "in pain thou shalt bring forth children", a hidden allusion to the Serpent who casts a gloom over

the faces of mankind; "and thy desire shall be to thy husband": this is in harmony with the expression, "she panteth for the water brooks"; "and he shall rule over thee": this has been already expounded elsewhere. Why all this? It was on account of the Moon's dissatisfaction with her state, in punishment for which, as tradition teaches us, her light was diminished, also her power was reduced so that she is beholden to what they grant her from outside. It may be asked, Why is the Serpent necessary in this connection? It is because it is he who opens the passage for the descent of souls into the world. For if he did not open the way, no soul would come down to animate a man's body in the world. So Scripture says, "sin coucheth at the door" (Gen. III, 7), alluding to the celestial door through which pass the souls at birth to emerge into this world. He, the Serpent, waits at that door. It is true, when the souls about to emerge are such as are to enter sanctified bodies, he is not present, having no dominion over such souls. But otherwise, the Serpent bites, and that spot is defiled and the soul passing through is unpurified. Herein is concealed a sublime mystical teaching. "In pain thou shalt bring forth children" is a mystical allusion to that Serpent, as it is

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 220a

with him that She brings forth souls, since he is responsible for the body and she for the soul, and the two are combined. The Serpent is destined in the future to bring about the birth of the whole of the bodies before its own time comes, as Scripture says: "Before she travailed, she brought forth" (Isa. LXVI, 7). For, whereas the period of the serpent's gestation is seven years, that will be at the end of six. And at that hour, when he will have brought about their birth, he himself will die. Of this, Scripture says: "He will swallow up death for ever" (Ibid. xxv, 8), also "Thy dead shall live, my dead bodies shall arise" (Ibid. XXVI, 19).' Said R. Simeon: 'At the time when the dead will be awakened and be in readiness for the resurrection in the Holy Land, legions upon legions will arise on the soil of Galilee, as it is there that the Messiah is destined to reveal himself. For that is the portion of Joseph, and it was the first part of the Holy Land to be destroyed, and it was thence that the exile of Israel and their dispersion among the nations began, as Scripture says, "but they are not grieved for the hurt of Joseph" (Amos VI, 6). Thus there they will rise up first, for the reason that it is the portion of him who was put in an ark, as it says, "and he was put in an ark in Egypt" (Gen. I, 26), and subsequently was buried in the Holy Land, as it says "And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem" (Jos. XXIV, 32); and he it was who kept the purity of the holy covenant symbol in a special degree. As soon as they will rise from the dead all those hosts will march, each man to the portion of his ancestors, as Scripture says, "and ye shall return every man unto his possession" (Lev. xxv, 10). They shall recognize each other, and God will clothe every one in embroidered garments; and they will all come and offer up thanksgiving to their Master in Jerusalem, where there will assemble multitudes upon multitudes. Jerusalem itself will spread out in all directions, to a further extent even than when the exiles returned there. When they assemble and offer up praises to

their Master the Holy One, blessed be He, will rejoice in them. So Scripture says: "And they shall come and sing in the height of Zion, and shall flow unto the goodness of the Lord", etc. (Jer. XXXI, 12), namely, every one to his portion and the portion of his ancestors. And the possession of Israel will extend till it will reach Damietta of the Romans, and even there they will study the Torah. All this has already been stated, and it is in harmony with the Scriptural passage, saying: "Awake and sing, ye that dwell in the dust", etc. (Isa. XVI, 19). Blessed be the Lord for evermore! Amen and Amen!

PQUEDE

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE, EVEN THE TABERNACLE OF THE TESTIMONY, AS THEY WERE RENDERED ACCORDING TO THE COMMANDMENT OF MOSES, ETC. R. Hiya, in this connection, quoted the verse: "All the rivers run into the sea, yet the sea is not full" (Eccles. I, 7). 'Esoterically speaking', he said, 'all the rivers here allude to the sacred brooks and springs which, when filled, pour forth to supply the great ocean. This in turn, when so filled, flows over and affords drink to all the "beasts of the field". These are the lower Chariot group, for, after the ocean has drawn in all the waters it lets them out towards one side, namely, towards the lower Holy Chariots, giving them drink. Now, these are all numbered and noted by name, as we read: "He calleth them all by name" (Isa. XL, 26). Similarly, "These are the accounts of the tabernacle, even the tabernacle of the testimony".'

R. Jose cited here the verse: "Oh how abundant is thy goodness, which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee" (PS. XXXI, 20). 'How greatly incumbent', he said, 'it is on the sons of men to reflect on and to study the ways of the Holy One, blessed be He, inasmuch as day by day

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 220b

a voice goes forth and proclaims: "O ye people of the world, take heed unto yourselves, close the gates of sin, keep away from the perilous net before your feet are caught in it!" A certain wheel [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Exodus, 95b.] is ever whirling continuously round and round. Woe to those whose feet lose their hold on the wheel, for then they fall into the Deep which is predestined for the evildoers of the world! Woe to those who fall, never to rise and enjoy the light that is stored up for the righteous in the world to come! Happy are the righteous in the world to come, for many are the effulgences treasured up for them, many the felicities reserved for them. The verse continues: "which thou hast wrought for them that take refuge in thee in the sight of the sons of men". The word "wrought" refers to the fact that God wrought the light as the medium for the creation of the world. "For them that take refuge in thee", to wit, for those who dwell underneath the shadow of the Holy One, blessed be He; "in the sight of the sons of men", inasmuch as it is the functioning of this light that makes possible the existence of mankind, who are sustained by it despite the fact that the light itself is stored away. Again, "which thou hast wrought", viz. as a medium for the construction of the world according to an orderly plan; and similar to the

construction of the world was the construction of the Tabernacle. This is indicated by the similarity of the phrase, "these are the accounts of the tabernacle", and "these are the generations of the heaven and the earth". For all the generations of heaven and earth were produced by the energy of that treasured-up Light; and likewise, all that came within the "accounts of the tabernacle" was accomplished by the same energy. How do we know this? Because Scripture says, "And Bezalel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah", he being of the "right side"; "and with him was Oholiab", who was of the "left side", for the Tabernacle was made by the energy of both the right side and the left side, and was finally erected by Moses, who united the two.'

R. Eleazar discoursed on the verse: "And a throne is established through mercy, and there sitteth thereon in truth, in the tent of David, one that judgeth, and seeketh justice, and is ready in righteousness" (Isa. XVI, 5). 'This has been explained as follows', he said. 'When the Thought arose with glad purpose from the Most Recondite and Unknowable, that gladness impinged on the Thought, so that the latter entered more and more deeply until it was secluded in the interior of a certain supernal undisclosed Palace. [Tr. note: Binah.] It is from thence that there flow forth, first all the rivers of the "right side", and after them the others. On the "right side" it was that the Lower Throne was established, since the Holy One, blessed be He, established that Throne "through mercy, and there sitteth thereon in truth". The Throne is the bearer of the seal, the impress of which is Truth, and the Holy One sits on that Throne only in virtue of that seal; "in the tent of David", which is identical with the Lower Throne. "One that judgeth" is from the side of Rigour; "and seeketh judgement", from the side of Mercy; "and is ready in judgement", alluding to the Throne of Judgement, which is on earth. Similarly, the Tabernacle was established only on this side of Mercy, as already said; and thereby were adjusted all the affairs of the lower world.'

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE, EVEN THE TABERNACLE OF THE TESTIMONY, AS THEY WERE RENDERED ACCORDING TO THE COMMANDMENT OF MOSES. R. Simeon discoursed here on the verse: "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth" (Gen. I, 1). 'This verse', he said,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 221a

'has been already expounded from various aspects. However, when the Holy One, blessed be He, created this world, He created it after the pattern of the supernal world. All the aspects of the upper world he established in the lower, so that the two worlds should be firmly knitted together. Furthermore, the Holy One, when about to create the world, used the Torah as a copy, and also the Divine Name, which is the epitome of the Torah, and by it firmly established the world. By three energies is the world upheld, to wit, by Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge. So Scripture says: "The Lord by wisdom founded the earth, by understanding he established the heavens. By his knowledge the depths were broken up" (Prov. III, 19-

20). Observe that with the same three the Tabernacle was built, as it is written: "And I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom and in understanding, and in knowledge" (Ex. XXXI, 3); and all these three are indicated in the story of Creation. Thus, "In the beginning" corresponds to Wisdom; "God created" hints at Understanding; "the heaven" to Knowledge. Similarly, in the account of the Tabernacle, "These are the accounts of the tabernacle" points to Wisdom; "even the tabernacle of testimony" points to Understanding; "as they were rendered according to the commandment of Moses" points to Knowledge. The two thus correspond to each other. Now, when God commanded Moses to make the Tabernacle, Moses stood bewildered, not knowing how to proceed until God showed him an actual representation of it. We thus read: "And see that thou make them after their pattern, which is being shown thee in the mount" (Ex. xxv, 40). We learn from the phrase, "after their pattern", that the Holy One showed Moses each single part of it in its exact supernal form, after which Moses constructed the earthly Tabernacle. Why does Scripture say, "which thou art shown (mor'eh) on the mount" instead of "which thou seest (roeh)"? By this we learn that Moses was shown through a dark glass, as it were, the reflection of all the parts of the Tabernacle as they existed on high, and as they were to be constructed here below. Moses, on surveying them, was somewhat perplexed, so God said to him: "O Moses, do thou follow thy indications and I will follow mine." Moses then commenced the work without misgiving.

'When he had completed the whole work it was necessary for him to make an inventory of all the parts in order that the Israelites should not say that there was a surplus of silver or gold which he was keeping back for himself. He had thus to render an account in the presence of Israel according to the injunction, "and ye shall be clear before the Lord and before Israel" (Num. XXXII, 22). Hence it is written: "These are the accounts of the tabernacle, even the tabernacle of the testimony." For, indeed, the Holy Spirit made the whole of Israel see the amount of gold and silver offered by them; and then rendered account of them, calling out: "All the gold that was used for the work... And the silver of them that were numbered in the congregation was a hundred talents...." For the Holy One, blessed be He, was well pleased with those artificers and thus desired to demonstrate their trustworthiness before all. When the work of the Tabernacle was completed, the "other side" began going to and fro to see if he could not find something wrong, but he could discover no ground to impugn the honesty of the artificers; and the Holy One, blessed be He, made him do obeisance to Moses, and forced him against his will to acknowledge the correctness of the accounts. The integrity of the artificers was thus revealed to all; and this is the inward significance of the sentence, "These are the accounts of the tabernacle". It is also written, "as they were rendered according to the commandment of Moses", which signifies that by the order of Moses a complete account was rendered of all that concerned the Tabernacle in the presence of himself and the whole of Israel.'

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE, EVEN THE TABERNACLE OF TESTIMONY. The term "tabernacle" is mentioned twice: once in reference to the one on high, and once in reference to the one below. What constituted the "testimony"? In regard to this, Scripture says, "even the tribes of the Lord (YH), as a testimony unto Israel" (Ps. CXXII, 4), whence we learn that that Divine Name is a testimony unto Israel. Verily, these two letters render testimony in every place. Hence "tabernacle" is used as the symbol of this holy name. [Tr. note: Kah, which is the name of Binah.] To this allusion is made in the words, "and my testimony that I shall teach them" (Ibid. CXXXII, 12), inasmuch as it is a spot hidden and undisclosed beyond all other spots.

AS WAS RENDERED ACCORDING TO THE COMMANDMENT OF MOSES. This refers to the testimony, not to the Tabernacle, and we should render "which was entrusted to the mouth of Moses". For after the departure from this world of the patriarchs and all the heads of the tribes, to wit, the sons of Jacob, during Israel's sufferings in exile, the knowledge of the mystery of that supernal Divine Name was forgotten by them, the Name bound up with the testimony, the Name composed of those two letters which are the basis of heaven and earth, of high and low, and of all corners of the universe. But when Moses came, that Name was once more sought after and mentioned. For when he was near the thorn-bush he straightway asked concerning that Name, saying, "and they shall say to me, What is his name? what shall I say unto them?" (Ex. III, 13). It was there that that Name was entrusted to the mouth of Moses. We read further: THROUGH THE SERVICE OF THE LEVITES. The inner significance of this is supplied by the passage: "But the Levite shall serve Hu (lit. He)" (Num. XVIII, 23), which is an emblem of the Holy Name. Therein is enclosed the mystery of the Divine Name, which is characterized by "He" (hu), and not "Thou" (attah). The Tabernacle is thus fitly identified with the "service of the Levites". Or we may also say that the Tabernacle is the "service of the Levites", inasmuch as they carried it on their shoulders from place to place, as Scripture says: "But unto the sons of Kehath he gave none, because the service of the holy things belonged unto them: they bore them upon their shoulders" (Num. VII, 9).

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE, EVEN THE TABERNACLE OF TESTIMONY. R. Abba began a discourse on the verse: "And it shall come to pass in that day, that the root of Jesse, that standeth for an ensign of the peoples, unto him shall the nations seek, and his resting-place shall be glorious" (Isa. XI, 10). 'In that day', he said, 'when peace will flourish in the world, the root of the Tree of Life will be confirmed, and from it shall all the terrestrial roots ramify and draw strength. "That standeth for an ensign of the people"; to wit, as a sign and symbol of the inwardness of the Divine Name. "Unto him shall the nations seek"; inasmuch as in him is contained the mystery of the Divine Name. The same is indicated in the words; "And many people shall go and say: Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord", etc. (Ibid. II, 3). "And his resting-place shall be glorious", to wit, the Temple, of which it is written: "This is my resting-place for ever" (Ps. CXXXII, 14). Now, the

resting-place of the root of Jesse, which is called "the glory of the Lord", will never be within the bounds of numbering and calculation. For blessing rests not upon what is counted, but only on what is beyond number. Observe that that Tabernacle was subjected to an inventory, and hence it needed the prayer of Moses for blessings to rest upon it, as Scripture says: "And Moses blessed them" (Ex. XXXIX, 42). What blessing did he pronounce? He said: "Let it be His will that blessing should rest on your handiwork." Yet blessings did not rest on that Tabernacle until Moses joined it to the heavenly Tabernacle. So Scripture says: "These are the accounts of the tabernacle, even the tabernacle of the testimony, as they were rendered according to the commandment of Moses." The last words indicate that without the supervision of Moses the accounts could not have been rendered.'

R. Abba continued: 'We find it written that the woman of Zarephath said to Elijah:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 222a

"As the Lord thy God liveth, I have not a cake, only a handful of meal in the jar, and a little oil in the cruse" (I Kings XVII, 12). Now, a "handful" forms a definite measure, hence it was not fitting that any blessing should rest upon the cruse. Nevertheless, we are told further: "For thus saith the Lord, the God of Israel: The jar of meal shall not be spent, neither shall the cruse of oil fail, until the day that the Lord will give rain upon the land" (Ibid. 14); and so it was. Now if that meal, though measured out and known to consist of a handful, yet did not fail to receive blessing in virtue of the word spoken by Elijah, how much the more so here, in regard to the Tabernacle of the testimony, notwithstanding its having been subjected to numbering, was it meet that blessings should rest on it since its inventory was made by Moses himself!

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE. R. Hezekiah adduced here the verse: "Draw not nigh hither, put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground" (Ex. III, 5). 'This verse', he said, 'has been explained as an injunction to Moses to separate from his wife so as to cleave to the Shekinah. The term "holy ground" denotes the Shekinah, to whom Moses attached himself at that moment. The Holy One, blessed be He, thus bound him to Himself in heavenly love and affection, made him, as it were, steward of the House, so that he had only to order and the Holy One would execute that decree, as when he said, "and the ground shall open her mouth", etc. (Num. XVI, 30), and we are told, "And it came to pass as he made an end of speaking... that the ground did cleave asunder" (Ibid. 31); or again, as when he said, "Rise up, O Lord... Return, O Lord" (Ibid. x, 35-36). It is thus written: "as they were counted (puqqad) under the commandment of Moses", for it was under the command of Moses that the whole was accomplished and the sum of it counted. The word piqude (numberings) here contains an allusion to the message which God gave to Moses, saying: "I have indeed taken count (paqod paqadti) of you" (Ex. III, 16). For it was Moses who constituted the voice that uttered the message which heralded the departure of Israel from exile.'

AND BEZALEL, THE SON OF URI, THE SON OF HUR, OF THE TRIBE OF JUDAH, ETC. Said R. Judah: It has been laid down that Bezalel was of the "right side", and so it was he who perfected the whole work. Furthermore, since Judah was ruler and king over the rest of the tribes, it thus fell to a descendant of his to construct the Tabernacle. It has already been explained that the name Bezalel is a compound of two words, signifying "in the shadow of God", and thus indicates the "right side". Further, from this side Bezalel possessed himself of the wisdom to do all the work. AND WITH HIM WAS OHOLIAB, THE SON OF AHISAMACH, OF THE TRIBE OF DAN. Oholiab symbolized the "left side", the side of Rigour. The Tabernacle was thus made out of the two sides and upheld by both, so as to be a combination and a balancing of the Right and the Left.' R. Judah further cited in regard to this the verse: "Beautiful bowery, [Tr. note: The Zohar takes noph in its post-Biblical sense of branch, part of the tree] the joy of the whole earth; even Mount Zion, the uttermost parts of the north, the city of the great king" (Ps. XLVIII, 3). 'Observe', he said, 'that when the Holy One, blessed be He, was about to create the world, He detached one precious stone from underneath His Throne of Glory and plunged it into the Abyss, one end of it remaining fastened therein whilst the other end stood out above; and this other and superior head constituted the nucleus of the world, the point out of which the world started, spreading itself to right and left and into all directions, and by which it is sustained. That nucleus, that stone, is called sh'thyiah (foundation), as it was the starting-point of the world. The name sh'thyiah, furthermore, is a compound of shath (founded) and Kah (God), signifying that the Holy One, blessed be He, made it the foundation and starting-point of the world and all that is therein.'

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 222b

Now, the earth's expansion round the central point was completed in three concentric rings, each of a different hue and texture. The first ring, the nearest to the Point, is of the purest and most refined earth-material; the second expansion, surrounding the first, is of a less polished, less refined earth-material than the first, but is superior to the one surrounding it; the third expansion consists of the darkest and coarsest earth-material of all. Then, surrounding that expansion, come the waters of the ocean that surrounds the whole world. Thus the point is in the centre, and the various expansions encircle it. The first expansion embraces the Sanctuary and all its courts and enclosures and all its appurtenances, as well as the whole city of Jerusalem bounded by the wall; the second expansion embraces the whole of the Land of Israel, the Land which was declared holy; the third expansion comprehends the rest of the earth, the dwelling-place of all the other nations. Then comes the great ocean which surrounds the whole. The whole arrangement is symbolized by the structure of the human eye. For just as in the human eye there are three concentric layers surrounding a central point, which forms the focus of vision, so is the world's vision focused in the central point, consisting of the Holy of Holies and the Ark and the Mercy Seat. Hence the description, "a beautiful bowery, the joy of the whole earth", "beautiful" in its

appearance, and radiating joy to the whole world. It is compared to a "bowery" because the beauty of a tree is displayed in its branches. Observe that true beauty and symmetry were not manifested in the world until the Tabernacle was finally erected and the Ark brought within the Holy of Holies. From that moment the world appeared at its best, it attained its just balance, and a way was opened through the Tabernacle and past the Ark up to that Point, that "beautiful bowery, the joy of the whole earth". When that point was reached the Ark broke forth, saying: "This is my resting-place for ever; here will I dwell, for I have desired it" (Ps. CXXXII, 14).' R. Jesse said: 'This verse was uttered by the Community of Israel when the Temple was built and the Ark entered into its place.' R. Hezekiah said: 'It is the Holy One, blessed be He, who utters this verse, applying it to the Community of Israel when the latter performs His will. For at such a time the Holy One, blessed be He, ascends His Throne of Glory, and has compassion on the world, and blessings and peace and love are there, so that He says: "This is my resting-place for ever", etc. Now, observe that once the artisans had begun the work of the Tabernacle, it veritably completed itself of its own accord. This we learn from the words, "Thus was finished all the work of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting" (Ex. XXXIX, 32). The same happened in the creation of the world, of which it is likewise written: "And the heaven and the earth were finished" (Gen. II, 1). This, it is true, seems to conflict with the statement that "on the seventh day God finished his work which he had made" (Ibid. 2.) But the truth is, that although the several parts of the world completed themselves one by one, yet the world in its entirety was only completed and firmly established when the seventh day came. For then did the Holy One, blessed be He, with it knit together the world into a complete whole, so that it could be written, "And on the seventh day God finished his work which he had made." It was the same with the building of the Temple. The artisans having begun their work, it showed them what was to be done, as it were, before their eyes; it was traced out in their sight, and it completed itself of its own accord.' [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen. 74a.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 223a

AND BEZALEL, THE SON OF URI, THE SON OF HUR. Tradition tells us that it was the Holy Spirit who made this announcement in the presence of Israel, proclaiming: "And Bezalel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made all that the Lord commanded Moses." AND WITH

HIM WAS OHOLIAB, THE SON OF AHISAMACH. From the expression, "and with him ('itto)", we learn that Oholiab never performed any work by himself, but always in association with Bezalel. Hence the words, "and with him", which proves that the left is always embraced within the right.

THESE ARE THE ACCOUNTS OF THE TABERNACLE, EVEN THE TABERNACLE OF THE TESTIMONY, AS THEY WERE RENDERED ACCORDING TO THE COMMANDMENT OF MOSES, ETC. R. Jesse said: 'The wise men having completed the Tabernacle, it was requisite that an account should be rendered of all the parts of the work. For what

reason? Because as the account of each work was rendered, so did that work become firmly established in its place. Furthermore, as the Israelites had found delight at first in their voluntary offerings, so were they delighted in the accounts being rendered; and thus their delight helped to the confirming of the work. Now, it is written "these" and not "and these", this signifying that this account eclipsed all previous accounts rendered in the world, and was destined to outlive them, being the one by which the Tabernacle was sustained.' R. Jesse further discoursed on the verse: "And there shall be faithfulness in thy times, strength of salvation, wisdom and knowledge, and the fear of the Lord which is his treasure" (Isa. XXXIII, 6). 'We have been taught', he said, 'that whoever devotes himself to the study of the Torah in this world, and is able to appoint set times for it, must do so in "faithfulness", must direct his mind toward the Holy One, blessed be He, must study for Heaven's sake. The words "strength of salvation" indicate that he must fuse Rigour with Mercy. "Wisdom and Knowledge" are two qualities which merge into one another. "The fear of the Lord is his treasure"; to wit, the treasure which contains the qualities just mentioned. For the fear of the Lord collects all those "brooks" (of wisdom), and so becomes the receptacle of all. And when these treasures issue from it they do so under a vigilant count-taking. That process is thus called "faithfulness", as explained. Verily, if herein faithfulness has to be manifested, how much more so in workaday matters! The Holy One, blessed be He, therefore made the whole of Israel know the inwardness of faithfulness in all things that they performed.'

R. Jose and R. Isaac once were walking together when R. Jose remarked: 'The Holy One, blessed be He, indeed chose Bezalel from all Israel for the work of the Tabernacle. Why so?' R. Isaac replied: 'There is something in a name. It has been laid down that God has appointed certain names here on earth to be a crown to men and to enable them to achieve certain things.' R. Jose thereupon said: 'A more recondite explanation is as follows. Judah was of the "left side", but then attached himself to the "right side", and so the Tabernacle was begun from the "left side" and then was joined to the "right side", so that the whole was transformed into the "right". Reuben, on the other hand, began on the "right" but turned aside to the "left", and the other tribes of his company marched together with him, they also belonging to the "left". Hence Bezalel, who was of the tribe of Judah, and thus of the "right side", made the Tabernacle and completed it. As already said, the Holy One, blessed be He, took delight in him and chose him above all the rest

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 223b

for this work, and gave him wisdom and understanding and knowledge, inasmuch as he already was possessed of all wisdom of heart, as it is written: "and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted I have put wisdom" (Ex. XXXI, 6). For the Holy One, blessed be He, does not grant wisdom save to him that already has wisdom.' R. Simeon said: 'The name Bezalel was emblematic, and he was called so in virtue of his wisdom; esoterically the name is composed of b'zel-El (in the Shadow of God). In the verse, "As an apple tree

among the trees of the wood... under its shadow I delighted to sit" (S.S. II, 3), the words, "under its shadow" (b'zilo), are an allusion to Bezalel, who made the Tabernacle, which is a delightful place wherein to sit, for it gives delight to the Community of Israel, and the Community of Israel sits under the shadow of God. Hence, "And Bezalel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur", "the son of Uri" denoting one of the right, and "the son of Hur" one of the left. And so, through him, full atonement was made for the sin of the Golden Calf.

ALL THE GOLD THAT WAS MADE: that is to say, that was destined for the purpose long before. FOR THE WORK IN ALL THE HOLY WORK; indicating that gold had to be used in the working out of each separate grade, for the reason that completeness can only be reached through the working together of Severity and Mercy. Hence gold had to go into all the work connected with the Sanctuary.

R. Abba, R. Jose, and R. Hizkiah were once sitting together studying the Torah. Said R. Hizkiah to R. Abba: 'Since we see that the Holy One, blessed be He, finds delight in dealing out stern judgement, tempering mercy therewith, why, then, does He withhold it from sinners?' R. Abba answered: 'Many mountains have been uprooted [Tr. note: Cf. the Talmudic phrase, "uprooter of mountains"=ingenious dialectician.] on this question. But the Sacred Lamp (R. Simeon) has revealed a number of truths in regard to this matter. Observe that the severity of judgement in which the Holy One, blessed be He, delights, is of the judgement fully clarified, the judgement that evokes clemency and gladness. But the sinners in this world are the embodiment of a judgement steeped in defilement, a judgement altogether displeasing to the Holy One, blessed be He. Hence He desires not to mingle holy judgement with defiled judgement until such time as the latter will be exterminated of itself and the sinner thus will be destroyed from the future world; by that very defiled judgement will he be destroyed from the world.' R. Abba illustrated from the verse: "When the wicked spring up as the grass, and when all the workers of iniquity do blossom; it is that they may be destroyed for ever" (Ps. XCII, 8). 'This verse', he said, 'apart from its more obvious meaning, is to be interpreted as follows. When the wicked spring up, it is but as grass, to wit, like grass that is withered in the parched soil, but revives somewhat at the approach of water, and like a felled tree that can still send forth twigs on either side, but can never regain its former foliage. So will the wicked be destroyed for ever and be altogether uprooted. There is this further truth underlying this verse. It is, that the Holy One, blessed be He, is long-suffering with the wicked in this world, because this world is the portion of the "other side", whereas the world to come belongs to the side of holiness, is the portion of the righteous for them to abide therein adorned with the crown of the glory of their Master. These two sides are the counterparts of one another, the one

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 224a

the side of holiness, the other that of defilement; the one destined for the righteous, the other for the wicked. Happy are those righteous who have no portion in this

world but only in the world to come. Observe that all is predisposed and revealed before the Holy One, blessed be He. Even so was it with Balak and Balaam: although the motive of their action [Tr. note: Viz. the building of the altars and the offering of sacrifices.] was not the glory of Heaven, yet was all they did duly recorded before the Lord, who did not diminish aught of their reward in this world. Thus, through the power of the forty-two offerings which they brought on the seven altars, Balak and Balaam obtained for the time being dominion over Israel, so that twenty and four thousand Israelites died by the plague besides those who were slain, as we read: "Take all the chiefs of the people and hang them up unto the Lord in face of the sun.... Slay ye every one his men that have joined themselves unto the Baal of Peor" (Num. XXV 4-5).' R. Simeon said: 'Observe that the forty-two offerings brought by Balaam and Balak were offerings diverted from the "other side" towards the Holy One, blessed be He, and so the "other side", which is called "curse", had to be repaid these offerings from Israel. This is the inner implication of the verse, "And he (Elisha) looked behind him and saw them" (2 Kings II, 24). That is to say, "behind him", meaning the "other side", which stands behind the Shekinah. He turned "and saw them" (the children), as being meet for punishment; "and cursed them in the name of the Lord" (Ibid.), inducing the Divine Name, as it were, to discharge the debt owing to the "other side", for the latter's offerings which had been diverted to Him. Thus all is made right before the Holy One, blessed be He, and not a single act is lost, whether for good or for evil. Take again the act of David in fleeing from before Saul. That was the cause of all the priests of Nob being destroyed, with the sole exception of Abiathar, the son of Zadok, and this in turn was the cause of many evils that befell Israel. Through it Saul and his sons were killed, and many thousands and myriads fell in Israel. But all the time the punishment to be exacted for that sin was hanging over David, until all his descendants perished in one day, with the sole exception of Joash, [Tr. note: V. 2 Kings, XI, 1-2]. who was stolen away from among the slain. Yet was that sin against Nob still awaiting expiation, as indicated in the words: "There is still a day for a halt to be made at Nob" (Isa. x, 32). The same balancing of accounts is indicated in the words here, "All the gold ready-made (he'asui) for the work". What signifies the attribute "ready-made"? It signifies that God foresaw that the Israelites would give up their gold for the making of the Golden Calf, and so made them first give up their gold for the erection of the Tabernacle so as to make good the offering of the other gold. For had the Israelites still possessed all their gold at the time they made the Golden Calf, they would hardly have had to "break off the golden rings which were in their ears" (Ex. XXXII, 3). The offering of the gold for the Tabernacle was thus an atonement for the other gold. [Tr. note: There is here a lacuna in the text.] Hence, "And Bezalel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah", of the side of royalty, "made all that the Lord commanded Moses". For all the craftsmanship of the Tabernacle was achieved through these two, Bezalel performing all the work, and Moses afterwards putting the finishing touch. Moses and Bezalel were both parts, as it were, of one whole, Moses being above and Bezalel underneath, since the end of the body is also part of the body."

R. Jose gave a further exposition of the verse relating to Elisha which says: "And he went up from thence unto Beth-el; and as he was going up by the way, certain youths (ne'arim), little ones", etc. (2 Kings II, 23). 'The term ne'arim (youths)', he said, 'has been expounded to mean empty, [Tr. note: The root, N'R has this meaning only in post-Biblical Hebrew.] that is, empty of any words of the Torah and of any observance of the precepts of the Torah: "little ones",

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 224b

to wit, of little faith, and such as were doomed in this world and in the world to come; "came forth out of the city" (Ibid.), that is, they abandoned the mystery of Divine Faith, the term "city" having the same implication here as in the passage, "and I will not enter the city" (Hos. XI, 9). [Tr. note: Al. the Divine Faith, which is called "city", as in the passage, "in the city of the Lord of hosts, in the city of our God" (Ps. XLVIII, 9)]. "And he looked behind him and saw them" (2 Kings II, 24); that is, he surveyed their future to see whether they would ever turn back from their evil ways, "and he saw them" as being such that were not ever to bring forth any good seed. Again, "and he saw them", that is, he recognized them as such as had been conceived on the night of the Day of Atonement; [Tr. note: When marital relations are forbidden.] straightway, therefore, "he cursed them in the name of the Lord" (Ibid.). Further, "And he turned behind him" signifies that having surveyed them in order to find out whether he would be punished for their sake or not, "he turned behind him", in other words, he found himself turned away and removed from such punishment. Parallel to it is the passage, "and Aaron turned" (Num. XI, 10), signifying that Aaron was turned away and shielded from Miriam's leprosy; "and he saw them", as being destined to perpetrate much evil in Israel. "And he turned behind him" further signifies that he turned his gaze behind the Shekinah, as it says of Lot's wife that she "looked back from behind him" (Gen. XIX, 26), meaning "from behind the Shekinah". Thus Elisha looked behind the Shekinah and discerned that their mothers had conceived them all on the night that presides over the atonement of the sins of Israel. Straightway "he cursed them in the name of the Lord". "And there came forth two bears" (2 Kings II, 24)-she bears, as indicated by the feminine numeral sh'tayim, big with offspring, "and tare forty and two children of them" (Ibid.), in correspondence, as has been explained, to the number of offerings brought by Balak.

'EVEN THE GOLD OF WAVING WAS. Why is the gold characterized as that of "waving"; and why is the silver not so characterized, although the brass is, as it says, "the brass of waving"? The reason is that "waving" signifies "rising upward", and thus distinguishes this gold from the lower and inferior gold. For all the grades and Chariots are of the superior plane, symbolized by the "gold of waving", and this same gold, the further it extends downwards the more it loses in colour, in virtue, and in brilliancy. Whilst in the heights above it is goodly gold in the mystery of its brilliancy, below it is the dross of itself and its refuse. Not so the silver, of which it is simply written, "And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation". For silver retains its virtues, even in its extension

downwards, although it does not remain in the same excellence; whereas gold, in its extension downwards, becomes coarser and coarser. [Tr. note: Gold, in the cabbalistic doctrine, is symbolic of Rigour, or Judgement, which in the higher regions exists in its purity, whilst the more it descends the more it is mingled with the dross of evil, sin, the "other side", or the evil Accuser, etc. But silver is symbolic of Mercy, which is not changed by its descent.] Hence the one had to be waved and raised to the heights, whilst the other had to be extended downwards and into all directions, since it retains its excellence everywhere.'

R. Jose then continued to discourse, citing the verse: "For the Lord God (TETRAGRAMMATON ELOHIM) is a sun and a shield; the Lord giveth grace and glory; no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly" (Ps. LXXXIV, 12). 'The "sun", he said, 'contains the mystery of the Divine Name TETRAGRAMMATON, wherein is the abode of rest of all the grades, whereas "shield" contains the mystery of the Divine Name ELOHIM; the same is indicated in "I am thy shield" (Gen. XV, 1). The two together, sun and shield, constitute thus the mystery of the Divine Name complete: "the Lord giveth grace and glory", so that the whole should merge into a unity. "No good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly". This is in antithesis to the passage saying, "But from the wicked their light is withholden" (Job XXXVIII, 15), and is an allusion to the primordial light, of which it is written, "And God saw the light that it was good" (Gen. I, 4), and so the Holy One, blessed be He, put it away and stored it up, as already said. He treasured it up and withdrew it so that the wicked may not enjoy it, neither in this world nor in the world to come. As for the righteous, "no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly", alluding to that primordial light which "God saw that it was good". Thus that light needed not to ascend and be raised aloft, but only to be disclosed and extended, unlike the other, which is of the "left". This accounts for the one being characterized by "of the waving" and not the other. Hence it simply says: "And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation was a hundred talents."

'Observe this. The "right side" is ever present in the world to sustain it, and to afford it light

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 225a

and blessing. Hence the priest, inasmuch as he is of the "right side", is always in readiness to bless the people. For it is from the "right side" that all the blessings of the world do spring, and the priest takes by right the first share. The priest has thus been assigned to bless both the upper world and the lower. Observe that when the priest spreads his hands at the time he blesses the people, the Shekinah comes and hovers over him and endows him with power. [Tr. note: Lit. fills his hands.] When blessing, the priest raises his right hand above the left, so as to cause the right to prevail over the left. All the grades over which he spreads his hands are thus blessed from the source of all things, from the well called "Righteous". The source of all is the "future world", the sublime source which illumines all faces, whence are kindled all lamps. It has a counterpart in the source and spring of the well

whence all the lower lamps and the lower lights are kindled and radiate. So one corresponds to the other. Hence, when the priest spreads out his hands and begins to pronounce the blessing over the people, the celestial benedictions flowing from the celestial source at once kindle the lamps, all faces are illumined, and the Community of Israel is adorned with celestial crowns, and all those blessings flow down from on high to below.

‘Observe, then, that Moses gave the instructions and Bezalel carried them out, the two being in the esoterica¹ relation of body and final part of body, which is the holy covenant symbol. The Tabernacle was thereby made the centre of the increase of Love and Unity. And the whole was performed in the mystery of the “right side”. Hence, wherever the “right side” dominates the Evil Eye has no power. We thus read, “And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation.” [Tr. note: The Zohar seems to construe this phrase as: “the numbered silver of the congregation.”] For that silver came from the right, and so all and everything were taken count of and numbered.’

R. Isaac put the following question to R. Simeon: ‘Seeing that, as we have learnt, no blessing dwells in whatever is numbered or measured, why were all things connected with the Tabernacle made to be numbered?’ R. Simeon replied: ‘Wherever holiness abides, there, if the act of numbering proceeds from the side of holiness, blessing will abide continuously, and not pass away. This we learn from the tithe, which is a cause of blessing, the reason being that the act of counting is performed for a sacred purpose. How much more so, then, should that be with the Tabernacle, which was a sacred edifice and derived from the side of holiness! But it is not so with worldly matters, such as are not derived from the side of holiness; no blessing rests upon them if they are numbered. For then the “other side”, that is, the Evil Eye, may obtain dominion over them; and wherever the Evil Eye rules there blessings cannot reach. Contrariwise, in holy affairs, through measuring and numbering blessings continuously increase. Hence, “And the silver of them that were counted of the congregation”; indeed, “counted”, without fear of the Evil Eye, without fear of any evil consequences, as the blessings from above rested there upon all. Observe, likewise, that no evil eye had any power over the seed of Joseph, for the reason that Joseph came from the “right side”, and this was the reason that the Tabernacle was made by Bezalel, who belonged to the same grade as Joseph, the grade exhibited in the purity of the holy covenant symbol.’

R. Abba and R. Aha and R. Jose were walking on the way from Tiberias to Sepphoris, when they caught sight of R. Eleazar, who was coming up in the company of R. Hiya. Said R. Abba: ‘Truly, we are now going to have the company of the Shekinah.’ They waited for them until they came up with them. Then R. Eleazar cited the verse: “The eyes of the Lord are toward the righteous, and his ears are open unto their cry” (Ps. XXXIV, 16). ‘This verse’, he said, ‘presents a difficulty. It cannot mean that God’s providence cares for the righteous for to endow them with the goods of this

world, since, indeed, we see so many righteous in this world who cannot procure even so much sustenance as would satisfy the ravens of the air.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 225b

But there is a recondite meaning here. Observe that all beings of this world are known in the upper world, either to one side or to the other side. Those of the side of holiness are known to that side, whose watchful providence is ever towards them. Similarly those belonging to the side of defilement are known to that side, being under its continuous care. Now, when a man is under the care of the side of holiness, the “other side” will never come near him and is powerless to thrust him out of his place, or of whatever he is doing. Thus, “The eyes of the Lord are toward the righteous”, etc., so that the “other side” is powerless to obtain rule over him. Now,’ concluded R. Eleazar, ‘the support of heaven is here with us, we are watched over from on high, and no power from the “other side”, no evil thing, can rule over you.’ Said R. Abba: ‘Behold, we have learned that wherever the holy side hovers, there, despite its association with any act of numbering, blessings will never cease.’ Said R. Eleazar: ‘Assuredly it is so.’ ‘Now’, rejoined R. Abba, ‘behold, Israel is holy and comes from the side of holiness, as we read: “Israel is the Lord’s hallowed portion” (Jer. II, 3); also, “ye shall be holy, for I the Lord your God am holy” (Lev. XIX, 2). Why, then, when David took a census of Israel did death rage among the people, as Scripture says: “So the Lord sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed” (2 Sam. XXII, 15)?’ R. Eleazar said in reply: ‘This was because he did not take from them shekels as a ransom in accordance with the injunction, “then shall they give every man a ransom for his soul unto the Lord, when thou numberest them; and there be no plague among them when thou numberest them” (Ex. xxx, 12) For that which is holy should give a holy ransom, and that holy ransom was not taken from them at the time. Observe that Israel is holy and not meet for numbering, and hence a ransom had to be taken from them, and this could be numbered whilst they themselves were not to be numbered. For holiness is the essence of the highest of grades; and just as to that highest degree of holiness there is attached a lower degree [Tr. note: Malkuth.] that admits of number and computation, so Israel, “the Lord’s hallowed portion”, have to give as ransom something of another degree of holiness, that admits of computation. Esoterically speaking, Israel is the tree that stands in the innermost. The ransom is of another kind of holiness, standing outside and admitting of computation. The latter is thus a shield to the former.’

The company then pursued their journey, and R. Eleazar began to discourse on the verse: “Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor numbered” (Hos. II, 1). ‘The comparison to the sand of the sea’, he said, ‘is of a twofold aspect. First, just as when the sea rages and its waves hurl themselves forward to overwhelm the world, so soon as they encounter the sand of the shore their force is broken and they recede and rage no more, so the nations rage and fume and seek to overwhelm and flood the world; but when they

behold Israel in close attachment to the Holy One, blessed be He, they recede, broken and powerless. Again, as the sand of the sea cannot be numbered or measured, so is Israel. Observe that there is somewhere a measuring hidden away and undisclosed, and similarly a hidden and undisclosed numbering, that measuring and that numbering upholding the upper world and the lower just because the basis of that measuring and of that numbering is beyond anyone's knowledge. This constitutes the all-in-all Divine Faith. Now, Israel on earth does not fall within the scope of number save through the side of something extraneous to themselves; thus it is their ransom that falls within the scope of number. Hence, when Israel are about to be numbered,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 226a

a ransom has to be taken from them, as already said. Thus, when David took a census of Israel without having taken from them a ransom, wrath was provoked and there perished of Israel many hosts and legions. This, then, is the significance of the words, "And the silver of them that were counted of the congregation... for every one that passed over to them that are numbered". It was all consecrated to the work of the Tabernacle. It has been stated that the talents represented one category of number, whilst the shekels represented another category. For there are higher existences who come within a superior kind of number; and there are others who belong to a lower kind.'

R. Eleazar further discoursed on the verse; "A song of ascents; of Solomon. Except the Lord build the house, thy labour is in vain", etc. (Ps. CXXVII, 1). 'This verse', he said, 'was uttered by Solomon at the time when, having begun to build the Temple he became aware that the work proceeded of itself, as it were, in the hands of the labourers. "Except the Lord", he thus said, "build the house", etc. This alludes to the statement that "In the beginning God created heaven and earth" (Gen. I, 1), and tells us that the Holy One, blessed be He, created and garnished this world and fitted it out with all its requirements, thus making it a House. "They labour in vain that build it": this alludes to the streams that come forth and enter the House in order to furnish it with all its needs; try as they may, yet except the Lord of the supernal world make the House and put it in proper order, they labour in vain. "Except the Lord keep the city", etc. (Ibid.). This is in harmony with the verse: "The eyes of the Lord thy God are always upon it, from the beginning of the year even unto the end of the year" (Deut. XI, 12), indicating the providence by which it is guarded on all sides. And though it is also written, "Behold, it is the couch of Solomon; threescore mighty men are about it" (S.S. III, 7), all guarding it, this is "because of dread in the night" (Ibid. 8), to wit, the dread of Gehinnom that confronts it and tries to annihilate it. All thus are standing guard round about it. [Tr. note: The text here repeats the passage from Zohar, Genesis, 65a, commencing, "That unknowable light" to "is called En-Sof ".] When the Thought is illumined, it remains undisclosed and unknowable, but it forms a centre of energies and of expansion in all directions. One outcome of that expansion is the Supernal World, the world of interrogation, as it were, or of the Supreme Utterance,

the world called "Who?", alluded to in "Lift up your eyes on high, and see: Who hath created these?", or in other words, the creative utterance, the Who?, created these; but subsequently it expanded and became the sea, symbolic of the lowest grade, and created a lower world after the pattern of the

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 226b

upper, the two being the counterparts of each other. Hence the guarding of the universe is from above downwards, that is, from the upper world which was formed by the expansion of the Thought. We thus understand the meaning of the passage, saying, "Except the Lord keep the city, the watchman watcheth in vain", "the watchman" referring to the watchman of Israel, [Tr. note: i.e. Metatron, the chief of the angels.] since protection depends not on him but on the higher world. Note that the blue employed in the work of the Tabernacle symbolized the mystery of the upper world, the blue and the purple together symbolized the knitting together of the upper world and the lower.

AND OF THE THOUSAND SEVEN HUNDRED SEVENTY AND FIVE SHEKELS HE MADE HOOKS FOR THE PILLARS, AND OVERLAID THEIR CAPITALS, ETC. We have learned that these shekels escaped the memory of Moses, and he could not recall what use he had made of them until a Voice went forth and declared: "And of the thousand seven hundred seventy and five shekels he made hooks for the pillars", etc. In this connection, R. Hizkiah began a discourse on the verse: "While the king sat at his table, my spikenard sent forth its fragrance" (S.S. I, 12). 'This', he said, 'is an allusion to the Holy One, blessed be He, at the time when He gave the Torah to Israel, when He came to Sinai accompanied by multitudes of holy legions and all the supernal holy beings. The Torah was then given in the midst of flaming fire, itself being written in white fire upon black fire, the letters floating aloft in the air. The first letter of the Torah divided itself into seven hundred and seventy-five parts facing in all directions, all of which were visible aloft in the air within "the letter Vau, the letter which was traced out on every side of the world. These Vaus were upheld by pillars and the pillars were suspended by a miracle with all the Vaus on top of them. For the essence of the Torah is based on the Vau, and these Vaus, which constitute the mystery of the faith of the Torah, are all based on those pillars, which constitute in their turn the mysteries of the books of the Prophets. The supreme Vau is symbolic of the audible Voice, symbolic of the foundation of the Torah, for the Torah emerged from that inner Voice, called Great Voice, of which we read: "These words the Lord spake, etc., with a great voice, and it went on no more" (Deut. v, 22). Observe that that Great Voice is the root of all things, and is the essence of the Holy Divine Name. It is for this reason that it has been laid down that a man may not greet his friend before he has recited his prayer. This is the recondite significance of the verse: "He that blesseth his friend with a loud voice, rising early in the morning, it shall be counted a curse to him" (Prov. XXVII, 14); the prohibition only applies to a blessing that is joined with that which is emblematic of the "great voice", which is the main part of the Divine Name. The mystery of the Torah proceeds, then, from the Great

Voice, which is identical with “the King”, and “whilst the King sat at His table” alludes to the giving of the Law at Mount Sinai. “My spikenard sent forth

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 227a

its fragrance” refers to the Community of Israel, who said: “All that the Lord hath spoken will we do, and obey” (Ex. XXIV, 7); by “the King” is meant the Most High King, as expounded.

‘When the Holy One, blessed be He, was about to bring a flood on the world in order to destroy all flesh, He said to Noah: “It behoves thee to hide thyself, and not to be seen by the Destroyer lest he obtain dominion over thee and none will be able to shield thee.” Subsequently, when the sacrifices brought by Noah were offered up, a fragrance was diffused in the world; but not so sweet as when, later on, Israel stood at Mount Sinai. Then the world was truly filled with a fragrance, and thus the Destroyer was no more to be seen. Indeed, the Holy One, blessed be He, was about to remove altogether the Destroyer from the world, when Israel, after the lapse of only a few days, committed a sin in making the Golden Calf; thus Scripture says: “And the children of Israel stripped themselves of their ornaments from Mount Horeb” (Ex. XXXIII, 6), “their ornaments” signifying the mysteries of the Divine Name with which the Holy One adorned them, but which were now removed from them. The Destroyer thus regained power over the world, inflicting punishment over it, as before.’ R. Jose said: ‘At the flood, what was there for the Destroyer to do, seeing that it was the waters that prevailed? The fact is that no punishment is ever meted out to the world but the Destroyer is in the midst of it all, busying himself among the judgements executed. Likewise here, while the flood wrought havoc, the Destroyer went about in its midst, and indeed “Flood” was his name. The Holy One, blessed be He, thus admonished Noah to hide himself and not let himself be seen.’

AND OF THE THOUSAND SEVEN HUNDRED SEVENTY AND FIVE SHEKELS HE MADE HOOKS (vavim) FOR THE PILLARS. R. Eleazar said: ‘Why vavim (lit. Vaus)? Because the pillars were in the shape of the letter vau; the pillars were of silver, but their capitals were overlaid with gold. For every Vau is of the side of Mercy, and these were all known on high by number; and it is because they belonged to the side of Mercy that they are called Vavim (Vaus); and all besides depended on them. Now each Vau (vau-shaped pillar) consisted of both gold and silver (symbolic of Rigour and Mercy), and they were called “pillars”, for the reason that they stood outside and underneath the Body.’ Said R. Isaac: ‘I was in doubt whether the work referred to in our verse was sacred or profane; for, indeed, there is ground for thinking that it speaks here of profane work from the occurrence of the word “thousand”, which in the analogous passage, “Thou, O Solomon, shalt have the thousand” (S.S. VIII, 12), undoubtedly speaks of mundane things.’ R. Eleazar said in reply: ‘Not so. If these shekels were profane, no Vavim (vau-shaped pillars) would have been made of them. Further (in the Song of Songs), it only mentions “the thousand”, no more, whereas here it is written: “the thousand seven hundred seventy and

five”. Now, what is profane has no share in the side of holiness, but belongs entirely to the “other side”, to that of impurity. Thereon is based the separation (habdalah) which we have to make between the holy and the profane. Yet, for all that and despite their separateness, the holy contains a particle

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 227b

of the “left side”. Thus, “Thou, O Solomon, shalt have the thousand”, signifies the thousand days of unholiness, to wit, the days of Exile (galuth). A thousand days there are of holiness, and, correspondingly, a thousand days of the “other side”. The Companions have thus in regard to this remarked that the days of Exile alluded to are a thousand years; and although Israel may continue in exile longer than a thousand years, yet that will only be an extension of those thousand years designated by the term “thousand days”. Hence it has been declared that the term Solomon (Sh'lama= possessor of peace), in the whole of the Song of Songs, is divine, with the exception of this one which is profane. Now, “the thousand”, in reference to the Tabernacle, alludes to things holy, all the works of the Tabernacle being holy; hence of these shekalim “he made hooks for the pillars”. Observe that it has been laid down that the letter vau, as we have stated elsewhere, symbolizes Mercy, and so wherever it is joined to the Divine Name it indicates an exercise of Mercy. We read, for instance, “And the Lord (V-TETRAGRAMMATON) caused to rain upon Sodom” (Gen. XIX, 24), preceded by, “And the Lord (V-TETRAGRAMMATON) said, Shall I hide from

Abraham...?” (Ibid. XVIII, 17), indicating an exercise of Mercy and Rigour at one and the same time. This explains why, in the account of the Flood, the name Elohim (God) is used throughout, but never “and the Lord” (V-TETRAGRAMMATON). [Tr. note: The text here repeats the passage from Zohar, Genesis, 64b, commencing: “We have been taught that the term” to “evil of eye”.]

‘It is written, “While the king sat at his table”; to wit, in the blissful company of Upper Paradise, which receives its plenitude of beatitudes by an undisclosed channel, and then distributes it into certain brooks; “My spikenard sent forth its fragrance” is an allusion to the hinder sea, which created the lower world after the pattern of the upper, so that a sweet savour of the upper world was diffused and a supernal light radiated throughout. Observe that when the fragrance of that spikenard is wafted on high, it is accompanied by an embrace of love, and the spikenard ascends to attach itself above; and all the sacred Chariots emit a fragrance that is woven into a crown for their adornment. Those sacred Chariots are called “maidens of song”, alluded to in “upon Alamothe (maidens) of song” (Ps. XLVI, 1), as well as in “and maidens without number”. Of the same is written: “Is there any number of his armies” (Job xxv, 3).

HOOKS (vau-shaped tops) FOR THE PILLARS. The vau is symbolic of the male principle. All that exists and ascends with the dignity of anointing on high is of the male principle, which is typified by the vau, the symbol of heaven, which is male; whereas all below

are called female. Hence all that proceed from the “left side” are of the side of the female; and it is they who have been appointed to preside over song, and continuously intone chants. This is indicated in “upon the Alamothe (maidens) of song”. These come under the mystic symbolism of the letter he, and they bring forth many hosts after their kind through the mystic symbolism of the letter vau, the letter symbolic of the male principle upon whom falls the task of providing food for the female. Hence all those vavim (vaus) that Bezalel made over the pillars that represented the female principle. These spring from the mystery of the number thousand, which is a complete number, as well as seven hundred, also a complete number, and, further, from the number five and from seventy, all of which represent together one mystery. Thus, out of that mystery, and that number, he made the vavim (vaus); so all was made with a deep symbolism, and according to a certain calculation.’

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 228a

AND THE BRASS OF THE WAVING WAS SEVENTY TALENTS. Said R. Judah: ‘All this descends here below in the supernal image, containing the mystery of Faith. To the same pattern did Nebuchadnezzar make the image that he erected.’ R. Jose said: ‘It was not the image he made that was after the same pattern, but the image that he saw in his dream, an image made of gold, of silver and brass. Now, iron and clay were not worthy to enter into the work of the Tabernacle, but only those three metals. There is a recondite significance in the triad of metals. There were other materials that formed into tetrads, as the four fabrics consisting of blue, purple, scarlet, and fine linen, or the four rows of stones (in the breastplate).’ R. Judah said: ‘Some of them formed into threes, some into fours, some into twos, and again others were kept single. Nevertheless, an Order proper consists of a triad. [Tr. note: The text here repeats the passage from Zohar, Gen., 159a, commencing: “There are three orders,” to “perfect unity” [159b]]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 228b

‘The world is divided between forty-five varieties of light, seven of which are assigned to the seven abysses. Each light impinges on its Abyss, where there is a great rolling of stones, and penetrates into and pierces those stones so that water issues from them. The light impinges on the four sides of the Abyss, and then each light becomes entwined with the next and they join together and divide the waters, and all the seven lights overwhelm the seven Abysses, and hover over the darkness of the Abysses so that the light and darkness intermingle. Then the waters rush up and down, and there is a fusion of light and darkness and waters, from which emerge lights in which darkness is not intermingled. The lights then impinge on each other, with the result that they split into seventy-five channels of the Abyss along which waters course. Each channel roars with a sound peculiar to itself, so that there is a quivering of all the Abysses. At the sound of the roaring each Abyss calls to its neighbour, saying: “Divide thy waters”. Thus Scripture says: “Deep calleth unto deep at the voice of thy cataracts” (Ps. XLII, 8). Underneath these there are the three hundred

and sixty-five veins, some white, some black, some red, all of which intertwine and fuse into one colour. These veins are woven into seventeen nets, each of which is called a net of veins, and descend to the nethermost parts of the Abyss. Underneath these there are two nets of the appearance of iron and another two nets of the appearance of brass. Over above them there are two thrones, one on the right and one on the left. All these nets join into one, and water flows from these channels and enters the nets. As for the two thrones, one is the throne of the black firmament and the other of the variegated firmament. When the nets ascend, they go by the way of the throne of the black firmament, and when they descend they go by the way of the throne of the variegated firmament. The throne of the black firmament is on the right, and the throne of the variegated firmament is on the left. When the nets ascend by the throne of the black firmament, the throne of the firmament of the left lowers itself, and they descend by it, as the two thrones balance one another. Thus all the nets descend by means of them and enter into the nethermost parts of the Abyss. Then one of the thrones rises above all the Abysses and the other throne lowers itself underneath all the Abysses.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 229a

Between these two thrones whirl themselves all the Abysses, and all those channels are fixed between these two thrones. There are seventy-five channels, seven of which are higher than the rest, which, however, are attached to them, and all of them pass through the wheels of the two thrones on either side. Their waters course upwards and downwards. The downward-coursing waters form caves in the Abysses and cleave them asunder, while the upward-coursing waters enter into the caverns of the stones and continue rising until they fill them, which happens once in seven years. So far the seven varieties of lights with their profound symbolism.

‘The “brass of waving”, previously mentioned, represents the so-called “Brass-Mountains”, and the “sockets of brass” represent the gates through which entrance is made to the King. Now of that brass were made all the ministering vessels of the altar. They are, indeed, ministers to the altar, because when the souls of men come up on the altar it is they that execute the service of the altar, and help it to perform its function, and hence they are named “vessels of the altar”. All those “pins of the Tabernacle”, and vessels, are specified by name as vessels of service, to serve in the Sanctuary. Hence they all stand as appointed chieftains and Chariot legions and heavenly spirits, each in its rank. They are, moreover, all numbered, their numbers being kept within certain Sacred Palaces. There is an interaction of gold and gold, silver and silver, brass and brass. The brass here below derives its power from the supernal brass, and so with the rest. Besides, all those varieties are interfused with each other, the clasps of gold binding together the curtains, the clasps of brass binding the Tabernacle, all being ranged opposite each other. Moreover, the clasps scintillated in the Tabernacle as the stars scintillate in the firmament, the fifty golden clasps and the fifty brazen clasps in rows facing each other. Also, out of the supernal light there was emitted a spark which penetrated within a dark

speculum, that spark being a fusion of all colours of light and called "purple" (argaman). Then that "purple" impinged on that non-luminous light, causing it to emit another dull spark. The two were fused, and out of the fusion were formed the sacred robes in which Michael the High Priest was attired. When thus attired in these robes of glory he enters to minister in the Sanctuary, but not otherwise, just as we read of Moses that he "entered into the midst of the cloud, and went up into the mount" (Ex. XXIV, 18). We have learnt that Moses had first to attire himself in the cloud as in a robe, and only then could he go up into the mount, not otherwise. So the High Priest could not enter the Sanctuary unless robed in the priestly garments. And it is because they are emanations of the supernal mysteries, and are made after the supernal pattern, that they are called "residual garments" (bigde ha-s'rad), inasmuch as they were made of what has been left over of the supernal robes, of the residue of the ethereal celestial splendours, of the "blue" and "purple", the hues of the mystery of the Divine Name, called the Name Perfect, to wit, TETRAGRAMMATON ELOHIM, as also of "scarlet red", thus comprising the colours, red, blue, and purple. Only thus clad could he enter into the innermost without being thrust out. All was made with a mystic significance, so that all things should bear the supernal pattern. Hence it is written: "The residual garments for ministering in the holy place" (Ibid. XXXIX, 41), for it is only when the supernal colours reside in them that Scripture says of them, "the holy garments

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 229b

are they" (Lev. XVI, 4.) Of Israel, also, Scripture says: "Israel is the Lord's hallowed portion, the first-fruits of the increase" (Jer. II, 3), thus calling Israel holy, for the reason that in Israel are to be seen all shades of colour, as displayed by Priests, Levites, and Israelites; and these are the colours which may be exhibited in the inner holy place.

'Observe that man's soul does not ascend to appear before the Holy King unless she is first worthy to be attired in the supernal raiment. Likewise, the soul does not descend into this world until clad in the garments of this world. Similarly, the holy heavenly angels, of whom it is written, "Who makest thy angels into winds and thy ministers into flaming fire" (Ps. CIV, 4), when they have to execute a message in this world do not come down to it before they clothe themselves in the garments of this world. The attire thus has always to be in harmony with the place visited; and the soul, as we have said, can only ascend when clad in ethereal raiment. Adam in the Garden of Eden was attired in supernal raiment, of celestial radiancy. As soon as he was driven from the Garden of Eden and had need of forms suited to this world, "the Lord God", Scripture says, "made for Adam and for his wife garments of skin ('or), and clothed them" (Gen. III, 21). Formerly they were garments of light ('or), to wit, of the celestial light in which Adam ministered in the Garden of Eden. For, inasmuch as it is the resplendency of the celestial light that ministers in the Garden of Eden, when first man entered into the Garden, the Holy One, blessed be He, clothed him first in the raiment of that light. Otherwise he could not have entered there. When driven out, however, he had need of other garments; hence "garments of skin". So here

also "they made residual garments to minister in the holy place", so as to enable the wearer to enter the Sanctuary. Now, it has been already taught that a man's good deeds done in this world draw from the celestial resplendency of light a garment with which he may be invested when in the next world he comes to appear before the Holy One, blessed be He. Apparelled in that raiment, he is in a state of bliss and feasts his eyes on the radiant effulgence. So Scripture says: "To behold the graciousness of the Lord, and to visit early in his temple" (Ps. XXVII, 4). Man's soul is thus attired in the raiments of both worlds, the lower and the upper, thereby achieving perfection. Of this Scripture says: "Surely the righteous shall give thanks unto thy name"; to wit, in this world—"The upright shall dwell in thy presence" (Ibid. CXL, 14); namely, in the other world.'

AND HE MADE THE EPHOD OF GOLD. Said R. Jose: The ephod and the breastplate were inseparable, and we have laid down that in that place are fixed the twelve stones which bear the names of the twelve sons of Israel, to which, in their turn, correspond to the twelve supernal divisions. [Tr. note: The permutations of the letters of the Tetragrammaton.] This recondite symbolism underlies the passage, "Whither the tribes went up, the tribes of the Lord, as a testimony unto Israel, to give thanks unto the name of the Lord" (Ps. CXXII, 4). The reference here is to the twelve supernal tribes, they being the tribes of YH (the Lord), a name that is a testimony to Israel.' R. Hiya said: 'The term "tribes" is repeated here twice: first in allusion to the tribes here on earth, and secondly the supernal Tribes. "A testimony to Israel" bears esoteric reference to the supreme Divine Name that is called "testimony", of which Scripture says, "and my testimony that I shall teach them" (Ibid. CXXXII, 12). Now, these supernal twelve holy tribes were symbolized by the twelve sacred stones. For the twelve tribes below were the counterpart of those on high, and their names were all engraven on those stones, so that they were carried by the High Priest. When Jacob was on his way to Haran, Scripture says of him, "and he took some of the stones of the place, and put them under his head" (Gen. XXVIII, 11). These were the twelve sacred stones, which were made into one, as we read later, "and this stone" (Ibid. 22). All the twelve stones were absorbed in the one supreme sacred stone that is over them all, of which it is thus written, "and this stone

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 230a

which I have set up for a pillar, shall be God's house" (Ibid). Hence the High Priest had to put them on his heart as a perpetual reminder of them, as Scripture says: "And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel... upon his heart... for a memorial before the Lord continually" (Ex. XXVIII, 29). In all this the number twelve is of recondite significance: there are twelve stones of a supernal order in the upper world, concealed in a profound and holy mystery. These form the essence of the Torah; proceeding from a small, still voice, [Tr. note: Binah.] as said elsewhere. There is an order of another twelve hidden in a lower world, [Tr. note: The world of Creation.] after the pattern of the former, but which proceed from a different voice, designated Stone, as hinted in the words "from thence,

from the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel" (Ibid. XLIX, 24). This is also the inner significance of the verse: "And thither were all the flocks gathered, and they rolled the stone... and put the stone again... in its place" (Ibid. XIX, 3). By the "stone" here is meant the Shekinah, called "tried stone", "the stone of Israel", which Israel roll along and take with them into exile, "and then put the stone again in its place". And so, after the name of the Shekinah all Israel are termed "stones". There are, moreover, stones and stones. There are stones which form the foundation of a house, of which Scripture says, "And the king commanded, and they quarried great stones, costly stones, to lay the foundation of the house with hewn stone" (I Kings v, 31); and there are precious supernal stones, to wit, those twelve stones. These are ranged in four orders, of three each, toward the four directions of the world. After the same pattern was the arrangement of the standards in the journey of the Israelites in the wilderness, where the twelve tribes were formed into groups of three each on each of the four cardinal points. Observe that when the High Priest was wearing the twelve stones fixed on the breastplate and the ephod, the Shekinah hovered over him. These twelve stones had engraved on them the names of the twelve tribes, each stone bearing the name of one of them. The letters were sunk, but when the stones shone they stood out and became luminous, spelling out what was required. Now, in all the names of the tribes the letters heth and teth were not to be found, for the reason that the tribes were without sin (H e T). Said R. Hezekiah: 'This is reasonable as regards the heth, but not so in regard to the teth, since it is the initial of tob (good); and, further, we have learned that the letter teth seen in a dream is a good omen, since at the beginning of the Torah it is written, "And the Lord saw the light that it was good" (Gen. I, 4). Why, then, is that letter absent from the names of the tribes?' R. Hiya said in reply: 'It is because these two letters adjoin each other (in the alphabet), and, further, the teth is a letter hidden and withdrawn, as it is symbolic of the light that is above other lights, of the light of which it is written, "And the Lord saw the light that it was good". Hence it is the light of all the tribes together, and it could not be engraven on any of them. And, in addition, all the twelve tribes sprang from a certain undisclosed Apartment which is symbolized by the letter teth, and so, symbolizing as it does the undisclosed, this letter could not be made to be seen among them. Observe that all those stones possessed miraculous powers. Thus, when they became luminous, the face of the High Priest was likewise illumined, and at the same time the luminous letters stood out. The shining of the High Priest's face was a sign for all that the luminous letters were of a favourable significance; thereby it was known whether the High Priest was righteous or not.'

R. Abba was a frequent visitor to R. Simeon. He said to him once: 'In regard to the Urim and Thummim which were to be put in the breastplate (Ex. XXVIII, 30), we have learned that they were called Urim (=lights) because their words gave a clear and direct answer to the questions directed to them; and Thummim (tamim=perfect, complete) because their words were fulfilled to perfection. [Tr. note: v T. B. Yoma, 73.] Now, there seems to be something further to know in regard to this recondite subject.' Said R. Simeon: 'Assuredly so. Thus, the breastplate and the ephod correspond to

the Urim and Thummim, and these again to the phylacteries (tefillin) and the knot of the phylacteries.' R. Simeon here cited the verse: "And thou shalt see my back, but my face shall not be seen" (Ibid. XXXIII, 23). 'That means', he said, 'that the Holy One, blessed be He, made Moses see the knot of the phylacterie, [Tr. note: v. T. B. Menahoth, 35.] but not the phylacteries themselves. "My face" points to the phylacteries that contain the sublime mystery of the Divine Name,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 230b

whereas "my back" involves the mystery contained in the knot of the phylacteries. As is well known to the Companions, the former denotes the shining speculum, the latter the dull speculum. So correspondingly Urim signifies the words illuminated, whereas Thummim points to the words in their fulfilment. The same mystical correlation is found between "voice" and "speech": for voice illumines the speech to be uttered, whereas speech brings the word to completion, and the two are indissolubly fused one with each other. The breastplate and the ephod', he concluded, 'correspond thus respectively to the "face" and the "back", the two being one and inseparable.' Said R. Abba: 'If that is so, and if he who separates them is called "one who separateth between familiar friends" (Prov. XVI, 28), how are we to explain the verse: "And it came to pass, when Abiathar, the son of Ahimelech, fled to David to Keilah, that he came down with an ephod in his hand" (I Sam. XXIII, 6), where the ephod is mentioned without the breastplate?' R. Simeon replied: 'The explanation assuredly is that the nearer a thing comes to the realm of the hidden and undisclosed, the less is it made mention of. So, contrariwise, what is nearer the realm of things revealed is to that degree more often mentioned, whereby the undisclosed is all the more covered, as it were. On the same principle, the Divine Name Sublime, the essence of the hidden and unrevealed, is never uttered, a name denoting the revealed being substituted for it. Thus the Name signifying the unrevealed is TETRAGRAMMATON, but that signifying the revealed is ADNY (AD o N a Y). The former is the way the Divine Name is written, the latter the way it is read. Thus it is throughout the Torah, which contains two sides: a disclosed and an undisclosed. And these two aspects are found in all things, both in this world and in the upper world.'

R. Simeon here adduced the verse: "Then said they unto him: Tell us, we pray thee, inasmuch as (ba'asher) thou art the cause that this evil is upon us, what is thine occupation?.. Then the men feared God exceedingly..." (Jonah I, 8-16). 'There is much', he said, 'to ponder over in this text. For, indeed, the men put to him their question with deep wisdom. Thus they wished to find out whether Jonah was of the seed of Joseph, at the sight of whose coffin the sea straightway divided itself and became dry land. So Scripture says: "The sea saw and fled" (Ps. CXIV, 3); that is, it saw him of whom it is written, "and he fled and got him out" (Gen. XXXIX, 12), and at once "the Jordan turned backward" (Ps. Ibid.). The men thus used the expression "inasmuch as" (ba'asher), thereby pointing to Joseph, who used a similar expression when he said, "inasmuch as thou art his wife" (Gen. XXXIX, 9); they thus said in effect, "If thou art of the seed of Joseph, pray that the sea may

cease from its raging.” They further used the expression “to whom?” (I’mi), an allusion to Jacob, in connection with whom it is written, “to whom belongeth thou?” (Ibid. XXII, 17); they as much as said: “If thou art of the seed of Jacob who sent his message to Esau by holy angel messengers and in that way was saved from the calamity that threatened him, then pray to the Master that He may send His angel to save us from this calamity that threatens us, and if not”—they further asked—“What is thine occupation?” With what dost thou daily busy thyself? “and whence comest thou?” that is, Who were thy forefathers? “What is thy country?” Is it a country deserving punishment? Thus all the questions put by them had a good reason. “And he said unto them: I am a Hebrew, that is, from the seed of Abraham the Hebrew who sanctified the name of his master day by day; and I fear the Lord, the God of heaven”, etc. They put their questions, cloaking their real meaning, but he answered them without disguise. Scripture then continues: “Then were the men exceedingly afraid.” It was the Divine Name they heard that made them fear; for they all were aware of the miracles and mighty deeds that the Holy One, blessed be He, wrought on the sea. He further told them that he fled from the presence of the Holy One, blessed be He, and they thus asked him: “What is this that thou hast done?” that is, Why hast thou transgressed thy Master’s command? Note that all these men, after they saw the miracles and mighty deeds that the Holy One, blessed be He, wrought for Jonah on the sea, became proselytes. For they all saw Jonah fall into the sea,

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 231a

and the fish come up and swallow him; and then, when the same great fish emerged on the surface in the presence of them all and vomited him on dry land, they came up to him and declared themselves proselytes. This is borne out by the words of Jonah, saying: “They that regard lying vanities will forsake their own mercy” (Jonah II. 9). Observe, further, that they all became righteous proselytes and rose to be sages of the Law of the highest rank. For the Holy One, blessed be He, found delight in them, as in all those who come near to Him and sanctify His Name openly; for when His disclosed Name is sanctified, His undisclosed Name ascends His Throne of Glory. So Scripture says, “but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel” (Lev. XXII, 32).’

AND THEY BOUND THE BREASTPLATE BY THE RINGS THEREOF UNTO THE RINGS OF THE EPHOD WITH A THREAD OF BLUE. Why blue? Because it is an all-uniting colour, and thus is symbolic of the supernal mystery. “A golden bell and a pomegranate... and the sound thereof shall be heard when he goeth in unto the holy place before the Lord” (Ex. XXVIII, 34-35); it was necessary for the sound to be heard so that blessings might rest on the world by reason of the blessing pronounced by the priest on all. The “pomegranate” is a symbol of plenty, on account of its multitude of seeds.

AND HE MADE THE ROBE OF THE EPHOD OF WOVEN WORK, ALL OF BLUE. The significance of the blue colour consists in its being a reflection of the light of the Divine Throne, a light which is one with the white

light. Said R. Simeon: ‘All the priestly robes were emblematic of the supernal mystery, having been made after the celestial pattern. It may here be asked: Seeing that Michael was the High Priest and belonged to the “right side”, why is Gabriel referred to as “the man clothed in linen” (Dan. XII, 7), seeing that such robes could only be worn by the High Priest? But the truth is that the “left” is always embraced within the “right”, and hence Gabriel (although of the left) was clothed in these robes. Furthermore, Gabriel is the messenger for this world, hence he had to put on the garments of this world. The same has already been explained in regard to the soul which, whilst in the upper world, has to put on heavenly garments, but in descending below assumes lowly garments. Observe that the “robe of the ephod” was to cover the ephod when he put it on. It is written: “Thou hast formed me behind and before, and laid thy hand upon me” (Ps. CXXXIX, 4). Observe that at the creation of Adam the Holy One, blessed be He, made him male and female together, female behind and male before. Then He sawed them asunder and tricked out the woman and brought her to Adam; and when they were thus brought face to face, love was multiplied in the world and they brought forth offspring, a thing that was not yet before. But when Adam and his wife sinned and the serpent had intercourse with Eve and injected into her his venom, she bore Cain, whose image was in part derived from on high and in part from the venom of the unclean and low side. Hence it was the Serpent who brought death into the world, in that it was his side that was the cause of it. It is the way of the serpent to lie in wait to slay, and thus the one that sprang from him followed the same course. So Scripture says: “And it came to pass when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him” (Gen. IV, 8). We find it written in the Ancient Books that in the act of slaying Abel, Cain bit him repeatedly

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 231b

after the manner of the serpent, until he caused his soul to quit him. Abel was thus slain and his body resolved into its elements. Had not Cain been in part the offspring of the unclean side he would not have behaved so toward his brother. Adam, therefore, having seen Abel slain and Cain banished, said to himself: “Why henceforth should I bear children?” He then separated himself from his wife for a hundred and thirty years, during which period unclean female spirits conceived from him and bore spirits and demons, [Tr. note: v. T. B. Erubin, 18.] so-called “plagues of the children of men” (2 Sam. VII, 14). After that, Adam became jealous, rejoined his wife and begat Seth as we read, “and [he] begat a son in his own likeness, after his image; and called his name Seth” (Gen. v, 3); emphatically “in his own likeness, after his image”, which did not happen before, that is, with the offspring born before that time. For previously intercourse with Adam was of another kind, but now the Holy One, blessed be He, brought Eve all beautified into the presence of Adam and they joined together face to face. Hence it is written, “this one shall be called woman” (Ibid. II, 23), to wit, this one and not any other. Observe that the ephod and breastplate were “behind and before”, and so the Priest, when clothed in them, resembled the supernal pattern. As has already been

said, when his face was illumined and the letters stood out brightly, then a message was thereby conveyed to him. For this reason the breastplate and the ephod were tied together; and although they had distinct functions, they had the same symbolism and were therefore united by the four rings that held them together, back and front. They thus symbolize the Chariots which are united from below to those above, and the whole symbolizes the Ofanim and Hayoth (Wheels and Sacred Beasts). It has already been explained that the verse, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth", means that the lower world was created after the pattern of the upper. Now, the Tabernacle below was likewise made after the pattern of the supernal Tabernacle in all its details. For the Tabernacle in all its works embraced all the works and achievements of the upper world and the lower, whereby the Shekinah was made to abide in the world, both in the higher spheres and the lower. Similarly, the Lower Paradise is made after the pattern of the Upper Paradise, and the latter contains all the varieties of forms and images to be found in the former. Hence the work of the Tabernacle, and that of heaven and earth, come under one and the same mystery. It is written: "Lift up your eyes on high, and see: who hath created these? He that bringeth out their hosts by number.... Not one faileth" (Isa. XL, 26). Are we to imagine from this that by lifting his eyes upwards a man can know and see what is not permitted to know and see? No. The true meaning of the passage is that whoever desires to reflect on and to obtain a knowledge of the works of the Holy One, blessed be He, let him lift his eyes upwards and gaze on the myriads of the hosts and legions of existences there, each different from the other, each mightier than the other. Then will he, while gazing, ask, "Who created these?" Indeed, as has already been expounded elsewhere, "Who created these?" amounts to saying that the whole of creation springs from a region that remains an everlasting "Who?" (Mi?), in that it remains undisclosed. "He that bringeth out their host by number", for inasmuch as that region is undisclosed it brings forth everything by means of the sound that issues from the trumpet, the sound that constitutes the "number" of all the celestial hosts and the sum of the whole of creation; and from thence also proceeds the mystery of sublime faith through all the supernal "sides", and then extending in grade after grade downwards, and widening out into numerous hosts after their kinds, all of whom are numbered, and "He calleth them all by name." The verse continues, "By the greatness of his might"-an allusion to the "right side", "for that he is strong in power" -alluding to the "left side", "no one faileth", this in allusion to the forces emanating from the two sides.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 232a

. According to an alternative interpretation, the verse, "Lift up your eyes on high, and see: who hath created these?" contains an allusion to the erection and completion of the Tabernacle. For whoever then looked at the Tabernacle saw in it an epitome of the upper world and the lower; for all the works of the universe were contained in the equipment of the Tabernacle. Thus whoever gazed with attention at the clasps of the Tabernacle saw in their gleam the radiance of the stars, inasmuch as they were disposed in the same way as

the stars in heaven.'

R. Simeon discoursed on the verses: "Hallelukah. Praise ye the Lord from the heaven... Praise him, ye heavens of heavens... Praise the Lord from the earth..." (Ps. CXLVIII, 1-8). 'This psalm', he said, 'was indited by David in honour of the mystery of the Divine Name, which is the supreme object of praises. There are two all-embracing songs of praise: this one, and the one contained in the last psalm, commencing: "Hallelukah. Praise God in his sanctuary" (Ibid. CL. 1-6). The latter psalm, however, contains a tenfold praise, alluding to ten musical instruments, but this one is a sevenfold hymn. The two, nevertheless, dwell on one and the same mystery, that of the Divine Name. This one begins, "Praise ye the Lord from the heaven", inasmuch as the heaven was the starting-point of the six directions which expanded downwards from it. This is the limit within which it is permitted to man to investigate. So Scripture says: "For ask now of the days past, which were before thee, since the day that God created man upon the earth, and from the one end of heaven unto the other" (Deut. IV, 32), that is, so far art thou permitted to ask and investigate; but beyond it is not permitted to inquire, that being a sphere hidden and undisclosed. Hence, "praise ye the Lord from the heaven, praise him in the heights", these constituting the two directions, right and left, whence there was an expanding of all the others downwards in the mystery of the grades, till the development was complete. "Praise ye him, all his angels": these are the two supports on which the Body rests. These are here indicated by the term "angels" because, as the legs are, as it were, the messengers of man, moving about from place to place, so are the angels the messengers moving from place to place in the service of their Master, executing His messages. "Praise ye him, all his hosts," is an allusion to the region whence emanate all the supernal sacred hosts who are marked with the holy sign of the covenant. "Praise ye him, sun and moon, praise ye him, all ye stars of light", to wit all the heavenly luminaries, stars and constellations. Now the Psalmist returns to the height of heights, the place by which all is held fast, saying: "Praise him, ye heavens of heavens"; then again he turns to the earth, saying, "Praise the Lord from the earth", etc. Observe that the stars of the lower world exist by the energy they attract to themselves from the supernal mystery, since the whole of existence is based on the supernal archetype, as said elsewhere. Hence all the supernal stars and constellations are entrusted with the guidance of the world beneath them; and from thence there evolve a series of grades upon grades reaching out to the lower stars. All these have no power of their own whatever, but are under the power of the supernal world. Hence the words of Scripture: "Let now the astrologers, the stargazers... stand up and save thee" (Isa. XLVII, 13) indicating that the lower world is under the jurisdiction of the supernal world.'

AND THEY MADE THE TUNICS OF FINE LINEN (shesh)... AND THE MITRE OF FINE LINEN (shesh), ETC. R. Jose, in exposition of this, cited the verse: "And it shall come to pass in the end of days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established on the top of the mountains", etc. (Isa. II, 2). 'That means', he said, 'that "in the end of days", when the Holy One,

blessed be He, will visit the daughter of Jacob and raise her from the dust, when, further, the sun will be joined to the moon, then "the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established", to wit, Upper Jerusalem, which will be illumined by the radiation of the supernal light, which will then shine with sevenfold effulgence. So Scripture says: "Moreover, the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold, as the light of the seven days", etc. (Ibid. xxx, 26). "On the top of the mountains"

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 232b

signifies the High Priest, who is the head of all, and symbolizes the "right side"; it is he who continuously beautifies the House, and by his benediction gives it a glad aspect. That House will thus be established and adorned by means of those robes made after the supernal pattern. The House being established by the "top of the mountains", that is, by the High Priest, will rear itself aloft, and merge its existence in the supernal realm, so that the world will be filled with an effulgence radiating from the light supernal; and so Scripture continues, "and [it] shall be exalted above the hills", to wit, above all the celestial hosts and legions, "and all nations shall flow into it". Observe this. When the priest here below spreads out his hands [to bless the people], a celestial light first emerges, then all the lamps are kindled, their lights radiating into each other and fusing into each other until the face of the Community of Israel is irradiated. All this comes to pass through the agency of the primordial light, which is the "High Priest". And the activity of the priest here below awakens a corresponding activity in the Priest on high. Thus "the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established on the top of the mountains... and all the nations shall flow unto it". For, whereas now all the other nations have Chieftains in heaven to rule them, at that time the Holy One, blessed be He, will remove those Chieftains and depose them from their sovereignty, as we read, "the Lord will punish the host of the high heaven on high" (Ibid. XXIV, 21). And when all these are removed the Holy One alone, blessed be He, shall be acknowledged mighty, as Scripture says: "And the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day" (Ibid. II, 11). And so the former passage continues: "And many peoples shall go and say: Come and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the House of the God of Jacob" (Ibid. 3). All this will come to pass when the High Priest, the "top of the mountains", shall illumine her, by the mystery of the number six (shesh), signifying the six directions of the world.'

R. Eleazar and R. Isaac and R. Judah were once walking together on the road. Said R. Eleazar: 'It is time we drew to ourselves the company of the Shekinah; this will only be if She hears from us words of the Torah.' R. Judah then remarked: 'Let the chief begin.' R. Eleazar then began to discourse on the verse: "I am small and despised, yet have I not forgotten thy precepts" (Ps. CXIX, 141). 'King David', he said, 'sometimes extols himself, saying, for instance, "and [He] whose mercy to his anointed, to David and to his seed, for evermore" (Ibid. XVIII, 51); or, "The saying of David, the son of Jesse, and the saying of the man raised on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob" (2 Sam. XXIII, 1); and at other times he

abases himself, saying, "for I am poor and needy" (Ps. LXXXVI, 1), or, as here: "I am small and despised." Now he also said of himself: "The stone which the builders rejected is become the chief corner-stone" (Ibid. CXVIII, 22). The truth is that when he found himself in peace and triumphant over his enemies, he extolled himself; but when he found himself oppressed and harassed by his enemies, he abased himself and called himself the poorest and the least of men. For at one time he would prevail over his enemies, and then he would again feel their pressure; but for all that he would always obtain dominion over them, and they were never able to discomfit him. Despite that, King David always humbled himself before the Holy One, blessed be He; for whoever abases himself before Him, He exalts above all other men. The Holy One, blessed be He, thus found David acceptable in this world and in the world to come-in this world, as it says, "For I will defend this city to save it, for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake" (Isa. XXXVII, 35); and in the future world, as it says, "and [they] shall seek the Lord their God, and David their king; and shall come trembling unto the Lord and to his goodness in the end of days" (Hos. III, 5). David, indeed, was king in this world and will be king in the time to come; hence "the stone the builders rejected is become the chief corner-stone". For, when the sun turns away his face from the moon, and does not shine upon her, she has no light whatever and so does not shine, but is poverty-stricken and dark on all sides; but when the sun turns towards her and radiates his light upon her, then her face is illumined and she adorns herself for him as a woman for a man. She thus is then invested

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 233a

with the dominion of the world. So David adorned himself after this very manner. Now he would appear poor and dejected, but then again he would be revelling in riches. Hence David's declaration, "I am small and despised, yet have I not forgotten thy precepts." It behoves, indeed, every man to follow this example and to humble himself in every respect so as to become a vessel in which the Holy One, blessed be He, may find delight. This lesson has also been expounded in connection with the phrase, "with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit" (Isa. LVII, 15).'

R. Eleazar then continued: 'It is written, "And he brought me thither, and behold, there was a man, whose appearance was like the appearance of brass, with a line of flax in his hand, and a measuring reed; and he stood in the gate" (Ezek. XL, 3). Ezekiel saw in this prophetic vision a "man", but not "a man clothed in linen" (Dan. x, 5). For it is only when the angel is on an errand of severity that he is called "a man clothed in linen". Otherwise, he assumes various guises, appears in various attire conformably to the message he bears at the time being. Now, in the present vision "his appearance was like the appearance of brass", that is, he was clothed in the raiment formed of the "mountains of brass", and the "measuring reed" that he had in his hand was not the "Obscure Lamp"[Tr. note: Binah.] of the hidden and treasured-up light, but it was formed out of a solidified part, as it were, of the residue of light left by the "Obscure Lamp", what time that light mounted

up to the heights and became engraven within the scintillating and undisclosed brightness. The “measuring reed”, therefore, is used for measuring the dimensions of the lower sphere. [Tr. note: Beriah.] Now, there is a “measuring reed” and a “measuring line”. All the measurements of Ezekiel were by the measuring reed, whereas in the work of the Tabernacle all was measured by the measuring line. This is also used for the measuring of the dimensions of this world after the pattern of the “cord” (employed in Ezekiel's Temple), inasmuch as in the process of its extension a knot was formed at every cubit length, which length became the standard measure for the purpose, called ammah (cubit). That “measuring line” thus bears the name of “cubit”; and that explains the wording, “The length of each curtain was eight and twenty by the cubit (bamah), and the breadth of each curtain four by the cubit” (Ex. XXXVI, 9), the singular, “cubit”, pointing to the fact that it was the cubit which measured on every side. Now this was a projection from the Supernal Lamp, the lower measurement being the counterpart of the higher. The miniature lower measurement embraces a thousand and five hundred facets, each facet expanding into twelve thousand cubits. Thus one cubit moved along, growing into a “measuring line”, each cubit in its turn being newly revealed; and so it resulted in a length of eight-and-twenty “by the cubit” and a breadth of four “by the cubit”. Hence the one cubit covered thirty-two spaces, symbolic of the thirty-two “Paths of Wisdom” that emanate from the supernal regions. Now the length (of the curtains) was formed into four sections of seven cubits each, the number seven expressing here the central mystical idea; similarly the thirty-two Paths are embraced within the seven, in their mystical symbolism of the Divine Name. So far in regard to this measurement, which was of a higher degree of holiness; for, indeed, there was another measured substance that was designed to be a covering to this, the external comprising the number thirty-four; whilst the internal was of the number thirty-two

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 233b

[Note: Lines 5 through 11 of the Hebrew text are not included in our translation.]

, and, moreover, being of a higher degree of holiness, it contained the sacred colours enumerated in the passage, “of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet” (Ibid. 8). The same lesson is indicated in the words, “I went down into the garden of nuts” (S.S. VI, 11). For, as the nut has a shell surrounding and protecting the kernel inside, so it is with everything sacred: the sacred principle occupies the interior, whilst the “other side” encircles it on the exterior. This is the inward meaning of “the wicked doth surround the righteous” (Habakkuk I, 4). The same is indicated in the very name EGVZ (nut). [Tr. note: The numerical value of EGVZ (1+3+6+7)=17. Similarly, HT (sin) (9+8=17) and TVB (the good) (9+6+2)=17.] Observe that the exterior, the more it is enlarged the more worthless it becomes. As a mnemonic we have the sacrifices of the Feast of Tabernacles, the number of which goes on diminishing with the increase of days. We thus find the same here. Of the inner curtain it is written: “And thou shalt make the tabernacle with ten

curtains” (Ex. XXVI, 1); whereas for the outer ones the number was “eleven curtains” (Ibid. 7). Furthermore, of the outer curtains it says, “The length of each curtain shall be thirty cubits, and the breadth of each curtain four cubits” (Ibid. 8), the two numbers amounting together to thirty-four, a number symbolic of the lowest depth of poverty; [Tr. note: Since 34 is the numerical value of D a L (D=4, L=30), signifying the lowest extreme of poverty.] whereas the corresponding number in the ten curtains was thirty-two, a smaller number, but symbolizing the sublime mystery of the Faith, or the Divine Name. The lower is thus the higher, and the higher the lower. The former constitutes the interior, the latter the exterior. Now the same “measuring-line” went on expanding and thus measured the boards, concerning which it is written: “And he made the boards for the tabernacle of acacia-wood, standing up” (Ibid. XXXVI, 20). These symbolized the Seraphim, as indicated by the description “standing up”, which is paralleled in “Seraphim were standing up” (Isa. VI, 2). Now, here it is written, “Ten cubits shall be the length of a board” (Ex. XXVI, 16), and not “ten by the cubit”. This is because the boards represented the three triads with a single one hovering high above them. [Tr. note: i.e. the 10 Sefiroth, consisting of 3 groups of 3 each, with the Sefirah Kether (Crown) above them.] The number eleven and a half [Tr. note: i.e. the sum of 10 (the length of each board)+ 1 (the breadth).] has its recondite significance in that the boards symbolized a striving upwards, but not yet reaching to the degree of the Ophanim, [Tr. note: Lit. Wheels. An angelic order above that of Seraphim.] the half being expressive of incompleteness. This concerns the mystery of the Holy Chariot, for the twenty boards divide themselves into ten on this side and ten on the other, denoting a reaching out to the height of the sublime Seraphim. Then there is a further ascent in the holy region, denoted by the “middle bar” (Ibid. XXVI, 28). There is also an inward significance in the twenty boards in that they embrace the number 230. [Tr. note: i.e. Twenty times the length of each plus twenty times the breadth of each: (20x10)+(20x1)=230. The number 230 is the numerical value of certain sacred names.] The value of each prescribed measure has here its proper meaning. The curtains of the Tabernacle mentioned before stand for sublime mysteries, namely, the mystery of heaven, regarding which Scripture says: “Who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain” (Ps. CIV, 2). Now, of the two sets of curtains, the one expresses one aspect of the mystery whilst the other expresses another aspect of the same mystery. The whole is designed to teach us Wisdom in all its aspects and all its manifestations; and so that man may discern between good and evil, between what Wisdom teaches and what it rejects. The mystery of the basic measurement, as elsewhere laid down, embraces various objects. The Ark in its dimensions falls within the same recondite principle, in respect of what it received and what it possesses of its own.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 234a

We thus read: “two cubits and a half was the length of it” (Ex. XXXVII, 1). The one cubit on either side tells us about the Ark being the recipient from this side and from that side; whilst the half cubit in the centre

represents what it had possessed of its own; and the same is indicated by the cubit and a half of its breadth and a cubit and a half of its height: each cubit speaks of what accrued to it, and each half of what is possessed already. For there must needs be something for something else to rest on, and hence the existing half in every account. There is a further recondite significance in that the Ark was inlaid with gold inside and outside so as to have its dimensions formed after the archetypal plan. The table was similarly measured by this archetypal scale. The dimensions of the Ark, however, were not used elsewhere, for reasons revealed to the wise. Similarly, all the other works of the Tabernacle were measured by the same cubit, with the exception of the breastplate, which was measured by the span. Now observe this. The tunic embraced the mystery of the "six" (shesh)[Tr. note: i.e. the six directions of the world. The homophone shesh=linen (of which the tunic was made) and also=six.] in that it symbolized the vesture designed for the setting right and investiture of all that comes within the "six" (directions of the world). So far the recondite significance of the "measuring-line". In the vision of Ezekiel, however, we find instead the "measuring-reed", for the reason that the House which he beheld was destined to remain forever in its place with the same walls, the same lines, the same entrances, the same doors, every part in accordance with prescribed measure. But in regard to the time to come, Scripture says: "And the side-chambers were broader as they wound higher and higher" (Ezek. XLI, 7). For immediately the building will be begun that "measuring-reed" will mount higher and higher in the length and in the breadth, so that the House will be extended on all sides, and no malign influence shall ever light on it. For at that time Severity will no more be found in the world; hence everything will remain firmly and immovably established, as Scripture says, "and [they will] be disquieted no more; neither shall the children of wickedness afflict them any more", etc. (2 Sam. VII, 10). And observe that all these measurements prescribed for this world had for their object the establishment of this world after the pattern of the upper world, so that the two should be knit together into one mystery. At the destined time, when the Holy One, blessed be He, will bestir Himself to renew the world, all the world will be found to express one mystery, and the glory of the Almighty will then be over all, in fulfilment of the verse, "In that day shall the Lord be one, and his name one" (Zech. XIV, 9).'

R. Judah followed with a discourse on the verse: "The counsel (sod) of the Lord is with them that fear him; and his covenant to make them know it" (Ps. xxv, 14). ' "The counsel" (sod),[Tr. note: Sod in the Bible =counsel; in post-Biblical Hebrew = secret.] he said, 'alludes to the sublime mystical knowledge which remains hidden and undisclosed save for those that fear the Lord continuously and thus prove themselves worthy of these secrets and able to keep them. Observe that the world has been made and established by an engraving of forty-two letters, all of which are the adornment of the Divine Name. These letters combined and soared aloft and dived downwards, forming themselves into crowns in the four directions of the world, so that it might endure. They then went forth and created the upper world and the lower, the world of

unification and the world of division. In the latter they are called "mountains of separation" (bather) (S.S. II, 17), which are watered when the south side begins to come near

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 234b

them. The water flows with supernal energy and with ecstatic joy. Whilst the Thought mounts up with exulting joy out of the most Undisclosed One, there flows out of it a spark: the two then come into contact with each other, as explained elsewhere. [Tr. note: Zohar, Exodus, 220b.] These forty-two letters thus constitute the supernal mystical principle; by them were created the upper and the lower worlds, and they indeed constitute the basis and recondite significance of all the worlds. Thus is explained the verse, "The secret of the Lord is to them that fear him; and his covenant to make them know it", the first part alluding to the undisclosed engraved letters, whereas the latter speaks of the revealed. Now, it is written: "And thou shalt put in the breastplate of judgement the Urim and the Thummim" (Ex. XXVIII, 30). The term "Urim" (lit. light, illumination) signifies the luminous speculum, which consisted of the engraving of the Divine Name composed of forty-two letters by which the world was created; whereas the Thummim consisted of the non-luminous speculum made of the Divine Name as manifested in the twenty-two letters. The combination of the two is thus called Urim and Thummim. Observe that by the power of these sunken letters were the other letters, namely, the raised letters forming the names of the tribes, now illumined, now darkened. The letters of the Divine Name embrace the mystery of the Torah, and all the worlds are a projection of the mystery of those letters. The Torah begins with a Beth followed by an Aleph,[Tr. note: Allusion to B ereshith B ara E lohim (in the beginning God created).] indicating thereby that the world was created by the power of these letters, the Beth symbolizing the female principle and the Aleph the male principle, and both engendering, as it were, the group of the twenty-two letters. Thus we read, "In the beginning God created the (eth) heaven and the (eth) earth" (Gen. I, 1), where the particle eth (consisting of Aleph and Tau) is a summary of the twenty-two letters by which the earth is nourished. [Tr. note: v. Zohar, Gen. 16b.] Now, the same letters were the instruments used in the building of the Tabernacle. This work was carried out by Bezalel for the reason that, as his very name (Bezel-El=in the shadow of God) implies, he had a knowledge of the various permutations of the letters, by the power of which heaven and earth were created. Without such knowledge Bezalel could not have accomplished the work of the Tabernacle; for, inasmuch as the celestial Tabernacle was made in all its parts by the mystical power of those letters, the lower Tabernacle could only be prepared by the power of the same letters. Bezalel was skilled in the various permutations of the Divine Name, and for each several part he employed the appropriate permutation of the letters. But when it came to the rearing up of the Tabernacle it was beyond his power, for the reason that the disposition of those letter-groups was entrusted to Moses alone, and hence

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 235a

it was by Moses that the Tabernacle was erected. So Scripture says: "And Moses reared up... and [he] laid... and put in..." (Ex. XL, 18) Moses, but not Bezalel."

R. Isaac then followed with a discourse on the verses: "O Lord, in thy strength the king rejoiceth; and in thy salvation how greatly doth he exult! Thou hast given him his heart's desire... he asked life of thee, thou gavest it to him, even length of days for ever and ever" (Ps. XXI, 2-5). He said: 'David intended in this psalm to sing the praises of the Community of Israel by pointing out that the Holy One, blessed be He, is gladdened by means of the Torah, which is called "strength", as it is written, "The Lord will give strength unto the people" (Ibid. XXI, 11). The "king" in this verse refers to the Holy One, blessed be He, and the salvation mentioned is that of the Right. The verse continues: "He asked life of thee, thou gavest it to him, even length of days for ever and ever". From here we learn that King David was not endowed with any life-duration at all of his own, but it was Adam who made him a gift of a portion of his life, consisting of seventy years. [Tr. note: v. Yalkut Hadash, 5b; Zohar, Gen. 55a.] He thus attained length of life, both in this world and in the world to come. "His glory is great", because the Holy One, blessed be He, is the greater of "the two great lights" (Gen. I, 16), but only "through thy salvation". The Psalm continues: "For thou makest him most blessed (lit. blessings) for ever; thou makest him glad with joy in thy presence" (Ibid. XXI, 7), because He is the blessing of the whole world, the source of all blessing; similarly, it was said to Abram, "and be thou a blessing" (Gen. XII, 2): "Thou wilt make him glad with joy"; this refers to the time when the Holy One, blessed be He, will raise the Community of Israel from the dust and renew Her with the renewal of the moon in joy; "in thy presence", to wit, to abide joyfully in Thy presence, in the perfection which She will achieve in that time. For when the Sanctuary was destroyed it was emptied of all its fulness, as we read: "She that hath borne seven languisheth" (Jer. xv, 9), also, "I shall be filled with her that is laid waste" (Ezek. XXVI, 2). [Tr. note: v. T. B. Pesachim, 72b et passim. There is at this point a lacuna in the text.]

'Observe that when Moses was about to rear up the Tabernacle, he first surveyed each several part to see if it had been made properly, and only then did he rear it up; the several parts were one by one brought to him, this being the recondite idea of the verse, "the virgins her companions in her train being brought unto thee" (Ps. XLV, 15). So Scripture says: AND THEY BROUGHT THE TABERNACLE UNTO MOSES. They brought it to Moses as the time had come for his espousals; just as the bride is first brought to the bridegroom and then he enters unto her; so first they "brought the Tabernacle unto Moses" and then he entered into the tent of meeting. Indeed, it is written: AND MOSES WAS NOT ABLE TO ENTER INTO THE TENT OF MEETING, BECAUSE THE CLOUD ABODE THEREON, for the reason that She was then arraying herself in Her finery as a woman tires and bedecks herself to receive her husband; and at such a moment it is unseemly for the husband to enter unto her. Thus "Moses was not able to enter into the tent of meeting...", and they had to bring "the Tabernacle unto Moses".

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 235b

Observe that throughout all the works about the Tabernacle the colour of blue was to play a part, as that colour summarized in its adornment the recondite significance of all the colours. Scripture thus says: AND THEY MADE THE PLATE OF THE HOLY CROWN OF PURE GOLD... AND THEY TIED UNTO IT A THREAD OF BLUE.

'The Tabernacle, in its recondite significance, reflected the supernal mysteries comprised within the Divine Name ADNY. The same significance is reflected by the Ark, of which it is written: "Behold, the ark of the covenant of the Lord (ADN) of all the earth" (Jos. III, 11), the term ADN being identical with the Divine Name ADNY. The name ADNY corresponds to the most sublime Divine Name TETRAGRAMMATON, the Aleph of the one containing the same recondite meaning as the Yod of the other, the Daleth of the one corresponding to the He of the other, and so with the Nun and Vau, the Nun being emblematic of the male principle and the Vau of the female principle, but the two forming a complete whole; and so, too, with the Yod of the one and the He of the other. The several letters of the two Names, moreover, imply each other, complement each other, and together enfold one mystery. Now, the lower and earthly Tabernacle was the counterpart of the upper Tabernacle, whilst the latter in its turn is the counterpart of a higher Tabernacle, the most high of all. All of them, however, are implied within each other and form one complete whole, as it says: "that the tabernacle may be one whole" (Ex. XXVI, 6). The Tabernacle was erected by Moses, he alone being allowed to raise it up, as only a husband may raise up his wife. With the erection of the lower Tabernacle there was erected another Tabernacle on high. This is indicated in the words "the tabernacle was reared up (hukam)" (Ex. XL, 17), reared up, that is, by the hand of no man, but as out of the supernal undisclosed mystery in response to the mystical force indwelling in Moses that it might be perfected with him. It is written above: "And all the wise men that wrought

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 236a

all the work of the sanctuary came", etc. (Ibid. XXXVI, 4). The "wise men that wrought" embrace the "right", the "left", and all the other sides constituting the ways and paths that lead into the sea and fill it. These wrought the supernal Tabernacle and perfected it. Likewise, the lower Tabernacle was wrought by Bezalel and Oholiab, the one of the right, the other of the left, followed by "every wisehearted man", all after the supernal pattern. On the day the Tabernacle was reared up death was removed from the world, that is, it was deprived of its dominion over the world. For, indeed, the entire extinction of the evil impulse will not come to pass until the coming of King Messiah, when the Holy One, blessed be He, will rejoice in His works and "he will swallow up death for ever" (Isa. xxv, 8). Yet when the Tabernacle was reared up by the hand of Moses the power of the evil impulse was subdued so that it could not exercise dominion. At that time the power of Samael, the wielder of the fury of the "left side", was removed from the evil serpent, so that the

latter was not able to dominate the world or attach himself to man and lead him astray.' R. Judah said: 'It is written: "And Moses used to take the tent and pitch it without the camp" (Ex. XXXIII, 7). The reason of this was that Moses did not wish that the "holy side" should rest in the midst of the side of defilement.' Said R. Eleazar: 'So long as the "holy side" rules, the side of defilement is powerless and bows before it. So we have learnt that so long as Jerusalem is in its fulness wicked, Tyre remains devastated.' [Tr. note: v. T.B. Pesachim 42b.]

R. Eleazar said: 'It is written: "And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac, she alighted from the camel" (Gen. XXIV, 64). What is the significance of this verse that it should be written in the Torah? Is it merely to tell us that the sight of Isaac's good looks made her alight from the camel? The truth is that this verse contains a recondite meaning. Observe that when Rebekah encountered Isaac it was the time of Minha (afternoon prayer), a time when Rigour is at large in the world, and she discerned him as one who was of the region of fierce Rigour, a region symbolized by the camel (gamal), [Tr. note: The Zohar plays upon the Hebrew root GML, which as G a M a L = camel, and as G e M u L = reward, requitement, for good or evil deed.] and hence she leaned and slipped off that camel. This camel is all-devouring and all-exterminating, is always ready to inflict death on man. Hence, whenever a man sees a camel in his dream it signifies that death was decreed upon him, but he was delivered. Observe that the side of defilement is so designated by reason of it having brought death into the world. The same it was that seduced Adam and his wife, and Samael is the one that rides on it and leads the world astray, and brings about the death of every one. It was Adam who first drew him to himself, so that he became their seducer. Of this Solomon said, "and come not nigh the door of her house" (Prov. v, 8), for whoever comes nigh her house, she emerges, attaches herself, and is drawn unto him. Thus when Rebekah discerned Isaac as being of the side of Rigour, the side of the dross of gold, she straightway alighted from the camel so as to break herself loose from the Rigour and the dross. Observe

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 236b

that when the Israelites committed the sin of the Golden Calf there was no reason why they should have made a calf rather than anything else of the evil side. But, indeed, they did not choose the Calf, but merely said: "Up, make us a god who shall go before us" (Ex. XXXII, 1); and Aaron intended to delay them. But the Calf was the appropriate form. For from the side of gold there emerged the dross, out of which spread in all directions all the forces of the "left side". All these forces have the red colour of gold, and are under the influence of the sun. For when the sun reaches his full strength he generates gold in the earth; and the Chieftain ruling under the force of the sun has the appearance of a calf, and is described as "the destruction (keteb) that wasteth at noonday" (Ps. XCI, 6). The red side, the defiled spirit, is the same as the Evil Serpent. On him there rides a male-female being, called eleh (these), so called for the reason that they appear everywhere in various guises. On the opposite

side is the Holy Spirit, called zoth (this) [Tr. note: Allusion to Isa. LIX, 21: "this is My covenant with them".], pointing to the emblem of the holy covenant which is always found on man. The others, however, are called "these", wherefore it is written "yea, these" [Tr. note: Allusion to the Golden Calf, v. Midrash Eikhoh, in loco.] may forget, yet will not I forget thee" (Isa. XLIX, 15). The same is alluded to in "For these things I weep" (Lam. I, 16), inasmuch as that sin was the cause of many weepings for Israel. Alternately, "For these I weep", to wit, for the dark forces of that region to whom was given the licence to dominate over Israel and to destroy the Sanctuary. "These" (eleh) points thus to the powers of the unclean-side, and "I weep" points to the Holy Spirit, who is named "I". One might indeed urge against this, citing the words: "These (eleh) are the words of the covenant" (Deut. XXVIII, 69). [Tr. note: This is cited to prove that eleh (these) is associated with the good as well as evil.] But in truth, even here the word eleh (these) points to the curses awaiting him who will transgress "the words of the covenant". Similarly, in the passage, "These are the commandments, which the Lord commanded Moses" (Lev. XXVII, 34), the word "these" is a warning to man to purify himself by the observance of the precepts of the Torah and not to stray from the right path, but to keep afar from the evil powers. As regards "These are the generations of Noah" (Gen. VI, 9), the word eleh (these) is assuredly appropriate there, inasmuch as Noah begat Ham, the father of Canaan, in regard to whom it is written, "Cursed be Canaan" (Ibid. IX, 25). This, then, is the esoteric implication of eleh (these), pointing in our text to the dross and refuse of the gold. Now Aaron offered up the gold because he was of the side of fire, and gold is under the influence of the force of fire, the two being, as it were, one. The Unclean Spirit, whose haunting place is the desert, thus found at that moment an occasion to seize hold of him; and so, whereas Israel standing at Mount Sinai were purged of the primitive venom that the evil spirit injected into the world, thereby bringing death to all mankind, now the same evil spirit defiled them anew, took hold of them and brought again death to them and to all mankind and for all their generations to follow. Scripture so says: "I said: Ye are godlike beings.... But ye shall die like men", etc. (Ps. LXXXII, 6-7). Aaron therefore had to purge himself afterwards during the seven sacred days, [Tr. note: v. Lev. VIII, 33.] and after that by means of a calf. [Tr. note: v. Ibid. IX, 2.] Observe that Aaron had to purge himself, for but for him the calf would not have emerged. For Aaron belonged to the "right side", he symbolized the strength of the sun, the source whence gold originates; and so the unclean spirit came down and insinuated itself, with the result that the Israelites were defiled, and Aaron also. Aaron was defiled through the emergence of the calf that belongs to the left side, as it says:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 237a

"and the face of the ox on the left side" (Ezek I, 10). Thus, though Aaron was of the "right side", the "left side" was there in absorption, the side that gave occasion for the calf. In this way the unclean spirit prevailed and regained his former rule over the world. For Israel, through their sin, drew to themselves the evil impulse as formerly. And in order to purge themselves

they needed to offer up a goat, inasmuch as the goat is the portion of the evil impulse, that is, the unclean spirit, as already said. It is written: "And they exchanged their glory for the likeness of an ox that eateth grass" (Ps. CVI, 20). This is an allusion to the calf that came from the "left side". "Their glory" signifies the Shekinah that led the way before them, but which they exchanged for something unclean. Thus will the slimy venom not pass out of the world until the time when the Holy One, blessed be He, will remove it, as it says: "and I will cause the unclean spirit to pass out of the earth" (Zech. XIII, 7).

'Now some sorcerers succeed in their art and others do not succeed, although they use the same practices, since the success of sorcery depends on the man himself. We have an example in Balaam, who was the very man for such arts, he being, as tradition tells us, blind in one eye, [Tr. note: v. Rashi ad Num. XXIV, 15.] and looking askance with the other. But of those who have to serve with the holy spirit it is written: "For whatsoever he be that hath a blemish, he shall not approach: a blind man or a lame" (Lev. XXI, 18). So here the way was paved for the unclean spirit to enter and obtain dominion. It found a desert utterly uninhabitable, as it is written, "wherein were serpents, fiery serpents, and scorpions", etc. (Deut. VIII, 15), a spot that belongs to his dominion, and that contained gold enough for his use. It also found in Aaron a medium through which to insinuate itself into the "right" side. Thus the place being in all ways suitable it emerged into the open, and the deed was done. So when Aaron wished to become purged, he offered up a calf so as to execute judgement, as it were, on the "evil side". Whereas before he brought forth the Calf to make it ruler, he afterwards offered up a calf in order to subdue the evil power, for once punishment is executed on the "left side" all the subordinate rulers of that side are subdued. In regard to this, Scripture says: "Eat not of it raw... but roast with fire, its head on its legs" (Ex. XII, 8), so as to break the evil power and subdue it, and so that all its subordinates should no more exercise rule. Similarly we read: "a red heifer, faultless", etc. (Num. XIX, 2). This had the same object, namely, to subdue all those sides of the unclean spirit.' Said R. Abba to R. Eleazar: 'But is not the heifer sacred and purifying? and how can this be?' R. Eleazar replied: 'Indeed, it is so. It has been expounded that it was an epitome of the four Kingdoms [Tr. note: v. Daniel VIII.] Thus, the "heifer" is Israel, of whom it is written, "For Israel is stubborn like a stubborn heifer" (Hos. IV, 16); "a red [heifer]" indicates the Kingdom of Babylonia, regarding which it says, "thou art the head of gold" (Dan. II, 38); "faultless" points to the Kingdom of Media; [Tr. note: An allusion to Cyrus, the liberator of the Babylonian Jews.] and "wherein is no blemish" indicates the Kingdom of Greece (who were near the true faith). "Upon which never came yoke" alludes to the Kingdom of Edom, [Tr. note: i.e. Rome.] which was never under the yoke of any other power. It is written: "Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean? Not one" (Job. XIV, 4).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 237b

The heifer is such a thing; for first it was an unclean thing, [Tr. note: i.e. a symbol of the evil power that was

to be destroyed.] but after judgement had been executed on her, after she had passed through the fire and was burned to ashes, she was transformed into a purifying agency. Hence all those who busied themselves with it became defiled, and even after it turned into ashes, before these were gathered and removed, it defiled all who handled them, as we read: "And he that gathereth the ashes of the heifer shall wash his clothes, and be unclean", etc. (Num. XIX, 10). But as soon as water was poured over the ashes they became clean—a clean thing out of an unclean. After the clean had emerged out of the unclean, whatever was allied to the unclean spirit fled. So now the Holy Spirit obtained dominion, and the unclean spirit was subjugated utterly. The latter received its punishment without the camp in harmony with the precept, "therefore shall thy camp be holy" (Deut. XXIII, 15).' R. Abba then approached and kissed R. Eleazar.

Said R. Simeon: 'All this is true, yet nevertheless the Holy One, blessed be He, has conferred power on the unclean spirit and it behoves man to subjugate him from all directions. Now I am about to reveal to you', he said, 'a mystery which is only permitted to be revealed to the superior saints. The Holy One, blessed be He, has conferred power upon the place which is the unclean spirit to have dominion over the world in many ways and to be enabled to inflict harm; we thus dare not treat him lightly, but we have to be on our guard against him lest he indict us, even in our holy actions. We have, therefore, a secret device, namely, to assign him a little space within our holy performances, since it is out of the source of holiness that he derives his power. Hence we are required to enclose inside the phylacteries a hair of a calf with one end jutting out and exposed to sight. This hair is incapable of communicating defilement, since it is smaller than a barley grain. [Tr. note: Allusion (apparently inexact) to Mishnah, Ahaloth III, 2.] Now, when the unclean spirit beholds this hair that is within the supremely holy, and thus finds that he has a portion therein, he will abstain from assailing the wearer and will be powerless to inflict evil on him, whether on high or below. Whereas if nothing is given him within what is holy he brings accusations, saying, that-and-that man who at the moment makes himself holy has done such-and-such a deed on such-and-such a day, and these-and-these are the sins he committed; so that the man will thus be brought to judgement and be punished. The Israelites, who were aware of this secret, used to adopt a similar device when they began to sanctify themselves on the Day of Atonement; they at once made provision for assigning the unclean spirit his portion, so that he should not accuse them nor bring to notice the sins of Israel. For when he presents himself to bring accusations against Israel, ever so many bands and hosts stand there ready to take up his word. Happy is the portion of him who is able to be on his guard so that his sins should not be brought to notice on high, and so that he should not be regarded with disfavour.' Meanwhile tears began to flow from R. Abba's eyes. Said R. Eleazar to him: "Abba, Abba, unloose thy girdle, and wipe the tears from thy face, inasmuch as the mystic doctrines of the Torah were entrusted to the righteous, as it is written: "The secret (sod)[Tr. note: Sod in Bib. Heb.=counsel, in post-Bib. =secret, mystery.] of the Lord is for them that fear him" (Ps. xxv,

14).'

Observe that on New Year's Day the world is brought to trial before the holy Judgement Seat; and there stands on one side the evil spirit who regards intently and makes a record of all those that are doomed to death. But at the moment

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 238a

that Israel awakens mercy by means of the sound of the trumpet (shofar) he becomes altogether confused and distracted, and turns his gaze away from the doomed ones. This continues until some time after. [Tr. note: i.e. the eve of the Last day of Tabernacles.] Then all those under decree of death who have not repented of their sins are delivered into the hands of the evil power under a final order of death, which order is irrevocable. The whole of Israel together have thus to be on guard against him, and how much more so one who is by himself. We have thus to assign him at every New Moon a he-goat as his portion, so that he will abstain from acting as accuser. The sacred moon will thus draw sustenance in holiness and be fittingly renewed. The moon being renewed every month is thus called "na'ar" (youth), but the opposite force, which is forever immersed in defilement, is called "old and foolish king" (Eccles. IV, 13). Thus for holy Israel, the one nation united to God in holiness, the Holy One, blessed be He, has provided a means of escape from all the evil powers. Happy are they in this world and in the world to come. So Scripture says: "Thy people also shall be all righteous, they shall inherit the land for ever; the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, wherein I glory" (Isa. LX, 21).

'AND THEY BROUGHT THE TABERNACLE UNTO MOSES, ETC. It is written: "And above the firmament" (Ezek. I, 26). This alludes to the firmament that is placed over the four Hayoth (Holy Animals) who are impinged on by the spirit of the Hayah (Holy Animal), by whose spirit they all rise aloft, as it says: "and when the Hayoth were lifted up from the earth, the Ofanim (Wheels) were lifted up beside them, for the spirit of the Hayah was in the Ofanim" (Ibid. I, 21). It is when the space of that region, as it were, impinges on them that the four Hayoth rise and carry aloft the superior Hayah, bringing it to the Supernal Illumination. This is esoterically alluded to in the words, "The virgins her companions in her train being brought unto thee" (Ps. XLV, 15), the four Hayoth being so designated. These raise the Supernal Hayah higher and higher so as to uphold the Supernal Throne, as esoterically indicated in the words, "and [they] bore up the ark, and it was lifted up above the earth" (Gen. VII, 17). The same allusion can be found in the words, "And they brought the tabernacle unto Moses", Moses being a synonym of Adam. The Tabernacle is symbolic of all the members of the Body when suffused with a holy desire for the union of the male and female principles. So "they brought the tabernacle", since the bride is first to be brought to her spouse, who subsequently takes up his abode with her permanently.

'Again, the words, "And they brought the tabernacle to Moses" are an allusion to those who daily concentrate their minds [whilst reciting their prayers] on

the mysteries of the divine unification, and lift up this throne until they bring it unto "Moses". Thereby they draw unto themselves blessings from the very source of life. Of this Scripture says: AND MOSES SAW ALL THE WORK.... AND MOSES BLESSED THEM, the blessings thus flowing from the region that is of the grade of Moses. Thus the prayer of every man is scrutinized, whether it is recited with the proper concentration on divine unification

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 238b

and if it is found to be so, then the man receives blessings from the fount of blessings. Thus, so soon as "they had done it, etc." "Moses blessed them", AND THEY BROUGHT THE TABERNACLE TO MOSES, inasmuch as he was the "master of the house", whom it behoved to supervise its arrangements and mysteries, which none else was permitted to observe and look upon. When they brought the tabernacle to Moses, they brought it in all its parts, each part to be fitted in its place, and all the parts to be joined together to form a whole. For when they attempted to do so themselves, they did not succeed; so they brought it to Moses, who straightway succeeded in joining the parts together, putting each in its place. So we read, "and Moses reared up the tabernacle", and also, "the tabernacle was reared up".

'Observe that when Moses was about to set up the tabernacle and to adjust all its parts and members, fitting them one into the other, all the components of the unclean, or "other" side, became enfeebled. For when the one side, the side of holiness, ascends in power, the unclean side relaxes, and similarly, when the other side ascends this side becomes feeble. When one is full the other is desolate, as with Jerusalem and Tyre. [Tr. note: Vide T. B. Pesachim, 42b.] Moses thus "reared up the tabernacle" so as to be fortified by the supernal power and not be overcome by the lower power. Moses, moreover, whose vision was through the "luminous glass", was the one needed for the rearing up of the tabernacle, that he might be enlightened by it and not by some inferior light, just as the moon must receive its light from the sun and not from any other source.

'Observe now, that the Community of Israel had to raise and attach itself to the sun.' In this connection R. Simeon expounded thus the verse: "This is the law of the burnt-offering ('olah); it is that which goes up..." (Lev. VI, 2). 'The burnt-offering symbolizes the ascent of the Community of Israel and her attachment [to the Holy One] within the World-to-come, so as to form a unity, and therefore She is called 'olah (ascending). It is thus written: "This is the law (Torah) of the burnt-offering ('olah)", to wit, the Written Law and the Oral Law, the two representing the unity of the male and female principles. She is called "the 'olah" because she ascends to the World-to-come, designated the holy of holies. Similarly, the burnt-offering ('olah) is holy of holies, and therefore it is killed northward [of the altar], since it is of the left side in that the Oral Law is not embraced save when the north side is awakened, as it says: "Let his left hand be under my head, and his right hand embrace me" (S.S. II, 6). The Oral Law then goes up in love, is entwined in the right and attached in the

midst, and the whole becomes illumined from the esoteric source of the Holy of Holies, under the beneficent influence of the service of the priests, the song of the Levites, and the prayer of Israel.

‘As already said, the burnt-offering, the most holy grade of offerings, is the emblem of the supernal spirit. For there are three spirits knit together: the lower spirit, designated the Holy Spirit; the intermediate spirit, called “spirit of wisdom and understanding”, a name also borne by the lower spirit. But the spirit that proceeds out of the trumpet and is composed of fire and water is called “supernal spirit”, since it is hidden and silent, and in it are concentrated all the holy spirits and all the illumined countenances. The burnt-offering was thus transmuted, as it were, into the very essence of that spirit, whereas its beast-part, the consumed fats, were food for the unclean side. Not so the other, or peace-offerings, which had in them the sides of the forces of Rigour, and hence were named “lesser holy offerings”; for they do not ascend as adornments to the height

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 239a

of heights like the most holy offerings; and hence may be killed on any side of the altar.’

R. Simeon further expounded the verse: “Man and beast thou preservest, O Lord” (Ps. XXXVI, 7). ‘Man’, he said, ‘comes from the side of Man, that is, from that of Adam, whereas beast comes from its own side, that of beast. Hence, “When a man brings from you an offering... of the cattle”, etc. (Lev. I, 2), indicating that the offering is first from man, and then from the cattle, that is, the beast-part, both being necessary for our offering. Similarly, God at the Creation made man and beast together (on the same day). It may be said that birds are also eligible for offerings, and even for burnt-offerings, as we read, “And if his offering be a burnt-offering of fowls” (Lev. I, 14). Note, however, that of fowls, only turtle-doves and young pigeons are eligible for an offering, the qualifications of the two being opposite to each other; [Tr. note: According to T. B. Hulin, 22a-22b, there is a special age qualification for each, that of the turtle-dove commencing when that of the young pigeon had already terminated.] since the former is symbolic of the right, the latter of the left. This is indicated in “and let fowl (‘of=flying creatures) fly”, an esoteric allusion to the Heavenly Chariot by which the Holy spirit ascends upwards, the term “fowl” being symbolic of the right side, the same being Michael, and the term “let fly” of the left, the same being Gabriel, the two together forming a unity: to wit, that of the lower world with the upper world, or of the Spouse with Her Master. In the Ancient Books it is stated that the poor man [Tr. note: Whose offerings consist only of birds.] provides a portion only for the upper regions, but the truth is that even his portion is distributed both in the upper and the lower regions, each receiving the part appropriate to it. R. Eleazar asked of R. Simeon how far in the heights the burnt-offering reaches. In reply R. Simeon said: ‘Even as far as En-Sof (without end the Infinite, where is the union and consummation of all in complete mystery. En-Sof cannot be known, nor how it makes beginning or end, just as the zero number produces beginning and end. What is the beginning?

This is the supernal Point, the beginning of all, hidden in “Thought”. And it makes the end which is called “the end of the matter” (Eccles. XII, 13). But beyond there is “no end”—neither intention nor light nor lamp; all the lights are dependent on it, but it cannot be reached. This is a Supreme Will, mysterious above all mysteries. It is Zero (‘En). When the supreme Point and the World-to-come ascend, they catch no more than a scent of it.... This, however, [Tr. note: The text seems here to revert abruptly to the subject of the offering of the bird introduced above]. is not “a sweet savour”, for such is furnished only by the combination of the three acceptable services of prayer, song, and offering, the whole symbolizing “man”. It is this sweet odour which drives away the other side—a service performed by the hand of the priest, as it says: “Command Aaron

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 239b

and his sons, saying” (Lev. XVII, 2), the term “command”, as tradition tells us, alluding to idolatry. [Tr. note: v. T. B. Sanhedrin, 56b.] This signifies that the evil thought is removed from the holy principle, is separated along with the smoke and the burning fats, whilst the favoured part of the sacrifice ascends on high in its pure holiness. This is the work that was entrusted to the priests. It is true that the same term “command” is used in connection with the whole of Israel, as we read: “Command the children of Israel” (Num. XXVIII, 1). Israel, however, achieve the same work by means of prayer and obedience to the will of their Master. It is by this means that the evil is made powerless to rule over them; and this verse indicates how the Holy Spirit ascends ever higher whilst the spirit of defilement sinks to the lowest depths. Thus, what Israel achieves through prayer the priests achieve through the temple service. All this falls within the work of the priest, and thus is expounded the recondite doctrine of the co-operation (in the sacrifice) of “man and beast”. Happy is the portion of the righteous in this world and in the world to come, in that they know the ways of the Torah and thus walk in the way of truth. Of them it is written: “O Lord, by these things”, to wit, by the ways of the Torah, “men live” (Isa. XXXVIII, 16), to wit, in this world and in the world to come.

‘According to another interpretation, the term “this is the law” refers to the Community of Israel, and the term ha’olah (that which ascends) to the evil thought that rises up in man’s mind to turn him aside from the way of truth. The verse thus continues: “on its fire-wood upon the altar all night”, signifying that the evil thought has to be consumed in fire so as not to allow it to grow. By the term “night” is meant the Community of Israel, which comes to purge man of the evil thought, and so “on its fire-wood” points to the “fiery stream” (n’har dinur) (Dan. VII, 10), the place where the “unstable” (spirits) have to pass through the burning fire and be deprived of their power. When that happens, the Community of Israel, being the embodiment of the Holy Spirit, ascends on high. It is thus one of the recondite objects of the sacrifice to assign a portion of it as the share of the evil power so as to enable the Holy Spirit to rise on high, as symbolized in the rearing up of the Tabernacle.

‘Observe that at the moment when the Tabernacle

was erected, as also when the Temple (in Jerusalem) was built, the "other side" was subjugated and removed from the world; and that when the Tabernacle was erected by the hand of Moses the upper and the lower Tabernacles were erected together. Hence it is written: "And Moses reared up the tabernacle", signifying that the Tabernacle below was raised by Moses, as it were, to the height of heights; he raised up, in a sense, that which was fallen and lying low. The same will happen in the days to come, of which it is written: "In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen" (Amos IX, 11). [Note: The last seven lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 240a

[Note: The first six lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation] Observe that when Moses erected the Tabernacle, another Tabernacle, to wit, the celestial one, hidden and undisclosed, was simultaneously erected; and it was by the force of that upper Tabernacle that the lower one was made and held firm. As it was the hand of Moses that erected the lower Tabernacle, so was it the "grade" of Moses that simultaneously erected the celestial one. This is proved from the words: "And Moses reared up the (eth) tabernacle", where the particle (eth) signifies a twin Tabernacle.'

R. Jose said: 'How can Scripture say AND MOSES REARED UP THE TABERNACLE, seeing that that passage speaks of the setting up of its several parts, whilst the term "rearing-up" can only mean the completion of the whole by putting together of all its parts?' Said R. Isaac: 'Moses first set up the three sides of the Tabernacle, whereby the evil power was partly subjugated, and then completed the fourth side, so that the evil power was completely subjugated: a work that could only be done by Moses, and by no one else.'

Observe, that when HE LAID ITS SOCKETS. Samael was shaken out of his place, together with his forty chariot-legions, and fled a distance of four hundred parasangs until he found refuge within the hidden abysmal cavern; and, as Moses "reared up its pillars" and made firm this "side", the pillars of the "other side" were loosened and fell down.' R. Isaac further discoursed on the verse: "In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen" (Amos IX, 11). 'It speaks of the day', he said, 'when the Almighty will execute divine justice upon the world and will visit their deeds upon the wicked of the world. For the Community of Israel cannot rise from the dust so long as the sinners from among Israel exist in the world. Thus the previous verse says: "All the sinners of my people shall die by the sword, that say: The evil shall not overtake nor confront us" (Ibid. 10); and this is immediately followed by the verse, saying: "In that day will I raise up the tabernacle... and close up their breaches, and I will raise up its ruins", where the plural "their" breaches can only point to "the sinners of My people" who form breaches in Israel, and so when "the sinners of My people shall die by the sword" those "breaches" will be closed up; "and I will raise up its ruins", to wit, the ruins of the tabernacle of David which was laid into ruins what time the wicked kingdom

obtained dominion in the world. For, as we have learnt, of the two powers, as the one gathers strength the other languishes; as the one is filled the other is laid waste. So, until that day the wicked kingdom will be in power, but on that day the Holy One, blessed be He, will raise up the Holy Kingdom and "will raise up its ruins, and will build it as in the days of old" (Ibid.). This last is in allusion to: "Moreover the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, etc." (Isa. xxx, 26). AND MOSES REARED UP THE TABERNACLE, to wit, AND LAID ITS SOCKETS as a support underneath, and to enable the doors to revolve. "He laid them"; that is, he made them very firm, and at the same time the pillars of the "other side" were removed. Now we read: "Remember, O Lord, against the children of Edom the day of Jerusalem; who said: Rase it, rase it, even to the foundation thereof" (Ps. CXXXVII, 7). But God will in the future build the foundations of Jerusalem out of another substance which will prevail against all, to wit, out of sapphires, as it says, "and (I will) lay thy foundations with sapphires" (Isa. LV, 11). For these form firm and solid foundations without any weakness such as was in the former foundations. Over those stones

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 240b

of the former foundations other nations could prevail, inasmuch as they lacked the light supernal; but these will possess the radiation from the supernal light and will be embedded in the abyss so that no one will be able to loosen them. These are the sapphires that will shed their light above and below. Nor should we think that the former foundations will then be discarded, for it is written: "Behold, I will set thy stones in antimony (pukh)", the term "set" (marbitz) signifying the repairing of the old broken stones. There are certain stones called pukh; the reason-so said R. Eleazar- only being known to the "reapers in the field". For we must not think for a moment that the stones of the foundations of Zion and Jerusalem fell into the power of the nations. In truth, they did not burn them, nor were they burnt, but they were all hidden and treasured up by the Holy One, blessed be He, without the loss of a single stone, and when God will again establish Jerusalem in its place, the ancient foundation-stones will return to their former positions; and no other (al. evil) eye will be able to rest on them save an eye painted with antimony (pukh). With such an eye one will be enabled to behold all the stones and foundations of Jerusalem set aright in their places. Similarly, all the other precious stones and stone edifices will be reared up in their former positions. Then "they shall see eye to eye the Lord returning" [Tr. note: The Zohar takes here the verb shub (returning) in a transitive sense.] (to) Zion" (Ibid. LII, 8). Scripture speaks of the "Lord returning" for the reason that when other nations obtain rule over Zion, God removes her, as it were, and places her on high; but then He will restore her to her own place. Observe that if a thing is too bright for the eye to behold, the eye may yet look upon it if it is painted with certain substances. Hence, "Behold, I will set thy stones in pukh" [Tr. note: i.e. owing to the intense brilliancy of the stones, the eye could only look at them when shaded by certain paints like pukh (antimony).] Observe also that all the former foundations will in the future be in their former positions and the sapphire stones will be

placed around them. Of the time that God will restore His House it is written: "He will swallow up death for ever" (Ibid. xxv, 8); it will not be as at the time when Moses reared up the Tabernacle, but for ever and for all generations. The Holy One, blessed be He, will then establish the Community of Israel, will raise up the pillars and the pins, and all the beams of the Sanctuary in their proper setting to endure for evermore. The "other side" will be swallowed up for ever: "And the reproach of his people will he take away from off all the earth; for the Lord hath spoken it" (Ibid.). AND MOSES REARED UP THE TABERNACLE, AND LAID (vayiten) ITS SOCKETS. At the time when these pillars and supports were put into their places, the pillars and supports of the evil side were loosened and swept away from their places. Moses, as we have learnt, saw the wicked Samael advancing towards him with intent to bring accusations against him. But he overpowered him and bound him in fetters, and then reared up the tabernacle, and fixed its sockets. The term *vayiten* (and he laid) indicates the use of intense force, for no other man but Moses would have been able to overcome this antagonist and to fix the foundations in their place. It was on the first of Nisan that the Tabernacle was reared up, a season when the evil powers are let loose in the world; for in the days of Nisan, as the saying goes, "even when the ox has his head in the fodder basket, go up the roof" [Tr. note: T. P. Pesahim, 112.] Moses saw Samael going round and round him to confuse him, but he overpowered him. And whilst he began to set firmly the Tabernacle below, a corresponding work was begun

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 241a

on high; there was opposite the earthly Tabernacle a heavenly Tabernacle, hidden and undisclosed, that radiated light on all sides, illuminating all the worlds. R. Jose asked R. Simeon: 'How is it that Scripture seems to speak of three Tabernacles, in that it says: "And on the day that the tabernacle was reared up the cloud covered the tabernacle, even the tent of the testimony; and at even there was upon the tabernacle as it were the appearance of fire, until morning" (Num. IX, 15)? And further, why "tabernacle" rather than "house", inasmuch as a house was needed rather than a temporary abode?' R. Simeon prefaced his reply with the verse: "Thus saith the Lord: The heaven is my throne, etc." (Isa. LXVI, 1). 'Observe', he said, 'that the Holy One, blessed be He, found delight in Israel as His inheritance and portion, brought them near to Himself, and divided them into certain grades after the celestial model, so as to bring into one complete whole all the worlds, both the upper and the lower. Thus "the heaven is my throne" indicates the firmament wherein Jacob dwells, an exalted image, as it were, of the most high Divine Throne; [Tr. note: Al. "an exalted throne for the supernal sacred form."] "And the earth is My footstool", to wit, the firmament where King David abides to feast on the resplendency of the luminous glass; and since this resplendency is designed to be diffused downwards, the term "My footstool" is used. "The house that ye may build unto me" alludes to the Temple; and "the place that may be my resting-place" speaks of the Holy of Holies of the lower Temple. Now observe that all the time that the Israelites wandered in the desert they possessed a Tabernacle, which

remained in existence until they came to Shiloh. This, then, is the allusion of the threefold mention of the word "tabernacle", that it went from one place to another, carrying a trail of light through all, but it was not a permanent resting-place. This only came about when the Temple was built in the days of King Solomon. Then was there indeed rest, both in the upper world and the lower; there were no more journeyings from place to place. The difference between "tabernacle" and "house" may be illustrated thus. In regard to the former we have to imagine a king who comes to visit his friend without bringing with him all his retinue, but only a few attendants, so as not to put his friend to trouble. But a "house" is a place where he comes to abide accompanied by his full retinue. The Temple, then, was designed as an ever-enduring resting-place for all the legions, all the symbols, all the solemn works, on the model of the celestial Temple; but the Tabernacle was the same, only on a small scale.

'Observe that when Moses was commanded to make the Tabernacle, he could not comprehend its design until God showed him an exact replica of every single part, a replica in white fire, in black fire, in red fire, and in green fire. Scripture thus says: "And see that thou make them after their pattern, which is being shown thee in the mount" (Ex. xxv, 40). Still Moses found the work difficult, and though he was shown it eye to eye, as it were, he was reluctant to undertake it. Now it cannot be that he lacked the skill or the knowledge for the work, for though Bezalel and Oholiab and the others with them did not see what Moses saw, yet it is written of them: "And Moses saw all the work, and, behold, they had done it, etc." (Ex. XXXIX, 43). How much more, then was Moses able to accomplish it! But the truth is that though Moses withdrew himself from the work of the Tabernacle, yet was the whole work done by his direction and under his supervision. Hence we read, "And see that thou make". According to an alternative exposition, Moses withdrew himself from the work of the Tabernacle, preferring to make way for someone else. So God said to him:

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 241b

"See, I have called by name Bezalel... I have appointed with him Oholiab" (Ibid. XXXI, 1-6); and we read further: "And Bezalel and Oholiab and every wise-hearted man shall work" (Ibid. XXXVI, 1). For all that, seeing that the work was accomplished by and under his direction, it was as though he himself had done it. Moreover, it is the finishing of a work which is the decisive factor, and therefore we read: "And Moses reared up the tabernacle"; all those wise-hearted men attempted to rear it up but could not, the honour being left for Moses.' AND MOSES REARED UP THE TABERNACLE. R. Judah began a discourse on the verse: "Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy; though I have fallen, I have arisen, etc." (Micah VII, 8). 'It is the Community of Israel that says this', he said, 'in regard to the enmity of the wicked kingdom against the holy kingdom. "Though I have fallen" she says, "I have arisen", which is not so with any other kingdom, which once it falls never rises again. But the Community of Israel will rise again as she has risen before other times. She had fallen many times, was driven into exile, dwelt among enemies, and nations arose against Israel

in an attempt to exterminate them, as it says: "They hold crafty converse against thy people.... They have said: Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation" (Ps. LXXXIII, 45). Yet, though all nations rose against them, God did not leave them in their hands, and if they did fall it was to rise again. And so at that future time when the Holy One, blessed be He, will raise her from the dust of the exile, the Community of Israel will say: "Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy; though I am fallen, I shall arise". Thus Israel arose from the Egyptian exile from which Moses brought them out with all the miracles and mighty deeds that the Almighty wrought for them. Hence it is written: "And Moses reared up the tabernacle", signifying that it was raised by Moses every time.'

R. Simeon discoursed in this connection on the verse: "When those went these went, and when those stood these stood" (Ezek. 1, 21). 'That means', he said, 'that when the Hayoth (living creatures) went the Ofanim (Wheels) also went, as we read, "and when the Hayoth went the Ofanim went hard by them" (Ibid. 19). For the movements of the Ofanim are only induced by the movements of the Hayoth, nor can they pause independently of the Hayoth, for the two move together as one. Now the celestial gate of the east is provided with twenty-four openings guarded by twentyfour sentinels who are surrounded by a flaming fire. There are at the entrance of the gate twenty-four sockets supporting twenty-four pillars. These pillars remain in their place and do not soar into space; they are thus designated "standing ones", in the verse: "I will give thee a place to walk among these standing ones" (Zech. III, 7). And as long as those pillars remain immobile those that are above them go to and fro through the world, survey things, and whatever they overhear they carry up on high. So Scripture says: "For a bird of the air shall carry the voice" (Eccles. x, 20). Now observe that the Of anim (Wheels) are carried by the Hayoth (living creatures).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 242a

For that which is of a higher grade, though it seems to be carried by that which is of a lower grade, really carries it. It was the same with the Ark, which also carried its carriers. [Tr. note: T. B. Sotah, 35a.] We must distinguish between the Hayah, "the spirit of which was in the Of anim", and the Hayoth, with which the Ofanim went. This one turned towards all four quarters of the globe. In regard to this it says: "This is the Hayah that I saw under the God of Israel by the river Chebar" (Ibid. x, 20); it is the same which forms a throne to the likeness of Man, and is below the superior holy Hayoth. For they are in grades, one above the other. The Throne immediately underneath the God of Israel is in the form of Jacob, and the Throne below in that of David; this is the one that turns to the four corners of the world. It follows that the spirit of the highest diffuses through the lower, and directs and guides the whole. There was similar direction in the lower world. Just as in connection with the upper world we read that "the spirit of the Hayah is in the Ofanim", so of the lower world it is written, "And Moses reared up the tabernacle", he being the guiding spirit below; wherefore it is written: "And he reared up, fixed, put."

'Observe that Moses set up the Tabernacle in the recondite spirit of his own high grade; but the Temple that Solomon built was the recondite expression of the River that went forth from Eden, signifying homely peace and rest. The Tabernacle expressed love and affection, but not restfulness, whereas the Temple of Solomon meant rest, as it says, "he shall be a man of rest" (I Chron. XXII, 9). Each one builded according to his own grade.

'Moses first firmly established in the side of holiness the central Point which was hid in darkness and buried, and afterwards all the rest, which is but the enlargement of this Point. And if this Point had not been established first, all that spread from it could not have been established. This is referred to in the words, "he reared up the tabernacle". Moses then "set up its sockets" on either side to the number of a hundred, as it says, "a hundred talents, a talent for a socket" (Ex. XXXVIII, 27).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 242b

As already said, here it is not written "and he reared up", but "he laid" (vayiten) the sockets, for the reason that over above them there were placed other grades, riding one upon the other, as it were. At the moment when the central Point was reared up the evil power sank, but it was not wiped out altogether. That will come to pass in the future, as already said. As the one thus rose, so the other sank. When "he set up its sockets", the "holy side" began to gather force, whilst the forces of the "other side" plunged into the cavern of the Abyss. Had Israel not sinned, the evil powers could never more exercise sway in the world. But since Israel sinned, and thereby drew unto them the "other side" as of old, there is no remedy save to assign him his portion, esoterically speaking, in the sacrifices and libation-offerings. For this reason the burnt-offering is completely consumed in fire, so that the "other side" may be subjugated and the holy side may rise. Then the text repeats, "and he put in the bars thereof and he reared up its pillars", so that there should be rearing-up both at the beginning and the end, whereby the side of holiness was upraised and the evil side was weakened and forced down.

'The starting-point of the grades of the evil side, which is the beginning of the outside grade, assumes the shape of the head of a male riding on a camel. This is the starting-point of a thick darkness which spreads out. The darkness is caused by a smoke issuing in the midst of the fury of the evil side, which fury becomes intensified, begetting other furies, and furies upon furies, one riding on top of the other, and representing the male and the female principles. When the smoke begins to spread, through the pressure of the nucleus, it takes the form of a winding and dangerous serpent. The first result of its spreading is a grade which, after much moving up and down, settles into the grade called "shadow", being a shadow on the place called "death"; and when the two are combined they are called "the shadow of death". The lower and outer starting-point is enveloped in darkness and is far removed from the holy and central Point. The darkness round the lower point is black and yet not black, having no hue which can be discerned by the eye. It is of the

same kind that prevailed in Egypt, regarding which it says: "they saw not one another, neither rose any from his place for three days" (Ex. x, 23); also, "even darkness which may be felt" (Ibid. 21).

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 243a

Now this starting-point was ramified into seven grades. The first grade is a darkness that displays three hues: that of smoke, of fire, and that of blackness. The smoky hue is the apparition of the evil seducer who seduces mankind to stray from the path and to be rebellious. In allusion to such it is written: "There shall no strange god be in thee, neither shalt thou worship any strange god" (Ps. LXXXI, 9). The first half of the verse refers to the male principle, the second to the female principle. The fiery view is that aspect of the evil power which brings about slaughter, bloodshed, and destruction amongst mankind. For there is in the world causeless and purposeless slaughter and bloodshed, as well as slaughter and bloodshed in the course of war. The first proceeds from the male principle of the evil powers, the second from the female principle. The male aspect is concerned in mere bloodshed, whereas the female aspect is at the root of mutual wars of people against people; and all such wars proceed from the female principle. Finally, the black hue is the apparition of the evil power that presides over the infliction of wounds and bruises on the bodies of men as well as over crucifixions and strangulations.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 243b

"The second grade emerges out of the darkness and branches out into three hundred separate directions, although they all are absorbed within each other, as it were. They roam abroad to inflict evil on the world, to execute justice openly for sins committed by men in secret.

'The third grade is as a firmament that overspreads all the other grades.

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 244a

The fourth grade is like a ruddy conflagration, and is also concerned with the shedding of blood among men. It gives the authority to the lower powers for the slaying of mankind. It is to the lower powers in the relation of soul to body. For the soul cannot act save through the medium of body. It is the aspect of the male, which can only act through the female principle, to wit, the lower powers. [Tr. note: Here follows in the text a long dissertation on the Hekaloth (temples), or halls of the angels, which is not based on an exposition of the Scriptures.]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 244b

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 245a

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 245b

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 246a

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 246b

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 247a

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 247b

Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 248a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 248b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 249a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 249b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 250a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 250b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 251a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 251b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 252a

[illegible]

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 266a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 266b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 267a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 267b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 268a

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 268b

[Note: This Page is not translated as per the translator's note on Page 244a]

Soncino Zohar, Shemoth, Section 2, Page 269a

[Note: The first 39 lines of the Hebrew text do not appear in the translation] THEN THE CLOUD COVERED THE TENT OF MEETING, whereby the Shekinah dwelt on the earth, and the unclean spirit, designated "end of all flesh", passed out of the world and disappeared into the cavern of the great abyss. The Holy Spirit had thus sole sway over the world, as Scripture says: "Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting". It is further written: AND MOSES WAS NOT ABLE TO ENTER INTO THE TENT OF MEETING, BECAUSE THE CLOUD ABODE THEREON, in other words, because the Holy Spirit hovered over the world and the unclean spirit passed out. The wicked, however, draw him again into the world, and if not for them he would completely disappear. But in the days to come the Holy One, blessed be He, will cause him to pass completely out of the world, as Scripture says: "He will swallow up death for ever, and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the reproach of his people will he take away from off all the earth; for the Lord hath spoken it" (Isa. xxv, 8); also, "and (I will cause) the unclean spirit to pass out of the land" (Zech. XIII, 3). Blessed be the Lord for evermore. Amen and Amen. "The Lord will reign for ever."